



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

45075

NEDL TRANSFER



HN 5CNB 5

CÆSAR IN GAUL

DODGE AND EASTMAN

KD45075

Harvard College Library



LIBRARY OF THE
DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION

—
COLLECTION OF TEXT-BOOKS
CONTRIBUTED BY THE PUBLISHERS



© Braun Clement and Company

From the painting by Lionel Royer

SURRENDER OF VERCINGETORIX TO CAESAR

(See page 192)

CÆSAR IN GAUL

AND SELECTIONS FROM THE THIRD BOOK OF THE CIVIL WAR

WITH INTRODUCTION, REVIEW OF FIRST-YEAR
SYNTAX, NOTES, GRAMMAR, PROSE COM-
POSITION, AND VOCABULARIES

BY

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGÉ

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE MICHIGAN STATE NORMAL COLLEGE

AND

FREDERICK C. EASTMAN

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE STATE UNIVERSITY OF IOWA

GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON • NEW YORK • CHICAGO • LONDON
ATLANTA • DALLAS • COLUMBUS • SAN FRANCISCO

KD 45075

COPYRIGHT, 1917, BY BENJAMIN L. D'OOGHE AND FREDERICK C. EASTMAN
ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL
ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

119.1

HARVARD UNIVERSITY
DEPT. OF EDUCATION LIBRARY
GIFT OF THE PUBLISHER

JUN 28 1920



The Athenaeum Press
GINN AND COMPANY • PRO-
PRIETORS • BOSTON • U.S.A.

PREFACE

THE modern demand for economy and efficiency, which pervades the educational world as well as the world of business, has led to the preparation of this new edition of Cæsar. It comprises in a single volume all of the material needed for the second year of Latin, and, by the elimination of all matter not directly serviceable, aims to promote efficiency in its presentation.

After a brief introduction devoted to historical matters and the Roman art of war, a thorough review of the first year's work in syntax is presented by means of a biography of Cæsar, in ten short chapters, written in simple Latin.

The text, which is Meusel's with a few minor changes, comprises the first four books of the "Gallic War," with notes written from the standpoint of the pupil rather than from that of the teacher, and fully adequate to his needs. The long passages of indirect discourse occurring in the first two books are given in direct form, thus removing a real obstacle to progress. The same passages are given later in their unchanged form for purposes of comparison and for the use of such as prefer a more strenuous course. Interesting episodes from the remaining books of the "Gallic War" follow, and the text closes with Cæsar's account of the battle of Pharsalia, the climax of the "Civil War," and events that immediately follow. All the selections are provided with notes to serve as helps for sight reading, and the selections from the "Civil War" are provided with special vocabularies of the words not used in the preceding text of the "Gallic War."

In the Grammar the attempt has been made to present the syntax of Cæsar in the most direct and simple form, and the Latin Composition discusses only such constructions as are fundamental. While the authors have not been at all radical in the matter of nomenclature, such of the new names have been used as seem likely to gain general adoption.

The vocabulary gives the essentials of etymology and contains only such idioms and definitions as are fundamental to the text.

Battle plans, maps, and illustrations of every sort have been inserted with a lavish hand, and it is hoped that these will tend to make the great story more real to the pupil's imagination. Special attention is called to the four colored plates made from paintings and provided for this book.

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGHE
FREDERICK C. EASTMAN

NOTE. The numbers on the map give the years of the respective battles and campaigns

GALLIA ANTIQUA

ROMAN MILES
0 20 40 60 80 100 120

ENGLISH MILES
0 20 40 60 80 100 120

Map labels include: Londinium (London), Cantii, Atrebatum, Treveri, Eboraci, and various Roman roads and provinces.

NOTE. The numbers on the map give the years of the respective battles and campaigns.

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION	PAGE
I. THE LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR	ix
II. GAUL, BRITAIN, AND GERMANY	xxi
III. ROMAN MILITARY AFFAIRS	xxv
CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR	I
THE GALLIC WAR	
Book I	11
Book II	57
Book III	83
Book IV	103
SELECTIONS FROM BOOK V	130
SELECTIONS FROM BOOK VI	158
SELECTIONS FROM BOOK VII	175
THE CIVIL WAR	
SELECTIONS FROM BOOK III	193
INDIRECT DISCOURSE FROM BOOKS I AND II OF THE GALLIC WAR	225
NOTES	238
ESSENTIALS OF GRAMMAR	
A. DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS	311
B. SYNTAX	348
LATIN COMPOSITION	411

	PAGE
ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NAMES	457
VOCABULARIES	
ENGLISH-LATIN	3
LATIN-ENGLISH	17
GRAMMATICAL INDEX.	113

FULL-PAGE ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
Surrender of Vercingetorix to Cæsar (In colors)	Frontispiece
A Chariot Race in the Circus Maximus	xii
Gallic Remains	xxii
A Roman Legionary Soldier	xxiv
Castra Romana	xxxv
General View of Siege Operations	xxxvii
Caius Julius Cæsar	I
The Assassination of Cæsar, 44 B. C. (In colors)	8
Caius Julius Cæsar Imperator	II
"Ita ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est"	31
Besançon (Vesontio)	41
Conference between Cæsar and Ariovistus, King of the Germans	48
"Iam amplius horis sex continenter pugnatum est"	86
"Reliquos sub corona vendidit"	94
"Milites nostri in castra inruperunt"	110
Landing of the Romans on the Coast of Britain (In colors)	120
A Druid Sacrifice	164
Early Germans	168
Caius Julius Cæsar Consul	192
Gnæus Pompeius Magnus	214
The Ides of March (In colors)	311

MAPS AND BATTLE PLANS

	PAGE
Gallia Antiqua	iv
Campaign Map for 58 B.C.	12
The Rhone from Geneva to Pas de l'Écluse	14
The Defeat of the Helvetii	29
The Campaign against Ariovistus	39
The Battle with Ariovistus	55
Campaign Map for 57 B.C.	57
The Battle on the Aisne (Axona)	63
The Defeat of the Nervii	71
Siege of the Stronghold of the Aduatuci	79
Octodurus and the Surrounding Territory	84
The Veneti and Neighboring Coast Region	88
Campaign Map for 55 B.C.	103
The Second Invasion of Britain, 54 B.C.	130
Campaign Map for 52 B.C.	175
The Siege of Avaricum	182
Campaign Map for 48 B.C.	196
The Battle of Pharsalia, 48 B.C.	201

INTRODUCTION

I. CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR

THIS is a book of exploration, adventure, and conquest. It tells the story of some of the most thrilling events in the life of one of the greatest men in history — Caius Julius Cæsar, the Roman. It is his own account of his explorations and conquests; his own description of his fierce battles with the half-civilized Gauls who occupied what we now know as France, Switzerland, and Belgium, with the barbarous Britons of England, and with the savage tribes then inhabiting Germany. The curtain of centuries is drawn aside and we see as in a moving picture the dawn of civilization in Europe two thousand years ago. We learn of the strange customs of its inhabitants and of the methods by which they were subdued, reduced to order, and brought under the government of Rome by the extraordinary energy and generalship of one man. The time of this drama is the interval between the years 58 and 49 B.C.

I. ROME, THE RULER OF THE WORLD

Rome in its early history was a monarchy; but four hundred years before Cæsar's birth the last of the kings, Tarquinius Superbus, had been expelled, and a republican form of government had taken the place of the kingly rule. In Cæsar's time Rome was a great commonwealth. To it belonged, as tributary provinces, all the countries surrounding the Mediterranean

Sea, and this meant, practically, all the civilized world. The central power was at Rome, and the provinces were governed by officials sent out from the capital city.

2. POLITICAL CONDITIONS AND PARTIES

At the time of Cæsar's birth, 100 B.C., or, according to some authorities, 102 B.C., there were two great political parties at Rome:



LUCIUS CORNELIUS SULLA

the nobility, or aristocracy (*optimātēs*), and the democratic, or popular, party (*populārēs*). Between these parties there had long been a bitter strife. The *optimātēs*, for the most part, had the upper hand, exercising their authority through a senate of six hundred men, all *optimātēs*. The two great political leaders during Cæsar's early years were Sulla for the *optimātēs*, and Marius for the *populārēs*. The rivalry between these men and these parties resulted in something far more grave than a mere political contest. They kept Rome in a turmoil of strife and bloodshed.

Both leaders sought the command of the war against Mithridates, king of Pontus, in Asia Minor. Sulla prevailed. During his absence in the east, hundreds of his adherents at Rome, including many leading senators, were put to death by the order of Marius. Sulla, returning, retaliated with similar carnage, the friends of Marius now being the victims. It was the custom of the Romans, in times of peril, to elect a temporary dictator, who had absolute power. Sulla, now in control of the political situation, caused himself to be proclaimed dictator

for an unlimited period, and reorganized the government wholly in the interests of the *optimātēs*. These events occurred between 88 and 81 B.C., while the boy Cæsar was passing from his twelfth to his nineteenth year.

3. CÆSAR'S POLITICAL AFFILIATIONS

These circumstances attending Cæsar's youth must have had much to do with the shaping of his ideals and career. Cæsar's family belonged distinctly to the nobility, for the Julii traced their ancestry back to the Trojan Æneas, who was reputed to be the son of the goddess Venus. But something of the independence and self-reliance that told for so much in his later military and civic victories is shown by the fact that, in spite of his political inheritance which marked him an aristocrat, he chose, even in his youth, to attach himself to the side of the *populārēs*.

In his seventeenth year he married Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, one of the most prominent leaders of the party of Marius. Sulla, in the height of his power, ordered him to divorce her. Cæsar, a mere youth, defied the great dictator of Rome, and refused. On this account he was obliged to leave Rome. Sulla at last, through the influence of Cæsar's friends, although against his own judgment, consented to his return. "Let him come back, if so you will," was his remark, "but this same young man will some day overthrow the nobility; for I see in him many a Marius."



CAIUS MARIUS

4. CÆSAR'S EDUCATION AND TRAINING

Cæsar's early life was, no doubt, like that of the average Roman boy of noble birth. His education probably did not differ materially from that of hundreds of others. Cæsar aspired, as did other Roman boys, to a distinguished career. The two chief avenues that were open to advancement were the political and the military. He must be well educated in a general way. Then he must be versed in the law, in statesmanship, and in oratory, or else in the art of war. If he were trained in both disciplines, so much the better. The youthful Cæsar devoted himself to the study of Greek, rhetoric, grammar, philosophy, and oratory, studying for several months at Rhodes under Apollonius, the most famous teacher of the time. He also gained some valuable military experience in Asia Minor, and distinguished himself by his valor in saving a comrade's life. His education for the highest offices was ample.



ROMAN BOY

5. ROMAN POLITICAL OFFICES

The highest office in a political career was the consulship; but there were three successive offices that were usually held as preliminary to this, those of quæstor, ædile, and prætor.

The quæstor had to do with the public treasury, the collection of revenues, disbursements, and the like. Under Sulla there were twenty quæstors, ten being assigned to duties at Rome, and ten attached to the armies of the provincial governors.

The ædile was concerned with the care of streets and public buildings, the superintendence of commerce, and the administration of the great public festivals. The Romans were very



A CHARIOT RACE IN THE CIRCUS MAXIMUS

fond of spectacular games, and to gain the favor of the people for future elections the ædiles often incurred enormous personal expense in their presentation. The number of ædiles was four.

The prætor was concerned with the administration of justice, and represented the consul in his absence. Under Sulla the number of prætors was eight.

But it was to the office of consul that the young Roman looked forward as the consummation of his political efforts. There were two of these officers, elected each year, and the guidance of the republic was largely in their hands.

After either the prætorship or the consulship it was customary to appoint the ex-prætor or ex-consul to the governorship of one of the Roman provinces. Such officers were called pro-prætors or proconsuls according to the office which they had held. Such appointments afforded great opportunities to amass wealth, and for this reason were eagerly sought. For the sake of gain unscrupulous methods were often employed in the administration of these offices. The provincials were imposed on in various ways, and extortion was common. Many of the provincial governors returned to Rome with enormous riches. But aside from all unfair means it was quite possible to make this office an unusually profitable one.

6. CÆSAR'S POLITICAL CAREER

Cæsar doubtless looked forward to a political rather than to a military career. His military training had been only incidental, but he had made careful preparation for the field of politics and he entered upon it with his customary earnestness.

He was elected quæstor for 68 B.C., when he was thirty-two years old. Three years later, in 65 B.C., he was ædile. In this capacity he played with the highest stakes for securing the favor of the people. As he had little means of his own, he borrowed enormous sums on the strength of his office and his prospects,

and presented the most magnificent games that Rome had ever known. He left the ædileship, as he remarked in jest, with more than a million dollars less than nothing.

In 63 B.C. he was elected pontifex maximus, an office that carried great prestige and dignity, though it was not in the regular course of civil honors. This office he held all his life.

In 62 B.C. he was prætor, and during the following year served as proprætor of Spain. But he was now staggering under the load of debt that he had contracted during his ædileship, and was in danger of being detained at Rome by his creditors. To meet these obligations he borrowed a large sum from Crassus, the richest man in Rome.

While engaged in his duties in Spain he gained a military experience that was of great value to him in his future campaigns, and likewise made money enough to pay all his debts. In the year 60 B.C. he returned to Rome and now fixed his attention on the consulship. Pompey had just returned victorious from the Mithridatic War. He had been identified with the *optimātēs*, but, because of their jealous efforts to curtail his power, he was becoming estranged. Cæsar took advantage of this attitude to form an alliance with him. With them they associated Crassus, who represented the moneyed interests, and thus was formed a most powerful political alliance, commonly called the First Triumvirate. This was one of the shrewdest of Cæsar's moves, for his individual influence at this time was far less than that of the other two. It is easy to see how unwelcome this alliance was to the *optimātēs*. Backed by the triumvirate Cæsar gained the consulship without difficulty for 59 B.C. During his year of office he made many valuable and humane reforms, chiefly in the interest of the lower classes, and in general distinguished himself by his wise and good government.

7. CÆSAR IN GAUL

Cæsar's restless energy and ambition could not, of course, rest satisfied with the consulship. He looked forward eagerly to larger fields of action in which to display his ability. Such an opportunity was now presented to him. The triumvirate, in making up the political "slate," agreed that Cæsar should have the governorship of Gaul for five years. This district consisted of what were known as Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum, and the office presupposed the protection of the northern frontier of Italy. The relative position of these territories may be seen from the map at the beginning of the book. Cæsar's term of office as governor of Gaul, beginning in 58 B.C., was afterwards extended to ten years, and it is of the stirring events of these years that Cæsar tells us in this book.



CONSUL AND LICTORS

8. THE CIVIL WAR

The agreement of the triumvirate by which Cæsar became governor of Gaul assigned to Crassus the province of Syria, and to Pompey that of Spain. However, not only the harmony but even the existence of the triumvirate came to a speedy close. Crassus was killed in battle in his province. Pompey,

made sole consul in 52 B.C., began to be intensely jealous of Cæsar's reputation and influence, and finally laid plans to destroy him. To this end he made an alliance with the senate, with which his former friendly relations had been reestablished by their common hatred of Cæsar.

Cæsar had laid plans to run for the consulship a second time for the year 48 B.C. He could easily do this, for his term as governor would expire in 49 B.C. The senate, wishing to prevent this, ordered him to disband his army before the regular close of his official term. They knew that if they could once get him to Rome as a private citizen without an army, they could crush him.

This was the most critical time in Cæsar's career, and one that clearly shows his decision and courage. Instead of complying with the senate's demand he promptly gathered his devoted men and descended on Rome.

Pompey and the senatorial forces were panic-stricken and fled to Brundisium, whence they sailed across the Adriatic to Epirus. In sixty days Cæsar made himself master of Italy, and, before autumn, had put down all opposition in Spain, where Pompey had numerous adherents and an armed force. Soon thereafter he followed Pompey across the sea, and completely crushed him in a battle near Pharsalia, in Thessaly, on August 9, 48 B.C. Pompey fled to Egypt, and there lost his life by assassination. The remnants of the Pompeian forces were conquered in two battles, one at Thapsus, in Africa, and the other at Munda, in Spain.

9. CÆSAR, THE DICTATOR

On his return to Rome Cæsar was master of the world. He was made imperator, which conferred on him complete military authority, and dictator for life, which gave him all political power. This vesting of dominion in one man was the beginning

of the abolition of the republican form of government, and led to the establishment of the empire under Cæsar's grandnephew and adopted son, Octavianus, afterwards called Augustus.

Cæsar continued the beneficent constructive work that he had begun in his consulship. He made many reforms in the interest of good government, and began the construction of many remarkable public works.

IO. THE CONSPIRACY AND ASSASSINATION

In spite of all political disturbances the Romans had always been proud of their republican institutions, and from the time that the Tarquins had been expelled they had repudiated the idea of royalty. Now Cæsar's unlimited power and his readiness in using it began to breed apprehension and suspicion. There were rumors that he wanted to be king in name, as he already was in fact. This resulted in a conspiracy to assassinate him, the leaders of which were Brutus and Cassius. These men and their accomplices, in the name of the republic and liberty, calling themselves in fact *liberātōrēs*, attacked Cæsar during a session of the senate on the Ides (the fifteenth) of March, 44 B.C., and stabbed him to death with their daggers.



CÆSAR, THE DICTATOR

II. CÆSAR'S PERSONAL APPEARANCE

No one can be interested in the life and writings of Julius Cæsar without the desire of knowing how this great man looked. Suetonius, the historian, who wrote about one hundred and fifty

years later, gives us this graphic picture. He says that Cæsar was tall, slender, and handsome, with sharp, dark eyes, a sallow complexion, a large nose, refined features, and a thick, sinewy neck. He adds that he was partially bald, and, being sensitive to this deformity, used to draw the hair forward to the crown of his head; and that, on account of this baldness, he greatly appreciated the privilege granted him by the senate of wearing a laurel wreath.

But perhaps our most satisfactory knowledge of his form and features is gained from coins and the portrait busts and statues that have come down to us. Some of the best of these are shown at pages 1, 11, and 192.

12. CÆSAR'S ACCOMPLISHMENTS AND CHARACTER

Cæsar's accomplishments were many and diverse. He was a thorough scholar, well versed in language and literature. He wrote a grammar while in the midst of a campaign; as an orator he might have rivaled even Cicero; his generalship has never been surpassed; in addition, he was without doubt the greatest politician and statesman of Rome. There is no question that he was ambitious, but he exercised his ambition for the good of the state as well as for his own advancement. Strange as it may seem from his life of conflict, he was inclined to peace, and engaged in war only when he deemed it unavoidable.

Cæsar has been accused of cruelty and various vices. Judged by our moral standards he was doubtless far from perfect, but it is certain that he was a man of remarkable self-control. His cruelty must be judged in the light of Roman standards. The Romans, as a people, held human life cheap, and gave little regard to suffering. Further, the thousands who were slain by Cæsar's orders were barbarians — Gauls and Germans — for whom the Romans entertained no respect whatever. He

certainly exhibited a care and anxious solicitude for the welfare of his own soldiers, and a forbearance with their mistakes that is remarkable. Their love for him and their devotion were touching and complete. His readiness to pardon his former enemies when he was master of the world was more than mere diplomacy; it rather shows a large magnanimity and a fine quality of mercy.

He was fond of athletics, a splendid horseman, and in danger without fear. A peerless leader of men, he is considered by many the foremost character in history.

13. CÆSAR AS A WRITER

Cæsar wrote many books, but only two have survived: the "Commentaries on the Gallic War" and the "Civil War." The former consists of eight books, the latter of three. The last book of the "Commentaries" was not written by Cæsar, but by Hirtius, one of his officers.

The narration in both works is direct, vigorous, and clear; successive events are presented with dramatic and graphic power. His high literary quality is the more remarkable when we remember that he wrote the "Commentaries" hastily as a sort of journal in the midst of his most strenuous campaigns.

14. CONCLUSION

In the following pages are presented such parts of Cæsar's works as are most entertaining and inspiring to the general reader. The story will speak for itself. The "Gallic War" has a peculiar interest for us because it treats of the peoples with whom we are most familiar and from whom most of us derive our ancestry. It marks, in a sense, the beginning of modern history. Active, keen-sighted, and truthful, Cæsar gives us such insight into these nations as serves to explain many of

their present political and social peculiarities. The selections from the "Civil War" relate the climax of the long struggle for supremacy between Cæsar and Pompey, which culminated in the battle of Pharsalia, Pompey's flight to Egypt, Cæsar's pursuit, and the stirring events that followed his arrival there.

15. IMPORTANT EVENTS IN CÆSAR'S LIFE

- | | |
|-------------|--|
| 100 B. C. | Born, July 12th. |
| 83 B. C. | Marries Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna. |
| 80-78 B. C. | Serves with the army in Asia. |
| 76-75 B. C. | Studies oratory at Rhodes. |
| 68 B. C. | Quæstor, |
| 65 B. C. | Ædile. |
| 63 B. C. | Pontifex Maximus. |
| 62 B. C. | Prætor. |
| 61 B. C. | Proprætor in Spain. |
| 60 B. C. | Forms the First Triumvirate. |
| 59 B. C. | Consul. |
| 58-49 B. C. | Proconsul in Gaul. |
| 50 B. C. | The trouble with Pompey begins. |
| 49 B. C. | Crosses the Rubicon. Civil War begins. |
| 48 B. C. | The battle of Pharsalia. |
| 46 B. C. | The battle of Thapsus. Declared dictator for ten years. |
| 45 B. C. | The battle of Munda. Appointed imperator for life. |
| 44 B. C. | The conspiracy. Assassinated in the senate house on the Ides of March. |

II. GAUL, BRITAIN, AND GERMANY

I. GAUL

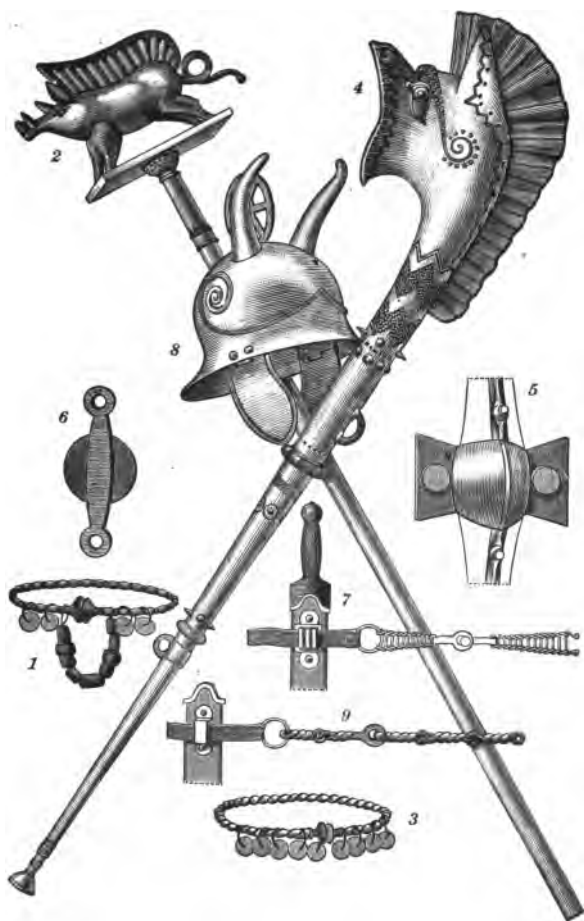
The province to which Cæsar was assigned as proconsul in 58 B.C. by the agreement of the triumvirate, comprised Cisalpine Gaul, Transalpine Gaul, and Illyricum (see map at the beginning of the book).

Cisalpine Gaul, or *Citerior Prœvincia*, had been subdued and reduced to order by the Romans long before Cæsar's time. The inhabitants were fully in accord with the Roman government, and upon them the governor relied largely for his troops and supplies.

Transalpine Gaul, in its narrower sense called also *Ulterior Prœvincia* or Narbonnese Gaul, had more recently come under Roman dominion. Its inhabitants, while subservient to Rome, still retained in great part their own customs.

Illyricum had been added to Rome in 168 B.C. It was a fertile country and a considerable source of supplies, but required little of Cæsar's attention.

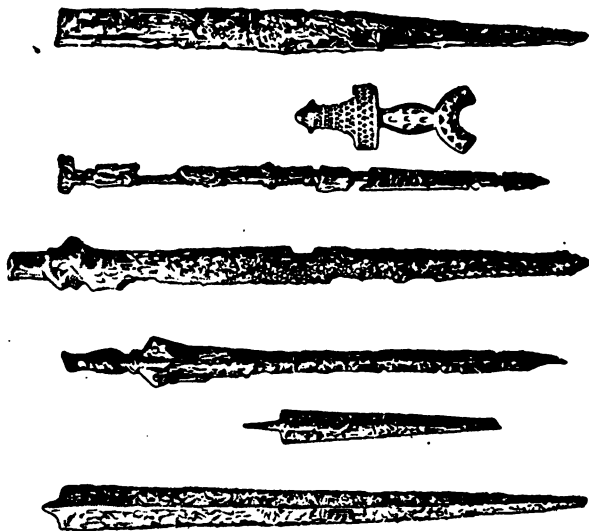
The unsubdued territory north of Cæsar's province, between the Pyrenees and the ocean on the one side and the Rhine and the Alps on the other, was known as Free Gaul (*Libera Gallia*). It was inhabited by various tribes, wild, warlike, and turbulent, agreeing only in their defiance of Roman rule. Their numbers were great, and the country was savage, dangerous, and unexplored. Although this great territory was not under his authority and was outside of his province, Cæsar undertook its subjugation, a task of formidable proportions.



GALLIC REMAINS

1 and 3, necklaces with amber and coral pendants; 2, military standard; 4, bronze trumpet; 5, iron boss of shield; 6, iron fastening; 7, sword-hilt and belt; 8, iron helmet; 9, iron belt-chain

The Gauls were not all on the same plane of civilization. Those that were nearest to the Province had become somewhat civilized through contact with the traders, but those in the north were still barbarous. Their houses were huts of clay and wood, thatched with straw and branches. They raised the coarser grains, but knew little about the cultivation of fruits. They kept large herds, and lived to a great extent upon meat.



GALLIC SWORDS

They understood the art of weaving, and their chief garments were trousers and bright-colored tunics. The coast tribes were skillful sailors and familiar with the building of ships. The Aquitani and some other tribes worked mines. The Gauls in general used a rough sort of coinage.

Their weapons were pikes and lances, bows and slings, and long, two-edged swords hanging from a metal chain. The chief warriors wore a kind of chain armor. They also

used helmets and shields. On the helmets they often wore great horns and grotesque images of beasts (see ill., p. 180).

2. BRITAIN

Our acquaintance with Britain begins with Cæsar, though Phœnician traders had visited the island centuries before. The people that he found there differed but little from those of northern Gaul. Cæsar gained some victories, but made no lasting conquests in the short time that he remained there. Britain was not invaded again by the Romans for almost a hundred years.

3. GERMANY

Germany was for the Romans a country wild, unknown, and full of mystery. They found it necessary constantly to protect their boundaries against the German tribes along the Rhine and Danube. Cæsar met them in several battles, but his chief object was to drive German invaders from Gallic territory, to defend the Gallic frontier, and to inspire the Germans with a dread of Roman might.

As in the case of the Gauls and the Britons, Cæsar is the first writer to give an account of Germany and the Germans. His description of this country and its inhabitants, in Books IV and VI of the "Commentaries," is full of interest.



A ROMAN LEGIONARY SOLDIER

III. ROMAN MILITARY AFFAIRS

Cæsar, for all his genius, could not have performed his great work of conquest without a well-trained army. His foes were unnumbered ; the country was strange, vast, and difficult, with miles of forests and swamps ; the perils were great, and the hardships innumerable. Against such odds he had a force of only a few thousand men. To understand the marvelous efficiency of his army we must know how it was organized, the Roman methods of warfare, and the meaning of the frequent military terms that Cæsar employs.

I. THE LEGION

The smallest division of the Roman army was the *century*, which, as its name indicates, was made up of 100 men ; two centuries made a *maniple* of 200 men ; three maniples made a *cohort* of 600 men ; and ten cohorts made a *legion* of 6000 men. This number, however, is only theoretical, for, as the size of the legion was constantly diminished by disease and battle without being replenished, the actual number of soldiers was much smaller than this. Each of Cæsar's legions contained, on an average, about 3600 men, and its divisions were as follows :

1 century (<i>centuria</i>)	60 men
2 centuries = 1 maniple (<i>manipulus</i>)	120 men
3 maniples = 1 cohort (<i>cohors</i>)	360 men
10 cohorts = 1 legion (<i>legiō</i>)	3600 men

The legion (of about 3600 men) was the regular unit of the infantry force of the army.

2. THE CAVALRY

Cæsar's cavalry (*equitatus*, *equitēs*) was made up chiefly of Gauls, Spaniards, and Germans. It was engaged, for the most part, in skirmishing and scouting, and he relied little upon it in battle. It was divided into *alae* of about 330 horsemen each; these were divided into 10 squadrons (*turmae*) of 33 horsemen each, and these again into 3 squads (*decuriae*) of 11 each. The officers of the cavalry were called decurions (*decuriōnēs*).



ROMAN CAVALRYMAN

3. THE AUXILIARIES

By the word *auxilia* Cæsar means the infantry forces that were enlisted from allied and subject states. A number of these *auxilia* were enrolled with his regular army. They were the so-called light-armed soldiers (*militēs levis armātūræ*); some of them were bowmen and slingers, others wore light armor and carried light, round shields (see pp. 61, 64, 65). As they lacked both the training and the trustworthiness of the legions, Cæsar did not greatly depend on them in emergencies.

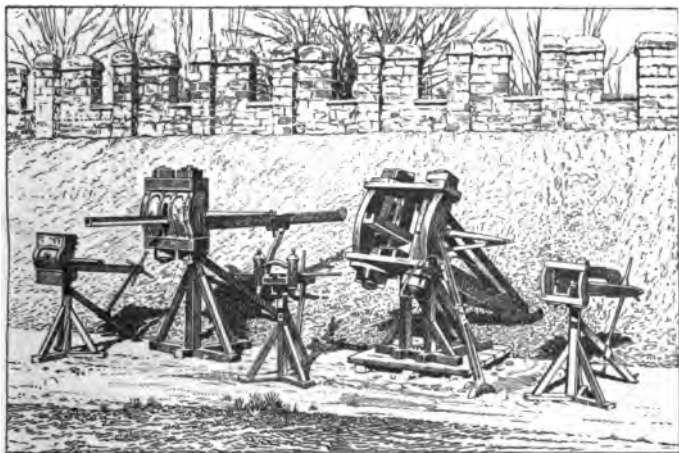
4. THE ARTILLERY

The Romans had no knowledge of gunpowder, siege cannon, or field guns; but the place of modern artillery was supplied by what in general were called *tormenta*. These were powerful engines for hurling missiles, the propelling force being furnished by the twisting (*torquēō*, *tortus*) of rope, sinews, or hair.

They were used in siege operations rather than in ordinary battle. Three kinds are mentioned by Cæsar :

a. The *catapulta* (see pp. 104, 120), which shot great arrows or javelins in a horizontal direction, like a cannon.

b. The *ballista* (see p. xxviii), which hurled huge stones through the air in a high curve, as a mortar throws shells.



TORMENTA WITHIN A FORTIFIED CAMP

c. The *scorpiō* (see p. xxix), which may be described as a mounted crossbow or a small *catapulta*, with the same kind of propelling force. All these *tormenta* were accurate and deadly weapons. The range of the first two was from 1000 to 1500 feet.

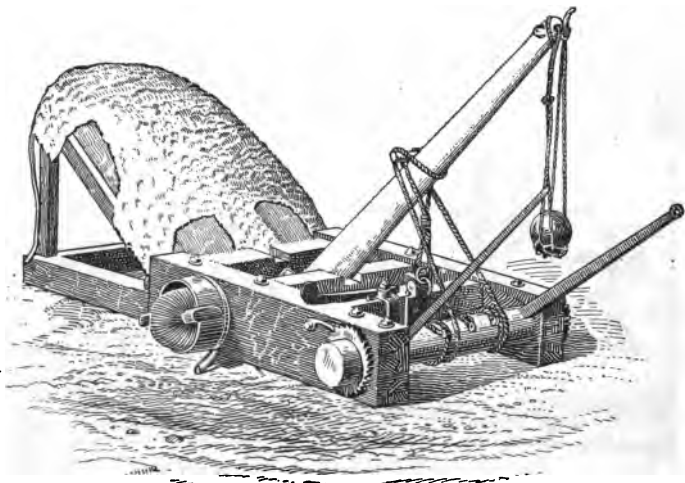
5. THE BAGGAGE TRAIN

Impedimenta is the name given to all the baggage of the army except that which was carried by the individual soldiers. It was borne on the backs of horses and mules, or, at times, in wagons (*carrī*). Those in charge of this baggage were called *cālōnēs*.

6. THE OFFICERS

a. Imperātor. The chief officer was the *dux bellī*, who after his first victory was called *imperātor*.

b. Lēgātī. The *lēgātī* were a body of men of senatorial rank who acted as a board of advisers to the commander. Cæsar had ten of these officers. They were sometimes put in charge



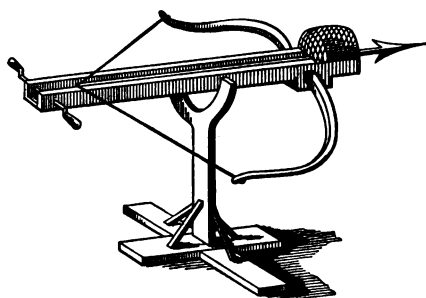
BALLISTA

of legions, and sometimes sent as ambassadors, according to the orders of the general. This will account for the twofold use of the word in the "Commentaries."

c. Quæstōrēs. The *quæstōrēs* were officers elected annually by the people. A *quæstor* attended each *imperātor* in his province and looked after the pay, clothing, equipment, and the like of the soldiers.

d. Tribūnī. In each legion were six *tribūnī militum*. Each of them in turn had command of the legion. They were usually young men without experience, some of them from the

nobility, and owed their appointment to family influence. Their



SCORPIO

inefficiency was such that Cæsar transferred their military duties to the *lĕgātī*, and employed them in an administrative capacity.

e. Centuriōnēs. The *centuriō*, as the name indicates, was the commander of the century. Thus there were two centurions in each manipule, six in each cohort,

and sixty in each legion. These were the real leaders of the men and were promoted from the ranks for their fighting qualities. The first centurion of the first cohort was called *primus*, or *primipilus*, and was always an officer of unusual ability and prowess.

7. THE STANDARDS

Signa (see p. 73) is the general word used for all the standards of the army. That of the legion was a bronze or silver eagle, *aquila* (see pp. 121, 129). Each cohort had its own standard. That of the light-armed troops was called the *vĕxillum*, which was



VEXILLUM



CENTURION

also the name given to the flag of the general at headquarters.

The latter was a large white banner, with the name of the general and of the army in red.



AQUILA

8. THE MUSIC

The *būcina*, or bugle, the shape of which is uncertain, sounded the changes of the night watch and the morning reveille. The *tuba*, or trumpet, was a straight, deep-toned horn of brass, more than three feet long, which gave the signal for attack or retreat. The same signal was repeated by the



TUBA

cornū, or horn, a circular instrument with a sharp tone. The *lituus*, a brass trumpet about four feet long with a curved joint at the end, was used by the cavalry.

9. EQUIPMENT OF THE LEGIONARY SOLDIERS

The legion was made up of picked Roman soldiers, and was Cæsar's main reliance in battle. Romans between the ages of seventeen and forty-six might be drafted for the legion. Its discipline was almost perfect. The period of service of a legionary was twenty years.



CORNU

a. The Clothing. The uniform of the legionary soldiers consisted of a sleeveless or partly sleeved woolen tunic, reaching nearly to the knee. Over

this was a coat of leather, reënforced by bands of metal across the breast, back, and shoulders. This was the *lōrica*. In cold weather a heavy cloak was worn, fastened over the right shoulder with a clasp. About the waist was a leather belt, bound with metal, and with strips



LITUUS

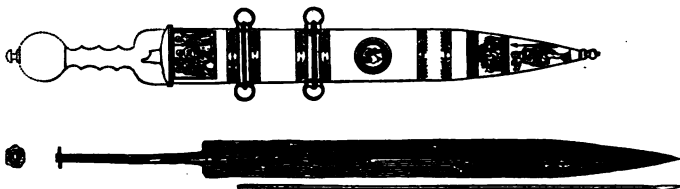
of protecting metal hanging in front. The covering for the feet was a low boot (see p. 102).

b. The Armor. The defensive armor, besides the *lōrica*, consisted of a helmet and shield. The helmet was made of iron or leather strengthened with brass, open in front, and adorned with a white crest (see p. 74). Adornments of this character were what Cæsar calls *insignia*. The shield was rectangular, about four feet long and two feet wide. It was made of wood, was slightly curved, with metal around the rim and also in the middle. In the center was a metal knob, the *umbō*, used both for diverting weapons and for striking blows. The regular name for the shield is *scūtum* (see p. 128).



SCUTUM

c. The Weapons. The weapons of offense were the sword and spear. The sword, *gladius*, was about two feet long, straight and two-edged. It was hung from a belt passing over the left shoulder to the right hip. The spear, *pilum*, used for hurling rather than for thrusting, was six or seven feet

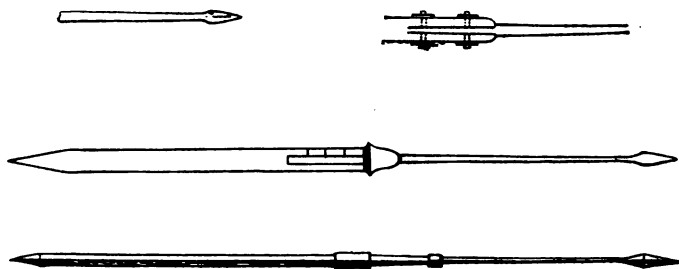
ROMAN SWORDS (*GLADI*)

long. It consisted of a strong iron shank fitted into a wooden shaft about four feet long. The *pilum* took the place of the rifle in modern warfare. Its weight was about three pounds, and it could be hurled with deadly effect.

NOTE. For all matters discussed in section 9, see the illustration of the legionary soldier facing page xxiv.

d. Other Equipment. Besides his arms and armor each soldier carried tools for digging, cooking utensils, including a small handmill for grinding his allowance of grain, a supply of grain for two weeks, *cibāria*, and two stakes, *vallī*, for fortifying the camp. Most of this equipment was carried in a bundle on a forked stick over the shoulder. This personal baggage of the soldier was called *sarcina* (see p. 69).

e. Food; Pay; Discipline. The food was coarse flour or unground wheat or barley, for which the general word *frumentum* was used. Corn was unknown. The allowance of



PILA

grain for a day was about two pounds. An allotment of about two pecks was made every fifteen days. This regular diet might be varied by foraging or by purchase from the traders who followed the army.

The soldier was paid at the rate of twelve and a half cents a day, about the usual daily wage of laborers at Rome. Deduction was made from this for food and equipment furnished by the state. The discipline was strict. Punishments for insubordination or neglect of duty consisted in degradation from rank, dismissal from service, withholding of pay, extra assignments of labor, reduction of rations, flogging, or even death. There were also various rewards of merit.

10. THE CAMP

No matter where the army halted for the night or how little was the likelihood of attack, a camp, *castra*, was always made with the utmost care. The site chosen was, if possible, on high ground and near to wood and water. If the nature of the location permitted, the camp was made in the form of a



ROMAN SOLDIERS AND EQUIPMENT

1, funditor ; 2, 2, milites levis armaturae ; 3, 3, legionarii ; 4, sarcina

square. A small force of soldiers under centurions was sent ahead to select a site for the camp and to stake it out. Two bisecting lines were drawn at right angles to each other to mark the position of the four gates: the *porta prætoria* facing the enemy, the *porta decumana* in the rear, the *porta principālis dextra* on the right side, and the *porta principālis sinistra* on the left. Between the gates on the right and left ran a broad street called the *via principālis*. The forward part of the camp was allotted to the soldiers, the rear part to the officers and their

attendants. A vacant space about one hundred feet wide was left all about the inside of the encampment. In an open square near the middle was the tent of the commander (*prætōrium*).

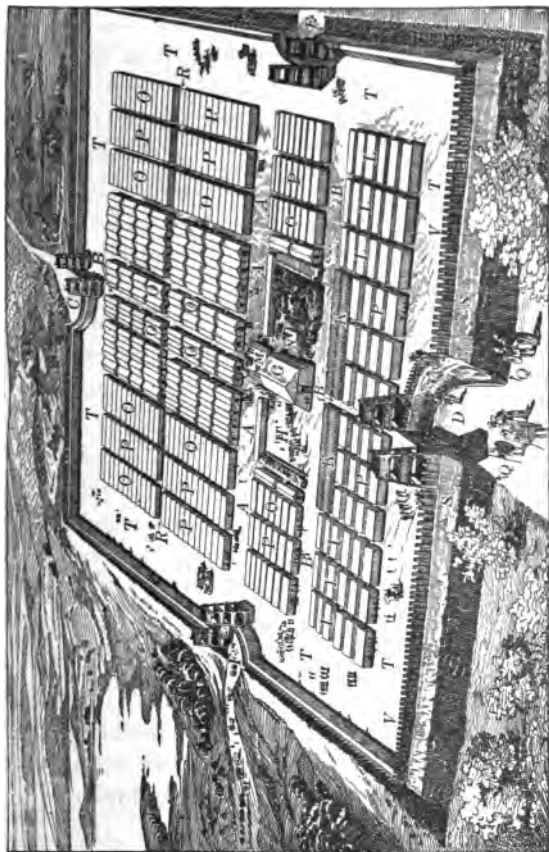
As soon as the legions arrived on the spot selected, the soldiers began the construction of the camp (see p. 52). A ditch, *fossa*, usually nine feet wide and seven feet deep was dug all around the square, and the earth therefrom, thrown on the inside, was built into an embankment, *agger*, from six to ten feet high, and wide enough on the top for standing room. On this wall was erected a breastwork, *vāllum*, made with the stakes that the soldiers carried. After the camp was fortified, the quarters of the soldiers were put up, which were leather tents in summer and huts in the winter. Guards were kept constantly at the gates.

II. THE MARCH

An ordinary day's march was about fifteen miles. Cæsar, however, made many forced marches, *magna itinera*, of as many as twenty-five miles a day. When an enemy was near, a vanguard, *agmen primum*, of cavalry and light-armed infantry and scouts preceded. The rear was also protected by a guard, *agmen novissimum*. The legions regularly marched one behind another, each followed by its own *impedimenta*; but if an enemy was near, most of the legions in fighting trim, that is, without packs, went ahead in an unbroken line, followed by the combined baggage train (*impedimenta*), and one or two legions guarded the rear. When the legions were without encumbrance and hence ready for fighting, they were said to be *expeditæ*. See page 45.

12. THE BATTLE

The usual order of battle was what was called the *aciēs triplex*. The first line of the legion was formed of four cohorts and each of the others of three. In each cohort the



CASTRA ROMANA

A, via principalis
B, via decumana
C, porta praetoria
D, porta decumana
E, porta principalis dextra

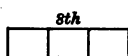
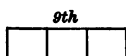
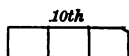
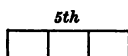
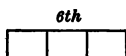
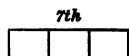
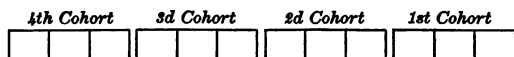
F, porta principalis sinistra
G, praetorium
H, forum
K, K, tribunus
L, auxilia

M, ara
N, tribunal
O, equites
P, pedites
Q, fossa

R, via quinana
S, agger
T, intervallum
V, vallum

three maniples stood side by side, and in each maniple the two centuries stood one behind the other. The legions occupied the center of the battle line, *media aciēs*, and the auxiliaries and cavalry the wings, *cornua*.

When the hostile army was within range (not more than one hundred feet), the soldiers hurled their javelins and then charged with drawn swords. When the first line was weary or



ACIES TRIPLEX

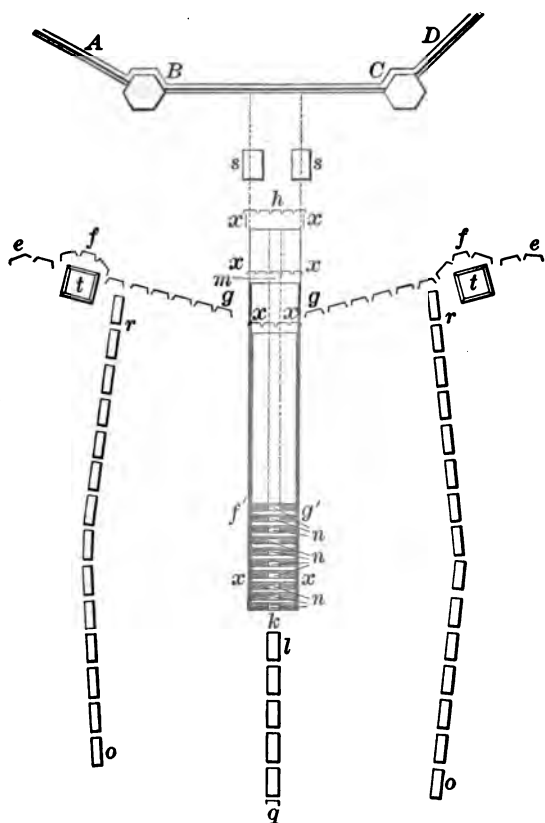
in disorder, it was relieved by the second while it recovered for another charge. The third line was constantly held in reserve and only brought into action when the first two were hard

pressed, or when it was necessary to repel an attack in the rear or on the flanks. This general method was varied, of course, according to circumstances (see p. 31).

13. THE SIEGE

Cæsar often found the towns in Gaul protected by massive stone walls surrounded by a great moat. The taking of these towns usually called for a particular mode of warfare in which the Romans had attained great skill. There were three methods of taking a town :

a. Oppugnātiō Repentīna. If there seemed to be a chance of success, the town was stormed at once, without siege preparations. This was the *oppugnātiō repentīna*. The *tormenta* were brought up and trained on the defenders upon the walls. When these were driven off, the moat was filled with brush



GENERAL VIEW OF SIEGE OPERATIONS

ABCD, hostile wall; *ss*, *testudinēs aggestiūiae*, protecting those leveling the ground; *hk*, *agger*; *xx*, *phutei*, protecting those working on the *agger*; *efg*, line of *phutei*, manned with archers and slingers; *tt*, *turrēs*, also manned with archers and slingers and provided with *tormēta*; *ro*, covered way of *vīneae*, giving approach to archers and slingers; *lq*, covered way of *vīneae* approaching the point of beginning the *agger*; *f'g'*, position of *phutei* covering the beginning of the *agger*; *mn*, covered gallery through the *agger*; *nmn*, steps and platforms of the several stories

and earth, and the Romans, locking their shields in a *testudo* (see the picture below and at page 110), attempted to break open the gates or scale the walls with ladders.

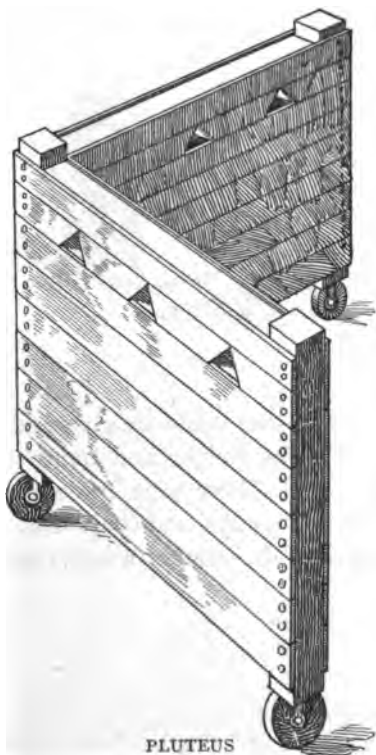
b. Oppugnātiō. If this mode seemed impracticable, a regular siege, *oppugnātiō*, was begun. A mound of earth and timber, *agger*, was begun at a distance from the wall nearly out of reach of the missiles of the defenders. This mound was



OPPUGNATIO

gradually extended in the direction of the wall, its height being constantly increased until it was even with the top of the wall. Connecting galleries ran through its various stories, through which the soldiers could move under cover. Those working on the outside of the *agger* were protected by lines of large standing shields, *plutei*, which were moved forward as the work advanced. Those bringing material for the builders walked under rows of arbor-like sheds called *vineae*, extending the length of the *agger*. The workmen were protected also by archers and slingers (see pp. 61, 64) and by *tormenta* standing

behind *plutei*. As a further protection light-armed soldiers were stationed in large movable towers, *turrēs*, which stood on the *agger* or on either side of it, and advanced with it, being increased in height, story by story, as it advanced. When close to the wall, the besiegers were protected by strong sheds of wood called *testudinēs* or *mūsculī*, instead of by the *plutei*. When the *agger* reached the moat, this was quickly filled up with brush and wood. The walls of the town were sometimes undermined, or pulled down from the top by means of huge iron hooks called *falcēs mūrālēs*. But the surest engine of destruction was the battering-ram, *ariēs*, a huge swinging beam from sixty to one hundred feet long, with a heavy mass of metal at one end, often shaped like a ram's head. This, swung under a *vīnea*, or in the lowest story of a *turris*, was brought with tremendous force against the opposing masonry. Sometimes the top of the wall was gained by means of the *turris* without the *agger*.



c. *Obsidiō*. When all other means were unavailing, the town was invested on every side (*obsidiō*) and the inhabitants were starved into submission.

14. THE SHIPS

Two kinds of ships were used by Cæsar :

a. The war galleys, *nāvēs longae* (see pp. 92, 94, 117). These were the vessels used in naval battles, and were made



VINEA

long, low, and narrow. They were armed at the prow with a sharp beak (*rōstrum*) shod with bronze, for ramming the enemy's ships, and were propelled by both sails and oars. The sails were one or two in number, and the oars were arranged in two or three rows, or banks. When these vessels were under full sail and

oarage, they could nearly equal a modern steamship in speed.

b. The freight and transport vessels, *nāvēs onerāriæ* (see p. 117). These were made shorter, broader, and deeper than the war galleys, and could thus carry heavier burdens and more successfully weather a heavy sea.



CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR

CÆSAR IN GAUL

CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR

I. HIS EARLY YEARS

CAIUS IŪLIUS CAESAR nōbilissimā Iūliōrum familiā nātus est. Annō sextō decimō patrem amīsit. Cornēliam, Cinnae filiam, in mātirimōnium dūxit. Cinna, Cornēliae pater, erat inimicus Sullae. Hāc rē Caesar bonis ā Sullā spoliātus est. Nē necārētur, Rōmā excessit et in occultō sē continēbat. Postrēmō veniam impetrāvit et Rōmam revertit.

In bellō primum in Asiā versābātur. Post expugnātiōnem urbis magnae, corōna, honōris causā, ei dōnāta est. Post mortem Sullae ex Asiā Rhodum dēcessit ut in hāc insulā artī ōrātōriae operam daret. Hūc dum prōgreditur, ā praedōnibus captus est. Apud eōs prope quadrāgintā diēs mānsit. Postrēmō comitēs eius per pecūniās magnās eum praedōnum manibus liberāvērunt.

Deinde Caesar in urbem Milētum properāvit classemque contrāxit. Hāc classe praedōnēs persecūtus est et superāvit.

NOTE. The syntax used in this biographical sketch is confined to the constructions presented during the first year of the study of Latin. The constructions named below each section are illustrated in the accompanying text, and should be reviewed by a study of the references to the grammar (see pp. 348 ff.).

The special vocabularies contain the words not found in the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

Agreement of Appositives, § 58	Ablative of Cause, § 109
Dative of Indirect Object, § 82	Ablative of Place Where or in Which, § 120
Dative with Adjectives, § 90	Ablative of Place from Which, § 101. <i>a</i>
Accusative of Direct Object, § 91	Ablative of Time When, § 119
Accusative of Place Whither, § 97	
Ablative of Agent, § 104	
expugnātiō , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> a storming	praedō , -ōnis, <i>m.</i> , robber, pirate
Milētus , -ī, <i>f.</i> Mile'tus	Rhodus , -ī, <i>f.</i> , Rhodes
ōrātōrius , -a, -um, <i>adj.</i> , of oratory	sextus , -a, -um, <i>adj.</i> , sixth

II. HIS POLITICAL CAREER

Caesar creātus quaestor Hispāniam ulteriōrem obtinuit. Quō profectus cum Alpēs trānsiret, parvus quidam vicus cōspectus est. Tum comitēs inter sē disputābant et rogābant, "Num etiam illic est locus glōriæ?" "Mālō,"
 5 respondit Caesar, "ibi primus esse quam Rōmae secundus."

Aedilis creātus Forum et Capitōlium porticibus ōrnāvit. Etiam multōs et amplōs lūdōs fēcit. His rēbus in grātiā populi vēnit, sed in aes aliēnum magnum incidit.

Cōsul deinde cum Bibulō creātus, societātem cum Pom-
 10 pēiō et Crassō iūnxit. Lēgem quandam cum tulisset et huic lēgī senātus repugnāret, rem ad populum rettulit. Bibulus in Forum profectus ut lēgī resisteret, ā populō armīs expulsus est, et ex eō tempore Caesar ūnus erat cōsul.

Agreement of Adjectives, § 59	Ablative of Accompaniment, § 113
Agreement of Finite Verbs, § 65	Ablative of Place Where; Locative, § 120. <i>a</i>
Dative with Intransitive Verbs, § 83	Clauses of Purpose, § 174
Ablative of Means, § 106	
aedilis , -is, <i>m.</i> , aedile, commissioner of public works	Forum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , the Roman Forum
Capitōlium , Capitōlī , <i>n.</i> , the Capitol (chief temple of Jupiter at Rome)	lūdus , -ī, <i>m.</i> , game, sport
	porticus , -ūs, <i>f.</i> , covered walk between columns, colonnade

III. THE CONQUEST OF GAUL

Post cōsulātum Caesar Galliam prōvinciam obtinuit. Haec prōvincia multa milia passuum aberat. Illic novem annis, quibus in imperiō erat, Gallōs superāvit et Galliam in fōrmam prōvinciae redēgit. Cum Germānis, qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, primus Rōmānōrum contendit et eōs magnis calamitatibus oppressit.

Dē rēbus gestis militum Rōmānōrum et Caesaris ipsius hae et multae aliae fābulae narrantur. Ōlim Caesar, exercitū perturbātō, scūtum ē militis manū ēripuit, et in primam aciem prōgrediēns proelium restituit. Idem aliō proeliō 10 legiōnis aquiliferum in fugam conversum comprehendit et in contrāriam partem retrāxit. Tum dextram manum ad hostem tendēns, "Quō tū," inquit, "abis? Illic sunt hostēs quibuscum dimicāmus." Hāc cohortātiōne timōrem minuit et legiōnēs vinci parātās vincere docuit. 15

Agreement of Relative Pronouns,

§ 64. *a*

Prepositions, §§ 148, 149, 150. *a*

Partitive Genitive, § 76

Accusative of Extent of Space, § 96

Ablative of Time within Which,

§ 119

Pronouns *idem*, *ipse*, §§ 25, 136

abeō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus, go away

fābula, -ae, *f.* story

nārrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, relate

ōlim, *adv.* once upon a time, once

IV. CÆSAR CROSSES THE RUBICON

Intereā Crassus apud Parthōs interfectus erat. Post mortem Iūliae, Caesaris filiae quae Pompēiō nūpta erat, aemulātiō inter socerum et generum ērūpit; nam nec Pompēius parem nec Caesar superiōrem ferre poterat. Caesar adhūc in Galliā dētīnēbatur, neque Rōmam redire volēbat 20 ut cōsulātum alterum peteret. Itaque ad senātum scripsit

sē petere absentem velle. Id senātus, ab amicis Pompēi permōtus, negāvit. Hanc iniūriam ut vindicāret, Caesar in Italiam rediit.

Caesar ad bellum gerendum parātus, cum exercitū Rubi-
5 cōnem flūmen, prōvinciae suae finem, trānsiit. Hoc ad
flūmen paulum cōstitit, et cōgitāns quantam rem inciperet,
“Etiam nunc,” inquit, “reverti possumus; quod si hoc



CÆSAR CROSSING THE RUBICON

parvum flūmen trānsierimus, omnia armīs agī necesse erit.”
Postrēmō autem cum verbis “Iacta est ālea” exercitum
10 trādūcī iussit. Plūrimis urbibus occupātis, Brundisium con-
tendit, quō Pompēius cōsulēsque cōnfūgerant.

Possessive Genitive, § 73

Accusative as Subject of Infini-
tive, § 92

Ablative Absolute, § 117

Demonstrative Pronouns *hic*, *ille*,

§ 134. *a*

Clauses of Purpose, § 174

Indirect Discourse, §§ 202–204,
92, 204. *a*

Tenses of the Infinitive, Present;

Perfect, § 166. *a*, *b*

Indirect Questions, § 201

aemulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* rivalry
ālea, -ae, *f.* a die (used in playing
 a game of dice)
Brundisium, Brundisiī, *n.* Brundi-
 sium (a port of southern Italy)
gener, -erī, *m.* son-in-law

Parthī, -ōrum, *m.* the Parthians
 (a people living near the Cas-
 pian Sea)
Rubicō, -ōnis, *m.* the Rubicon (a
 river in northern Italy)
vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *v.* avenge

V. THE WARS IN THESSALY, PONTUS, AND AFRICA

Eōs, cum in Ēpirum fūgissent, Brundisiō Caesar secūtus est. Dyrrachī complūrēs diēs morātus est, dum cōpiæ quās subsequī iusserat pervenirent. Dum hīc morātur, summae audāciæ facinus magnum fēcit; nam castris noctū ēgreditur et clam nāviculam cōnscendit. Quamquam turbida tempe- 5
 tās coōrta est, in mare prōtinus dērigī nāvigium iubet. Gubernātōrī trepidantī, "Cūr timēs?" inquit, "Caesarem vehis"; neque prius ventō et fluctibus cessit quam paene obrutus est.

Deinde Caesar per Ēpirum prōgressus Pompēium Pharsā- 10
 licō proeliō obruit. Fugientem ad Aegyptum persecūtus, rēgī Aegyptī bellum intulit. Eō victō in Pontum trānsiit et Ponti rēgem quinque diēbus prōfligāvit. Hoc proelium mōre fulminis fēcit, quod prope eōdem tempore vēnit, cōn-
 fēcit, discessit. "Prius victus hostis est quam visus est," 15
 erat Caesaris praedicātiō. Postea hunc triumphum tribus verbis nūntiāvit, "*Vēnī, vīdī, vicī.*" Tum Iubam, Numidiaie rēgem, hostibus suis auxilium dantem, superāvit.

Agreement of Appositives, § 58
 Genitive of Description, § 77
 Dative with Compounds, § 84

Accusative of Duration of Time,
 §§ 89, 96
 Ablative of Manner, § 110

Aegyptus, -ī, *f.* Egypt
Dyrrachium, Dyrrachī, *n.* Dyr-
 rach'ium (in Epirus)

Ēpirus, -ī, *f.* Epi'rus (in Greece)
fulmen, -inis, *n.* thunderbolt
quamquam, conj. although

Iuba, -ae, *m.*, JubaNumidia, -ae, *f.*, Numidia (in northern Africa)

obruō, -ere, obrui, obrutus, overwhelm

Pharsālicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Pharsalus (scene of Pompey's defeat)Pontus, -i, *m.*, Pontus (in Asia Minor)praedicātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, announcementtriumphus, -i, *m.*, triumphturbidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wild, violent

vehō, vehere, vexi, vectus, bear, carry

VI. CÆSAR IN SPAIN. TRIUMPHANT RETURN
TO ROME

Deinde Caesar gravius Āfricō bellum in Hispāniā suscepit. Huius belli, ingentis atque horribilis, Cn. Pompēius, Magni filius, adulēscēns fortissimus, dux causaque erat. Undique ad eum auxilia propter patris nōmen conveniēbant. Nullum
 5 bellum illō periculōsius umquam ā Caesare initum est. Proeliō quōdam dubiō dēscendit equō cōstitutique ante cēdentem aciem suōrum, increpitāns Fortūnam quod sē ad eam calamitātem servāset. Namque sine dubiō crēdidit calamitāti sibi id bellum futūrum esse. Etiam dēnūntiāvit
 10 militibus suis sē nōn cessūrum. "Vidēte," inquit, "quō in locō imperātōrem vestrum dēserātis." Pudor magis quam virtūs aciem restituit. Cn. Pompēius victus est et Caesar, omnium victor, Rōmam rediit. Omnibus qui contrā eum arma tulerant ignōvit et quīnquiēns triumphāvit.

Agreement of Predicate Noun, § 58

Ablative of Comparison, § 105

Interrogative Pronoun, § 27

Possessive Adjectives, § 131

Tenses of the Infinitive, § 166

Dative of Purpose or End, § 89

Āfricus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Africa, AfricanFortūna, -ae, *f.*, Fortuna (the goddess of fortune)Hispānia, -ae, *f.*, Spainquīnquiēns, *adv.*, five times

triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, celebrate a triumph

VII. THE REFORMS OF CÆSAR. HIS AMBITIONS

Deinde Caesar effecit ut status rei publicae instrueretur. Fastos corripuit annumque ad cursum solis accommodavit. Repetundarum convictos ordine senatorio movit. Portoria peregrinis mercibus imposuit. Leges quae praecipue luxuriam minuerent exercuit. De ornanda instruendaque urbe 5 consilia plura ac maiora in dies iniit.

Haec et alia agentem et cogitantem mors oppressit. Dictator enim in perpetuum creatus agere insolentius coepit. Senatui ad se venientem sedens excipit, et quendam monentem ut adsurgeret inimico voltu respexit. Cum Antonius, Caesaris 10 in omnibus bellis comes et tum consul alter, capiti eius diadema, insigne regium, imposuisset, id ita ab eo repulsum est ut non offensus videretur. His rebus commoti unus et alter rogabant, "Rexne esse cupit Caesar?" Qua re non nulli, quorum Cassius et Brutus erant ducēs, contra eum coniuraverunt 15 constitueruntque eum Idibus Martiis in senatu interficere.

Ablative of Separation, § 101

Sequence of Tenses, §§ 160-162

Clauses of Result introduced by *ut* or *ut non*, § 179

Clauses of Description or Characteristic, § 177

Substantive Clauses of Result, § 187. I

adsurgō, -ere, -surrēxi, -surrēcturus, rise

corrīgō, -ere, -rēxi, -rēctus, correct

diadēma, -atis, n., royal crown

dictātor, -ōris, m., dictator (Roman magistrate, appointed for six months in emergencies)

fāsti, -ōrum, m. pl., the calendar

Mārtius, -a, -um, adj., of March

merx, mercis, f., merchandise

peregrīnus, -a, -um, adj., foreign

repetundae, -ārum, f. pl., extortion

sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessurus, sit

senātorius, -a, -um, adj., senatorial

VIII. THE IDES OF MARCH

Futūri periculī plūrima indicia obtulerant dī immortalēs. Calpurnia, uxor Caesaris, territa nocturnō visū timēbat nē quid ei accideret, ōrābatque ut Īdibus Mārtiis domi manēret. Spurinna, haruspex, monuerat ut proximōs diēs trigintā
 5 cavēret nē fātālēs essent. Eōrum diērum ultimus erat Īdūs Mārtiae. Itaque hōc diē Caesar Spurinnae "Nōne scis," inquit, "Īdūs Mārtiās vēnisse?" Spurinna respondit, "Nōn. Īdūs praeteriērunt." Eō diē cum Caesar in senātum vēnis-
 10 accessit, et Caesarem, cum recūsāret, utrōque umerō com-
 prehendit. Deinde Caesarem clāmitantem, "Ista quidem vis est!" Casca, quī erat in numerō coniūrātōrum, volnerat. Caesar cōnātus prōsilire, aliō vulnere tardātus est, neque, cum undique coniūrātī pugiōnibus eum peterent, ab eis sē
 15 dēfendere potuit. Tum vērō dictātor togā caput tēxit et ita tribus et viginti vulneribus cōnfectus concidit.

Personal Pronouns, §§ 129, 130

Substantive Clauses of Purpose,
 § 183

Causal Clauses introduced by *cum*,
 § 189

coniūrātī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, conspirators

fātālis, -e, *adj.*, fated, hence dangerous

haruspex, -icis, *m.* a soothsayer

iste, -a, -ud, *dem. adj. and pron.* this, that (referring to the person addressed)

Substantive Clauses after Verbs of Fearing, § 184

Temporal Clauses introduced by *cum*, § 194. 2

Indefinite Pronouns, § 144

prōsiliō, -ire, -uī, —, leap forward
 pugiō, -ōnis, *m.*, short dagger, poniard

toga, -ae, *f.*, toga (the outer garment of the Romans)

umerus, -i, *m.* the upper arm, the shoulder

visus, -ūs, *m.* an apparition, vision



From the painting by C. Rochegrosse
THE ASSASSINATION OF CÆSAR, 44 B. C.

IX. THE CHARACTER OF CÆSAR

Caesar, si potestās dēligendī sibi data esset, tālem mortem optāvisset; nam pridīe quam occisus est, in sermōne cum quibusdam amicis conlātō, dixit repentinam mortem esse suā quidem sententiā commodissimam.

Temperantia, quō rārīor in principibus est, hōc magis laudārī debet. Caesar, quamquam studiis belli erat asperrimus, tamen in victoriā erat clēmētissimus. Cum enim dēprehendisset quāsdam litterās ad Pompēium missās ab eis qui sibi restiterant, tamen legere nōluit, sed combussit; nam praeterita condōnāre, nōn novās offēnsiōnis causās reperīre voluit. Haec laudātiō est Cicerōnis: "Nihil oblivisci solet Caesar nisi iniuriās." Eōs qui inimicī sibi fuerant nōn solum amicōs fēcit, sed etiam honōribus auxit. C. Memmīum cōsulem efficere cōnātus est, etsi asperrimae fuerant eius in ipsum orātiōnēs.

Predicate Genitive, § 73. *a*
Two Accusatives, Direct Object and
Adjunct Accusative, with Verbs
of Making, Choosing, etc., § 94

Ablative of Measure of Difference,
§ 114
Ablative of Respect, § 115
Concessive Clauses with *cum*, § 192

Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*, Cicero (the orator)
laudātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, praise, eulogy

legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, read
optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, desire, pray
for

X. PERSONAL APPEARANCE OF CÆSAR

Caesar trāditur fuisse excelsā statūrā, ore plēnō, nigris oculis, capite calvō. Quā calviti dēfōrmitātem, quod saepe inimicis iocō erat, molestē ferēbat. Quā rē iūs laureae perpetuō gestandae, quod ei senātus dēcrēverat, libenter recēpit atque ūsūrpāvit. Tam temperātus erat in omnibus vitae partibus ut Catō diceret ūnum Caesarem ēvertendae rei

públicae cōsiliū cēpisse sōbriū. Reī militāris et equitandī peritissimū, labōris ultrā fidem patiēns erat. In agmine nōn numquam equō, saepius pedibus antecēdebat, capite nūdō, seu sōl seu imber erat. Longissima itinera
 5 incrēdibilī celeritātē cōficiēbat, ut persaepe ante nūntiōs perveniret; neque eum morābantur flūmina, quae nandō trāciēbat. Nihil, ut visum est, eum potuit prohibēre cōnāta sua perficere. Omnīnō Caesar erat vir quem hostēs timērent, amīci amārent, omnēs admirārentur.

Ablative of Description or Quality,
 § 116

Clauses of Description or Characteristic, § 177

amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, love
 calvitium, calvitī, *n.*, baldness
 calvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bald
 dēfōrmitās, -ātis, *f.*, disfigurement
 equitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, ride (on horseback)
 ēvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, overthrow
 gestō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, wear

Gerund (an active verbal noun),
 § 223. 1-4

Gerundive (a passive verbal adjective), § 224. *a-d*

iocus, -ī, *m.*, jest
 laurea, -ae, *f.*, laurel wreath
 niger, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, black, dark
 nō, nāre, nāvi, —, swim
 persaepe, *adv.*, very often
 sōbrius, -a, -um, *adj.*, sober, in one's senses
 ūsūrpō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, make use of



CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR IMPERATOR



THE GALLIC WAR

BOOK I

CÆSAR'S FIRST CAMPAIGN, 58 B.C.

THE WAR WITH THE HELVETII

Gaul, its divisions and nations

GALLIA est omnis divisa in partēs trēs; quārum
 ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitāni, tertiam quī
 ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Galli appellantur.
 Hi omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt.
 Gallōs ab Aquitānis Garumna flūmen, ā Belgis Matrona et 5
 Sēquana dividit.

The characters of the nations

Hōrum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā
 cultū atque hūmānitātē prōvinciae longissimē absunt, mini-
 mēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae
 ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important; proximique 10
 sunt Germānis quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum con-
 tinenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque
 reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecedunt, quod ferē cotidiānis
 proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eōs
 prohibent aut ipsi in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt. 15

The boundaries of each

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae
 5 ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur, pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī, spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

Orgetorix, the Helvetian, plans to invade Gaul

10 2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pisōne cōsulibus, rēgni cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et civitātī persuāsit ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exirent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtius Galliae
 15 imperiō potiri.

The Helvetii are persuaded because they need more territory

Id hōc facilius eis persuāsit, quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs
 20 et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dividit.

His rēbus fiēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitudīne
 25 autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitudinis, angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrabantur, quī in longitudinē milia passuum CCXL, in lātitudinē CLXXX patēbant.

They decide on the preparations that must be made

3. His rēbus adducti et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōti cōstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent comparāre : iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmenti suppeteret, cum proximis civitatibus pācem et amicitiam cō- 5 firmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt ; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant.

Orgetorix is placed in charge, but conspires with neighboring chiefs to seize the sovereignty

Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dux dēligitur. Is lēgatiōnem ad civitatēs suscepit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in 10 Sēquanis multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populi Rōmāni amicus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in civitatē suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat ; itemque Dumnorigi Haeduō, frātri Diviciaci, qui eō tempore principātum in civitatē obtinēbat ac maximē plēbi acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, 15 eique filiam suam in mātrimonium dat.

Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitātis imperium obtentūrus esset : nōn esse dubium quā tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent ; sē suis cōpiis suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cō- 20 firmat. Hāc ōratiōne adducti inter sē fidem et iūs iurandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant.

Orgetorix is brought to trial, but escapes

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiis per indicium ēnūtiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt. Dam- 25 nātum poenam sequi oportēbat ut igni cremārētur.

Diē cōstitutā causae dictiōnis Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs nē causam
5 diceret sē ēripuit.

His death

Cum civitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētīi arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem cōnsciverit.

The Helvetii burn their towns and begin their journey

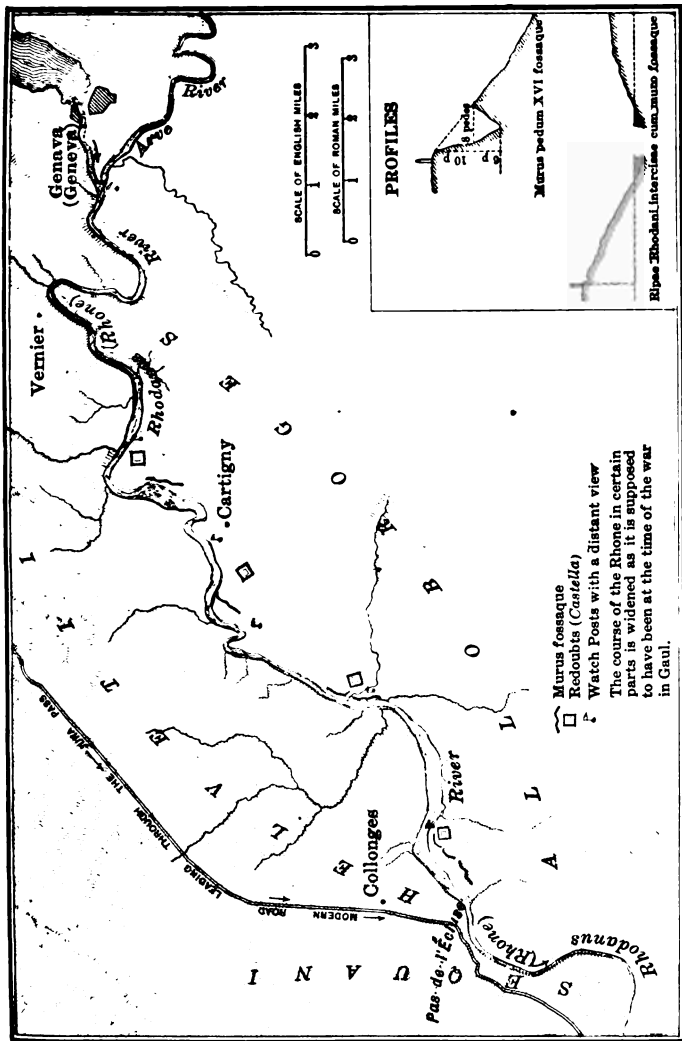
10 5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētīi id quod cōstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod
15 sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunť, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent.

They are joined by other tribes

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs, finitimīs, uti eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidis suis vicisque exūstis, ūnā cum
20 eis proficiscantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant. Nōrēiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adsciscunt.

The two possible routes are described

6. Erant omninō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile,
25 inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut



THE RHONE FROM GENEVA TO PAS DE L'ÉCLUSE

facile perpauci prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod



THE JURA PASS (*PAS DE L'ÉCLUSE*)

inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllis locis vadō trānsitur.

They decide to go through the Province

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvē- 5
tiōrum finibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs
pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs (quod nōndum
bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur) existimābant,
vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur. Om-
nibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis diem dicunt quā diē 10
ad ripam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v.
Kal. Apr., L. Pisōne A. Gabiniō cōsulibus.

Cæsar takes measures to stop them

7. Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe proficisci, et, quam maximis potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriorem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Provinciae toti quam maximum potest
5 militum numerum imperat (erat omnino in Galliâ ulteriore legio una); pontem qui erat ad Genavam iubet rescindi.

They send an embassy to Cæsar to ask his permission

Ubi de eius adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt nobilissimos civitatis, cuius legationis Nammæius et Verucloetius principem locum obtinebant, qui
10 dicerent 'sibi esse in animo sine ulla maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter haberent nullum; rogare ut eius voluntate id sibi facere liceat.'

Cæsar puts them off to gain time

Caesar, quod memoriam tenebat L. Cassium consulem occisum exercitumque eius ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub iugum
15 missum, concedendum non putabat; neque homines inimico animo, data facultate per provinciam itineris faciundi, temperaturos ab iniuria et maleficio existimabat. Tamen, ut spatium intercedere posset, dum milites quos imperaverat convenirent, legatis respondit diem se ad deliberandum
20 sumpturum: si quid vellent, ad Id. Apr. reverterentur.

Meanwhile he fortifies the bank of the Rhone to prevent their crossing

8. Interea ea legione quam secum habebat militibusque qui ex provincia convenerant, a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iuram, qui fines Sequanorum

ab Helvētiis dīvidit, milia passuum ūndēvigintī mūrūm, in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim, fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invitō trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.

The Helvetii attempt to cross, but are driven back

Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis vēnit, et lēgātī 5 ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populi Rōmānī posse iter ūlli per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī, eā spē dēlectī, nāvibus iūctis ratibusque complūribus factis, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam 10 interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et militum concursū et tēlis repulsī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

Persuaded by Dumnorix, a Haeduan chief, the Sequani permit the Helvetii to pass through their territory

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustīās ire nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte 15 persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiis erat amicus, quod ex eā civitāte Orgetorigis filiam in mātirimōnium dūxerat; et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs 20 rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās civitatēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trānseant. 25

Cæsar deems this movement also a danger to the Province

10. Cæsari renūntiātur Helvētiis esse in animō per agrum
Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere,
quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae civitās
est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum pe-
5 riculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populi
Rōmāni inimicōs, locis patentibus maximēque frūmentāriis
finitimōs habēret.

He adds to his forces and marches against the Helvetii

Ob eās causās ei mūnitiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum
lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit
10 duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōscribit, et trēs quae circum Aquilēiam
hiemābant ex hibernis ēdūcit, et, quā proximum iter in ulte-
riōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum his quinque legiōnibus
ire contendit.

He meets with resistance, but crosses the Rhone with his army

Ibi Ceutronēs et Grāioceli et Caturigēs, locis superiōribus
15 occupātis, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus
his proeliis pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae
extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē
septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus
in Sēgusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam
20 trāns Rhodanum primī.

The Helvetii ravage the country of the Haedui

11. Helvētii iam per angustiās et finēs Sēquanōrum suās
cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant
eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haedui, cum sē suaque ab
eis dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt

rogātum auxilium: 'Ita sē omni tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostri agrī vāstārī, liberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint.'

The Haedui and their neighbors ask Caesar for help

Eōdem tempore Ambarri, necessariī et cōsanguinei 5
Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē, dēpopulātis
agris, nōn facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibēre. Item
Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanūm vicōs possessiōnēsque ha-
bēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi
praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adduc- 10
tus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum, omnibus for-
tūnis sociōrum cōnsūptis, in Santonōs Helvētīi pervenirent.

Three cantons of the Helvetii cross the Saône

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sē-
quanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incrēdibili lēnitāte ita ut ocu-
lis, in utram partem fluat, iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētīi 15
ratibus ac lintribus iūctis trānsibant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs
Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs
id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen
Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus
ē castris profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum 20
flūmen trānsierat.

Caesar attacks and destroys the Tigurini, who had not yet crossed

Eōs impeditōs et inopināntēs adgressus magnam partem
eōrum concidit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in pro-
ximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurinus;
nam omnis civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs divisa est. 25

And thus avenges a former disgraceful defeat

Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum miserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars civitātis Helvētiaē insignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās sed etiam privātās iniūriās ultus est; quod eius socerī L. Pisōnis avum, L. Pisōnem lēgātum, Tigurinī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcerant.

Cæsar crosses the Saône and receives a Helvetian embassy

10 13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequi posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentinō eius advētū commōti, cum id quod ipsī diēbus viginti aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsirent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cuius lēgatiōnis Divicō 15 princeps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

Divico begs and threatens

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: * "Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvētiī, ubi eōs tū, Caesar, cōstitueris atque esse volueris; 20 sīn bellō persequi persevērābis, reminiscere et veteris incommodi populi Rōmāni et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus es, cum ei quī flūmen trānsierant suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nōli ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtūti tribuere, aut nōs dēspicere; nōs

* Passages marked with a star have been changed from indirect to direct discourse. For the indirect form, see pp. 225 ff.

ita ā patribus maiōribusque nostris didicimus ut magis virtūte contendāmus quam dolō aut insidiis nitāmur. Quā rē nōli committere ut is locus ubi cōstitutus ex calamitāte populi Rōmāni et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen capiat aut memoriam prōdat.”

5

Caesar offers conditions of peace which Divico declines

14. His Caesar ita respondit : * “ Eō mihi minus dubitātiōnis datur, quod eās rēs quās lēgāti Helvētīi commemorāvērunt memoriā teneō, atque eō gravius ferō, quō minus meritō populi Rōmāni accidērunt; quī sī alicuius iniūriæ sibi cōscius fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptus 10 est, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegēbat quā rē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putābat. Quod sī veteris contumēliæ oblivisci volō, num etiam recentium iniūriarum, quod mē invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāstis, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāstis, 15 memoriam dēpōnere possum?

“ Quod vestrā victōriā tam insolenter glōriāmini, quodque tam diū vōs impūne iniūriās tulisse admirāmini, eōdem pertinet. Cōnsuērunt enim dī immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commutātiōne rērū doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum 20 ulcisci volunt, his secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniorem impūnitatem concēdere.

“ Cum ea ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ā vōbis mihi dabuntur, ut ea quae pollicēmini vōs factūrōs intellegam, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriis quās ipsis sociisque eōrum intulistis, item sī 25 Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, vōbiscum pācem faciam.”

Divicō respondit : * “ Ita Helvētīi ā maiōribus suis īstitūti sunt uti obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; eius rei populus Rōmānus est testis.” Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

Cæsar's cavalry meets with a slight reverse

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Cæsar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociis coāctum habēbat, praemittit quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant.
- 5 Qui cupidius novissimum agmen insecūti, aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et pauci dē nostris cadunt.

The Helvetii march north and Cæsar follows

- Quō proeliō sublāti Helvētiī, quod quīngentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs
- 10 lacessere coepērunt. Cæsar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapinis populātiōibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quindecim iter fēcērunt utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum nōn amplius
- 15 quīnis aut sēnis milibus passuum interesset.

The Hædui fail to furnish the grain which they promised

16. Interim cotidiē Cæsar Hæduōs frūmentum quod essent publicē polliciti flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābuli quidem satis magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō
- 20 quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat proptereā minus ūti poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Hæduī: cōferri, comportārī, adesse dicere.

Cæsar is embarrassed and upbraids the Hæduan chiefs

- Ubi sē diūtius dūci intellēxit et diem instāre quō diē
- 25 frūmentum militibus mētiri oporteret, convocātis eōrum principibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, — in

his Diviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātui praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Haedui, quī creātur annuus et vitāe necisque in suōs habet potestātem, — graviter eōs accūsāt, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agris sūmī posset, tam necessariō tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab eis nōn 5 sublevētur; praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiā gravius, quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur.

Liscus lays the blame on a faction opposed to the Romans

17. Tum dēmum Liscus, ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod antēā tacuerat prōpōnit: * "Sunt nōn nulli quōrum auctōri- 10 tās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī privātīm plūs possint quam ipsi magistrātūs. Hi sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrent nē frūmentum cōferant quod dēbent: 'Praestāre, si iam principātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque 15 dubitāre quīn, si Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmāni, unā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūri.' Ab eisdem vestra cōsilia quaeque in castris geruntur hostibus ēnūntiantur: hi ā mē coērcēri nōn possunt. Quīn etiā, quod necessariō rem coactus tibi ēnūntiāvi, intellegō quantō id cum 20 periculō fēcērim, et ob eam causam, quam diū potui, tacui."

In private he discloses the power and ambition of Dumnorix, the leader of this faction

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Lisci Dumnorigem, Diviciāci frātre, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quāerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dixerat. 25 Dicit liberius atque audācius.

Others support the charges of Liscus

Eadem sēcrētō ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vērā : * “ Ipse est Dumnorix, summā audaciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberalitatem grātiā, cupidus rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectigālīa parvō
 5 pretiō redēpta habet, proptereā quod illō licente contrā licērī audet nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxit et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāvit; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alit et circum sē habet, neque solum domi sed etiam apud finitimās civitatēs
 10 largiter potest; atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illic nōbilissimō ac potentissimō conlocāvit, ipse ex Helvētiis uxōrem habet, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitatēs conlocāvit.

They declare that Dumnorix favors the Helvetii

“ Favet et cupit Helvētiis propter eam adfinitatem, ōdit
 15 etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātie atque honoris est restitūsus. Si quid accīdit Rōmānis, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venit; imperiō populi Rōmāni nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed
 20 etiam dē eā quam habet grātiā dēspērat.”

Cæsar discovers that Dumnorix caused the defeat of the Roman cavalry

Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diēbus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum ā Dumnorige atque eius equitibus, — nam equitātui, quem auxiliō Caesari Haeduī miserant, Dumnorix
 25 praeerat; eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

Other proofs of the treachery of Dumnorix. Cæsar thinks he should be punished, but does not wish to offend Diviciacus

19. Quibus rēbus cognitis, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, — quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrasset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et civitātis sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum 5 accūsārētur, — satis esse causae arbitrābātur quā rē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitātem animadvertere iubēret.

Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Diviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cog- 10 nōverat : nam nē eius suppliciō Diviciāci animum offenderet verēbātur.

He summons Diviciacus, who pleads for his brother's pardon

Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet, et cotidiānis interpretibus remōtis per C. Valerium Procillum, principem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem 15 suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō conloquitur ; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorige sint dicta ; et ostendit quae sēparātīm quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit ; petit atque hortātur ut sine eius offēnsiōne animi vel ipse dē eō, causā 20 cognitā, statuat vel civitātem statuere iubeat.

20. Diviciācus, multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus, obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret. * " Sciō," inquit, " haec esse vēra, nec quisquam ex eō plūs quam ego dolōris capit, proptereā quod, cum ego grātiā plūrimum domi 25 atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscēntiam

posset, per mē crēvit; quibus opibus ac nervis nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā sed paene ad perniciem meā utitur; ego tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne volgi commoveor. Quod sī quid eī abs tē gravius acciderit, cum ego
 5 hunc locum amicitiae apud tē teneō, nēmō existimābit nōn meā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē tōtius Galliae animi ā mē āvertentur."

Dumnorix is spared, but is closely watched

Haec cum plūribus verbis flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōsōlātus rogat finem ōrandi faciat;
 10 tantī eius apud sē grātiā esse ostendit uti et rei pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntāti ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorigem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitās querātur, prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs
 15 suspiciōnēs vitet; praeterita sē Diviciācō frātri condōnāre dicit. Dumnorigi custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scire possit.

Caesar prepares for battle

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōsēdisse milia passuum ab ipsius castris octō, quālis
 20 esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēsus, quī cognōscerent misit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus quī iter cognōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōsili sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā
 25 vigiliā, eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī rei militāris peritissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

The error of Cōsidius prevents the action

22. Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēni cognitus esset, Cōsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit; dicit montem quem ā Labiēnō 5 occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognōvisse.

Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labiēnus, ut erat ei praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiae prope hostium castra 10 vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs expectābat proeliōque abstīnēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explorātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suis tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōsidiū, timōre perterritum, quod nōn vidisset prō visō 15 sibi renūtiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra pōnit.

Cæsar marches toward Bibracte. The Helvetii follow

23. Postridiē eius diēi, quod omninō biduum supererat cum exercitui frumentum mētiri oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, 20 nōn amplius milibus passuum duodēviginti aberat, rei frumentāriae prōspiciendum existimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiis āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit.

Ea rēs per fugitivōs L. Aemili, decuriōnis equitum Gal-lōrum, hostibus nūtiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre per- 25 territōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō magis quod pridīē, superiōribus locis occupātis, proelium nōn com-misissent, sive eō, quod rē frumentāriā interclūdī posse

cōfiderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine insequi ac lacessere coepērunt.

Both sides prepare for battle

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subducit equitātumque quī sustinēret
5 hostium impetum misit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat, et omnia auxilia conlocārī, sarcinās in
10 ūnum locum cōferri et eum ab his quī in superiōre aciē cōstitērant mūniri iussit. Helvētīi, cum omnibus suis carris secūti, impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub primam nostram aciem successērunt.

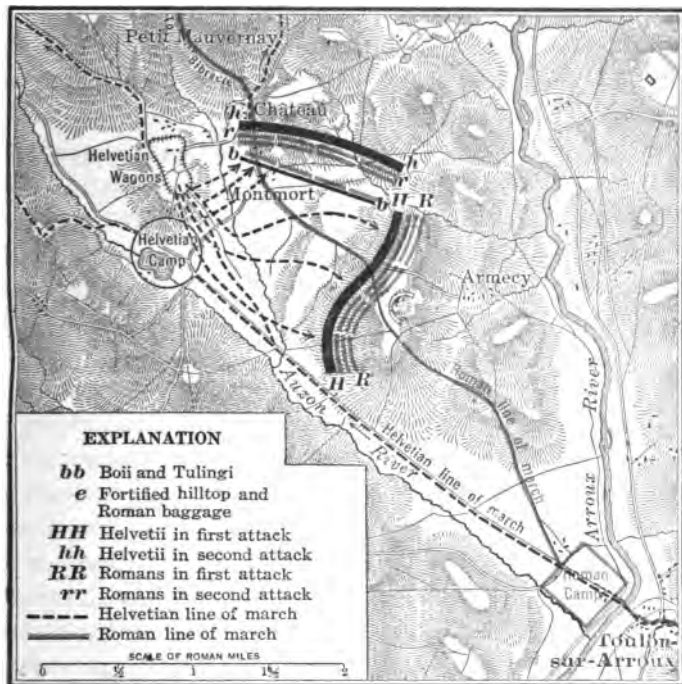
The battle begins

25. Caesar primum suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū
15 remōtis equis, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Militēs, ē locō superiōre pilis missis, facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiis dēstrictis in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallis magnō ad pugnam erat impedimentō, quod, plūribus eōrum
20 scūtis ūnō ictū pilōrum trānsfixis et conligātis, cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impeditā satis commodē pugnāre poterant, multi ut, diū iactātō bracchiō, praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre:

The Helvetii retreat, but rally

Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre, et, quod
25 mōns aberat circiter mille passuum, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostris, Bōii et Tulingi, quī

hominum milibus circiter quindecim agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimis praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō adgressi circumvenire ; et id cōspicātī Helvētīi,



THE DEFEAT OF THE HELVETII

As the battle plan shows, only the third line of the Roman army faced about (*conversa signa*, l. 5) to meet the advancing Boii and Tulingi. The other two lines continued to face the Helvetii as before. The verb *intulērunt* (l. 6) refers to the whole Roman force, which made the attack in two divisions as described

quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmāni conversa signa bipartitō 5 intulērunt : prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victis ac submōtis resisteret ; tertiā, ut venientēs sustinēret.

After a desperate conflict the Helvetii are defeated

26. Ita ancipiti proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alteri sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alteri ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō
5 proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est, proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcērant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nūlli inter carrōs raedāsque
10 matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque volnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est.

The survivors retreat into the territory of the Lingones

Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum milia cxxx superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt: nūllam partem noctis
15 itinere intermissō, in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter volnera militum et propter sepultūram occisōrum nostri eōs sequi nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonēs literās nūntiōsque misit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; qui si iūvissent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum.
20 Ipse triduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequi coepit.

The Helvetii negotiate for surrender

27. Helvētii omnium rērum inopiā adducti lēgātōs dē dēditionē ad eum misērunt. Qui cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūti flentēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum es-
25 sent suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pārūērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs qui ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit.



“ ITA ANCIPI TI PROELIO DIU ATQUE ACRI TER PUGNATUM EST ”

(See page 30, line 1)

Six thousand of them try to escape, but are captured

Dum ea conquiruntur et cōferuntur, circiter hominum milia sex eius pāgī quī Vērbigenus appellātur, sive timōre perterriti, nē armis trāditis suppliciō adficerentur, sive spē salūtis inducti, quod in tantā multitudīne dēditiciōrum suam
5 fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī posse existimārent, primā nocte ē castris Helvētiōrum ēgressi ad Rhēnum finēsq̃ue Germānōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per finēs ierant, his uti conquirerent et reducerent, si sibi pūrgātī esse vellent,
10 imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armis, perfugis trāditis, in dēditiōnem accēpit.

The Helvetii and their allies return home

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profecti, reverti iussit; et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissis
15 domi nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut eis frūmenti cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētīi discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum
20 incolunt, ē suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirent, et finitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent.

The Boii are allowed to settle among the Haedui

Bōiōs petentibus Haeduis, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis conlocārent, concessit; quibus illi agrōs dedērunt, quōsque postea in parem iūris liber-
25 tātisque condiōnem, atque ipsi erant, recēpērunt.

The number of the Helvetii and their allies

29. In castris Helvëtiôrum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis cōfectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis nōminatim ratiō cōfecta erat, quī numerus domō exisset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparatim quot pueri, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa erat 5 capitum Helvëtiôrum milium CCLXIII, Tulingōrum milium XXXVI, Latobrigōrum XIII, Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex his quī arma ferre possent, ad milia XCII. Summa omnium fuērunt ad milia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est 10 numerus, milium C et X.

THE WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS

The Gallic chiefs come to congratulate Caesar

30. Bellō Helvëtiôrum cōfectō tōtius ferē Galliae lēgati, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: * "Intellegimus," inquiunt, "tametsi prō veteribus Helvëtiôrum iniūriis populi Rōmāni ab his poenās bellō repetisti, 15 tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū Galliae quam populi Rōmāni accidis; proptereā quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimis rēbus domōs suās Helvëtiī reliquērunt, uti tōtī Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque potirentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omni Galliā opportūnissimum ac fructuosissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque civitatēs stipendiāriās habērent."

A day is set for a future council

Petiērunt uti sibi concilium tōtius Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere liceret: 'Sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs quās ex commūni cōsēnsū ab eō petere 25

vellent.' Eā rē permissā diem conciliō cōstituērunt et iūre iūrاندō nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

Certain chiefs have a private interview with Caesar

31. Eō conciliō dimissō, idem principēs civitātum quī ante
 5 fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque utī sibi sēcrētō
 dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere liceret. Eā rē im-
 petrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt :
 * "Nōn minus," inquit, "nōs id contendimus et labōrāmus,
 nē ea quae dixerimus ēnūntientur, quam utī ea quae velimus
 10 impetrēmus ; proptereā quod, si ēnūntiātum erit, summum
 in cruciātum nōs ventūrōs vidēmus."

*Diviciacus describes the factions in Gaul and the bringing in
 of the Germans*

Locūtus est prō hīs Diviciācus Haeduus : * "Galliae tōtius
 factiōnēs sunt duae ; hārum alterius principātum tenent Hae-
 duī, alterius Arvernī. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter
 15 sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum est utī ab Arvernīs
 Sēquanisque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum primō
 circiter milia quīndecim Rhēnum trānsiērunt ; posteāquam
 agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī
 adamārunt, trāductī sunt plūrēs ; nunc sunt in Galliā ad
 20 centum et vīginti milium numerum.

The subjection of the Haedui

"Cum hīs Haedui eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum
 armis contendērunt ; magnam calamitātem pulsī accēpē-
 runt, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitā-
 tum āmisērunt. Quibus proeliis calamitātibusque frāctī, quī
 25 et suā virtūte et populi Rōmānī hospitiō atque amicitia

plūrimum ante in Galliā potuerant, coācti sunt Sēquanis obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, et iūre iūrاندō cīvitātem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs, neque recūsātūrōs quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. 5
 Ūnus ego sum ex omnī cīvitāte Haeduōrum quī addūci nōn potuerim ut iūrārem aut liberōs meōs obsidēs darem. Ob eam rem ex cīvitāte profūgi et Rōmam ad senātum vēni auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrاندō neque obsidibus tenēbar. 10

The wretched lot of the Sequani

“ Sed peius victōribus Sēquanis quam Haeduis victīs accidit, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus cōnsēdit tertiamque partem agrī Sēquani, quī est optimus tōtius Galliae, occupāvit, et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubet, proptereā quod paucis mēnsibus 15 ante Harūdum milia hominum vigintī quattuor ad eum vēnerunt, quibus locus ac sēdēs parentur. Paucis annis omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsibunt; neque enim cōnferendus est Gallicus cum Germānōrum agrō, neque haec cōnsuētūdō victūs cum illā 20 comparanda.

The tyranny and cruelty of Ariovistus

“ Ariovistus autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vicit, quod proelium factum est ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēliter imperat, obsidēs nōbilissimī cuiusque liberōs poscit, et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdit, sī qua rēs nōn 25 ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta est. Homō est barbarus, irācundus, temerārius: nōn possunt eius imperia diūtius sustinēri.

All Gaul looks to Caesar for deliverance

"Nisi quid in tē populōque Rōmānō erit auxili, omnibus Gallis idem est faciendum quod Helvētīi fēcērunt, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs remōtās ā Germānis petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec
 5 sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitō quin dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Tū vel auctōritāte tuā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrere potes nē maior multitudō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab
 10 Ariovisti iniuriā potes dēfendere."

The silence of the Sequani

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Diviciācō habitā, omnēs quī aderant magnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēteri facerent, sed tristēs capite dēmissō ter-
 15 ram intuerī. Eius rei quae causa esset mirātus, ex ipsis quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondere, sed in eādē tristitiā taciti permanere.

Diviciacus explains their desperate plight

Cum ab his saepius quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, idem Diviciācus Haedui respondit:
 20 * "Hōc est miserior et gravior fortūna Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem queri neque auxilium implōrāre audent; absentisque Ariovisti crūdēlī-tem, velut sī cōram adsit, horrent, proptereā quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās datur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā finēs
 25 suōs Ariovistum recēpērunt, quōrum oppida omnia in potestate eius sunt, omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendī."

Cæsar promises his assistance and dismisses the chiefs

33. His rēbus cognitis Cæsar Gallōrum animōs verbis cōfirmāvit, pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram; magnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum finem iniūriis factūrum. Hāc ōratiōne habitā concilium dimisit.

5

His reasons for deciding to expel Ariovistus

Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur quā rē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret: in primis quod Haeduōs, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque saepenumerō ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenēri, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum 10 ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populi Rōmāni turpissimum sibi et rei pūblicae esse arbitrābatur.

Paulātīm autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsire et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitudinem venīre, populō Rōmānō periculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs 15 ac barbarōs temperātūrōs existimābat quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exirent atque inde in Italiam contenderent; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spiritūs, tantam adrogantiam 20 sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

Cæsar asks Ariovistus for an interview, but he declines

34. Quam ob rem placuit ei ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent utī aliquem locum medium utriusque conloquiō dēligeret: velle sēsē dē rē pūblicā et summīs utriusque rēbus cum eō agere. Ei lēgātiōni Ario- 25 vistus respondit: * "Sī quid mihi ā Caesare opus esset, ego

ad eum venirem ; sī quid ille mē volt, illum ad mē venire oportet. Praetereā neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venire audeō quās Caesar possidet, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contra-
 5 here possum. Mihi autem mīrum vidētur quid in meā Galliā, quam bellō vici, aut Caesarī aut omninō populō Rōmānō negōtī sit."

Caesar commands Ariovistus to restore the liberties of the Haedui

35. His respōnsis ad Caesarem relātis, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum his mandātis mittit : * " Quoniam tantō
 10 meō populique Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōsulātū meō rēx atque amicus ā senātū appellātus sit, hanc mihi populōque Rōmānō grātiā refert, ut in conloquium venire invitātus gravētur neque dē commūnī rē dicendum sibi et cognōscendum putet, haec sunt quae ab eō postulō : primum,
 15 nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūcat ; deinde, obsidēs quōs habet ab Haeduis reddat, Sēquanisque permittat ut quōs illi habent voluntāte eius reddere illis liceat ; nēve Haeduōs iniūriā lacessat, nēve his sociisque eōrum bellum inferat.
 20 " Si id ita fēcerit, mihi populōque Rōmānō perpetua grātiā atque amicitia cum eō erit ; sī nōn impetrābō, ego — quoniam M. Messālā M. Pisōne cōsulibus senātus cēnsuit uti quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō rei pūblīcae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amicōs populī
 25 Rōmānī dēfenderet — Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglegam."

Ariovistus sends back an insolent reply

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit : * " Iūs est belli ut quī vicerint, eis quōs vicerint, quem ad modum velint, imperent ; item populus Rōmānus victis nōn ad alterius praescriptum,

sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre consuevit. Si ego populō Rōmānō nōn praescribō quem ad modum suō iūre utātur, nōn oportet mē ā populō Rōmānō in meō iūre impediri.



THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS

“Haedui mihi, quoniam belli fortunam temptāverunt et armis congressi ac superāti sunt, stipendiarii sunt facti. 5 Magnam Caesar iniuriam facit qui suō adventū vectigālia mihi dēteriōra faciat. Haeduis obsidēs nōn reddam, neque

his neque eōrum sociis iniuriā bellum inferam, si in eō manēbunt quod convēnit stipendiumque quotannis pendent; si id nōn fēcerint, longē eis frāternum nōmen populi Rōmāni aberit. Quod mihi Caesar dēnūntiat sē Haeduōrum iniuriās
 5 nōn neglēctūrum, nēmō mēcum sine suā perniciē contendit. Cum volet, congrediātur; intellet quid invicti Germāni, exercitātissimi in armis, qui inter annōs quattuordecim tēctum nōn subiērunt, virtūte possint.”

*New encroachments of the Germans are reported to Caesar,
 who hastens against Ariovistus*

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur,
 10 et lēgātī ab Haeduis et ā Trēveris veniēbant: Haedui questum quod Harūdēs, qui nūper in Galliam trānsportāti essent, finēs eōrum populārentur: ‘Sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datis pācem Ariovisti redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad ripam Rhēni cōnsēdisse, qui
 15 Rhēnum trānsire cōnārentur; his praeesse Nasuam et Cimmerium frātrēs.’ Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi existimāvit, nē, si nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiis Ariovisti sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resisti posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit
 20 comparātā, magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

Both strive to reach Vesontio. Caesar arrives there first

38. Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est ei Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiis ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere, trīduīque viam ā suis finibus prōcessisse. Id nē accideret,
 25 magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimābat. Namque omnium rērum quae ad bellum ūsui erant summa erat in eō oppidō facultās; idemque nātūrā loci sic mūniēbātur ut



BESANÇON (VESONTIO)

magnum ad ducendum bellum daret facultatem, propterea quod flumen Dubis, ut circinō circumductum, paene totum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum sexcentōrum, quā flumen intermittit, mōns continet
 5 magnā altitudine, ita ut radicēs eius montis ex utrāque parte ripae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit, occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium conlocat.

Reports about the Germans frighten Cæsar's men

10 39. Dum paucos diēs ad Vesontionem rei frumentariae commētusque causā morātur, ex percontatione nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercatorum, qui ingenti magnitudine corporum Germānōs, incredibili virtute atque exercitātione in armis esse praedicābant, — saepenumero sēsē cum
 15 his congressos nē voltum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisse, — tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret.

The inexperienced are panic-stricken

Hic primum ortus est ā tribūnis militum, praefectis reli-
 20 quisque, qui ex urbe amicitiae causā Caesarem secuti nōn magnum in rē militārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā inlātā quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse diceret, petēbat ut eius voluntate discēdere liceret; nōn nūlli pudore adducti, ut timōris suspiciōnem vitārent, rema-
 25 nēbant. Hi neque voltum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernaculis aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suis commūne periculum miserābantur. Volgō tōtis castris testāmenta obsignābantur.

Even the veterans are affected and prophesy a mutiny

Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātīm etiā eī quī magnum in castris ūsum habēbant, militēs centuriōnēsque quīque equitātui praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex his minus timidōs existimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustias itineris et magnitudinem silvārum quae intercēderent inter ipsōs 5 atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dicēbant. Nōn nulli etiā Caesari nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac signa ferri iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientēs militēs neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

Caesar makes light of their fears and recalls the victories of Marius

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō, omni- 10 umque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit : primum quod, aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. * "Ariovistus," inquit, "mē cōsule cupidissimē populi Rōmānī amicitiam adpetiit. Cūr hunc tam temerē 15 quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicet? Mihi quidem persuādētur, cognitis meis postulātis atque aequitate condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque meam neque populi Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrum. Quod si furōre atque āmentia impulsus bellum intulerit, quid tandem vereāminī? aut cūr dē vestrā 20 virtūte aut dē meā diligentiā dēspērētis? Factum est eius hostis periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum, Cimbris et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs, nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritis vidēbātur; factum est etiā nūper in Italiā servili tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid 25 ūsus ac disciplina quam ā nōbis accēperant sublevābant. Ex quō iūdicārī potest quantum habeat in sē boni cōstantia, proptereā quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timuistis, hōs postea armātōs ac victōrēs superāvistis.

Even the Helvetians and other Gauls have often defeated the Germans

"Dēnique hī sunt idem Germānī quibuscum saepenumērō Helvētīi congressī, nōn solum in suis sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plērumque superāvērunt; quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitui nōn potuērunt. Si quōs adversum proelium
 5 et fuga Gallōrum commovet, hī, sī quaerent, reperire poterunt, diūturnitāte bellī dēfatigātis Gallis, Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castris sē ac palūdibus tenuisset, neque sui potestātem fēcisset, dēspērāntēs iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō adortum, magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse.
 10 Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbatōs atque imperitōs locus fuit, hāc nē ipse quidem spērat nostrōs exercitūs capī posse.

He deprecates their lack of confidence in him

"Quī suum timōrem in rei frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiasque itineris cōferunt, faciunt adroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescribere videantur.
 15 Haec mihi sunt cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanī, Leucī, Lingonēs subministrant, iamque sunt in agris frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere vōs ipsī brevī tempore iūdicābitis.

"Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūri dicuntur militēs, nihil eā rē commoveor; sciō enim, quibuscumque
 20 exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortunam dēfuisse, aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; mea innocentia perpetuā vitā, fēlicitās Helvētiōrum bellō est perspecta.

He proposes an immediate advance

"Itaque quod in longiōrem diem conlātūrus fui, reprae-
 25 sentābō, et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra movēbō, ut quam primum intellegere possim utrum apud vōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valeat. Quod sī praetereā nēmō

sequētur, tamen cum sōlā decimā legiōne ibō, dē quā nōn dubitō, mihiq̄ue ea praetōria cohors erit." Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtūtem cōfidēbat maximē.

Remarkable effect of Caesar's speech

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mirum in modum conversae sunt 5
omnium mentēs, summaque alacritās et cupiditās belli gerendi



ROMAN ARMY ON THE MARCH

innāta est; princepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs militum
eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdiciū fēcisset, sēque
esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimā cōfirmāvit. Deinde
reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs militum et primōrum ōrdinum 10
centuriōnibus ēgērunt uti Caesarī satisfacerent: 'Sē neque
umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse, neque dē summā belli
suum iūdiciū, sed imperātōris esse existimāvisse.'

He advances near to the forces of Ariovistus

Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquisitō per Diviciācum, quod ex Gallis ei maximam fidem habēbat, ut milium amplius quinquāgintā circuitū locis apertis exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dixerat, profectus est. Septimō
 5 diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est Ariovisti cōpiās ā nostris milia passuum quattuor et viginti abesse.

Ariovistus asks for a conference

42. Cognitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: 'Quod antea dē conloquiō postulāset, id per sē fieri
 10 licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine periculō facere posse existimāret.' Nōn respuit condiōnem Caesar, iamque eum ad sānitātem reverti arbitrābatur, cum id quod antea petenti dēnegāset ultrō pollicērētur; magnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suis tantis populique Rōmānī in eum bene-
 15 ficiis, cognitīs suis postulātis, fore uti pertināciā dēsisteret.

A conference is agreed upon; each party to bring only cavalry

Diēs conloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quintus. Interim saepe cum lēgāti ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem ad conloquium Caesar addūceret: 'Verērī sē nē per insidiās ab eō circumvenirētur;
 20 uterque cum equitātū veniret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum.'

Caesar takes precaution against treachery

Caesar, quod neque conloquium interpositā causā tolli volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātui committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equis Gallis
 25 equitibus dētrāctis, eō lēgiōnāriōs milites lēgiōnis decimae,

cui quam maximē cōfidēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amicissimum, sī quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn inridiculē quidam ex militibus decimae legiōnis dixit : ' Plūs quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere ; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitū- 5 rum ; ad equum rescribere.'

Caesar's speech. He pleads for peace, but renews his demands

43. Plānitēs erat magna et in eā tumultus terrēnus satis grandis. Hic locus aequō ferē spatiō ab castris Ariovisti et Caesaris aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad conloquium vērunt. Legiōnem Caesar quam equis dēvexerat passi- 10 bus ducentis ab eō tumultō cōstituit. Item equitēs Ariovisti parī intervallō cōstitērunt. Ariovistus, ex equis ut conloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ad conloquium addūcerent, postulāvit.

Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque 15 in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amicus, quod mūnera amplissimē missa ; quam rem et paucis contigisse et prō magnis hominum officiis cōnsuēsse tribuī docēbat ; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandī iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac liberālitate 20 suā ac senātūs ea praemia cōsecūtum.

Docēbat etiam quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitudinis ipsis cum Haeduis intercēderent, quae senātūs cōnsulta, quotiēns quamque honorifica in eōs facta essent, ut omni tempore tōtius Galliae principātum Haedui tenuissent, 25 prius etiam quam nostram amicitiam adpetissent. ' Populi Rōmāni hanc esse cōsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amicōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs vellet esse ; quod vērō ad amicitiam populi Rōmāni adtulissent, id eis ēripī quis pati posset ? ' 30

Postulāvit deinde eadem quae lēgātis in mandātis dederat : nē aut Haeduis aut eōrum sociis bellum inferret ; obsidēs redderet ; si nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsire paterētur.

Ariovistus makes an arrogant reply

5 **44.** Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit ; dē suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit : * " Trānsi Rhēnum nōn meā sponte, sed rogātus et arcessitus ā Gallis ; nōn sine magnā spē magnisque praemiis domum propinquōsque reliquī ; sēdēs habeō in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs
10 ipsōrum voluntāte datōs ; stipendium capiō iūre belli quod victōrēs victis impōnere cōsuērunt. Nōn ego Gallis, sed Galli mihi bellum intulērunt ; omnēs Galliae civitatēs ad mē oppugnandum vērunt ac contrā mē castra habuērunt ; eae omnēs cōpiae ā mē ūnō proeliō pulsae ac superātae
15 sunt. Si iterum experiri volunt, ego iterum parātus sum dēcertāre ; si pāce ūti volunt, iniquum est dē stipendiō recūsāre quod suā voluntāte ad hoc tempus pependērunt.

" Amicitiam populi Rōmāni mihi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportet, atque hāc spē petiī. Si per
20 populum Rōmānum stipendium remittētur et dēditicii subtrahentur, nōn minus libenter recūsābō populi Rōmāni amicitiam quam adpetiī.

" Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcō, id mei mūniendi, nōn Galliae impugnandae causā faciō ;
25 eius rei testimoniū est quod nisi rogātus nōn vēni, et quod bellum nōn intuli, sed dēfendi. Ego prius in Galliam vēni quam populus Rōmānus. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitus populi Rōmāni Galliae prōvinciae finibus ēgressus est. Quid tibi vis ? Cūr in meās possessiōnēs venis ? Prō-
30 vincia mea haec est Gallia, sicut illa vestra. Ut mihi concēdi



CONFERENCE BETWEEN CÆSAR AND ARIOVISTUS, KING OF THE GERMANS

"Prœvincia mea hæc est Gallia, sicut illa vestra"

(See page 48, line 29)

nōn oporteat, si in vestrōs finēs impetum faciam, sic item vōs estis iniqui quod in meō iūre mē interpellitis.

“Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs dicis, nōn tam barbarus neque tam imperitus sum rērum ut nōn sciam neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānis auxiliū tulisse, neque ipsōs, in his contentiōnibus quās Haedui mēcum et cum Sēquanis habuērunt, auxiliō populi Rōmāni ūsōs esse.

“Dēbeō suspicārī simulātā tē amicitia, quem exercitum in Galliā habēs, mei opprimendi causā habēre. Nisi dēcēdēs 10 atque exercitum dēducēs ex his regiōnibus, tē nōn prō amicō, sed prō hoste habēbō. Quod si tē interfēcērō, multis nō-bilibus principibusque populi Rōmāni grātum faciam (id ab ipsis per eōrum nūtiōs compertum habēō), quōrum omnium grātiā atque amicitia tuā morte redimere poterō. Quod 15 si discesseris et liberā possessionem Galliae mihi trādidideris, magnō tē praemiō remūnerābō, et quaecumque bella geri volēs, sine ūllō tuō labōre et periculō cōnficiam.”

*Cæsar restates his position and disputes the claim of
Ariovistus to Gaul*

45. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt quā rē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset: * “Neque mea neque 20 populi Rōmāni cōnsuetūdō patitur uti optimē meritōs sociōs dēseram, neque iūdicō Galliam potius esse tuā quam populi Rōmāni. Bellō superāti sunt Arverni et Rutēni ab Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvit neque in prōvinciam redēgit neque stipendium imposuit. Quod si 25 antiquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportet, populi Rōmāni iūstissimum est in Galliā imperium; si iūdicium senātūs observārī oportet, libera dēbet esse Gallia, quam bellō victā suis lēgibus ūti voluerit.”

A treacherous attack of the Germans puts an end to the conference

46. Dūm haec in conloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovisti propius tumultum accēdere, et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendi finem fēcit, sēque ad suōs recēpit suisque imperā-
 5 vit nē quod omninō tēlum in hostēs reicerent. Nam etsi sine ūllō periculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat ut pulsīs hostibus dici posset eōs ab sē per fidem in conloquiō circumventōs. Postēāquam in vulgus militum ēlātum est quā
 10 adrogantiā in conloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānis interdixisset, impetumque ut in nostrōs eius equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs conloquium dirēmisset, multō maior alacritās studiumque pugnandī maius exercitui iniectum est.

Caesar declines a renewal of the conference

47. Biduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit :
 15 'Velle sē dē his rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō ; utī aut iterum conloquiō diem cōstitueret, aut, si id minus vellent, ē suis lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret.' Conloquendi Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est ; et eō magis, quod pridīe eius diēi Germānī retinēri nōn poterant quā tēla in nostrōs conicerent. Lēgātum
 20 sēsē magnō cum periculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus feris obiectūrum existimābat.

Two of Caesar's envoys are seized by Ariovistus

Commodissimum visum est C. Valerium Proclum, C. Valerī Caburī filium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscētem,
 25 — cuius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō civitāte dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam

Ariovistus longinquā cōsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandi Germānis causa nōn esset, — ad eum mittere, et ūnā M. Mētium quī hospitio Ariovisti ūtēbātur. His mandāvit ut quae diceret Ariovistus cognōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castris Ariovistus cōspexisset, exercitū suō 5 praesente conclāmāvit: * "Quid ad mē vēnistis? an speculandi causā?" Cōnantēs dicere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

Ariovistus moves his camp. Cavalry skirmishes

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et milibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castris sub monte cōnsēdit. Postridiē eius diēi 10 praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et milibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit, eō cōnsiliō uti frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanis et Haeduis supportārētur, Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quinque Caesar prō castris suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem instrūctam 15 habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, ei potestās nōn deēsset. Ariovistus his omnibus diēbus exercitum castris continuit, equestri proeliō cotidiē contendit.

The German method of fighting

Genus hoc erat pugnae quō sē Gērmāni exercuerant. Equitum milia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vėlōcissimī 20 ac fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salutis causā dēlēgerant; cum his in proeliis versābantur. Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hī, si quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; si quī graviōre volnere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; si quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius 25 recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās ut iubis sublevāti equōrum cursum adaequārent.

Caesar fortifies another camp and divides his forces

49. Ubi eum castris sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit; nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Germanī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab his, castris idōneum locum dēlēgit, aciēque triplici instrūctā ad eum



FORTIFYING THE CAMP

5 locum vēnit. Primam et secundam aciē in armis esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passūs sexcentōs, uti dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum sēdecim milia expedita cum omni equitātū Ariovistus misit, quae cōpiae nostrōs terrērent et mūnitiōne prohibē-
 10 rent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnitis castris duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quatuor reliquās in castra maiōra redūxit.

Ariovistus attacks the smaller camp with part of his forces

50. Proximō diē institūtō suō Caesar ē castris utrisque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā maiōribus castris prōgressus aciem instrūxit hostibusque pugnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdire intellēxit, circiter meridiē exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cō- 5 piārum quae castra minōra oppugnāret misit. Ācriter utrimque ūsque ad vesperum pugnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multis et inlātis et acceptis vulneribus in castra redūxit.

A German superstition delays a general engagement

Cum ex captivis quaereret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus 10 proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōsuetūdō esset, ut mātres familiae eōrum sortibus et vātičinātiōnibus dēclārarent utrum proelium committi ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dicere: 'Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, si ante novam lūnam proeliō conten- 15 dissent.'

Caesar forces a decisive battle

51. Postridiē eius diēi Caesar praesidiō utrisque castris quod satis esse vīsum est reliquit, ālāriōs omnēs in cōspectū hostium prō castris minōribus cōstituit, quod minus multitudine militum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, 20 ut ad speciem ālāriis ūteretur; ipse triplici instrūctā acie ūsque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessariō Germānī suās cōpiās castris ēdūxerunt generātimque cōstituērunt paribus intervāllis, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocēs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque 25 aciem suam raedis et carris circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinqueretur. Eō mulierēs imposuerunt, quae ad proelium proficiscentēs, passis manibus flentēs, implōrābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

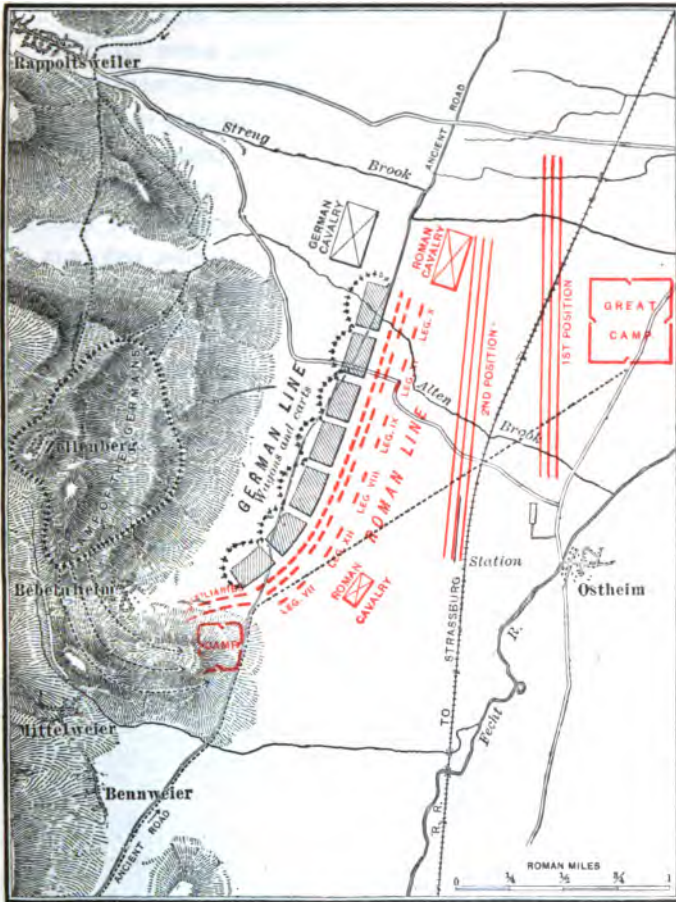
Desperate fighting at close quarters

52. Caesar singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaes-
tōrem praefēcit, uti eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret ;
ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hos-
tium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. Et ita nostrī
5 ācritē in hostēs signō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs
repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt ut spatium pila in hostēs
coniciendī nōn darētur. Reiectis pilis comminus gladiis pug-
nātum est. At Germānī celeriter ex cōnsuetūdine suā pha-
lange factā impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Reperti sunt
10 complūrēs nostrī qui in phalanga insilirent et scūta manibus
revellerent et dēsuper volnerārent. Cum hostium aciēs ā si-
nistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō
cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premē-
bant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, qui equi-
15 tātuī praeerat, quod expeditior erat quam ei qui inter aciem
versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostris subsidiō misit.

The Germans flee. Ariovistus escapes

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est atque omnēs hostēs terga
vertērunt, neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen
Rhēnum, milia passuum ex eō locō circiter quinque, pervē-
20 nērunt. Ibi perpauci aut viribus cōnfisi trānāre contendērunt
aut lintribus inventis sibi salūtem repperērunt. In his fuit
Ariovistus, qui nāviculam dēligātā ad ripam nactus eā pro-
fūgit ; reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūti equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt.

Duae fuērunt Ariovisti uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam
25 domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror,
quam in Galliā dūxerat ā frātre missā ; utraque in eā fugā
periit. Fuērunt duae filiae : hārum altera occisa, altera
capta est.



THE BATTLE WITH ARIOVISTUS

Cæsar's two envoys are rescued

C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdibus in fugā trinīs catēnis vinctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātū insequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesari nōn

minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem adtulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ē manibus hostium, sibi restitūtum vidēbat; neque eius calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne
 5 quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōsultum dicēbat utrum igni statim necārētur an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium beneficiō sē esse inco-
 lumem. Item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

The end of the campaign. Caesar goes to Hither Gaul

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēbī, quī ad
 10 ripās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum reverti coepērunt; quōs Ubīi, quī proximi Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs insecuti magnum ex eis numerum occidērunt. Caesar, ūnā aestāte duōbus maximis bellis cōfectis, mātūrius paulō quam tempus anni postulābat, in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hi-
 15 bernis Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.



WRITING TABLETS WITH LATIN SCRIPT

BOOK II

CÆSAR'S SECOND CAMPAIGN, 57 B.C.

THE WAR WITH THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY

All the Belgian tribes combine against the Romans

CUM esset Caesar in citeriøre Galliā, ita uti suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rŭmōrēs adferēbantur, litterisque item Labiēnī certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. 5

The reasons for the conspiracy

Coniūrandī hās esse causās : primum, quod verērentur nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōn nŭllis Gallis sollicitārentur, — partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populi Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in 10 Galliā molestē ferēbant; partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novis imperiis studēbant, — ab nōn nŭllis etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eis quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant volgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequi poterant. 15

Cæsar moves against them early in the spring

2. His nŭntiis litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriøre Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit, et initā aestāte, in interiōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum misit.

Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis qui finitimī Belgis erant, uti ea quae apud eōs gerantur cognōscant sēque dē his rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōstanter omnēs
 5 nūtiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn existimāvit quin ad eōs proficiscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīdecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

The Remi promise aid and report on the situation

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnium opīniōne
 10 vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, primōs civitātis, misērunt qui dicerent : * " Nōs nostraque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī permittimus ; neque cum reliquis Belgis cōsensimus neque contrā populum Rōmānum con-
 15 iūrāvimus, parātique sumus et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidis recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvārē ; reliquī omnēs Belgae in armis sunt, Germānique qui cis Rhēnum incolunt sēsē cum his coniūnxērunt, tantusque est eōrum omnium furor ut nē Suessiōnēs
 20 quidem, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque nostrōs, quī eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus ūtuntur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum nōbiscum habent, dēterrēre potuerimus quin cum his cōsentirent."

The origin and warlike character of the Belgae

4. Cum ab his quaereret quae civitātēs quantaque in
 25 armis essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiebat :
 * " Plērīque Belgae sunt orti ā Germānis, Rhēnumque antiquitus trāducti propter loci fertilitātem ibi cōsēdērunt, Gallōsque quī ea loca incolēbant expulērunt, sōlique sunt

quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omni Galliā vexatā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fit utī eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spīritūs in rē militārī sūmant.

The strength of the Belgian tribes

"Dē numerō eōrum omnia habēmus explorāta, propterea 5 quod propinquitātibus adfinitātibusque coniūcti, quantam quisque multitudinem in commūni Belgārū conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognōvimus. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacī et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valent; hī possunt cōficere armāta milia centum, polliciti ex eō numerō 10 ēlēcta milia sexāgintā, tōtiusque belli imperium sibi postulant. Suessionēs nostrī sunt finitimī; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possident. Apud eōs fuit rēx nostrā etiam memoriā Diviciācus, tōtius Galliae potentissimus, quī cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae 15 imperium obtinuit; nunc est rēx Galba; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdētiāque summa tōtius belli omnium voluntāte dēfertur; oppida habent numerō XII, pollicentur milia armāta I; totidem Nervī, quī maximē feri inter ipsōs habentur longissimēque absunt; xv milia Atrebātēs, Ambiānī x 20 milia, Morinī xxv milia, Menapii vii milia, Caleti x milia, Veliocassēs et Viromandui totidem, Aduatuci xix milia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrāmur <cōficere posse> ad xl milia."

25

Cæsar asks the assistance of Diviciacus

5. Cæsar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus, omnem senātum ad sē convenire principumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūci iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciācum Haeduum magnopere

cohortātus docet quantō opere rei pūblicae commūnisque salū-
tis intersit manūs hostium distinēri, nē cum tantā multitudīne
ūnō tempore cōnfligendum sit: 'Id fieri posse, si suās cōpiās
Haedui in finēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs
5 populārī coeperint.' His datis mandātis eum ā sē dimittit.

He crosses the Aisne and there fortifies a camp

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāc-
tās ad sē venire vidit neque iam longē abesse ab eis quōs
miserat explorātōribus et ab Rēmīs cognōvit, flūmen Axo-
nam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trā-
10 dūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus
ūnum castrōrum rīpis flūminis mūniēbat et post eum quae
erant tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs
reliquisque civitātibus ut sine periculō ad eum portārī pos-
sent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pō-
15 nit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabinum lēgātum
cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitudinem pedum
duodecim vāllō fossāque duodēviginti pedum mūniri iubet.

The Belgae attack Bibrax, a town of the Remi, eight miles away

6. Ab his castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax
aberat milia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū
20 Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est.
Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec: ubi
circumiectā multitudīne hominum tōtis moenibus undique
in mūrum lapidēs iaci coepti sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus
nūdātus est, testūdine factā portās succēdunt mūrumque
25 subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multi-
tūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōsistendi potestās
erat nūlli. Cum finem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius
Rēmus, summā nōbilitate et grātiā inter suōs, qui tum

oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex eis qui lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: 'Nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.'

Cæsar sends relief to Bibrax. The Belgæ advance on his camp

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar, isdem ducibus ūsus qui nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagittariōs et 5 funditorēs Baleārēs subsidio oppidānis mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandi accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidi discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morāti agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulāti, omnibus vicis aedificiisque quō adire potuerant incēnsis, ad castra



A SLINGER (FUNDITOR)

Caesaris omnibus cōpiis contendērunt et ā milibus passuum 20 minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant.

Cavalry skirmishes. Cæsar fortifies his position and draws up his forces in front of the camp

8. Caesar primō et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opiniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; 25 cotidiē tamen equestribus proeliis, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostri audērent periclitābātur.

Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castris ad aciem instruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, — quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitie ēditus, tantum adversus in lātitudinem patēbat quantum loci
5 aciēs instrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter fastigātus paulatim ad plānitiem redibat, — ab utrōque latere eius collis transversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique tormenta conlo-
10 cavit, nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitudine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantes suōs circumvenire possent.

Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōscripserat in castris relictis, ut, si quō opus esset, subsidiō dūci pos-
15 sent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castris ēductās instrūxerunt.

A swamp between the two forces prevents a general engagement

9. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostrī trānsirent hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, si ab illis initium trānseundi fieret, ut impedī-
20 tōs adgrederentur parāti in armis erant. Interim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendebātur. Ubi neutri trānseundi initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostris, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit.

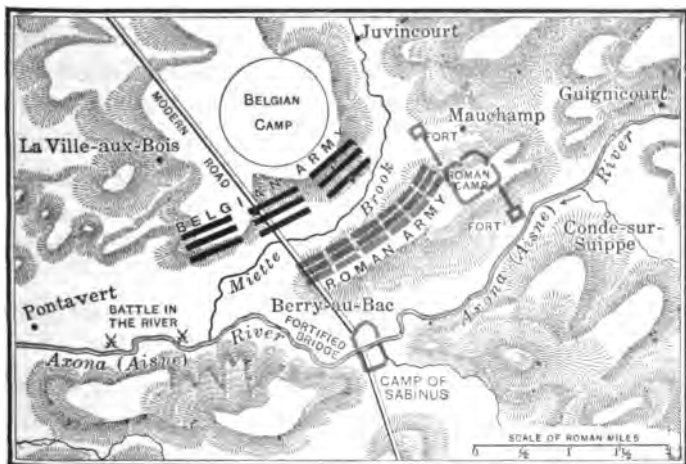
The Belgæ attempt an attack in the rear

Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendē-
25 runt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadis repertis partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnāti sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut, si possent, castellum cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; si

minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī magnō nōbis ūsui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

Caesar defeats them with great losses

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem 5 trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācritēr in eō locō pugnātum



THE BATTLE ON THE AISNE (AXONA)

est. Hostēs impeditōs nostrī in flūmine adgressī magnum eōrum numerum occidērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitudīne tēlōrum reppulērunt, primōsque, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs inter- 10 fēcērunt.

The Belgæ, discouraged, decide to disband

Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt, neque nostrōs in locum iniquiōrem prōgredi pugnandi causā vidērunt,

atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et, quōrum in finēs primum Rōmānī exercitum
4 intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenirent, ut



BOWMAN (SAGITTARIUS)

potius in suis quam in aliēnis finibus dēcertārent et domesticis cōpiis rei frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquis causis haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Diviciācum atque Haeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum adpropinquāre cognōverant. His persuādēri ut diūtius morārēntur neque suis auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

*Cæsar pursues them and inflicts
great slaughter*

11. Eā rē cōstitutā, secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castris ēgressi nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum

pervenire properāret, fēcērunt ut cōsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Cæsar per speculātōrēs cognitā, insidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum per-
25 spexerat, exercitum equitātumque castris continuit. Primā lūce cōfirmatā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum qui novissimum agmen morārētur praemisit. His Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit; T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequi iussit.

Hī novissimōs adorti et multa milia passuum prōsecūti magnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt ; cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum militum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā periculō vidērentur neque ūllā necessitatē neque imperiō continērentur, exauditō clāmōre perturbātis ōrdinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō periculō tantam eōrum multitudinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum fuit diēi spatium ; sub occāsum sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

He leads his army into the territory of the Suessiones

12. Postridiē eius diēi Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in finēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrique altitudinem, paucis dēfendentibus, expugnāre nōn potuit.



A LIGHT-ARMED
SOLDIER

He prepares to storm Noviodunum. The Suessiones surrender

Castris mūnitis vineās agere quaeque ad oppugnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vineīs ad oppidum āctis, aggere iactō turribusque

cōstitūtis, magnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritate Rōmānōrum permōti, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditionē mittunt et petentibus Rēmīs ut cōservārentur impetrant.

The Bellovacī beg for mercy

- 5 13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptis primis civitatis atque ipsius Galbae rēgis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppidō traditis, in dēditionem Suessionēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter
10 milia passuum quinque abesset, omnēs maiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressi manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt sēsē in eius fidem ac potestatem venīre neque contrā populū Rōmānum armis contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex
15 mūrō passis manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānis petiērunt.

Diviciacus, the Haeduan, pleads for them

14. Prō his Diviciacus — nam post discessum Belgārum dimissis Haeduōrum cōpiis ad eum reverterat — facit verba :
* " Bellovacī omni tempore in fidē atque amicitia civitatis Haeduae fuērunt ; impulsī ab suis principibus, quī dicēbant
20 Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitatēs contumeliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduis dēfēcērunt et populō Rōmānō bellum intulērunt. Quī eius cōsili principēs fuerant, quod intellegēbant quantam calamitatem civitāti intulissent, in Britanniam profūgērunt. Petunt nōn solum Bellovacī
25 sed etiam prō his Haeduī ut tuā clēmētiā ac mānsuetūdine in eōs utāris. Quod si fēcēris, Haeduōrum auctoritatem apud omnēs Belgās amplificābis, quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella incidērunt, sustentāre cōsuērunt."

Cæsar spares the Bellovaci and receives the Ambiani in surrender

15. Cæsar honōris Diviciāci atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dixit; et quod erat civitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitudine præstābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. His trāditis omnibusque armis ex oppidō conlātis, ab eō locō in 5 finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, qui sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdiderunt.

He hears that the Nervii are defiant

Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Cæsar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat: * "Nūllus aditus est ad eōs mercatōribus; nihil patiuntur vinī reliquā- 10 rumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod his rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remitti virtūtem existimant; sunt hominēs ferī magnaēque virtūtis; increpitant atque incūsant reliquōs Belgās, qui sē populō Rōmānō dēdiderint patriamque virtūtem prōiēcērint; cōfirmant sēsē neque lē- 15 gātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiōnem pācis acceptūrōs."

He marches against the Nervii and their allies

16. Cum per eōrum finēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captivīs Sabim flūmen ā castris suis nōn amplius milia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervios cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum 20 Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, finitimis suis (nam his utrisque persuāserant uti eandem belli fortūnam experirentur); exspectāri etiam ab eis Aduatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quique per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse quō propter palūdēs 25 exercitui aditus nōn esset.

The Nervii decide to attack Cæsar while he is pitching camp

17. His rēbus cognitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque prae-
mittit quī locum castrīs idōneum dēligant. Cum ex dēditiciis
Belgīs reliquisque Gallis complūrēs Caesarem secūtī unā iter
facerent, quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitum est,
5 eōrum diērum cōnsuetūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā,
nocte ad Nervios pervēnērunt; atque his dēmōstrārunt inter
singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum magnum numerum inter-
cēdere, neque esse quicquam negōti, cum prima legiō in
castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium abes-
10 sent, hanc sub sarcinīs adoriri; quā pulsā impedimentisque
direptis futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audērent.

The hedges of the Nervii

Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant, quod
Nervii antiquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim
ad hoc tempus ei rei student, sed quicquid possunt pedestri-
15 bus valent cōpiis), quō facilius finitimōrum equitātum, si
praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedirent, teneris arbori-
bus incisis atque inflexis, crēbrisque in lātitudinē rāmīs
ēnātis, et rubis sentibusque interiectis, effēcerant ut instar
mūri hae saepēs mūnimenta praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn
20 intrārī sed nē perspicī quidem posset. His rēbus cum iter
agminis nostrī impedirētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium
Nervii exīstimāvērunt.

*The Romans choose a hill for their camp. The Nervii hide
on a hill opposite*

18. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castrīs
dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequālīter dēclivis ad flūmen
25 Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine
parī acclivitāte collis nāscēbātur, adversus huic et contrārius,

passūs circiter ducentōs infimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōsus perspicī posset. Intrā eas



SOLDIERS MARCHING WITH PACKS (*SUB SARCINIS*)

silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statīōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium. 5

The Romans begin to fortify their camp

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nervīōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus adpropinquābat,

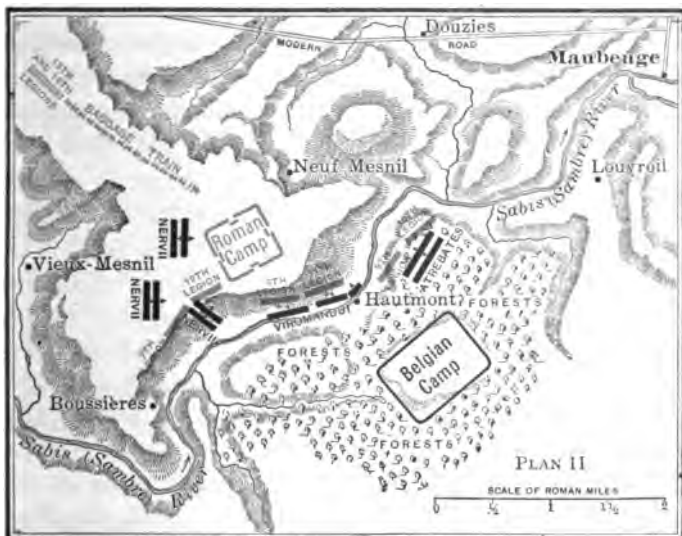
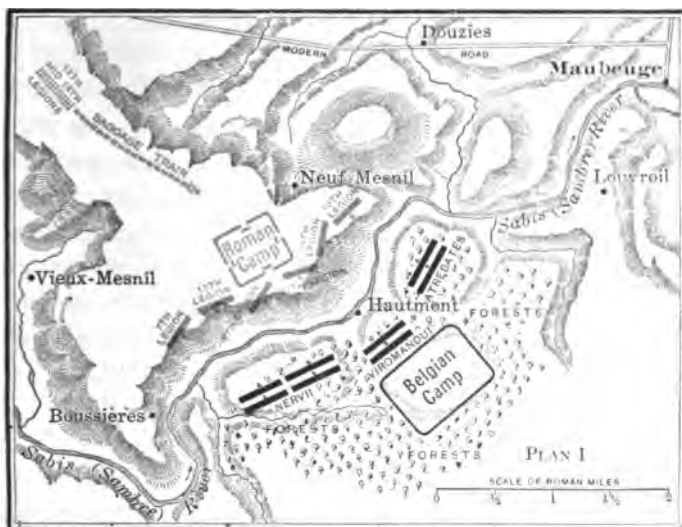
cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat ; post eās tōtiū exercitūs impedimenta conlocārat ; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī cum
 5 funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trānsgressi cum hostium equitātū proelium commisērunt. Cum sē illi identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rūsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad finem por-
 recta loca aperta pertinēbant cēdentēs insequi audērent,
 10 interim legiōnēs sex quae primae vēnerant opere dimēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt.

The Nervii make a sudden and furious attack

Ubi prima impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab eis qui in silvīs abditī latēbant vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendi proeli convēnerat, ita ut intrā silvās aciem ordinēsque cō-
 15 stituerant atque ipsi sēsē cōfirmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiis prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His facile pulsīs ac prōturbātis, incrēdibili celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus nostris hostēs vidērentur.
 20 Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs qui in opere occupāti erant contendērunt.

The situation of the Romans is critical

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda : vēxillum prōpōnendum (quod erat insigne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret), signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī militēs,
 25 quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arces-
 sendī, aciēs instruendā, militēs cohortandī, signum dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevītās et succesus hostium impediēbat.



THE DEFEAT OF THE NERVII

Plan I shows the positions of the contending forces before the attack. Plan II shows their positions at the crisis of the battle

Their skill and training serve them well

His difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, — scientia atque
 ūsus militum, quod superiōribus proeliis exercitāti quid fieri
 oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsi sibi praescribere quam
 ab aliis docērī poterant ; et quod ab opere singulisque legiōni-
 5 bus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnitis castris
 vetuerat. Hi propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium
 nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae
 vidēbantur administrābant.

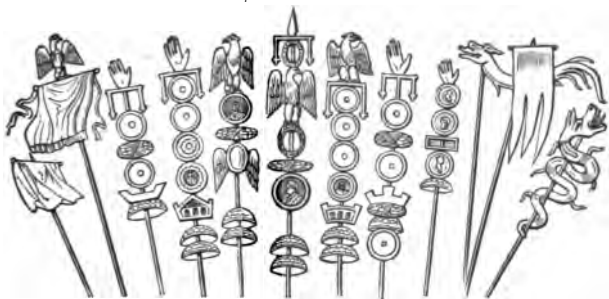
*Lack of time compels the omission of all formalities and of
 some of the usual preparations for battle*

21. Caesar, necessariis rēbus imperātis, ad cohortandōs mi-
 10 litēs quam in partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et ad legiōnem
 decimam dēvēnit. Militēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus
 quam uti suae pristinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent neu
 p̄turbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinē-
 rent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adici
 15 posset, proeli committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram
 partem item cohortandī causā profectus, pugnantibus occurrit.
 Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad
 dimicandum animus ut nōn modo ad insignia accommo-
 danda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque tegimenta
 20 dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in
 partem cāsū dēvēnit, quaeque prima signa cōspexit, ad haec
 cōstitit, nē in quaerendīs suis pugnandī tempus dimitteret.

They fight as necessity demands

22. Īnstrūctō exercitū magis ut loci nātūra dēiectusque
 collis et necessitās temporis quam ut rei militāris ratiō
 25 atque ōrdō postulābat, cum diversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in

parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimis (ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus) interiectis prōspectus impedirētur, neque certa subsidia conlocārī neque quid in quāque parte opus



ROMAN MILITARY STANDARDS

esset prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortunae quoque 5 ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

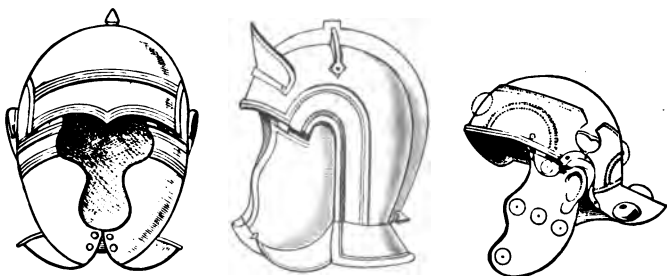
The Atrebates and Viromandui are defeated, but the Nervii gain the camp

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae militēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōstiterant, pilis ēmissis, cursū ac lassitūdine exanimātōs vulneribusque cōfectōs Atrebātēs — nam his ea pars obvēnerat — celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen com- 10 pulērunt, et trānsire cōnantēs insecūtī gladiis magnam partem eōrum impeditam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsire flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte diversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, 15 prōfligātis Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressī, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis ripīs proeliābantur. At tōtis ferē castris ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātis, cum in dextrō

cornū legiō duodecima et nōn magnō ab eā intervallō septima cōstitisset, omnēs Nervii cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduōgnātō, quī summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars apertō latere legiōnēs circum-
 5 venīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

Panic prevails in the Roman camp

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum eis ūnā fuerant, quōs primō hostium



ROMAN HELMETS

impetū pulsōs dixeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversis hostibus occurrēbant ac rūsus aliam in partem fugam petē-
 10 bant; et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostris castris versārī vidissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum quī cum impedimentis veniēbant clāmor fremitusque
 15 oriēbātur, aliique aliam in partem perterriti ferēbantur.

The Treveri think all is lost and hasten home

Quibus omnibus rēbus permōti equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opiniō est singulāris, quī auxiliī causā ā civitāte missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitudīne hostium

castra complēri, legiōnēs premi et paene circumventās tenēri, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vidissent, dēspērātis nostris rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castris 4 impedimentisque eōrum hostēs potiōs, civitāti renūntiāvērunt.

Cæsar snatches a shield and rushes to the front

25. Caesar ab decimæ legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgēri signisque in unum locum conlātis duodecimæ legiōnis cōnfertōs militēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedimentō vidit, — quārtæ cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occisis, signiferō interfectō, signō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātis aut occisis, in his primipilō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multis gravibusque vulneribus cōnfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nullōs ab novissimis dēsertō locō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vitāre, hostēs neque ā fronte ex inferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere instāre, et rem esse in angustō vidit, neque ūllum esse subsidium quod submitti 25 posset, — scūtō ab novissimis militi dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in primam aciem prōcessit; centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātis reliquōs cohortātus militēs signa inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiis ūti possent.



STANDARD BEARER
(SIGNIFER)

His presence inspires his men

Cuius adventū spē inlātā militibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suis rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

Cæsar effectively combines two of his legions

- 5 26. Cæsar cum septimam lēgiōnem, quae iūxtā cōstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vidisset, tribūnōs militum monuit ut paulātīm sēsē lēgiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō, cum alius alii subsidium ferret neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenirentur, audācius
10 resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt.

He receives reënforcements

- Interim militēs lēgiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potitus et ex locō superiōre
15 quae rēs in nostris castrīs gererentur cōspicātus, decimam lēgiōnem subsidiō nostris misit. Quī, cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in periculō et castra et lēgiōnēs et imperātor versārētur cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

The tide of battle turns in Cæsar's favor

- 20 27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtatiō est facta ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōfecti prōcubuissent, scūtīs innixī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent; equitēs vērō, ut turpitudinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locis pug-
25 nandō sē lēgiōnāriīs militibus praeferrent.

Cæsar praises the valor of the enemy

At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem præstitērunt ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus insisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent; his dēiectis et coacervātis cadāveribus, qui superessent, ut ex tumultō, tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pila intercepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquiquam tantæ virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēberet ausōs esse trānsire lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās ripās, subire inīquissimum locum; quæ facilia ex difficillimis animī magnitudō redēgerat.

The Nervii are almost completely destroyed

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente 10 ac nōmine Nerviorum redāctō, maiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dixerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impeditum, victis nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium qui supererant cōnsensū lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque ei dēdidērunt; et, 15 in commemorandā civitatīs calamitātē, ex sexcentis ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum milibus sexāgintā vix ad quingentōs qui arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dixērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidēretur, diligentissimē cōservāvit, suisque finibus atque oppidis 20 ūti iussit, et finitimis imperāvit ut ab iniuriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

The Aduatuci, allies of the Nervii, withdraw to their stronghold

29. Aduatuci, dē quibus suprā diximus, cum omnibus cōpiis auxiliō Nervii venirent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūctis oppidis castellisque dēsertiis sua 25 omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnitum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās

rūpēs dēspectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclivis aditus in lātitudinem nōn amplius pedum cc relinquēbātur; quem locum duplici altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum magnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō conlocābant.

Origin of the Aduatuci

5 Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prōgnāti, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, eis impedi-
mentis quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flū-
men Rhēnum dēpositis, custōdiam ex suis ac praesidium sex
milia hominum ūnā reliquerant. Hi post eōrum obitum mul-
10 tōs annōs ā finitimīs exagitāti, cum aliās bellum inferrent
aliās inlātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce
factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

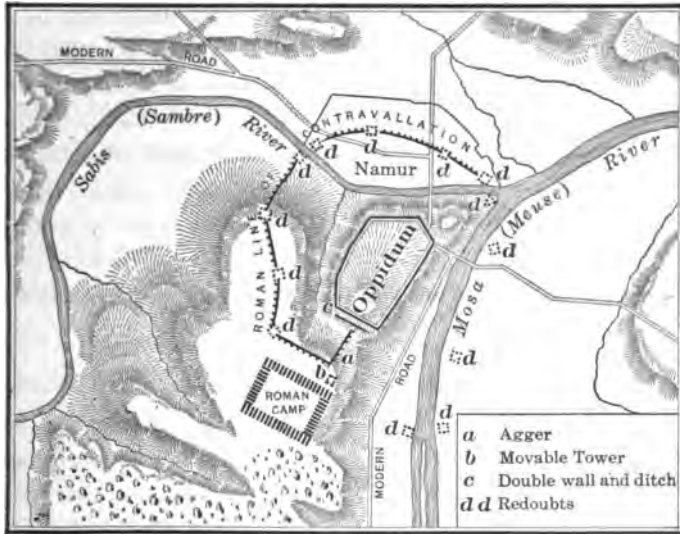
They ridicule Caesar's siege works

30. Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō
excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliis cum nostrīs conten-
15 dēbant; postea vāllō pedum XII, in circuitū xv mīlium, crē-
brisque castellis circummūnīti oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi
vineis āctīs aggere exstrūctō turrīm procul cōstitui vidērunt,
primum inridēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod
tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō instituerētur: * "Quibusnam
20 manibus aut quibus viribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statū-
rae" — nam plērumque hominibus Gallis prae magnitudine
corporum suōrum brevitas nostra contemptui est — "tantī
oneris turrīm in mūrō sēsē posse conlocāre cōfidunt?"

*But, becoming alarmed, they offer to surrender if allowed
to keep their arms*

31. Ubi vērō movēri et adpropinquāre mūrīs vidērunt, novā
25 atque inūsitatā speciē commōti lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce
mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī sunt: * "Nōn existimāmus

vōs sine ope divinā bellum gerere, quī tantae 'altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possitis ; nōs nos-
traque omnia tuae potestāti permittimus. Ūnum petimus ac
dēprecāmur : si forte prō tuā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine,



SIEGE OF THE STRONGHOLD OF THE ADUATUCI

quam ab aliīs audimus, statueris Aduatucōs esse cōservan- 5
dōs, nōli nōs armis dēspoliāre. Nōbis omnēs ferē finitimi
sunt inimici ac nostrae virtūti invident ; ā quibus nōs dē-
fendere trāditis armis nōn poterimus. Nōbis praestat, si in
eum cāsum dēducāmur, quamvis fortunam ā populō Rōmānō
pati, quam ab his per cruciātum interfici inter quōs dominārī 10
cōnsuēvimus.”

Cæsar demands their arms. They yield, but treacherously keep part of them

32. Ad hæc Cæsar respondit: * "Magis cōsuētūdine meā quam meritō vestrō civitātem cōservābō, si, prius quam mūrū ariēs attigerit, vōs dēdideritis; sed dēditionis nūlla est condiciō nisi armīs trāditis. Id quod in Nervii fēci
5 faciam, finitimisque imperābō nē quam dēditiciis populi Rōmāni iniūriam inferant." Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere dixērunt. Armōrum magnā multitudine dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sic ut prope summam mūri aggerisque altitudinem acervi armōrum
10 adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut postea per- spectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portis patefactis eō diē pāce sunt ūsi.

They make a night attack, but are defeated

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī militēsque ex oppidō exire iussit, nē quam noctū oppidāni ā militibus
15 iniūriam acciperent. Illi ante initō (ut intellēctum est) cō- siliō, quod dēditione factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indiligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, — partim cum eis quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtis ex cortice factis aut viminibus intextis, quae subitō, ut temporis
20 exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, — tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitiōnēs ascēsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiis repente ex oppidō eruptiōnem fēcērunt.

Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperārat, ignibus significātiōne factā, ex proximis castellis eō concursus est, pugnātumque
25 ab hostibus ita ācriter est ut ā viris fortibus in extrēmā spē salutis iniquō locō, contrā eōs qui ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pugnārī debuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs cōsisteret.

Over fifty thousand of them are sold as slaves

Occisīs ad hominū milibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum reiecti sunt. Postridiē eius diēi refrāctis portis, cum iam

his rebus gestis. omni gallia pacata. can-
alibus belli et barbaros opprimo perlatas. ut ab his nationibus quae
trans rhenum incolerent. mitterentur legati ad caesarem. quibus obfides
daturas. imperata facturam pollicerentur. quos legationes caesar et
mitalia illyricūque pperabat mitalia poma aestate. et ferreus
nisi sit. ipse mitalia mitalia. et deos. turonesque. quae cum caesar. pperat
erant ubi bellū gesserat. legionibus in mitalia. et deos. et deos. et deos.
pferat. et deos. et deos. et deos. et deos. et deos. et deos. et deos. et deos.
et deos. et deos. et deos. et deos. et deos. et deos. et deos. et deos. et deos.

LATIN MANUSCRIPT

The text of Book II, chapter 35, as it appears in a Latin manuscript of the ninth century. For many years the manuscript was in the monastery of St. Benedict at Fleury-sur-Loire. It is now in Paris and is known as Codex Parisinus Latinus, 5763

dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissis militibus nostris, secti-
ōnem eius oppidi ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eis qui
ēmerant capitum nūmerus ad eum relātus est milium quīn- 5
quāgintā trium.

The tribes on the coast surrender to Crassus

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs Coriosolitas, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae civitatēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs eas civitatēs in iudiciōnem potestātemque populi Rōmāni esse redactās.

*The army goes into winter quarters. Caesar returns to Italy
A thanksgiving is decreed at Rome*

35. His rēbus gestis, omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta huius belli ad barbarōs opiniō perlāta est uti ab eīs nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent lēgāti ad Caesarem mitterentur quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur.
- 5 Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Italiam Illyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē reverti iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque civitatēs propinquae eis locis erant ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hiberna dēductis in Italiam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litteris
- 10 Caesaris diēs quindecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūlli.



GALLIC COINS

BOOK III

CÆSAR'S THIRD CAMPAIGN, 56 B.C.

THE WAR WITH THE ALPINE TRIBES

Galba is sent with one legion to guard a pass of the Alps

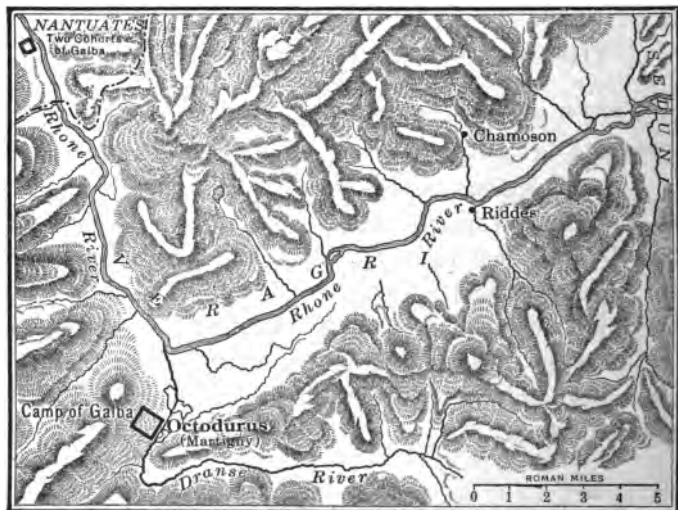
CUM in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs Sedūnōsque misit, qui ā finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit quod iter per 5 Alpēs, quō magnō cum periculō magnisque cum portōriis mercātōrēs ire cōsuērant, patefierī volēbat. Huic permisit, si opus esse arbitrāretur, utī in hīs locis legiōnem hiemandi causā conlocāret.

He makes his winter quarters at Octodurus

Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factis castellisque com- 10 plūribus eōrum expugnātis, missis ad eum undique lēgātis obsidibusque datis et pāce factā, cōstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus conlocāre et ipse cum reliquis eius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragrōrum, qui appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; qui vicus positus in valle, nōn magnā adiectā 15 plānitīē, altissimis montibus undique continetur. Cum hic in duās partēs flūmine divideretur, alteram partem eius vici Gallis concessit, alteram vacuum ab hīs relictam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnivit.

An army of Gauls seizes the heights above the town and threatens his camp

2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsissent frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explorātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vicī quam Gallis concesserat



OCTODURUS AND THE SURROUNDING TERRITORY

omnēs noctū discessisse, montēsque quī impendērent ā
5 maximā multitudīne Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenēri.

Id aliquot dē causis acciderat ut subitō Galli belli renovandī
legiōnisque opprimendae cōsiliū caperent: primum quod
legiōnem — neque eam plēnissimam, detrāctis cohortibus
duābus et complūribus singillātīm, quī commeātūs petendī
10 causā missī erant — propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum
etiam quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus
in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē primum quidem

posse impetum suum sustinēri existimābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstrāctōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant, et Rōmānōs nōn solum iterum causā sed etiam perpetuae possēssiōnis culmina Alpiū occupāre cōnārī et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant. 5

Conditions are unfavorable, but the Romans decide to defend the camp

3. His nūntiis acceptis Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum mūnitiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptis nihil dē bellō timendum existimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquirere 10 coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentini periculī prae-ter opiniōnem accidisset, ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitudīne armātorū complēta cōspicerentur, neque subsidiō venīri neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nullae eius modi 15 sententiae dicēbantur, ut, impedimentis relictis ēruptiōne factā, isdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contenderent. Maiōrī tamen partī placuit, hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō, interim rei ēventum experiri et castra dēfendere.

The Gauls make a violent attack with superior numbers

4. Brevi spatiō interiectō, vix ut eis rēbus quās cōstitu- 20 issent conlocandis atque administrandis tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaeque in vāllum conicere. Nostrī primō integrīs viribus fortiter prōpugnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēn- 25 sōribus premi vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pugnae hostēs dēfessi proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs viribus succēdēbant: quārum rērum

ā nostris propter paucitatem fieri nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex pugnā excēdendi, sed nē sauciō quidem eius loci ubi cōstiterat relinquendi ac sui recipiendi facultās dabātur.

After fighting six hours, the Romans decide to make a sally

5. Cum iam amplius hōris sex continenter pugnārētur ac
5 nōn solum virēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque
hostēs ācrius instārent languidiōribusque nostris vāllum
scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad
extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, primī pili
centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōfectum vol-
10 neribus diximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus militum,
vir et cōsili magnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque
ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, si ēruptiōne factā extrēmum
auxilium experirentur. Itaque convocātis centuriōnibus cele-
riter militēs certiōrēs facit paulisper intermitterent proelium,
15 ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre refi-
cerent; post datō signō ex castris ērumperent atque omnem
spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

The Gauls are disastrously defeated

6. Quod iussī sunt faciunt ac, subitō omnibus portis ērup-
tione factā, neque cognōscendi quid fieret neque sui conli-
20 gendi hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortunā
eōs qui in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique
circumventōs interficiunt; et ex hominum milibus amplius
xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōstā-
bat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam
25 coniciunt ac nē in locis quidem superiōribus cōsistere
patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium cōpiis fūsis armisque exūtis
sē intrā mūnitiōnēs suās recipiunt.



IAM AMPLIUS HORIS SEX CONTINENTER PUGNATUM EST

Galba withdraws to the Province

Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat, atque aliō sē in hiberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliis occurrisse rēbus viderat, maximē frūmentī commeātūque inopiā permōtus, posterō diē omnibus eius vicī aedificiis incēnsis in prōvinciam revertī contendit, ac nullō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

THE WAR WITH THE VENETI

The coast tribes revolt against Roman rule

7. Hīs rēbus gestīs, cum omnibus dē causis Caesar pācātam Galliam existimāret, atque ita initā hieme in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adire et regiōnēs cognōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coörtum est. Eius belli haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximus mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in his locis inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque militum complūrēs in finitimās civitatēs frūmentī causā dimisit; quō in numerō erat T. Terrasidius missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

The Veneti seize the Roman messengers

8. Huius est civitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis orae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Veneti plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticarum cēterōs antecēdunt, et in magnō impetū maris vāsti atque apertī paucis portibus interiectis, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs ferē qui eō marī ūti

cōsuērunt habent vectigālēs. Ab his fit initium retinendi Sili atque Velāni, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs quōs Crassō dedissent recuperātūrōs existimābant.

Other states do the same and demand back their hostages

Hōrum auctōritāte finitimī adductī (ut sunt Gallōrum
5 subita et repentina cōnsilia), eādē dē causā Trebium Ter-
rasidiumque retinent; et celeriter missis lēgātis per suōs
principēs inter sē coniūrant nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō
āctūrōs eundemque omnis fortunāe exitum esse lātūrōs;
reliquāsque civitatēs sollicitant ut in eā libertāte quam ā
10 maiōribus accēperint permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitū-
tem perferre mālint. Omni ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam
sententiam perductā, commūnem lēgātiōnem ad P. Crassum
mittunt: 'Si velit suōs recipere, obsidēs sibi remittat.'

Cæsar orders a fleet to be built and hastens to the scene

9. Quibus dē rēbus Cæsar ab Crassō certior factus, quod
15 ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine
Ligeri, quod influit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā insti-
tūi, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī iubet. His rēbus
celeriter administrātis, ipse, cum primum per anni tempus
potuit, ad exercitum contendit.

The Veneti and their neighbors prepare for war

20 Venetī reliquæque item civitatēs cognitō Cæsarīs adventū,
simul quod quantum in sē facinus admisissent intellegēbant,
lēgātōs — quod nōmen ad omnēs nātiōnēs sānctum inviolā-
tumque semper fuisset — retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniec-
tōs, prō magnitudīne perīculi bellum parāre, et maximē ea
25 quæ ad ūsum nāvium pertinent prōvidēre instituunt, hōc
maiōre spē quod multum nātūrā loci cōfidēbant.



THE VENETI AND NEIGHBORING COAST REGION

They have great confidence in their natural advantages

Pedestria esse itinera concisa aestuāriis, nāvigātiōnem impeditam propter inscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōfidēbant; ac iam ut omnia contrā opiniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum 5 nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium, neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent, vada, portūs, insulās nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclusō marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciebant. His initis cōsiliis oppida mūniunt, 10 frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum bellum gestūrum cōstābat, quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliātōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adsciscunt; auxilia ex Britannīā, quae contrā eās 15 regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

Cæsar has good reasons for undertaking this war

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendi quās suprā ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebellio facta post dēditionem, dēfectiō datis obsidibus, tot civitātum 20 coniūratiō, in primis nē hāc parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrarentur. Itaque cum intellexeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā libertāti studēre et condiōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs 25 civitātēs cōspirārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

He divides his forces to keep the rest of Gaul loyal

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, qui proximi flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat; Germānōsque, qui auxiliō ā Gallis arcessiti dicēbantur, si per
5 vim nāvibus flūmen trānsire cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriis XII et magnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficisci iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titū-
rium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs,
10 Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque mittit, qui eam manum distinden-
dam cūret.

Brutus is placed in command of the fleet

D. Brūtum adulēscētem classī Gallicisque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquisque pācātis regiōnibus convenire iusserat, praeficit, et cum primum possit in Venetōs
15 proficisci iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiis contendit.

The town sites of the Veneti are described

12. Erant eius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita in extrēmīs lingulis prōmunturiisque neque pedibus aditum habērent cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset (quod accidit semper hōrārū XII spatiō), neque nāvibus, quod rūsus
20 minuenta aestū nāvēs in vadis adflictārentur.

The difficulty of storming them

Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppugnātiō impediēbātur; ac si quandō — magnitūdine operis forte superāti, extrūsō mari aggere ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidi moenibus adaequātis — dēspērāre fortūnis suis coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium

adpulsō, cuius rei summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūsus isdem opportunitātibus loci dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētīnēbantur summaque erat vāstō atque apertō 5 mari, magnis aestibus, rārīs ac prope nūllis portibus, difficultās nāvigandi.

The ships of the Veneti

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere pos- 10 sent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodātae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvis vim et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitudinem trabibus, cōnfixa clāvis ferreis digiti pollicis crassitudine; ancorae prō 15 fūnibus ferreis catēnis revinctae; pellēs prō vēlis alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae, sive propter inopiam linī atque eius ūsūs inscientiam sive eō (quod est magis vērisimile) quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceani tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinēri ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlis nōn satis commodē posse 20 arbitrābantur.

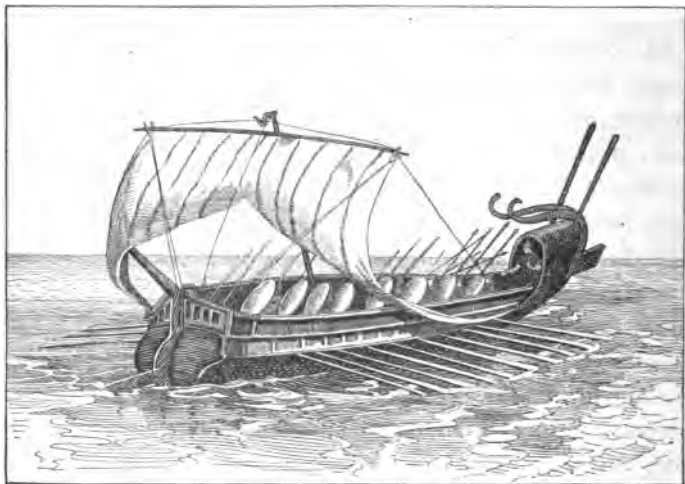
They are better adapted to existing conditions than those of the Romans

Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae classi eius modi congressus erat ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret; reliqua prō loci nātūrā, prō vi tempestātum, illis essent aptiōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim eis nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant — tanta 25 in eis erat firmitūdō — neque propter altitudinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādē dē causā minus commodē cōpulis continēbantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et sē ventō

dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadis cōsisterent tūtius et ab aestū relictæ nihil saxa et cōtēs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostris nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

The Roman fleet arrives and is attacked by the Veneti

14. Complūribus expugnātis oppidis Caesar, ubi intellēxit
5 frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captis



ROMAN BATTLESHIP (NAVIS LONGA)

oppidis reprimi neque eis nocērī posse, statuit expectandam classem. Quæ ubi convēnit ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter ccxx nāvēs eōrum, parātissimæ atque omni genere armōrum ōrnātissimæ, profectæ ex portū nostris
10 adversæ cōstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classi præerat, vel tribūnis militum centuriōibusque, quibus singulæ nāvēs erant attribūtæ, cōstābat quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pugnae insisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātis, tamen hās altitudō

puppiū ex barbaris nāvibus superābat; ut neque ex infēriore locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa ā Gallis gravius acciderent.

A Roman device disables the ships of the enemy

Ūna erat magnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostris, — falcēs praeacūtāe insertae adfixaeque longuriis, nōn absimili fōrmā 5 mūrālium falcium. His cum fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant comprēhēnsī adductique erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō praeurumpēbantur. Quibus abscisis antemnae necessariō concidēbant; ut, cum omnis Gallicis nāvibus spēs in vēlis armāmentisque cōsisteret, his ēreptis omnis ūsus 10 nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī militēs facile superābant atque eō magis quod in cōspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus 15 dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

The Romans win the victory and capture the hostile ships

15. Disiectis (ut diximus) antemnis, cum singulās bināe ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs summā vī trāscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbari fieri animadvertērunt, expugnātis complūribus nāvibus, 20 cum ei rei nūllum reperirētur auxilium, fugā salutem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversis in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōsectāti expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omni 25 numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā ūsque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur.

The Veneti surrender and are punished

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque ōrae maritimae cōfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis in quibus aliquid cōnsili aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubique fuerat



A NAVAL BATTLE

5 in ūnum locum coēgerant ; quibus āmissis reliquī neque quō
 sē reciperent neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent
 habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In
 quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit quō diligentius
 in reliquum tempus ā barbaris iūs lēgātōrum cōservārētur.
 10 Itaque omni senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.



“ RELIQUOS SUB CORONA VENDIDIT ”

(See page 94, line 10)

THE WAR WITH THE VENELLI

Sabinus, arriving among the Venelli, finds them hostile

17. Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabinus, cum eīs cōpiis quās ā Caesare accēperat, in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit. His praecerat Viridovix ac summam imperi tenēbat eārum omnium civitātum quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum magnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque his paucis 5 diēbus Aulerci Eburovicēs Lexoviiue senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs belli esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovice coniūnxērunt; magnaue praetereā multitudō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, et quōs spēs praedandi studiumque bel- 10 landi ab agrī culturā et cotidiānō labōre sēvocābat.

He leads the Gauls to the belief that he is afraid

Sabinus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castris sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovix contrā eum duōrum milium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotidiēque prōductis cōpiis pugnandi potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn solum hostibus in contemptiōnem Sabinus veniret 15 sed etiam nostrōrum militum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opiniōnem timōris praebuit ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat quod cum tantā multitudīne hostium, praesertim eō absente quī summam imperi tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut op- 20 portunitāte aliquā datā, lēgātō dimicandum nōn existimābat.

He strengthens this belief by a stratagem

18. Hāc cōfirmātā opiniōne timōris, idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex eīs quōs auxili causā sēcum habēbat. Huic magnīs praemiis pollicitātiōibusque persuādet utī ad hostēs trānseat et quid fieri velit 25

ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmā-
nōrum prōpōnit; quibus angustiis ipse Caesar ā Venetis
premātur docet: 'Neque longius abesse quā proximā nocte
Sabinus clam ex castris exercitum ēducāt et ad Caesarem
5 auxili ferendi causā proficiscātur.' Quod ubi auditum est,
conclāmant omnēs occāsiōnem negōtī bene gerendi āmitten-
dam nōn esse, ad castra iri oportēre.

Thoroughly convinced, they prepare an immediate attack

Multae rēs ad hoc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superi-
ōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō, perfugae cōfirmātiō, inopia
10 cibāriōrum, cui rei parum diligenter ab eis erat prōvisum, spēs
Veneticī belli, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt
crēdunt. His rēbus adducti nōn prius Viridovicem reliquōsque
ducēs ex conciliō dīmittunt quam ab eis sit concessum, arma
utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laeti,
15 ut explōrātā victoriā, sarmentis virgultisque conlētis quibus
fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

They rush to the camp, where they arrive exhausted

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātīm ab imō ac-
clivis circiter passūs mille. Hūc magnō cursū contendērunt,
ut quam minimum spatī ad sē conligendōs armandōsque
20 Rōmānis darētur, exanimātique pervēnērunt.

Sabinus suddenly sallies forth and defeats them

Sabinus suōs hortātus cupientibus signum dat. Impeditis
hostibus propter ea quae ferēbant onera, subitō duābus portis
ēruptiōnem fieri iubet. Factum est opportunitāte loci, hos-
tium inscientiā ac dēfatigātiōne, virtūte militum et superiōrum
25 pugnārū exercitātiōne, ut nē primum quidem nostrōrum
impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs integris

viribus milites nostri consecuti magnum numerum eorum occiderunt; reliquos equites consecrati, paucos, qui ex fuga evaserant, reliquerunt.

Sic uno tempore et de navali pugna Sabinus et de Sabini victoria Caesar est certior factus; civitatesque omnes se statim Titurio dederunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallorum alacer ac promptus est animus, sic mollis ac minimè resistens ad calamitates perferendas mens eorum est.

THE WAR IN AQUITANIA

Crassus is attacked by the Sotiates

20. Eodem ferè tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquitaniam pervenisset, — quae, ut ante dictum est, est tertia pars Galliae, — cum intellexeret in eis locis sibi bellum gerendum ubi paucis ante annis L. Valerius Praeconinus legatus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde L. Manlius praecōsul impedimentis amissis profugisset, non mediocrem sibi diligentiam adhibendam intellegebat. Itaque re frumentaria 15 provisā, auxiliis equitātūque comparatō, multis praeterea viris fortibus Tolosā et Narbonē (quae sunt civitates Galliae provinciae finitimae his regionibus) nominatim evocatis, in Sotiatium finēs exercitum intrōdūxit. Cuius adventū cognitō Sotiatēs magnis copiis coactis equitātūque, quō plurimum 20 valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adorti primum equestre proelium commiserunt; deinde equitātū suō pulsō atque insequentibus nostris, subitō pedestrēs copias, quas in convalle in insidiis collocaverant, ostendērunt. Hi nostrōs disiectōs adorti proelium renovārunt.

25

He defeats them and they surrender

21. Pugnatum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sōtiātēs superiō-
 ribus victōriis frēti in suā virtūte tōtius Aquitāniae salūtem
 positam putārent ; nostrī autem quid sine imperātōre et sine
 reliquis legiōnibus, adulēscutulō duce, efficere possent per-
 5 spici cuperent ; tandem cōfecti volneribus hostēs terga
 vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex
 itinere oppidum Sōtiātium oppugnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter
 resistantibus vineās turrēsque ēgit. Illi, aliās ēruptiōne temp-
 tātā, aliās cuniculis ad aggerem vineāsque āctis (cuius rei
 10 sunt longē peritissimi Aquitānī, proptereā quod multis locis
 apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt), ubi diligentīā nostrōrum
 nihil hīs rēbus prōfici posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Cras-
 sum mittunt, sēque in dēditionem ut recipiat petunt. Quā
 rē impetrātā, arma trādere iussī, faciunt.

Adiatunnus and his brothers in arms

15 22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentis animīs,
 aliā ex parte oppidi Adiatunnus, quī summam imperī tenē-
 bat, cum DC dēvōtis, quōs illi solduriōs appellant, — quōrum
 haec est condiciō, utī omnibus in vitā commodis ūnā cum
 eis fruantur quōrum sē amicitiae dēdiderint ; sī quid hīs per
 20 vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum ūnā ferant aut sibi mortem
 cōnsciscant ; neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est
 quisquam quī, eō interfectō cuius sē amicitiae dēvōvisset,
 mortem recūsāret, — cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere
 cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnitiōnis sublātō, cum ad
 25 arma militēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnātum
 esset, repulsus in oppidum, tamen utī eādem dēditionis con-
 diciōne ūterētur ā Crassō impetrāvit.

Other hostile tribes gather their armies against Crassus

23. Armis obsidibusque acceptis Crassus in finēs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbari comōti, quod oppidum, et nātūrā loci et manū mūnitum, paucis diēbus quibus eō ventum erat expugnātum cognōverant, lēgātōs quōqueversus dimittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, 5 cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās civitatēs lēgāti quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae finitimae Aquitāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur. Quōrum adventū magnā cum auctōritāte et magnā hominum multitudine bellum gerere cōnantur. Ducēs vērō ei dēliguntur qui ūnā cum 10 Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam rei militāris habēre existimābantur. Hī cōnsuētūdine populi Rōmāni loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere instituunt.

Crassus believes that conditions demand an immediate action

Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, — suās cōpiās propter 15 exiguitātem nōn facile didūci, hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre et castris satis praesidi relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī, — nōn cunctandum existimāvit quīn pugnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, 20 ubi omnēs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pugnae cōstituit.

Crassus offers battle, but the enemy declines

24. Primā lūce prōductis omnibus cōpiis, duplici aciē institūtā, auxiliis in mediam aciem coniectis, quid hostēs cōnsili caperent expectābat. Illi, etsi propter multitudinē et vete- 25 rem bellī glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dimicātūrōs existimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur, obsessis

viis, commeātū interclūsō, sine vulnere victōriā potiri; et, si propter inopiam rei frumentariae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impeditōs in agmine et sub sarcinis infirmiorēs animō adoriri cōgitābant. Hōc cōsiliō probātō, ab ducibus
5 prōductis Rōmānōrum cōpiis, sēsē castris tenēbant.

Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opīniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs militēs alacriōrēs ad pugnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audirentur exspectāri diūtius nōn oportere quā ad castra irētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus
10 cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

Crassus attacks the enemy's camp

25. Ibi cum alii fossās complērent, alii multis tēlis coniectis dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitiōnibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque (quibus ad pugnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfidēbat) lapidibus tēlisque subministrandis et ad aggerem caespitibus compor-
15 tandis speciem atque opīniōnem pugnantium praeberent; cum item ab hostibus cōstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circum-
itis hostium castris Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādē esse diligentiā ab decumānā portā castra mūnita facilemque aditum
20 habēre.

A Roman force surprises the camp in the rear

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus ut magnis prae-
miis pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fieri velit os-
tendit. Illi, ut erat imperātum, dēvectis eis cohortibus quae
praesidiō castris relictae intritae ab labōre erant, et longiōre
25 itinere circumductis, nē ex hostium castris cōspici possent,
omnium oculis mentibusque ad pugnam intentis, celeriter ad
eās quās diximus mūnitiōnēs pervēnērunt, atque his prōrutis
prius in hostium castris cōstitērunt quam plānē ab his
vidēri aut quid rei gererētur cognōsci posset.

The enemy abandon their camp and flee

Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte auditō nostri redintegrātis viribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriæ accidere cōsuēvit, ācrius impugnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventi, dēspērātis omnibus rēbus, sē per mūnitiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimis 5 campis cōsectātus, ex milium L numerō, quæ ex Aquitāniā Cantabrisque convēnisse cōstābat, vix quārtā parte relictā, multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

Most of the other Aquitanian tribes now surrender

27. Hāc auditā pugnā maxima pars Aquitāniæ sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō misit; quō in numerō fuērunt Tar- 10 belli, Bigerriōnēs, Ptiānii, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Ausci, Garumni, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ultimæ nātiōnēs anni tempore cōfisæ, quod hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

CÆSAR'S EXPEDITION TO THE NORTH

Cæsar marches against the Morini and Menapii

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsi prope exācta iam 15 aestās erat, tamen quod omni Galliā pācātā Morini Menapiique supererant qui in armis essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce misissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōfici posse, eō exercitum dūxit; qui longē aliā ratiōne ac reliqui Galli bellum gerere coepērunt. 20

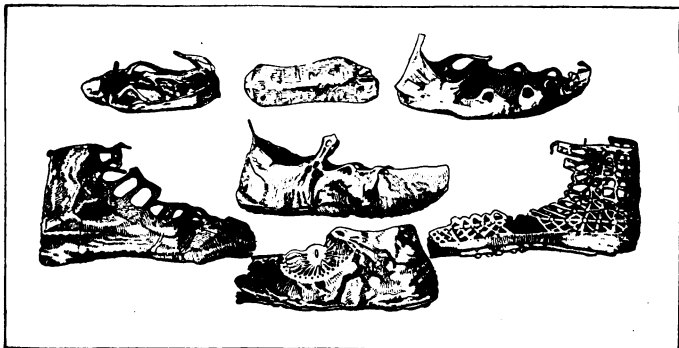
They hide in the forests and swamps

Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs quæ proeliō contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnire

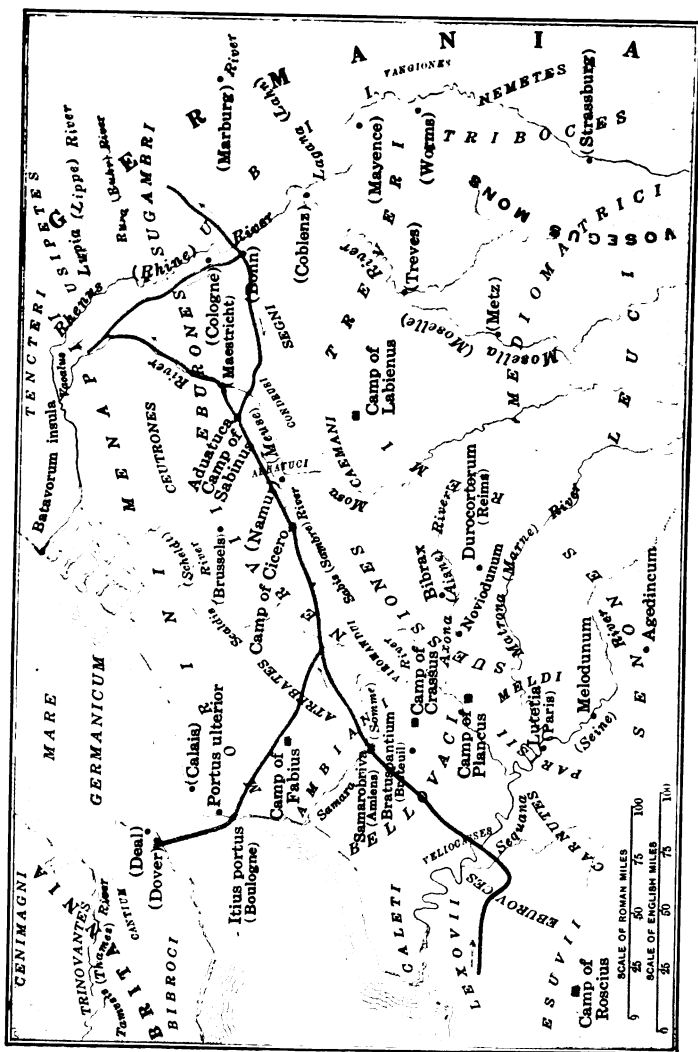
instituisset neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in opere nostris, subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostri celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt, et complūribus interfectis longius impeditiōribus locis secūtī paucōs ex suis dēperdidērunt.

Violent storms put an end to further action

29. Reliquis deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere instituit, et, nē quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam māteriam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem conlocābat et prō vāllō ad
10 utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incredibili celeritatē magnō spatiō paucis diēbus cōfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedimenta ā nostris tenērentur, ipsi dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eius modī sunt tempestātēs cōsecūtae uti opus necessariō intermitterētur, et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pel-
15 libus militēs continēri nōn possent. Itaque vāstātis omnibus eōrum agris, vicis aedificiisque incēnsis, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercis Lexoviisque, reliquis item civitatibus quae proximē bellum fēcērant, in hibernis conlocāvit.



ROMAN FOOTWEAR



CAMPAIGN MAP FOR 55 B.C.

This map shows also the location of the various camps where the divisions of Cæsar's forces were quartered after the campaign of 54 B.C. (see Book V, chapters 24 and 25)

BOOK IV

CÆSAR'S FOURTH CAMPAIGN, 55 B.C.

THE WAR WITH THE GERMANS IN GAUL

Harassed by the Suebi, two German tribes invade Gaul

EĀ QUAE secūta est hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompeiō, M. Crassō cōsulibus, Usipetēs Germāni et item Tencterī magnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā mari quō Rhēnus influit. Causa trānseundi fuit quod ab Suēbis complūrēs annōs exagitāti bellō premēbantur et agrī culturā prohibēbantur. 5

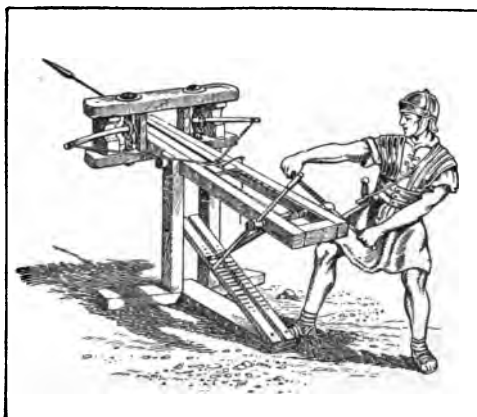
Strength and customs of the Suebi

Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hi centum pāgōs habēre dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula milia armātōrum bellandī causā ex finibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt. Hi rūsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illi domī remanent. Sic neque agrī culturā nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed privāti ac sēparāti agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotidiānā exercitātiōne et libertāte vitæ, quod ā pueris nullō officiō aut disciplinā adsuēfactī nihil omninō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et virēs alit et 15

immāni corporum magnitudine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam
 sē cōsuētudinem addūxērunt ut locis frigidissimis neque
 vestitūs praeter pellēs habērent quicquam, quārum propter
 exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in
 5 flūminibus.

Their relations with traders

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō ut quae bellō cēperint



A CATAPULT (*TORMENTUM*)

quibus vëndant
 habeant, quam
 quō ūllam rem
 ad sē importārī
 dēsiderent. Quin
 etiam iūmentis,
 quibus maximē
 Galli dēlectantur
 quaeque impēn-
 sō parant pretiō,
 Germānī impor-
 tātis nōn ūtun-
 tur; sed quae
 sunt apud eōs
 nāta, parva atque

dēfōrmiā, haec cotidiānā exercitātiōne, summī ut sint labōris,
 efficiunt.

Their horsemanship. Their sobriety

Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis dēsiliunt ac pedibus
 25 proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstigiō adsuēfēcē-
 runt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque
 eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam
 ephippiis ūti. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiātōrum
 equitum quamvis paucī adire audent.

Vinum omninō ad sē importārī nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effeminārī arbitrantur.

They destroy and oppress their neighbors

3. Pūblicē maximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē ā suis finibūs vacāre agrōs : hāc rē significārī magnum 5 numerum civitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbis circiter milia passuum centum agrī vacāre dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubii, quōrum fuit civitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum ; eī paulō, quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt cēteris hū- 10 māniōrēs, proptereā quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant, et ipsi propter propinquitātem Gallicis sunt mōribus adsuēfacti. Hōs cum Suēbi multis saepe bellis experti propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque civitātis finibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectigālēs 15 sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs infirmiorēsque redēgērunt.

*The Usipetes and Tencteri are checked at the Rhine
by the Menapii*

4. In eādē causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencteri, quōs suprā diximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuerunt ; ad extrēmum tamen agris expulsi et multis locis Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt, quās 20 regiōnēs Menapii incolēbant. Hi ad utramque ripam flūminis agrōs aedificia vicōsque habēbant ; sed tantae multitudinis aditū perterriti, ex eis aedificiis quae trāns flūmen habuerant dēmigrāverant, et cis Rhēnum dispositis praesidiis Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant.

By a ruse they succeed in crossing into Gaul

Illi omnia experti, cum neque vi contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsire propter custodiās Menapiōrum possent, reverti sē in suās sēdēs regiōnesque simulāvērunt, et tridui viam prōgressi rūsus revertērunt, 5 atque, omni hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōfectō, insciōs inopinantesque Menapiōs oppressērunt; quī, dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs facti, sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vicōs remigrāverant. His interfectis nāvibusque eōrum occupātis, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum 10 quae citrā Rhēnum erat certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiis occupātis reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiis aluērunt.

Cæsar distrusts the Gauls because of their fickle character

5. His dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitatem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliis capiendis mōbilēs 15 et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil his committendum existimāvit. Est enim hoc Gallicae cōsuētūdinis, uti et viātōrēs etiam invitōs cōsistere cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cognōverit quaerant; et mercātōrēs in oppidis volgus circumsistat, quibusque ex 20 regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cognōverint prōnūtiāre cōgat. His rēbus atque auditiōnibus permōti, dē summis saepe rēbus cōsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vēstigiō paenitēre necesse est, cum incertis rūmōribus serviant et plērique ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

He finds proof of Gallic disloyalty and resolves on war with Germany

25 6. Quā cōsuētūdine cognitā, Caesar, nē graviōri bellō occurreret, mātūrius quam cōsuērat ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea, quae fore suspicātus erat, facta

cognōvit : missās lēgatiōnēs ab nōn nūllis civitatibus ad Germānōs invitātōsque eōs uti ab Rhēnō discēderent, omnia quae postulāssent ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adducti Germāni lātius iam vagābantur et in finēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. 5 Principibus Galliae ēvocātis Caesar ea quae cognōverat dissimulanda sibi existimāvit, eōrumque animis permulsis et cōfirmātis, equitātūque imperātō, bellum cum Germānis gerere cōstituit.

The German envoys ask Caesar for lands in Gaul

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctis, iter in 10 ea loca facere coepit quibus in locis esse Germānōs audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgati ab eis vērēnunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō : 'Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum inferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur, quin armis contendant, quod Germānōrum cōn- 15 suētūdō sit ā maiōribus trādita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dicere : vēnisse invitōs, ēiectōs domō ; sī suam grātiā Rōmāni velint, posse eis ūtilēs esse amicōs ; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre quōs armis possēderint : sēsē ūnis Suēbis 20 concēdere, quibus nē dii quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint ; reliquum quidem in terris esse nēminem quem nōn superāre possint.'

Caesar refuses and orders them to leave the country

8. Ad haec Caesar quae visum est respondit ; sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis : 'Sibi nūllam cum his amicitiam esse posse, 25 sī in Galliā remanērent ; neque vērū esse, quī suōs finēs tuērī nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre ; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs quī dari tantae praesertim multitudinī sine

iniuriā possint; sed licēre, si velint, in Ubiōrum finibus cōnsidere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriis querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hoc sē Ubiis imperātūrum.'

The envoys seek delay

- 5 9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dixērunt et rē dēliberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā nē propius sē castra movēret, petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dixit. Cognōverat enim magnam partem equitātūs ab eis aliquot diēbus ante praedandi
10 frūmentandique causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque eius rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

The Meuse and the Rhine

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā quae appel-
15 lātur Vacalus, insulam efficit Batavōrum, neque longius inde milibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum influit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per finēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum citātus fertur; et ubi
20 Ōceanō adpropinquāvit, in plūrēs dēfluit partēs multis gentibusque insulis effectis, quārum pars magna ā feris barbarisque nātiōnibus incolitur, — ex quibus sunt quī piscibus atque ōvis avium vivere existimantur, — multisque capitibus in Ōceanum influit.

The envoys return. More parleying to gain time

- 25 11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII milibus abesset, ut erat cōstitutum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressi magnopere nē longius prōgrederētur

orābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant uti ad eōs equitēs quī agmen antecessissent praemitteret, eōsque pugnā prohibēret, sibiue ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendi; quōrum sī principēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrando fidem fēcisset, eā condiōne quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē 5
ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōficiendās sibi tridui spatium daret.

Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrabātur, ut tridui morā interpositā equitēs eōrum quī abessent reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius milibus passuum IIII aquātiōnis 10
causā prōcessūrum eō diē dixit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī convenirent, ut dē eōrum postulātis cognōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant mittit quī nūntiārent nē hostēs proeliō laceressent; et, sī ipsi laceressentur, sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū propius 15
accessisset.

A treacherous attack is made on the Roman cavalry

12. At hostēs, ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōspexērunt, quōrum erat v milium numerus, cum ipsi nōn amplius DCCC equitēs habērent, quod ei quī frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod 20
lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtiis erat ab his petitus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūsus his resistentibus, cōsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, subfossisque equis complūribusque nostris dēiectis, reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt, atque ita 25
perterritōs ēgērunt ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent quam in cōspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent.

Heroic death of Piso and his brother

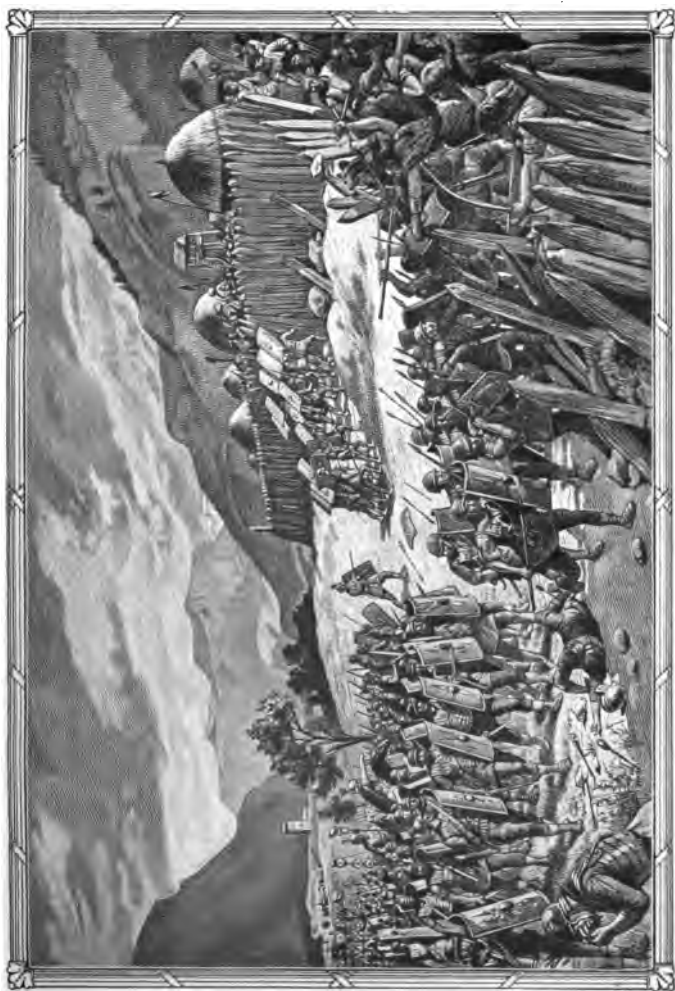
In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur IIII et LXX; in his vir fortissimus, Pisō Aquitānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cuius avus in civitatē suā rēgnū obtinuerat, amicus ab senātū nostrō appellātus. Hic cum frātri inter-
 5 clūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculō ēripuit, ipse equō volnerātō dēiectus, quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multis volneribus acceptis cecidisset, atque id frāter, qui iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

Cæsar decides that the situation demands stern measures

10 13. Hōc factō proeliō, Cæsar neque iam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condiōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab eis qui, per dolum atque insidiās petitā pāce, ultrō bellum intulissent: exspectāre vērō, dum hostium cōpiæ augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat;
 15 et cognitā Gallōrum infirmitātē, quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōsecūti, sentiēbat; quibus ad cōsilia capiēda nihil spatii dandum existimābat.

He arrests the German chiefs who come asking a truce

His cōstitūtis rēbus et cōsiliō cum lēgātis et quaestōre commūnicātō, nē quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, oppor-
 20 tūnissima rēs accidit, quod postridiē eius diēi māne eādē et perfidiā et simulatiōne ūsi Germāni frequentēs, omnibus principibus maiōribusque nātū adhibitīs, ad eum in castra venērunt: simul, ut dicēbātur, pūrgandi sui causā, quod, contrā atque esset dictum et ipsi petissent, proelium pridē commi-
 25 sissent; simul ut, si quid possent, dē indūitiis fallendō impetrārent. Quōs sibi Cæsar oblātōs gāvīsus illōs retinēri iussit;



" MILITES NOSTRI IN CASTRA INRUPERUNT "

(See page 111, line 10)

ipse omnēs cōpiās castris ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recenti proeliō perterritum esse existimābat, agmen subsequi iussit.

He then makes a quick march on the German camp and surprises it

14. Aciē triplici institūtā et celeriter VIII milium itinere cōfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam quid agerētur Germānī sentire possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterriti, 5 et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōnsili habendi neque arma capiendī spatiō datō, perturbantur, cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere an castra dēfendere an fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, militēs nostrī pristini diēi perfidiā 10 incitāti in castra inrūpērunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt, paulisper nostris restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedimentaue proelium commisērunt; at reliqua multitudō puerōrum mulierumque — nam cum omnibus suis domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant — passim fugere 15 coepit; ad quōs cōsectandōs Caesar equitātum misit.

The Germans are thoroughly demoralized and many perish

15. Germānī, post tergum clāmōre auditō, cum suōs interfici vidērent, armis abiectis signisque militāribus relictis sē ex castris eiēcērunt, et cum ad cōfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, magnō numerō 20 interfectō, reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt; atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppressi periērunt. Nostri ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs, perpaucis vulnerātis, ex tanti belli timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum ccccxxx milium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar eis quōs in castris 25 retinuerat discēdendī potestātem fēcit. Illi supplicia cruciātusque Gallōrum veriti, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dixērunt. His Caesar libertātem concessit.

THE FIRST INVASION OF GERMANY

*Caesar's reasons for believing that he ought to cross
the Rhine*

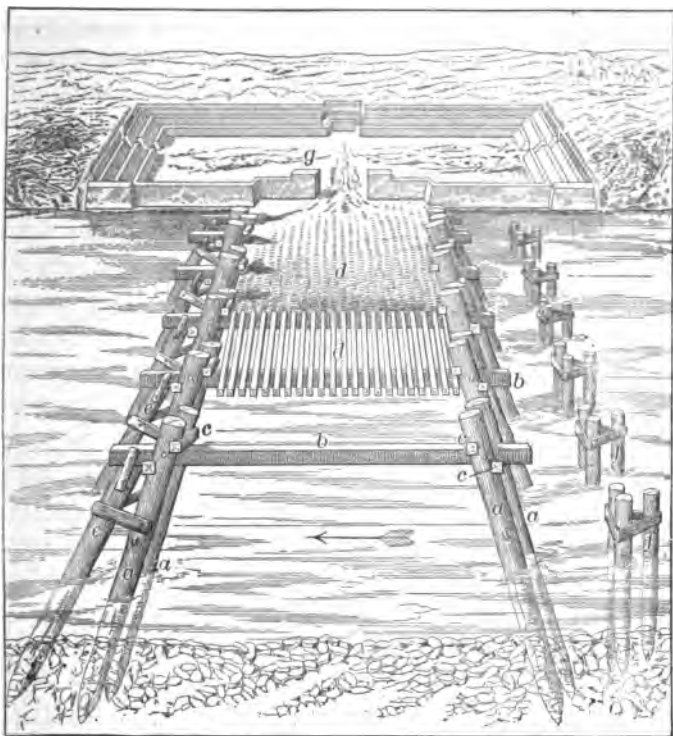
16. Germānicō bellō cōfectō, multis dē causis Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum: quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impelli ut in Galliam venirent, suis quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populi Rōmāni exercitum Rhēnum trānsire.

Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tenc-
terōrum, quam suprā commemorāvi praedandi frūmentandique
causā Mosam trānsisse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam
10 suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in finēs Sugambrōrum recēperat
sēque cum eis coniūxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs
mīssisset quī postulārent eōs quī sibi Galliaequē bellum intulis-
sent sibi dēderent, respondērunt: 'Populi Rōmāni imperium
Rhēnum finire; si sē invītō Germānōs in Galliam trānsire
15 nōn aequum existimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperi aut
potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?'

Ubii autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānis ad Caesarem lēgā-
tōs miserant, amicitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, magnopere
ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs
20 premerentur; vel, si id facere occupātiōnibus rei publicae
prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret; id sibi
ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum
esse nōmen atque opiniōnem eius exercitūs, Ariovistō pulsō
et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ultimās Germānō-
25 rum nātiōnēs, utī opiniōne et amicitia populi Rōmāni tūti
esse possent. Nāvium magnam cōpiam ad trānsportandū
exercitum pollicēbantur.

He decides to bridge the river

17. Caesar his de causis quās commemorāvi Rhēnum trānsire dēcreverat; sed nāvibus trānsire neque satis tūtum



PONS A CAESARE IN RHENO FACTUS

aa, tigna bina sesquipedalia; *bb*, trabes bipedales; *cc*, fibulae; *dd*, directa materia longioriis cratibusque constrata; *ee*, sublicae ad inferiorem partem fluminis pro ariete oblique actae; *ff*, sublicae supra pontem immissae; *g*, castellum ad caput pontis positum

esse arbitrabātur, neque suae neque populi Rōmāni dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsi summa difficultās faciendi pontis prōpōnēbatur propter lātitudinem, rapiditatem, 5

altitudinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum existimābat.

The plan of the bridge

Ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bina sēsquipedālia paulum ab imō praeacūta, dīmēnsa ad altitudinem flūminis, 5 intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfixerat fistūcisque adēgerat, — nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastigātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, — eis item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta 10 intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab inferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque insuper bipedalibus trabibus immissis, quantum eōrum tignōrum iūnctūra distābat, binis utrimque fibulis ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsis atque in contrāriam 15 partem revinctis, tanta erat operis firmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra ut, quō maior vis aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius inligāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contexēbantur ac longuriis crātibusque cōnsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius sublicae et ad inferiōrem partem flūminis obliquē 20 agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omni opere coniūnctae vim flūminis exciperent; et aliae item suprā pontem mediocri spatiō, ut, si arborum trunci sive nāvēs dēiciendi operis causā essent ā barbaris immissae, his dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vis minuerētur, neu ponti nocērent.

Caesar crosses the bridge and invades Germany

25 18. Diēbus x quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī, omni opere effectō, exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in finēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus civitātibus ad eum lēgātī

veniunt; quibus pācem atque amicitiam petentibus liberā-liter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūci iubet. At Sugambri, ex eō tempore quō pōns institui coeptus est fugā comparātā, hortantibus eis quōs ex Tencteris atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, finibus suis excesserant suaque omnia exportā- 5 verant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

The invasion fills the Germans with terror

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus, omnibus vicis aedificiisque incēnsis frūmentisque succisis, sē in finēs Ubiōrum recēpit; atque his auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suēbis premerentur, haec ab eis cognōvit: 'Suēbōs, 10 posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pontem fieri comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō, nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmisisse, uti dē oppidis dēmigrārent, liberōs, uxōrēs, suaque omnia in silvis dēpōnerent, atque omnēs qui arma ferre possent ūnum in locum convenirent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium 15 ferē regiōnum eārum quās Suēbi obtinērent; hic Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre, atque ibi dēcertāre cōstituisse.'

Caesar returns to Gaul and destroys the bridge

Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus eis rēbus cōfectis quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōstituerat, ut Germānis metum iniceret, ut Sugambros ulciscerētur, ut Ubiōs 20 obsidiōne liberāret, diēbus omnīnō xviii trāns Rhēnum cōsūmptis, satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

THE FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN

Cæsar decides to invade Britain

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Cæsar, etsi in hīs locis (quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit) mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit: quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat; et, si tempus ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, si modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, 10 neque eis ipsis quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliās nōtum est.

Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset insulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum belli habērent aut quibus in- 15 stitūtis ūterentur, neque quī essent ad maiōrem nāvium multitudinem idōnei portūs, reperire poterat.

He sends Volusenus to reconnoiter and Commius as a peace envoy

21. Ad haec cognōscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus, C. Volusēnum cum nāvi longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explōrātis omnibus rēbus ad 20 sē quam primum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiis in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex finitimis regiōnibus, et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat classem, iubet convenire.

25 Interim cōsiliō eius cognitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus insulae civitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populi

Rōmāni obtemperāre. Quibus auditis, liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit; et cum eis ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātis rēgem ibi cōstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōsiliū probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābatur cuiusque auctō- 5 ritās in his regiōnibus magni habēbatur, mittit. Huic imperat



AN ANCIENT HARBOR

quās possit adeat civitatēs, hortēturque ut populi Rōmāni fidem sequantur sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volu- sēnus perspectis regiōnibus quantum ei facultātis dari potuit, qui nāvi ēgredi ac sē barbaris committere nōn auderet, quintō 10 diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat.

While the ships are gathering, the Morini surrender

22. Dum in his locis Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgāti vēnērunt qui sē dē superiōris temporis cōsiliō excūsarent, quod

hominēs barbari et nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperiti bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāset factūrōs pollicērentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere
 5 volēbat neque belli gerendi propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārū rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, magnum eīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductis eōs in fidem recipit.

The muster of the fleet and disposition of the forces

Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriis coāctis, quot satis esse ad
 10 duās trāsportandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārū habēbat quaestōrī, lēgātis praefectisque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriāe nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā milibus passuum VIII ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venire possent; hās equitibus distribuit.
 15 Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabinō et Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātis in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit. Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābatur portum tenēre iussit.

Caesar crosses the channel and seeks a good landing place

20 **23.** His cōstitūtis rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem, tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ulteriorem portum prōgredi et nāvēs cōscendere et sē sequi iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quārtā cum primis nāvibus Britanniam attigit,
 25 atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit. Cuius loci haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbatur uti ex locis superiōribus in

litus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenirent, ad hōram nōnam in ancoris expectāvit.

Interim lēgātis tribūnisque militum convocātis et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae fieri vellet ostendit, monuitque, 5 ut rei militāris ratiō, maximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent

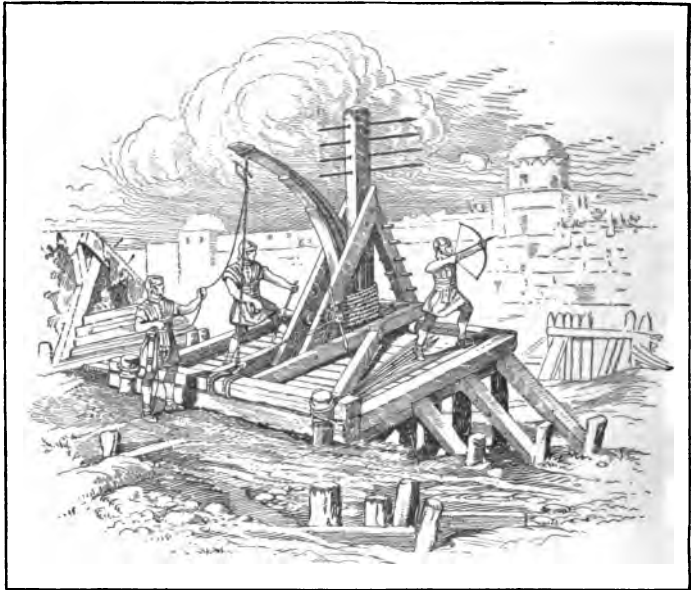


THE CLIFFS OF DOVER

(ut quae celerem atque instabilem mōtum habērent), ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eis administrārentur. His dīmissis et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātis ancoris, circiter milia passuum VII ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō litore nāvēs cōstituit.

The Britons oppose the landing of the Romans

24. At barbari, cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriis, quō plērumque genere in proeliis ūtī cōsuērunt, reliquis cōpiis subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod



A LARGE CATAPULT (TORMENTUM)

5 nāvēs propter magnitudinem nisi in altō cōstitui nōn poterant; militibus autem, ignōtis locis, impeditis manibus, magnō et gravi onere armōrum pressis, simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum; cum illi aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressi,
 10 omnibus membris expeditis, nōtissimis locis, audācter tēla conicerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostri



LANDING OF THE ROMANS ON THE COAST OF BRITAIN

perterriti atque huius omninō generis pugnae imperitī nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūti proeliis cōsue-rant ūtēbantur.

Cæsar tries to drive them away

25. Quod ubi Cæsar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbaris inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum 5 expeditior, paulum removēri ab onerāriis nāvibus et rēmīs incitāri et ad latus apertum hostium cōn-stitui, atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostēs prōpelli ac sub-movēri iussit; quae rēs magnō ūsui nostris fuit. Nam et nāvium figurā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsi-tātō genere tormentōrum permōti, barbari cōstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt.

Valor of a Roman standard bearer

Atque nostris militibus cunctan-tibus, maximē propter altitudinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōni feliciter eveniret, "Dē-silite," inquit, "commilitōnēs, nisi voltis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum rei pūbli-cae atque imperātōri officium praestiterō." Hoc cum vōce magnā dixisset, sē ex nāvi prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam 25 ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortāti inter sē nē tantum dēde-cus admitterētur, ūniversi ex nāvi dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximis nāvibus cum cōspexissent, subsecūti hostibus adpropinquāvērunt,



EAGLE BEARER

The Romans land and the Britons flee

26. Pugnātum est ab utrisque ācriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter insistere neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvi quibuscumque signis occurrerat sē adgregābat, magnopere perturbābantur ;
 5 hostēs vērō, nōtis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvi ēgredientēs cōspexerant, incitātis equis impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, alii ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item
 10 speculātōria nāvigia militibus complēri iussit, et quōs labōrantēs cōspexerat, his subsidia submittēbat. Nostri, simul in āridō cōstitērunt, suis omnibus cōsecūtis in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt ; neque longius prōsequi potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque insulam
 15 capere nōn potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad pristinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

British envoys sue for peace. Caesar grants it

27. Hostēs proeliō superāti, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce misērunt ; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāset factūrōs esse polliciti
 20 sunt. Ūnā cum his lēgātis Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illi ē nāvi ēggressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniciēbant ; tum proeliō factō remisērunt, et in petendā
 25 pāce eius rei culpam in multitudinem contulērunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignōscerētur petivērunt.

Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātis missis pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent,

ignōscere imprudentiae dixit obsidēsque imperāvit ; quōrum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locis arcessitam paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs dixērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique convenire et sē civitatēsque suās Caesari commendāre coepērunt. 5

A storm drives back the cavalry transports

28. His rēbus pāce cōfirmātā, post diem quārtum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs xviii, dē quibus suprā dēmōstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēni ventō solvērunt. Quae cum adpropinquārent Britanniae et ex castris vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō 10 coōrta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset ; sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur ; quae tamen ancoris iactis cum fluctibus complērentur, necessariō adversā nocte in altum 15 prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

Wind and tide dash the fleet on the British coast

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōsuēvit, nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quās Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, 20 et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās adflictābat, neque ūlla nostris facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctis, reliquae cum essent — fūnibus, ancoris reliquisque armāmentis āmissis — ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna (id quod necesse erat 25 accidere) tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deērāt

quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī; et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportere, frūmentum in his locīs in hiemem prōvisum nōn erat.

These disasters encourage the Britons to renew hostilities

30. Quibus rēbus cognitīs prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post
5 proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlocūtī, cum
et equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānis deesse intellege-
rent, et paucitātem militum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōs-
cerent, — quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra quod sine
impedimentis Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, — optimum
10 factū esse dūxērunt, rebelliōne factā, frūmentō commeātūque
nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōducere; quod, his
superātis aut reditū interclūsis, nēminem postea belli infe-
rendi causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōfidēbant. Itaque
rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā paulātīm ex castris discēdere et
15 suōs clam ex agris dēducere coepērunt.

Caesar suspects their design and prepares accordingly

31. At Caesar, etsi nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverat,
tamen, et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs
dare intermiserant, fore id quod accidit suspicābātur. Itaque
ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum
20 ex agris cotidiē in castra cōferēbat, et quae gravissimē
adflictae erant nāvēs, eārum materiā atque aere ad reliquās
reficiendās ūtēbātur, et quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī ex conti-
nenti comportārī iubēbat. Itaque cum summō studiō ā
militibus administrārētur, XII nāvibus āmissis, reliquis ut
25 nāvigārī satis commodē posset effecit.

Part of his men gather grain, others guard the camp

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōsuētūdine unā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus belli suspiciōne interpositā, — cum pars hominum in agris remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, — eī qui prō portis castrōrum in statiōne erant Caesari nūntiāverunt 5 pulverem maiōrem quam cōsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidēri quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset.

The Britons attack a foraging party

Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbaris initum cōsili, cohortēs quae in statiōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficisci, ex reliquis duās in statiōnem succēdere, reliquās armāri et cōnfestim sēsē subsequi iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castris prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premi atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conici animadvertit. Nam quod, omni ex reliquis partibus dēmessō frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicāti hostēs 15 hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvās dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositis armis in metendō occupātōs subitō adorti, paucis interfectis reliquōs incertis ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedis circumdederant.

The Britons' mode of fighting with war chariots

33. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae. Primō per omnēs 20 partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant; et cum sē inter equitūm turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedis dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant uti, si illi ā 25 multitūdine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum

habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis praestant; ac tantum ūsū cotidiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt uti in dēclivi ac praecipiti locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevi moderārī ac flectere, et per tēmōnem per-
 5 currere et in iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōsuērint.

The foragers are rescued. The Britons gather a great army

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostris novitāte pugnae tempore opportunissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt.
 10 Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et brevi tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occupātis, qui erant in agris reliqui discessērunt.
 15 Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castris continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimisērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum militum suis praedicāvērunt, et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum sui liberandi
 20 facultās darētur, si Rōmānōs castris expulissent, dēmōstrāvērunt. His rēbus celeriter magnā multitudīne peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vērunt.

They are defeated and their country is laid waste

35. Caesar, etsi idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, — ut, si essent hostēs pulsi, celeritāte periculum
 25 effugerent, — tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās (dē quō ante dictum est) sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castris cōstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt

ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et viribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex eis occidērunt; deinde, omnibus longē lātēque aedificiis incēnsis, sē in castra recēpērunt.

Cæsar demands hostages and returns to Gaul

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Cæsarem dē 5 pāce vērērunt. His Cæsar numerum obsidum quem antē imperāverat duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem addūci iussit; quod, propinquā diē aequinoctī, infirmīs nāvibus hiemī, nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn existimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervērērunt; sed ex eis onerāriæ duae eōsdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō infrā dēlātæ sunt. 20



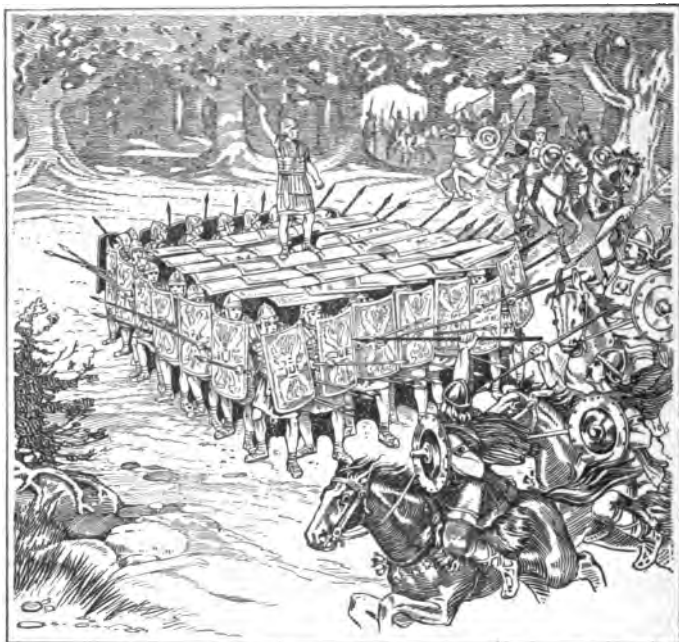
CAVALRYMAN CHARGING

THE REVOLT OF THE MORINI AND THE MENAPII

The Morini attack Cæsar's troops

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī militēs circiter ccc atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quōs Cæsar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs reliquerat, spē praedae adductī primō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, si sēsē interfici nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum 25

illi orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter milia VI convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castris equitātum suis auxiliō misit. Interim



ORBIS MILITUM

nostrī milītēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius
5 hōris IIII fortissimē pugnāvērunt, et paucīs volneribus acceptis complūrēs ex his occidērunt. Postēā vērō quam equitātus noster in cōspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs terga vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occisus.

They are subdued. The Menapii hide away

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum eīs legiōnibus quās ex Britannīā redūxerat in Morinōs, qui rebellīōnem fēcerant, misit. Quī cum propter siccitatēs palūdum quō sē reciperent nōn habērent (quō perfugiō superiōre annō erant ūsi), omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēni pervēnērunt. 5 At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgāti, qui in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātis, frūmentis succisīs, aedificiis incēnsīs, quod Menapii sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt.

Close of the campaign

Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hiberna cōstituit. 10 Eō duae omnīnō civitatēs ex Britannīā obsidēs misērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. His rēbus gestis, ex litteris Caesaris diērum xx supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.



BOOK V

CÆSAR'S FIFTH CAMPAIGN, 54 B.C.

THE SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 1-4

Cæsar spent the winter following his first invasion of Britain in northern Italy and Illyricum, having left orders that, during his absence, a large fleet should be built for a second invasion in the spring (54 B.C.). On returning to his army, which had passed the winter among the Belgæ, he found that twenty-eight war galleys had been constructed, and about six hundred ships of transport.

While the fleet was assembling at Portus Itius, whence the journey across is only thirty miles, Cæsar, with four legions and a force of cavalry, made a rapid expedition to the country of the Treveri, who had shown an inclination to be unfriendly to him. His appearance among them with an army quickly brought the hostile faction and their chief, Indutiomarus, to terms, and after receiving a large number of hostages from them he returned to the coast.

The troops assemble at Portus Itius

HIS rēbus cōstitutis Caesar ad portum Itium cum legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cognōscit LX nāvēs, quae¹ in Meldis factae erant, tempestāte reiectās cursum tenēre nōn potuisse atque eōdem unde erant profectae
5 revertisse; reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus

NOTE. A superior figure *after* a word refers to that word alone; when placed *before* a word it refers to two or more words.

¹ in **Meldis**: the Meldi were a people on the Marne near its confluence with the Seine.

rēbus instructās invenit. Eōdem equitātus tōtius Galliae con-
venit, numerō milia IIII, principēsque ex omnibus civitatibus ;
ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē fidem perspexerat, relin-
quere in Galliā, reliquōs ¹obsidum locō sēcum dūcere dēcrē-
verat, quod, cum ipse abesset, mōtum Galliae verēbātur. 5,

Dumnorix, the crafty and ambitious Hæduan, again appears

6. Erat ūnā cum cēteris Dumnorix ² Haeduus, dē quō
ante ab nōbis dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in primis
cōstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum
imperī, magni animī, magnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cog-
nōverat. Accēdēbat hūc quod in conciliō Haeduōrum Dum- 10
norix dixerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum civitātis dēferri ; ³quod
dictum Haeduī graviter ferēbant neque recūsandi aut dēpre-
candi ⁴ causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id
factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognōverat.

He tries to make trouble for Caesar

Ille omnibus primō precibus petere contendit ut in Galliā 15
relinquerētur ; partim quod ⁵insuētus nāvigandi mare timēret,
partim quod religiōnibus impediri sēsē diceret. Posteaquam
id obstinātē sibi negārī vidit, omnī spē impetrandi adēptā,
principēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs hortārique
coepit utī in continentī remanērent ; metū territāre ⁶: 'Nōn 20
sine causā fieri ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte spoliārētur ; id esse
cōnsilium Caesaris ut, quōs in cōspectū Galliae interficere

¹ *obsidum locō* : 'in the condition of hostages.' ² *Dumnorix* : the Hæduan whose treachery was recounted in Book I, chaps. 16–20, and who had been kept under scrutiny for four years. ³ *quod dictum* : 'this declaration.' ⁴ *dēprecandi* : 'of begging off.' ⁵ *insuētus nāvigandi* : 'unused to sailing.' ⁶ *territāre* : historical infinitive ; the idea of 'saying' suggested by this accounts for the following indirect discourse.

verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret¹; ¹fidem reliquīs interpōnere, iūs iūrandum poscere ut, quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent, commūnī cōnsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

Cæsar is on his guard against him

- 5 7. Quā rē cognitā Caesar, quod tantum civitatī Haeduae dignitātis tribuēbat, coërcendum atque dēterrendum, quibus-
cumque rēbus posset, Dumnorigem statuēbat; quod longius²
eius āmentiam prōgredi vidēbat, prōspiciendum³ nē quid⁴ sibi
ac rei pūblicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō
10 locō commorātus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvigatiōnem impediē-
bat, quī magnam partem omnis temporis in hīs locis flāre cōn-
suēvit, ⁵dabat operam ut in officiō Dumnorigem continēret;
nihilō tamen sētius omnia eius cōnsilia cognōsceret. Tandem
idōneam nactus tempestātem militēs equitēsque cōnscendere
15 nāvēs iubet.

Dumnorix flees, but is captured and killed

- ⁶At omnium impeditis animis Dumnorix cum equitibus
Haeduōrum ā castris insciente Caesare domum discēdere
coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar, intermissā profectiōne
atque omnibus rēbus postpositis, magnam partem equitātūs
20 ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique imperat; ⁷sī vim
faciat neque pāreat, interfici iubet; ⁸nihil hunc sē absente
prō sālō factūrum arbitrātus ⁹quī praesentis imperium

¹ *fidem* . . . ut: 'he gave a pledge to the rest and demanded their oaths that' etc.; *interpōnere* and *poscere* are historical infinitives. ² *longius*: 'too far.' ³ *prōspiciendum (esse)*: 'that precautions must be taken'; depends upon *statuēbat*. ⁴ *quid*: acc. of kindred meaning with *nocēre*. ⁵ *dabat* . . . *continēret*: 'he took pains to keep Dumnorix loyal.' ⁶ *At . . . animis*: 'but while the attention of all was otherwise engaged.' ⁷ *sī . . . faciat . . . pāreat*: implied indirect discourse (G. § 208. b). ⁸ *nihil . . . prō sālō*: 'nothing prudent.' ⁹ *quī . . . neglēxisset*: descriptive clause of cause, also indir. disc.

neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit, saepe clāmitāns liberum sē liberaeque esse civitātis.¹ Illi, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equitēs Haedui ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur. 5

Caesar sails for Britain with more than eight hundred ships

8. Hīs rēbus gestīs, Labiēnō in continente cum tribus legiōnibus et equitum milibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur et rei frūmentāriae prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur cognōsceret, cōsiliumque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum v legiōnibus et ²parī numerō equitum 10 quem in continentī reliquerat ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit; et lēni Āfricō prōvectus,³ mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit; et longius delātus aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōspexit. Tum rūsus aestūs commūtatiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit ut eam par- 15 tem insulae caperet quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cognōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit militum virtūs laudanda, quī ⁴vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs, nōn intermissō rēmigandi labōre, longārū nāvium cursum ⁵adaequāunt.

He lands about noon without resistance

Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus meridiānō 20 ferē tempore; neque in eō locō hostis est visus, sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivīs cognōvit, cum māgnae manūs

¹ civitātis: predicate genitive. ² parī numerō . . . quem: 'the same number . . . as' etc.; i.e. 2000, see l. 7. ³ prōvectus: concessive idea (G. § 220. d); for *although* the southwest breeze was favorable, yet the tide prevented them from holding a true course. ⁴ vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs: 'with transport ships, heavy with lading besides.' ⁵ cursum: the speed of a war galley under oars and sails was nearly equal to that of a modern steamship.

eō convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterritae, ¹ quae cum annōtinis privātisque, quas ² ³ sui quisque commodi causā fēcerat, amplius DCCC ūnō erant visae tempore, ā litore discesserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

Leaving a guard at the sea, he advances against the foe

5 9. Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castris idōneō captō, ubi ex captivis cognōvit quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus x ad mare relictis et equitibus ccc qui praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit, eō minus veritus nāvibus, ⁴ quod in litore molli atque apertō
10 dēligātās ad ancorās relinquiēbat. Ei praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium praefēcit. Ipse noctū prōgressus milia passuum circiter XII hostium cōpiās cōnspicātus est.

The Britons are driven out of their stronghold

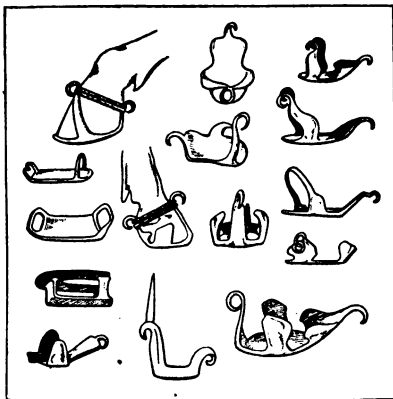
Illi equitātū atque essedis ad flūmen prōgressi ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepē-
15 runt. Repulsi ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt, locum nacti ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnitum, quem domestici belli (ut vidēbatur) causā iam ante praeparāverant; nam crēbris arboribus succisis omnēs introitus erant praeculsi. Ipsi ex silvis rāri ⁵ prōpugnābant nostrōsque intrā mūni
20 tiōnēs ingredi prohibēbant. At militēs legiōnis septimae, ⁶ testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnitiōnēs adiectō, locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvis expulērunt, paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequi vetuit,

¹ quae . . . amplius DCCC: 'more than 800 of which'; quae is subject of erant visae. ² quās: the antecedent is privātis (nāvibus). ³ sui . . . causā: 'for his own accommodation'; these were for rich members of Caesar's staff. ⁴ nāvibus: dative; 'for the ships.' ⁵ rāri: 'here and there,' or 'in small parties.' ⁶ testūdine . . . aggere: see Introd. III. 13.

et quod loci nātūrā ignōrābat, et quod, magnā parte diēi cōsumptā, mūnitiōni castrōrum tempus relinqui volēbat.

The fleet is cast upon the beach by a great storm

10. Postridiē eius diēi māne trīpartitō militēs equitēsque in expeditiōnem misit, ut eōs qui fūgerant persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris prōgressis, cum iam extrēmī¹ essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem vēnerunt qui nūntiarent, superiōre nocte maximā coōrtā tempestāte, prope omnēs nāvēs adflētās atque in litus ēiectās esse; quod neque ancorae fūnēsque sustinērent neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis pati possent. Itaque ex eō concursū² nāvium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.



ROMAN HORSESHOES

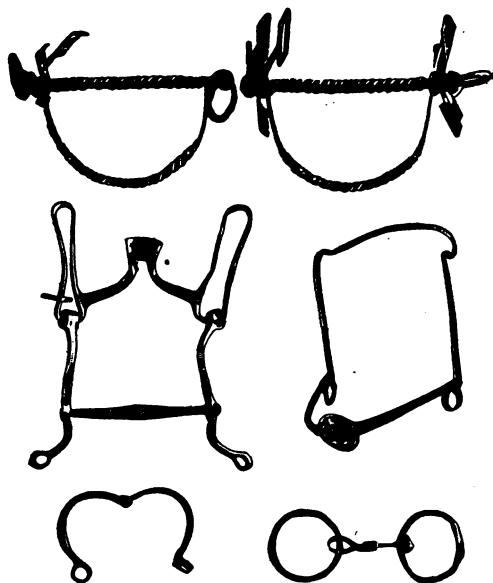
20

Cæsar hastily repairs his ships and sends for more

11. His rēbus cognitīs Cæsar legiōnēs equitātumque revocārī atque in itinere resistere³ iubet, ipse ad nāvēs revertitur; eadem ferē quae ex nūntiis cognōverat cōram perspicit, sic ut āmissis circiter XL nāvibus reliquae tamen reficī posse magnō negōtiō vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōni- 25 bus fabrōs dēligit et ex continenti aliōs arcessī iubet;

¹ **extrēmī**: 'the hindmost' in the flight. ² **conkursū**: 'the dashing together' of the ships. ³ **resistere**: 'to halt.'

Labiēnō¹ scribit ut quam plūrimās possit eis legiōnibus² quae sunt apud eum nāvēs instituat. Ipse, etsi rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnēs



ROMAN BRIDLE BITS

nāvēs subdūci³ et cum castris ūnā mūnitiōne coniungi. In
5 his rēbus circiter diēs x cōsumit nē nocturnis quidem temporibus ad labōrem militum intermissis.

He resumes the struggle with the Britons

Subductis nāvibus castrisque ēgregiē mūnitis, ⁴eādem cōpiās quās ante praesidiō nāvibus relinquit; ipse eōdem⁵

¹ Labiēnō: dative of indirect object. ² legiōnibus: ablative, the legions being considered as a *means*. ³ subdūci: 'to be hauled up' on the beach, as was usual when ships were to be repaired or were not in use. ⁴ eādem ... quās: 'the same as.' ⁵ eōdem: the place described on p. 134, ll. 15-17.

unde redierat proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, maiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperi bellique administrandi commūni cōsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō; cuius finēs ā maritimis civitatibus flūmen dividit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā mari circiter milia 5 passuum LXXX. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia¹ bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū permōti Britannī hunc tōti bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.

The inhabitants of Britain and its resources

12. Britanniae pars interior ab eis incolitur quōs² nātōs in insulā ipsā memoriā prōditum dicunt; maritima pars ab 10 eis quī praedae ac belli inferendi causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē³ eisdem nōminibus civitātum appellantur quibus orti ex civitatibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō inlātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est infinita multitudō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicis cōn- 15 similia, pecoris magnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut⁴ nummō aureō aut tāleis⁵ ferreis ad certum pondus exāminātis⁶ prō nummō.

Nāscitur ibi⁷ plumbum album in mediterrāneis regiōnibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed eius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur 20 importātō. ⁸ Māteria cuiusque generis, ut in Galliā, est praeter fāgum atque abietem. ⁹ Leporem et gallinam et

¹ **continentia**: adjective from participle *continēns*, 'incessant.' ² **quōs**: this with its predicate *nātōs (esse)* is the subject of *prōditum (esse)*; the whole expression is the object of *dicunt*. Translate freely, 'who according to tradition are said to have been born on the island itself.' ³ **eisdem nōminibus**: for example, *Atrebātēs* and *Belgae*. ⁴ **nummō aureō**: 'money of gold.' ⁵ **tāleis**: 'bars.' ⁶ **exāminātis**: 'weighed.' ⁷ **plumbum album**: 'tin.' Cæsar is in error in several particulars: the tin mines were on the coast and the iron mines inland; and the beech (*fāgum*) and fir (*abietem*) are both native to Britain. ⁸ **Māteria cuiusque generis**: 'timber of every kind.' ⁹ **Leporem . . . ānserem**: 'the hare and hen and goose.'

ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā, remissiōribus frīgoribus.

The shape and size of the island

13. Īnsula nātūrā triquetra,¹ cuius ūnum latus est contrā
5 Galliā. Huius lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium,
quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs adpelluntur, ad orientem
sōlem, inferior ad merīdiem² spectat. Hoc latus pertinet
circiter milia passuum quīngenta.

Alterum vergit³ ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem;
10 quā ex parte est Hibernia, insula dīmidiō minor (ut existi-
mātur) quam Britannia, sed⁴ parī spatiō trāsmīssūs atque⁵
ex Galliā est in Britanniam. ⁶In hōc mediō cursū est in-
sula quae appellātur Mona⁷; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs
obiectae insulae existimantur, dē quibus insulis nōn nūlli
15 scripsērunt diēs continuōs xxx⁸ sub brūmam esse noctem.
Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus⁹ reperiēbāmus, nisi certis
¹⁰ex aquā mēnsūris breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctēs
vidēbāmus. Huius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert illōrum
opiniō, septingentōrum milium. Tertium est contrā septen-
20 triōnēs, cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra; sed eius angulus

¹ **triquetra**: 'triangular.' ² **merīdiem**: 'south.' ³ **ad Hispāniam**
etc.: Caesar shows ignorance of the geography of Britain, particularly in
placing Spain too far west. He had neither time nor means to make an
accurate survey, and evidently depended on his impressions and on hearsay.
The historian Tacitus, a hundred and fifty years later, makes the same mis-
take regarding the position of Spain. ⁴ **parī spatiō trāsmīssūs**: 'with
the same distance across.' ⁵ **atque**: 'as'; i.e. the distance from Britain
to Ireland is the same as that from Gaul to Britain. ⁶ **In . . . cursū**: 'in
the middle of this stretch.' ⁷ **Mona**: probably the island of Anglesey
rather than the Isle of Man. ⁸ **sub brūmam**: 'at the time of the winter
solstice.' ⁹ **percontātiōnibus**: 'by inquiries.' ¹⁰ **ex aquā**: the water
clock measured time on the principle of the sandglass, drops of water
taking the place of grains of sand.

alter maximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hoc milium passuum octingentōrum in longitudinem esse existimātur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitū viciēs centum milium passuum.

The customs of the Britons

14. Ex his omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt (quae regiō est maritima omnis), neque multum ā 5 Gallicā differunt cōsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērique frūmenta nōn serunt,¹ sed lacte et carne² vivunt pellibusque sunt vestitī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō³ inficiunt,⁴ quod caeruleum⁵ efficit colōrem, atque hōc horribiliōrēs sunt in pugnā adspectū; ⁶capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omni 10 parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxōrēs habent dēni duodēnique inter sē commūnēs, et maximē frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum liberis; sed quī sunt ex eis nāti eōrum habentur liberī quō⁷ primum virgō quaeque dēducta est.

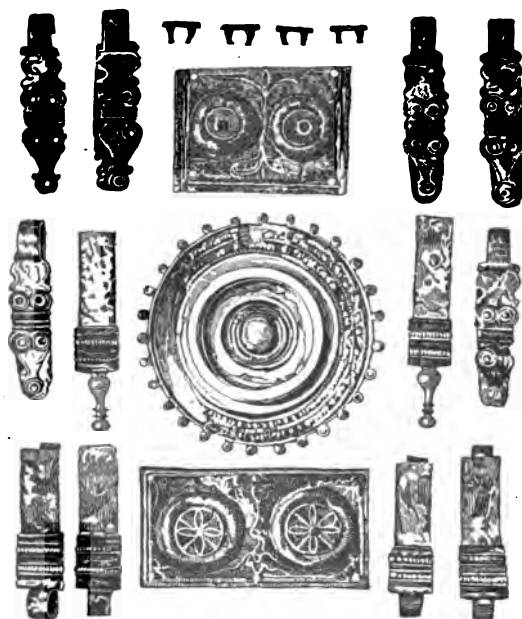
15

The Britons attack the Romans, but are repulsed

15. Equitēs hostium essedārique⁸ ācritēr proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, ita tamen ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās collesque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectis cupidius insecūtī nōn nullōs ex suis āmisērunt. At illi intermissō 20 spatiō, imprudentibus nostris atque occupātis in mūnitiōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvis eiēcērunt, impetūque in eōs

¹ serunt: 'sow.' ² carne: 'meat.' ³ vitrō: 'woad.' ⁴ inficiunt: 'stain.' ⁵ caeruleum: 'dark blue.' ⁶ capillōque . . . superius: 'they let their hair grow long and shave every part of the body except the head and the upper lip.' The ablatives are descriptive. ⁷ quō: adverb, equal to *ad quōs*. Translate the passage from *sed quī*, 'but the children of these wives are regarded as belonging to the man to whom each maiden was first married.' ⁸ essedārii: 'chariot fighters'; cf. Book IV, chap. 33.

factō quī erant in statīōne prō castrīs conlocātī, ācrit̄er pug-
nāvērunt; duābusque missis subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare,
¹atque his primis legiōnum duārum, cum eae perexiguō ²
intermissō locī spatiō inter sē cōstitissent, novō genere



ROMAN HARNESS MOUNTINGS

5 pugnae perterritis nostris, ³per mediōs audācissimē perrū-
pērunt ⁴sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. La-
berius Dūrus, tribūnus militum, interficitur. Illi plūribus
submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

¹ atque his primis: 'and these, too, the first.' The strongest soldiers were in the first cohort. ² perexiguō: 'very narrow.' ³ per mediōs: i. e. between the two cohorts. ⁴ perrūpērunt: 'broke through.'

The Romans find difficulty in meeting the Britons' mode of fighting

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis omnium ac prō castris dimicārētur,¹ intellēctum est nostrōs propter gravitātem armōrum, quod neque insequi cēdentēs possent neque ab signis discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse ad huius generis hostem; equitēs autem magnō cum periculō 5 proeliō dimicāre, proptereā ²quod illi etiam cōsultō plērumque cēderent, et cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedis dēsilirent³ et pedibus dispari proeliō contenderent. Accēdēbat hūc ut numquam cōnferti⁴ sed rārī⁵ magnisque intervāllis proeliārentur, statiónēsque⁶ dis- 10 positās habērent, atque aliōs alii deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentēs dēfatigātis succēderent.

The Britons again attack, but are badly defeated

17. Posterō diē procul ā castris hostēs in collibus cōstitērunt, rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam pridīe nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed meridiē, cum 15 Caesar pābulandī causā trēs legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sic uti ab signis legiōnibusque nōn absisterent.⁷

Nostrī ācritēr in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt, neque 20 finem sequendi fēcērunt quoad subsidiō⁸ cōnfisi equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt; magnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque ⁹sui conligendi

¹ dimicārētur: 'the contest was fought.' ² quod . . . cēderent: 'because generally they even retreated on purpose.' ³ dēsilirent: 'leaped down.' ⁴ cōnferti: 'in close formation.' ⁵ rārī: 'in small groups.' ⁶ statiónēs: 'supports,' or 'reserves.' ⁷ absisterent: 'keep aloof from'; the subject refers to the Britons. ⁸ subsidiō: i. e. the support of the legions. ⁹ sui conligendi: see G. § 224. c.

neque cōsistendi aut ex essedis dēsiliendi facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus quae undique convēnerant auxilia discessērunt; neque post id tempus umquam summis nobiscum cōpiis hostēs contendērunt.

Caesar crosses the Thames, against strong opposition, and advances into the country of Cassivellaunus

5 18. Caesar, cognitō cōsiliō eōrum, ad flūmen Tamesim in finēs Cassivellauni exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ¹ ūnō omninō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsiri potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad alteram flūminis ripam magnās esse cōpiās hostium instrūctās. ² Ripā autem erat acūtis
10 sudibus praefixisque mūnita, eiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfixae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. His rēbus cognitīs ā captivis perfugisque Caesar praemissō equitatū cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequi iussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū militēs iērun, ³ cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs
15 impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent ripāsque dimitterent ac sē fugae mandārent.

Cassivellaunus harasses Caesar's progress by attacking his foraging parties

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, omni dēpositā spē contentiōnis, dimissis ampliōribus cōpiis, milibus circiter IIII essedāriōrum relictis itinera nostra servābat;
20 paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locisque impeditis ⁴ ac silvestribus sēsē occultābat atque eis regiōnibus quibus nōs iter factūrōs cognōverat pecora atque hominēs ex agris in silvās

¹ ūnō . . . aegrē: 'in only one place, and in that with great difficulty.'

² Ripa . . . mūnita: 'the bank too was defended by sharp stakes fastened in its edge.' ³ cum . . . exstārent: 'though only their heads were above water.'

⁴ impeditis: 'difficult of passage.'

compellēbat; et ¹cum equitātus noster liberius praedandi vāstandique causā sē in agrōs eiēcerat, omnibus viis sēmitisque ²essedariōs ex silvis ēmittēbat; et magnō cum periculō ³nostrōrum equitum cum his cōfligēbat atque hōc metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur ⁴ut neque ⁵longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdi ⁶Caesar paterētur, et tantum agrīs vāstandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus ⁶nocērētur quantum in labōre atque itinere legiōnārii milites efficere poterant.

The Trinovantes surrender and send grain and hostages

20. Interim Trinovantēs, prope firmissima eārum regiōnū civitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem vēnerat, — cuius pater in eā civitatē rēgnū obtinuerat interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vitāverat, — lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē ei dēditūrōs atque imperāta faci-
tūrōs: petunt ut Mandubracium ab iniuriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat, atque in civitatē mittat qui ⁷praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsidēs XL frūmentumque exercitui, Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illi imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque misērunt. 20

Other tribes submit. Caesar takes the stronghold of Cassivellaunus

21. Trinovantibus dēfēnsis atque ab omni militum iniuriā prohibitis, Cēnimagnī, Segontiāci, Ancalitēs, Bibrocī,

¹ cum equitātus . . . sē . . . eiēcerat: 'whenever the cavalry went forth.'
² sēmitis: 'paths.' ³ nostrōrum equitum: 'to our cavalry'; objective genitive. ⁴ ut . . . paterētur . . . nocērētur: subject of *relinquēbātur*, 'the consequence was that' etc. ⁵ discēdi: impersonal; best translated freely, 'did not allow them to go too far' etc. ⁶ hostibus: dative with impersonal *nocērētur* (G. § 83. a). ⁷ qui: the antecedent is *aliquem*, the object understood of *mittat*.

Cassi lēgatiōnibus missis sēsē Caesari dēdunt. Ab his cognōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellauni abesse silvis palūdibusque mūnitum, quō satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit.

- 5 ¹ Oppidum autem Britannī vocant cum silvās impeditās vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vitandae causā convenire cōsuērunt. Eō proficiscitur cum legiōnibus.

Locum reperit ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnitum ; tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppugnāre contendit. Hostēs
10 paulisper morāti militum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidi ēiēcērunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique² in fugā sunt comprehēnsi atque interfecti.

The Britons try to take the naval camp

22. Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad
15 Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus IIII rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segonax, nūntiōs mittit atque his imperat uti coactis omnibus cōpiis ³ castra nāvālia dē imprōvisō adorian-
antur atque oppugnent. Hi cum ad castra vēnissent, nostri
20 ēruptiōne factā multis eōrum interfectis, captō etiam nōbili duce Lugotorige, suos incolumēs redūxērunt.

Cassivellaunus surrenders

- Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrimentis acceptis, vāstātis finibus, maximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne civitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium dē dēditiōne
25 ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōstituisset hiemāre in continenti propter repentinōs Galliae mōtūs, neque ⁴ multum

¹ Oppidum . . . cum : 'the Britons call it a town when' etc. ² multi : i. e. people, not cattle. ³ castra nāvālia : i. e. the fortified camp on the beach, surrounding the beached ships. ⁴ multum aestātis : Caesar had now been in Britain about two months.

aestātis superesset, atque ¹id facile extrahī posse intellegeret, obsidēs imperat, et quid in annōs singulōs vectigālīs populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet cōstituit. Interdicit atque imperat Cassivellaunō nē Mandubraciō neu Trinovantibus noceat.

5

Cæsar conveys his army back to Gaul in two trips

23. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, nāvēs invenit refectās. His dēductis,² quod et captivōrum magnum numerum habēbat et nōn nullae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, ³duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre instituit. Ac sic accidit uti ex tantō nāvium numērō, tot nāvigationibus, neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis quae militēs portāret dēsiderārētur; at ex eis quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, priōris commeātūs expositis militibus, et quās⁴ postea Labiēnus ⁵faciendās cūrāverat numērō 'LX,' perpaucae locum caperent; reliquae 15 ferē omnēs reicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Cæsar frūstrā expectāset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigatione excluderētur, quod ⁶aequinoctium suberat, necessariō ⁷angustius militēs conlocāvit, ac summā tranquillitāte cōsecūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, primā lūce terram attigit omnēsque 20 incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

¹ id . . . intellegeret: 'he perceived that even that might be easily wasted.'
² dēductis: 'launched'; lit. 'drawn down.' ³ duōbus commeātibus: 'in two trips.'
⁴ quās: refers back to *ex eis*. ⁵ faciendās cūrāverat: 'had had made'; G. § 224. d. ⁶ aequinoctium suberat: this shows that Cæsar left Britain about the middle of September. ⁷ angustius . . . conlocāvit: 'crowded his soldiers somewhat closely.'—This marks the end of Cæsar's attempts on Britain. The Romans did not visit the island again for nearly one hundred years.

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 24 AND 25

Upon his return to Gaul Cæsar began his arrangements for quartering his troops for the winter. As the crops had been very poor, it seemed best to distribute his legions. Accordingly he divided his forces and located the several divisions among the surrounding tribes within a radius of about a hundred miles (see map facing page 103). Among the officers placed in charge was Quintus Cicero, the orator's brother, who had joined the army that very year. Cæsar himself, contrary to his usual custom, decided to spend the winter in Gaul.

But the Gauls were not disposed to be quiet. Tasgetius, a chief of the Carnutes, who had been particularly friendly to the Romans, and had been placed in authority by Cæsar three years before, was put to death by the Carnutes. Cæsar straightway ordered Plancus, who was wintering among the Bellovaci, to camp in their country for a time with one legion, and to seize and send to him those who were responsible for the death of Tasgetius.

REBELLION IN NORTHERN GAUL

Ambiorix and Catuvolcus attack the camp of Sabinus

26. Diēbus circiter xv quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentini ¹tumultūs ac dēfectiōnis ortum est ab Ambiorīge et Catuvalcō; qui, ²cum ad finēs rēgnī suī ³Sabinō Cottæque præstō fuissent frūmentumque in hiberna comportāvissent, Indūtiomārī Trēverī ⁴nūntiis impulsī suōs concitāvērunt subitōque oppressis lignātōribus magnā manū ad castra oppugnanda vēnērunt.

Cum celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent vāllumque adscendissent, atque unā ex parte Hispānis equitibus ēmissis equestri
10 proeliō superiōrēs fuissent, dēspērātā rē hostēs suōs ab oppugnātiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt

¹ tumultūs ac dēfectiōnis: 'uprising and revolt.' ² cum . . . præstō fuissent: concessive, 'though they had met.' ³ Sabinō Cottæque: dative; *præstō esse* = *adesse*. ⁴ Trēverī: 'one of the Treveri.'

utī aliquī¹ ex nostris ad conloquium prōdiret : habēre sēsē quae dē rē commūnī dicere vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās minui posse spērārent.

Ambiorix and envoys from Sabinus hold a conference

27. Mīttitur ad eōs conloquendī causā C. Arpinēius, eques Rōmānus, familiāris Q. Titūrī,² et Q. Iūnius ex 5 Hispāniā quīdam, quī iam ante missū Caesaris ad Ambiorīgē ventitāre cōnsuērat. ³Apud quōs Ambiorix ad hunc modum locūtus est : 'Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiis plūrimū ei⁴ cōfiterī dēbēre, quod eius operā stipendiō liberātus esset quod Aduatucīs, finitimis suis, pendere cōn- 10 suēsset, quodque ei⁵ et filius et frātris filius ab Caesare remissi essent quōs Aduatuci obsidum numerō missōs apud sē⁶ in servitūte et catēnis tenuissent ; neque id quod fēcerit dē oppugnātiōne castrōrum aut iūdiciō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coāctū civitātis ; ⁷suaque esse eius modi imperia 15 ut nōn minus habēret iūris⁸ in sē multitudō quam ipse in multitudinem.

Ambiorix says that all Caesar's winter quarters are to be attacked

'Civitāti porrō hanc fuisse belli causam, quod repentināe Gallōrum coniūrātiōnī resistere nōn potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperi- 20 tus rērum ut suis cōpiis populū Rōmānum superārī posse cōnfidat. Sed esse Galliae commūne cōnsilium : ⁹omnibus hibernis Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, nē

¹ aliquī : the usual substantive form of the nominative singular is *aliquis*. ² Q. Titūrī : i. e. Sabinus. ³ Apud quōs : 'in the presence of these men.' ⁴ ei : Caesar. ⁵ ei : i. e. Ambiorix. ⁶ sē : i. e. the Aduatuci. ⁷ *suaque . . . imperia* : 'and that his own sovereignty was of such a nature.' ⁸ iūris : 'power.' ⁹ *omnibus . . . oppugnandis* : 'for storming all' ; dative of the gerundive expressing purpose.

qua legiō alteri legiōni subsidiō venire posset. Nōn facile Gallōs Gallis negāre potuisse, praesertim cum dē recuperandā commūni libertatē cōsiliū initum vidērētur.



STATUE OF AMBIORIX

He treacherously urges Sabinus to leave his camp and join Cicero or Labienus

¹ Quibus quoniam prō pietatē satisfēcerit, ² habēre nunc sē ratiōnem offici prō beneficiis Caesaris: monēre, ōrāre Titūrium prō hospitio ut suae ac militum salutē cōsulat. Magnam manum Germānōrum conductam ³ Rhēnum trānsisse; hanc adfore biduō. ⁴ Ipsōrum esse cōsiliū, velintne, prius quam finitimī sentiant, ēductōs ex hibernis milites aut ⁵ ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum dēducere, quōrum alter

milia passuum circiter L, alter paulō amplius ab eis absit. Illud sē pollicērī et iūre iurandō cōfirmāre tūtum sē iter

¹ Quibus . . . satisfēcerit: 'since he had performed his duty to them (i. e. the Gauls) on the score of patriotism.' ² habēre nunc . . . Caesaris: 'he now contemplated a service in return for the favors of Caesar.' ³ conductam: 'hired.' ⁴ Ipsōrum esse cōsiliū: 'it was for them (the Romans) to consider whether they wished' (*velintne*). ⁵ ad Cicerōnem: among the Nervii. Labienus was among the Remi.

per suōs finēs datūrum. ¹ Quod cum faciat, et civitāti sēsē cōsulere, ² quod hibernis levētur, et Caesari prō eius meritis grātiā referre.' Hāc ōrātiōne habitā discēdit Ambiorix.

Sabinus and Cotta are greatly alarmed

28. Arpinēius et Iūnius quae audierant ad lēgātōs dēferunt. Illi repentinā rē perturbāti, etsi ab hoste ea dicē- 5 bantur, tamen nōn negligenda existimābant; maximēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod civitātem ignōbilem atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō bellum facere ausam ⁸ vix erat crēdendum.

They call a council of war. Cotta and several officers oppose abandoning the camp

Itaque ad cōsiliū rem dēferunt magnaue inter eōs 10 existit contrōversia. L. Aurunculēius ⁴ complūrēsq̄ue tribūni militum et primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs nihil temerē agendum, neque ex hibernis iniussū Caesaris discēdendum existimābant; ⁵ quantāsvis cōpiās etiam Germānōrum sustinēri posse mūnitis hibernis docēbant; rem ⁶ esse tes- 15 timōniō, quod primum hostium impetum multis ultrō ⁷ vulneribus inlātis fortissimē sustinuerint; ⁸ rē frūmentāriā nōn premī; intereā et ex proximis hibernis et ā Caesare conventūra subsidia; postrēmō, quid esse ⁹ levius aut turpius quam ¹⁰ auctōre hoste dē summīs rēbus capere cōsiliū? 20

¹ Quod cum faciat: equivalent to 'in doing this.' ² quod . . . levētur: 'because it would be relieved of the winter quarters,' i. e. the quartering of the troops during the winter. ⁸ ausam: sc. esse. Its subject is civitātem. ⁴ L. Aurunculēius: i. e. Cotta. ⁵ quantāsvis . . . Germānōrum etc.: 'forces however great, even of the Germans.' ⁶ rem: explained by the appositional clause quod . . . sustinuerint. ⁷ ultrō: 'besides.' ⁸ rē . . . premī: 'they were not distressed by (the lack of) grain.' ⁹ esse: a rhetorical question in indirect discourse (G. § 207. II. a). ¹⁰ auctōre hoste: 'on the advice of the enemy.'

But Sabinus is strongly in favor of doing so

29. Contrā ea Titūrius ¹ 'Sērō factūrōs' clāmitābat, 'cum maiōrēs manūs hostium adiūntis Germānis convēnis-
sent, aut cum aliquid calamitātis in proximis ² hibernis esset
acceptum. Brevem cōsulendi esse occāsionem. Caesarem ³
5 sē arbitrārī profectum in Italiam; neque aliter Carnutēs
interficiendī Tasgeti ⁴ cōsiliū fuisse captūrōs, neque Ebu-
rōnēs, si ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī ⁵ ad castra
ventūrōs. ⁶ ⁷ Sēsē nōn hostem auctōrem sed rem spectāre:
subesse Rhēnum; magnō esse Germānis dolōri Ariovisti
10 mortem et superiōrēs nostrās victōriās; ārdere Galliam tot
contumēliis acceptis sub populi Rōmāni imperium redāctam,
superiōre glōriā rei militāris exstinctā.

'Postrēmō, quis hoc sibi persuādēret ⁸ sine certā spē Ambi-
origem ad eius modī cōsiliū dēscendisse? ⁹ Suam senten-
15 tiam in utramque partem esse tūtā: ¹⁰ si nihil esset dūrius,
nūllō cum periculō ad proximam legiōnem perventūrōs; si
Gallia omnis cum Germānis cōsentiret, ūnam esse in celeri-
tāte positā salūtem. Cottae ¹¹ quidem atque eōrum quī dissen-
tīrent cōsiliū quem habēre ¹² exitum? in quō si nōn praesēns
20 periculum, at certē longinquā obsidiōne famēs esset timendā.'

¹ **Sērō factūrōs**: 'that they would do this too late.' Titurius is of course Sabinus. ² **proximis**: 'nearest'; this camp was farthest from the main body, and hence, if the nearest camps should be taken, the forces could not easily withdraw in safety. ³ **Caesarem**: subject of *profectum (esse)*; *sē* refers to Titurius. He was of course mistaken in his supposition. ⁴ **cōsiliū fuisse captūrōs**: 'would have adopted the plan'; the conclusion in indirect discourse of a condition contrary to fact (G. § 213. a). ⁵ **nostrī**: 'for us,' genitive plural of *ego*, used objectively (G. § 75. b). ⁶ **ventūrōs**: 'would have come'; supply *fuisse*. ⁷ **Sēsē . . . spectāre**: 'he did not regard the fact that an enemy was the adviser, but the situation itself.' ⁸ **persuādēret**: in the direct discourse *persuādeat*; a deliberative question (G. § 172. d). ⁹ **Suam . . . tūtā**: 'his own advice was sound in either case.' ¹⁰ **si . . . salūtem**: future conditions in indirect discourse. ¹¹ **Cottae**: i.e. L. Aurunculeius Cotta; cf. p. 149, l. 11. ¹² **habēre**: cf. *esse*, p. 149, l. 19.

And says that if they remain, Cotta will have to bear the blame of any future disaster

30. Hāc in utramque partem disputatiōne habitā, cum ā Cottā ¹primisque ordinibus ācritur resisteretur, "Vincite," ²inquit, "si ita vultis," Sabīnus, ³et id clāriore vōce, ut magna pars militum exaudiret; "neque is ⁴sum," inquit, ⁵"quī gravissimē ex vōbis mortis periculō terrear. Hī sapient; si gravius quid acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem reposcent; quī, si per tē liceat, perendinō diē cum proximis hibernis coniuncti commūnem cum reliquis bellī cāsum sustineant, nōn reiecti et relēgati longē ā cēteris aut ferrō aut famē intereant."

After a long debate Cotta yields and the army leaves the camp

31. Cōnsurgitur ex cōsiliō; comprehendunt ⁶utrumque ¹⁰et orant nē suā dissēnsiōne et pertinaciā rem in summum periculum dēducant ⁷: 'Facilem esse rem, seū maneant seu proficiantur, si modo ūnum omnēs sentiant ac probent; contrā in dissēnsiōne nullam sē salutem perspicere.' Rēs disputatiōne ad mediam noctem perdūcitur. Tandem ⁸dat ¹⁵Cotta permōtus manūs: superat sententia Sabīni.

Prōnūtiātur primā lūce itūrōs. ⁹Cōnsūmitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque miles circumspiceret, quid sēcum portāre posset, quid ex instrūmentō ¹⁰hibernōrum relinquere cōgeretur. ¹¹Omnia excōgitantur quā rē nec 20

¹ *primis ordinibus*: equivalent to *primorum ordinum centuriōnibus*.
² *Vincite*: 'have your way.' ³ *et id clāriore vōce*: 'and (he said) that, too, raising his voice.' ⁴ *is*: equivalent to *tālis*. ⁵ *quī . . . terrear*: descriptive clause. *Hī* refers to the soldiers. ⁶ *comprehendunt*: 'detain.'
⁷ *dēducant*: in *nē* clause after verb of requesting (G. § 183). ⁸ *dat . . . manūs*: 'gives in.' ⁹ *itūrōs (esse)*: sc. *eōs* as subject. ¹⁰ *instrūmentō*: 'equipment.' ¹¹ *Omnia . . . augeantur*: 'every reason is given to show why they cannot remain without danger, and how the danger will be increased by the fatigue and lack of sleep of the soldiers.'

sine periculō maneātur et languōre militum et vigiliis periculum augeātur. Primā lūce sic ex castris proficiscuntur¹ ut quibus esset persuāsum nōn ab hoste sed ab homine amīcissimō cōnsilium datum, longissimō agmine maximisque
5 impedimentis.

The Romans are ambushed by the enemy and attacked on all sides

32. At² hostēs, posteā quam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliisque dē profectiōne eōrum sēnsērunt, conlocātis insidiis bipartitō in silvis opportunō atque occultō locō ā³ milibus⁴ passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant;
10 et cum sē maior pars agminis in magnam convallem dēmississet, ⁵ex utrāque parte eius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt novissimōsque premere et primōs prohibēre ascēnsū atque inīquissimō nostris locō proelium committere coepērunt.

Sabinus fails in the crisis. Cotta shows himself a hero

33. ⁶Tum dēmum Titūrius, ⁷quī nihil ante prōvidisset,
15 ⁸trepidāre et concursāre cohortēsque dispōnere, haec tamen ipsa timidē ⁹atque ut eum omnia dēficere vidērentur; quod plērumque eis accidere cōsuēvit quī in ipsō negōtiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta, quī cōgitāssset haec posse in itinere accidere atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor

¹ ut . . . persuāsum: 'like men who had been convinced.' ² At: introduces a new scene and a new subject. ³ ā: adverb, 'off,' 'away.'
⁴ mīlibus: ablative of degree of difference. ⁵ ex utrāque etc.: 'at each end,' attacking the advance which was coming up out of the glen, and the rear from the heights at the other end. ⁶ Tum dēmum: 'then, and not until then'; notice how Cæsar indicates indirectly his disapproval of the policy and conduct of Sabinus. ⁷ quī . . . prōvidisset: causal clause of description. ⁸ trepidāre . . . dispōnere: 'hurried about and ran to and fro and arranged the troops.' The infinitives are historical (G. § 218). ⁹ atque ut: 'and in such a way that.'

nōn fuisset, nullā in rē commūni salūti deerat, et ¹ in appellandis cohortandisque militibus imperātōris et in pugnā militis officia praestābat.

The Romans form a circle, a move which turns out badly

Cum propter longitūdinem agminis nōn facile per sē omnia obire et quid quōque locō faciendum esset prōvidēre ⁵ possent,² iussērunt prōnūtiārī ut impedimenta relinquerent atque ³ in orbem cōsisterent. Quod cōsiliū, etsi in eius modi cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē cecidit; nam et nostris militibus spem minuit et hostēs ad pugnam alacriōrēs effēcit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et ¹⁰ dēspēratiōne id factum vidēbātur. Praetereā accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut ⁴ volgō militēs ab signis discēderent, quaeque quisque eōrum cārissima habēret ab impedimentis petere atque abripere properāret; clāmōre et flētū ⁵ omnia complērentur.

The Gauls show skill and good judgment

34. At barbaris cōsiliū nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs eōrum ¹⁵ tōtā aciē prōnūtiārī iussērunt nē quis ab locō discēderet; illōrum esse praedam atque illis reservārī quaecumque Rōmāni reliquissent; proinde omnia in victoriā posita existimārent.⁶ Nostrī tametsī ⁷ ab duce et ā fortunā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtutē pōnēbant; et ²⁰ quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus

¹ in . . . praestābat: 'in calling upon and exhorting the soldiers he gave an exhibition of the duties of a commander; in fighting, of those of a soldier (of the ranks).' Cæsar's approval of Cotta's conduct is equal to his disgust for that of Sabinus. ² possent: the subject is 'Cotta and Sabinus.' ³ in orbem: see p. 128, l. 1. ⁴ ut: followed by three clauses, the first two of which are connected by the -que in quaeque. ⁵ flētū: from exasperation rather than from cowardice. ⁶ existimārent: imperative in indirect discourse (G. § 205). ⁷ ab duce: i. e. Sabinus.

numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorix prōnūntiārī iubet ut procul tēla coniciant neu propius accēdant, et, quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint, cēdant, rūrsus sē ad' signa recipientēs insequantur.

The Romans fight on under great difficulties

5 35. Quō praeceptō ab eis diligentissimē observātō, ¹cum quaequam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vėlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim ²eam partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipere. Rūrsus, cum in eum locum unde erant prōgressī revertī coeperant, ³et
10 ab eis quī cesserant et ab eis quī proximī steterant circumveniēbantur; sīn autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūti locus relinquēbātur neque ab tantā multitudīne coniecta tēla cōnferti vitāre poterant.

The battle rages for hours. Cotta is badly wounded

Tamen tot incommodis cōnflctātī, multis volneribus ac-
15 ceptis resistēbant ⁴; et magnā parte diēi cōsūmptā, cum ā primā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnārētur, nihil quod ipsīs esset indignum committēbant. Tum T. Balventiō, ⁵quī superiōre annō ⁶prīmum pilum dūxerat, virō fortī et magnae auctōritātis, utrumque femur trāgulā trāicitur; Q. Lūcānius,
20 eiusdem ōrdinis, fortissimē pugnāns, dum circumventō filiō subvenit, interficitur; L. Cotta lēgātus omnēs cohortēs ōrdinēsque adhortāns ⁷in adversum ōs fundā volnerātur.

¹ cum . . . excesserat: 'as often as' etc.; so too in l. 8 ² eam partem etc.: when the soldiers from one side of the *orbis* made a sally, that side of course had no defenders. ³ et . . . et: 'both . . . and.' ⁴ resistēbant: 'they kept on fighting.' ⁵ Balventiō: dative of reference instead of a genitive with *femur*. ⁶ prīmum . . . dūxerat: 'had been first centurion.' ⁷ in adversum ōs: 'right in the mouth.'

Ambiorix, at the request of Sabinus, grants an interview

36. His rēbus permōtus Q. Titūrius, cum procul Ambiorigem suōs cohortantem cōspexisset, interpretem suum Cn. Pompēium ad eum mittit rogātum¹ ut sibi militibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respondet: 'Sī velit sēcum conloquī, licēre; spērāre ā multitudīne impetrārī posse quod ad militum salutem pertineat; ² ipsi vērō nihil nocitum irī, inque eam rem sē suam fidem interpōnere.'

Cotta refuses to go to an armed enemy

Ille³ cum Cottā sauciō commūnicat, sī videātur, pugnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorige ūnā conloquantur: ⁴ spērāre sē ab eō dē suā ac militum salutē impetrārī posse. Cotta sē¹⁰ ad armātum hostem itūrum negat atque in eō persevērat.

Sabinus is treacherously slain

37. Sabinus quōs in praesentiā tribūnōs militum circum sē habēbat et primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs sē sequī iubet; et, cum propius Ambiorigem⁵ accessisset, iussus arma abicere, imperātum facit suisque ut idem faciant imperat. Interim,¹⁵ dum dē condiōnibus⁶ inter sē agunt longiorque cōsultō ab Ambiorige instituitur sermō, paulātim circumventus interficitur.

A terrible tragedy follows

Tum vērō suō mōre victōriam conclāmant atque ululātum tollunt, impetūque in nostrōs factō ōrdinēs perturbant. Ibi²⁰

¹ rogātum: supine. ² ipsi . . . nocitum irī: 'that to him, certainly, no harm will be done'; *ipsi* refers to Titurius; *nihil* is accusative of specification. Note the rarely used future passive infinitive, for which we should expect *fore ut nocēatur*. ³ Ille: Titurius. ⁴ spērāre sē etc.: 'that he hopes to be able to prevail upon him so far as pertains to their own safety and that of the soldiers.' ⁵ Ambiorigem: governed by *propius* used as a preposition; cf. p. 50, l. 2; p. 56, l. 11. ⁶ condiōnibus: i.e. of surrender.

L. Cotta pugnāns interficitur cum maximā parte militum. Reliqui sē in castra recipiunt unde erant ēgressi. Ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, ¹cum magnā multitudīne hostium premerētur, ²aquilam intrā vāllum prōicit; ipse prō castris
 5 fortissimē pugnāns occiditur. Illi aegrē ad noctem oppugnātiōnem sustinent; nocte ad ūnum omnēs dēspērātā salūte sē ipsi interficiunt. Pauci ex proeliō ēlāpsi incertis itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestis certiōrem faciunt.

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 38–58

Ambiorix, elated by his victory, lost no time in stirring up the other nations to make the most of the opportunity now presented of throwing off the Roman yoke. The Aduatuci and Nervii were easily persuaded to join in the undertaking. It will be remembered that Quintus Cicero, with one legion, was wintering among the latter people. The Nervii, summoning the aid of the surrounding states, assailed his camp, taking him completely by surprise. Cicero displayed the utmost energy and courage. By night the ramparts were strengthened, towers were built, and engines of war prepared; by day the Romans repulsed the repeated assaults of the enemy. Certain chiefs of the Nervii, professing great friendship for Cicero, tried to persuade him to leave his camp, promising him a safe conduct out of the country. But Cicero, unlike Sabinus, was not for a moment beguiled by their faithless words, and replied sternly that Romans were not in the habit of accepting favors from their enemies. Then followed a still more furious and desperate assault. But all their efforts were in vain, and they finally invested the camp, believing that starvation would succeed where other means had failed.

¹ cum . . . premerētur: causal. ² aquilam . . . prōicit: Cæsar takes pains to record such acts of heroism on the part of his men. — Cæsar's grief and chagrin over this annihilation of a legion and more of his veterans must have been great. The historian Suetonius says that after he heard of the disaster he neither cut his hair nor shaved his beard until he had his revenge. From this time on he followed up the Eburones pitilessly until they were exterminated.

After many days, when Cicero's forces were reduced almost to the last extremity, a message finally reached Cæsar through a slave. Cæsar immediately set out with two legions for Cicero's relief. When the Nervii learned of Cæsar's approach, they withdrew from the siege and tried to lure him to combat in an unfavorable place. But Cæsar, craftily giving the enemy the impression that he was afraid, led them to a battle ground of his own choosing. A desperate fight followed, in which the Nervii were beaten with great loss. On reaching the camp of Cicero, Cæsar found such evidence of their desperate resistance (not one man in ten being without wounds) that he warmly praised the legion and its commander.

In the meantime reports were spread that the Romans were in hard straits. The disaster to Sabinus in particular encouraged the Gauls to hope for freedom, and all the states, with the exception of the Haedui and the Remi, gave evidence of being on the verge of a revolt. Indutiomarus of the Treveri was particularly active. Supported by a large rebellious element, he prepared to attack the camp of Labienus and to devastate the fields of the Remi. But being caught off his guard by Labienus, he was killed. After the loss of their leader the enemy were quickly overwhelmed.

BOOK VI

CÆSAR'S SIXTH CAMPAIGN, 53 B.C.

The campaign of 54 B.C. had been a series of disappointments and reverses. The expedition to Britain had been only moderately successful and led to no permanent results. On his return Cæsar had found Gaul in a condition of revolt. In spite of some successes the advantage had been, on the whole, with the Gauls, and they had gained fresh hope in their struggle for independence. The strength of their resistance was in the north and east, where they received support from across the Rhine—a danger which it was especially the business of Cæsar to check. His plans therefore included not only an invasion of the territory of the northern states, but also a second expedition into Germany.

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 1-8

On account of the critical situation in Gaul, Cæsar sent recruiting officers to Italy to raise fresh levies, and also requested Pompey, his fellow triumvir, to send him the forces which had been enlisted during his consulship in Cisalpine Gaul. He particularly desired these reinforcements in order to impress the Gauls with the strength and resources of Rome. In response to his request three more legions were added to his forces in Gaul.

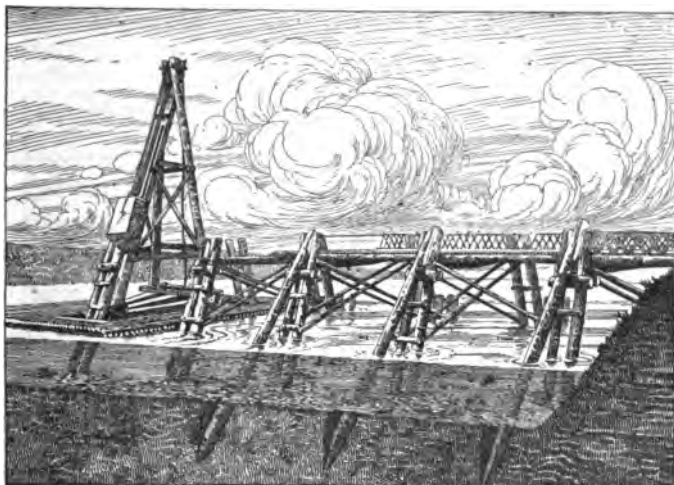
His first move was a swift inroad into the territory of the Nervii, whose fields he laid waste. Then he set out against the Senones and Carnutes, and received the submission of both states without a battle. He next made a swift march without baggage into the country of the Menapii, the most northerly of the Gallic peoples, and the ones who alone had failed to send ambassadors to him. They withdrew into their swamps and forests, but Cæsar followed them, ravaging their country, until messengers were sent to make peace with him.

While Cæsar was thus engaged, the Treveri made preparation to attack Labienus, who was wintering in their territories. Timely reinforcements permitted Labienus to assume the offensive himself. He attacked the Treveri, while they were waiting for promised help from the Germans, and after destroying their forces took possession of their country.

THE SECOND INVASION OF GERMANY

Cæsar builds his second bridge across the Rhine

CAESAR postquam ex Menapiis in Trêverôs vênit, duâbus dē causis Rhēnum trānsire cōstituit: quārum ūna erat quod Germāni auxilia contrā sē Trêveris miserant; altera, nē ad eôs Ambiorix¹ receptum habēret. His



CÆSAR'S BRIDGE OVER THE RHINE

cōstitutis rēbus paulō suprà eum locum quō ante exercitum 5 trādūxerat facere pontem instituit. ² Nōtā atque institūtā ratiōne, magnō militum studiō, paucis diēbus opus efficitur.

He crosses, and spares the Ubii

Firmō in Trêveris ad pontem praesidiō relictō, nē quis ab his subitō mōtus orerētur, reliquās cōpiās equitātumque

¹ **Ambiorix**: the treacherous chief of the Eburones, whom Cæsar had vowed to destroy. ² **Nōtā atque institūtā ratiōne**: 'on the plan already tried and approved'; cf. Book IV, chap. 17.

trādūcit. Ubiī, quī ante obsidēs dederant atque in dēditōnem vēnerant, ¹pūrgandi suī causā ad eum lēgātōs mittunt quī doceant neque auxilia ex suā civitatē in Trēverōs missa neque ab sē fidem laesam : petunt atque ōrant ut sibi parcat, 5 nē commūni odiō Germānōrum innocentēs prō nocentibus poenās pendant ; si amplius obsidum velit dari, pollicentur. Cognitā ²Caesar causā reperit ab Suēbis auxilia missa esse ; Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit ; aditūs viāsque in Suēbōs perquirīt.

The Ubiī inform Caesar that the Suebi are assembling their forces

10 10. Interim paucis post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs certior Suēbōs omnēs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere, atque eis nātiōnibus quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dēnūntiāre ut auxilia peditātūs equitātūsque mittant. His cognitis rēbus rem frūmentāriam prōvidet, castris idōneum locum dēligit, Ubiīs imperat ut 15 pecora dēdūcant suaeque omnia ex agris in oppida cōferant, — spērāns barbarōs atque imperitōs hominēs, inopiā cibāriōrum adductōs, ad iniquam pugnandi condiōnem posse dēdūci ; mandat ut crēbrōs explōrātōrēs in Suēbōs mittant quaeque ³apud eōs gerantur cognōscant.

Scouts report that the Suebi have retreated to the Bacenis forest

20 Illi imperāta faciunt et paucis diēbus intermissis referunt : ⁴Suēbōs omnēs, posteaquam certiōrēs nūntiī dē exercitū Rōmānōrum vēnerint, cum omnibus suis sociōrumque cōpiis quās coēgissent, penitus ad extrēmōs finēs sē recēpisse ; silvam esse ibi infinitā magnitūdine, quae appellētur Bā- 25 cenis ; hanc longē intrōrsus pertinēre, et ⁵prō nātivō mūrō

¹ pūrgandi suī causā : 'for the sake of excusing themselves.' ² Cognitā : 'having inquired into.' ³ quaeque : quae is the subject of gerantur, and -que connects mittant and cognōscant. ⁴ Suēbōs omnēs etc. : indirect discourse after referunt. ⁵ prō nātivō mūrō : 'as a natural wall.'

objectam Chēruscōs ab Suēbōrum Suēbōsque ab Chēruscōrum iniūriis incursiōnibusque prohibēre; ad eius silvae initium Suēbōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōstituisse.'

A digression on the Gauls and Germans is announced

11. Quoniam ¹ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō ² 5 differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere.

The political organization of the Gauls

In Galliā nōn solum in omnibus civitatibus atque in omnibus pāgis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiōnēs sunt; eārumque factiōnum principēs sunt quī summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdiciō habēre existimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciūque summa omnium rērum cōsiliōrumque redeat.³ Idque eius rei causā antiquitus institūtum ⁴ vidētur, ⁵ nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxili egēret; suōs enim quisque opprimī et circumveniri nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctō- ¹⁵ ritātem. ⁶ Haec eadem ratiō est in summā tōtius Galliae; namque omnēs civitatēs divisae sunt in duās partēs.

The factional struggle between the Haedui and Sequani

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis principēs erant Haedui, alterius Sēquani. Hi,⁷ cum per sē minus valērent (quod summa auctōritās antiquitus erat in ²⁰ Haeduis magnaue eōrum erant clientēlae), Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant, eōsque ad sē magnis iactūris ⁸

¹ ad hunc locum: 'to this point' (of the narrative). ² quō: 'by how much.' ³ redeat: 'is referred.' ⁴ Institūtum: sc. esse. ⁵ nē quis . . . egēret: substantive clause in apposition with *eius rei*. ⁶ Haec . . . Galliae: 'this same state of affairs exists in general throughout all Gaul.' ⁷ Hi: 'the latter.' ⁸ iactūris: 'sacrifices.'

pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant. Proeliis vērō complūribus factis secundis atque omni nōbilitate Haeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecesserant ut magnam partem clientium ab Haeduis ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab his principum
 5 filiōs acciperent, et publicē iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsili initūrōs, et partem finitimī agri per vim occupātam possidērent, Galliaeque tōtius principātum obtinērent. Quā necessitāte adductus, Diviciācus auxili petendi causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus ¹ infectā rē redierat.

The favor of Caesar gives the Haedui the supremacy

10 Adventū Caësarī factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Haeduis redditīs, veteribus clientēlis restitūtīs, novīs² per Caesarem comparātis, quod eī, quī sē ad eōrum amicitiam adgregāverant, meliōre condiōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūti vidēbant, reliquis rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitāteque
 15 amplificātā, Sēquanī principātum dimiserant.

The Remi hold the second place

In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; ³ quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, eī quī propter veterēs inimiciās nullō modō cum Haeduis coniungī poterant sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant.⁴ Hōs illi diligenter
 20 tuēbantur; ita et novam et repente conlēctam auctōritatem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū rēs erat ut longē principēs habērentur Haedui, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

¹ *infectā rē*: 'without accomplishing his purpose.' ² *novīs*: sc. *clientēlis*. ³ *quōs . . . intellegēbātur*: 'because it was perceived that these (the Remi) were equal (to the Haedui) in the favor of Caesar.' ⁴ *dicābant*: 'gave up'; distinguish from *dicēbant*.

The Gallic nobility and the common people

13. In omni Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt numero atque honōre genera sunt duo. Nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nullī adhibētur cōsiliō. Plērique, cum¹ aut aere aliēnō aut magnitudine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in 5 servitūtem dicant nōbilibus; quibus² in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominīs in servōs. Sed dē³ his duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum.

The druids hold the religious and judicial power

Illi rēbus divinis intersunt,⁴ sacrificia pūblica ac privāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur. Ad eōs magnus adulēs- 10 centium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit, magnōque hī⁵ sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversīis pūblicis privātisque cōstituunt; et, si quod est admissum facinus, si caedēs facta, si dē hērēditātē, dē finibus contrōversia est, idē⁶ dēcernunt, praemia poenāsque cōstituunt; 15 ⁷si quī aut privātus aut populus⁸ eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt. Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numero impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, his omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodi⁹ 20 accipiant, neque eis petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs ūllus commūnicātur.

¹ cum: 'whenever,' 'as often as.' ² quibus: dative of possession, as is also dominīs, l. 7. Translate, 'who possess over them all the same rights that masters have over their slaves.' ³ his . . . generibus: i. e. the genera duo in l. 2. ⁴ intersunt: 'participate in,' 'occupy themselves with.' ⁵ hī: i. e. the druids; in the next line eōs refers to the Gauls. ⁶ idem: 'they also.' ⁷ si quī: 'if any.' ⁸ eōrum . . . stetit: 'has not abided by their decision.' ⁹ incommodi: partitive genitive with quid.

Their organization and their meetings

His autem omnibus druidibus praeest unus, qui summam inter eos habet auctoritatem. Hoc mortuo, aut ¹si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitate, succedit, aut, si sunt plures pares, suffragio druidum, non numquam etiam armis, de principatu
 5 contendunt. Hi certo anni tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regio totius Galliae media habetur, considunt in loco consecrato. Huc omnes undique, qui controversias habent, conveniunt eorumque decretis iudiciisque parent. Disciplina ² in Britannia reperta atque inde in Galliam translata
 10 existimatur; et nunc, qui diligentius eam rem cognoscere volunt, plerumque illo ³ discendi causam proficiscuntur.

Their special prerogatives

14. Druides a bello abesse consueverunt neque tributa unam cum reliquis pendunt. Tantis excitati praemiis et sua sponte multi in disciplinam conveniunt et a parentibus propin-
 15 quisque mittuntur.

Their system of education

Magnum ibi numerum versuum ediscere dicuntur. Itaque annos non nulli vicenos in disciplinam ⁴ permanent. Neque fas esse existimant ea ⁵ litteris mandare, ⁶ cum in reliquis ferere rebus, publicis privatisque rationibus, ⁷ Graecis litteris
 20 utantur. Id mihi duabus de causis instituisse videntur: quod neque in vulgus disciplinam efferri velint ⁸ neque eos

¹ si qui: 'whoever.' ² Disciplina: 'system of instruction.' ³ illo: adverb, 'there.' ⁴ disciplinam: 'training.' ⁵ ea: neuter plural referring to *numerus versuum*. ⁶ cum . . . utantur: concessive. ⁷ rationibus: 'transactions.' ⁸ neque . . . studere: 'nor do they wish those who learn to give less attention to memory through dependence on written words.'



A DRUID SACRIFICE

quī discunt litteris cōnfisōs minus memoriae studēre — quod ferē plērisque accidit ut ¹praesidiō litterārum diligentiam in perdiscendō ac memoriam remittant.

Their beliefs

In primis hoc volunt persuādēre, nōn interire animās, sed ab aliis post mortem trānsire ad aliōs; atque hōc 5 maximē ad virtutem excitārī putant ²metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē sideribus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundi ac terrārum magnitudīne, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

The knights do the fighting

15. ³Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus ⁴atque 10 aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī iniūriās inferrent aut inlātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur; atque eōrum ⁵ut quisque est genere cōpiisque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam 15 grātiā potentiamque nōvērunt.

The Gauls are superstitious and offer human sacrifices

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus; atque ob eam causam quī sunt adfectī graviōribus morbis quīque in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut prō victimis hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, 20 administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur; quod, prō vitā hominis nisi hominis vitā reddātur, nōn posse deōrum

¹ praesidiō litterārum: 'because of reliance on the written form.'

² metū mortis neglēctō: 'by disregarding the fear of death.' ³ Alterum genus: cf. *alterum equitum*, p. 163, l. 8. ⁴ ūsus: a noun. ⁵ ut . . . amplissimus, ita plūrimōs: 'the more powerful . . . the greater number.'

immortālium nūmen plācārī arbitrantur ; publicēque eiusdem generis ¹habent institūta sacrificia. Alii immānī magnitudine simulācra ² habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vivis hominibus complent ; quibus succēnsis circumventī flammā
 5 exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut latrōciniō aut aliā noxiā sint comprehēnsī, grātiōra dis immortalibus esse arbitrantur ; sed, cum eius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.³

The gods whom the Gauls worship

17. Deōrum maximē Mercurium ⁴ colunt. Huius sunt
 10 plūrima simulācra ; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt,⁵ hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē his eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opiniōnem :
 15 Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiorum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere.

To Mars they give the spoils of war

Huic, cum proeliō dimicāre cōstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvoent. Cum superāvērunt, animālia
 20 capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt. Multis in civitatibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs cumulōs locis

¹ **habent institūta**: differs from *instituērunt* in that it denotes that the custom, established in the past, still continues; cf. p. 49, l. 14.
² **simulācra**: wooden figures, or forms, of the general appearance of human beings. ³ **dēscendunt**: 'resort to' (lit. 'descend to'). ⁴ **Mercurium**: 'a Mercury.' Cæsar does not mean that these gods had actually the same names as those of the Romans; he discovers rather a similarity in their attributes and functions. ⁵ **ferunt**: 'they call.'

cōnsecrātis cōnspicārī licet. Neque saepe accidit ut neglectā quispiam religiōne ¹aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere auderet, gravissimumque ei rei supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitutum est.

Time is measured by the number of nights

18. Galli sē omnēs ab Dite patre prōgnātōs praedicant ⁵ idque ab druidibus prōditum dicunt. Ob eam causam ²spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium finiunt; ³diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sic observant ut noctem diēs subsequatur.

There is no open association between boys and their fathers

In reliquis vitae institutis hōc ferē ab reliquis differunt, ¹⁰ quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adolēverunt ut mūnus militiae sustinere possint, palam ad sē adire nōn patiuntur; ⁴filiumque puerilī aetate in publicō in cōspectū patris adsistere turpe dūcunt.

Marriage customs and funeral rites

19. ⁵Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine ¹⁵ accēperunt, tantās ex suis bonis aestimatiōne factā cum dōtibus commūnicant. Huius omnis pecūniae coniūctim ratiō habetur fructūque ⁶servantur; uter eōrum vitā ⁷

¹ aut capta . . . aut . . . auderet: 'has dared either to conceal booty at his home or to carry it away when consecrated' (lit. 'laid down'). ² spatia . . . finiunt: as emblematic of the darkness of the underworld, the home of Dis, or Pluto; cf. English 'fortnight.' ³ diēs . . . subsequatur: i.e. they count from the first night instead of the first day. ⁴ filiumque . . . dūcunt: 'they consider it disgraceful' etc. ⁵ Virī . . . commūnicant: i.e. they set aside from their own resources a sum equal to the dowry brought by the wife, and the total amount is maintained as a common fund. ⁶ fructūs: 'revenues,' or 'profits.' ⁷ vitā: ablative of respect.

superāvit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiorum temporum pervenit. Viri in uxōrēs, sicut in liberōs, vitæ necisque habent potestatem; et cum pater familiae inlūstriore locō nātus dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniunt et dē morte, ¹si rēs in suspiciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus ²in servilem modum quaestiōnem habent, et si ³compertum est, igni atque omnibus tormentis excruciatās interficiunt.

Fūnera sunt ⁴prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vivis cordi ⁵fuisse arbitrantur in ignem inferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō ⁶suprā hanc memoriam servi et clientēs, quōs ab eis dilēctōs esse cōnstābat, iūstis ⁷fūnebris cōfectis unā cremābantur.

All news is first reported to the magistrates

20. ⁸Quae civitatēs commodius suam rem publicam administrāre existimantur ⁹habent lēgibus sānctum, si quis quid dē rē publicā ā finitimis rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit, uti ad magistrātum dēferat nēve ¹⁰cum quō aliō commūnicet; quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperitōs falsis rūmōribus terrēri et ad facinus impelli et dē summis rēbus cōsiliū capere cognitum est. Magistrātūs ¹¹quae visa sunt occultant; quae esse ex ūsū iūdicāverunt, multitudinī prōdunt. Dē rē publicā nisi per conciliū loqui nōn concēditur.

¹ si . . . vēnit: i.e. if there are suspicious circumstances. ² in servilem modum: among the Romans slaves were tortured to extort confession of crime. ³ compertum est: i.e. that there has been foul play. ⁴ prō cultū: 'considering the degree of civilization.' ⁵ cordi: 'dear,' dative of cor, 'heart.' ⁶ suprā hanc memoriam: 'before our time.' ⁷ iūstis: 'regular.' ⁸ Quae civitatēs: equivalent to *hae civitatēs quae*. ⁹ habent . . . sānctum: 'have it established by law.' ¹⁰ nēve: 'and that . . . not'; quō is indefinite. ¹¹ quae visa sunt: 'what seems best' (to conceal).



EARLY GERMANS

"Vita omnis in venationibus atque in studiis rei militaris consistit"

(See page 169, line 5)

*The customs of the Germans are very different from those
of the Gauls*

21. Germāni multum ab hāc cōsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent quī rēbus divinis praesint neque sacrificiis student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Volcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēperunt. Vīta 5 omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiis rei militāris cōsistit; 1 ā parvis labōri ac dūritiae student.

*Agriculture is discouraged. Land is held in common and apportioned
yearly by the magistrates and leading men*

22. Agrī cultūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum victūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut 2 finēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs 10 ac principēs 3 in annōs singulōs gentibus cognātiōnibusque hominum, quique unā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī 4 attribuunt, atque annō post aliō 5 trānsire cōgunt. Eius rei multās adferunt causās: 6 nē adsiduā cōsuētūdine capti studium bellī gerendī agrī cultūrā commūtent; nē 15 lātōs finēs parāre studeant potentiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vitandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēsiōnēsque nāscuntur; 7 ut animī aequitāte plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum 20 potentissimis aequārī videat.

1 ā parvis: 'from childhood.' 2 finēs . . . propriōs: 'private lands.'

3 in annōs singulōs: 'each year.' 4 agrī: partitive genitive with *quantum*.

5 aliō: adverb. 6 nē . . . commūtent: this and the following clauses are in apposition with *causās*. 7 ut . . . contineant: 'that they may keep the common people in a contented frame of mind.'

They glory in wide frontiers of deserted land

23. Cīvitātibus maxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē
vāstātis finibus sōlitudinēs habēre. Hoc ¹ proprium virtūtis
existimant, expulsōs agris finitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam
prope sē audēre cōsistere : simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbi-
5 trantur, repentināe incursiōnis timōre sublātō.

They give great power to their chiefs

Cum bellum cīvitās aut inlātum dēfendit aut infert,
magistrātūs quī eī bellō praesint, et vitāe necisque habeant
potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nullus est commūnis magis-
trātus, sed principēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs
10 ² iūs dicunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.

They rob outsiders, but respect guests

Latrōcinia nullam habent infāmiam quae extrā finēs
cuiusque civitātis fiunt, atque ea ³ iuventūtis exercendae ac
dēsidiāe minuendae causā fieri praedicant. Atque ubi quis
ex principibus in conciliō dixit sē ducem fore, ⁴ quī sequi
15 velint profiteantur, cōsurgunt eī quī et causam et hominem
probant suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā multitudīne
conlaudantur ; quī ex his secūtī nōn sunt in dēsertōrum
ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur ⁵ omniumque his rērum
postea fidēs dērogātur. Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant ;
20 quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vērunt ab iniuriā pro-
hibent sāctōsque habent ; hisque omnium domūs patent
victusque communicātur.

¹ **propriū virtūtis** : 'significant of their valor.' ² **iūs dicunt** : 'administer justice.' ³ **ea** : refers to *latrōcinia*. ⁴ **quī . . . profiteantur** : 'that those who are willing to follow are to give in their names.' *Profiteantur* represents an imperative in the direct discourse. ⁵ **omniumque . . . dērogātur** : 'and confidence is withdrawn from them in everything thereafter.'

*The Gauls formerly excelled the Germans in prowess, but
are now much inferior*

24. Ac fuit antea tempus cum Germānōs Galli virtūte
superarent, ultrō bella inferrent, propter hominum multītū-
dinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent.
Itaque ea quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt loca, circum
Hercyniam silvam (quam Eratosthenī et quibusdam Graecis 5
fāmā nōtam esse vidēō, quam illi Orcyniam appellant), Vol-
cae Tectosagēs occupāverunt atque ibi cōsēdērunt. Quae
gēns ad hoc tempus his sēdibus sēsē continet summamque
habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis opīniōnem.¹ Nunc quidem
in eādē inopiā, egestāte, patientiāque Germānī permanent, 10
eōdē victū et cultū corporis ūtuntur; Gallis² autem prōvin-
ciarū propinquitās et trānsmarinārum rērum nōtitia multa
ad cōpiam atque ūsum largitur. Paulatim adsuēfactī superārī
multisque victī proeliis, nē sē quidem ipsī³ cum illis
virtūte comparant.

15

The Hercynian forest and its boundaries

25. Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta est,
lātītūdō VIII diērum iter⁴ expeditō⁵ patet; nōn enim aliter
finiri potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōverunt. Oritur ab
Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum finibus, ⁶rēctāque
flūminis Dānuvī regiōne pertinet ad finēs Dācōrum et Anar- 20
tium; hinc sē flectit sinistrōrsus⁷ diversis ab flūmine regiō-
nibus multarūque gentium finēs propter magnitudinem

¹ opīniōnem: 'reputation.' ² Gallis: indirect object, and multa direct
object, of largitur. ³ ipsī: i.e. the Gauls; illis means the Germans.
⁴ iter: accusative of extent. ⁵ expeditō: 'for an active (traveler),' i.e.
one not 'encumbered' with baggage; dative of reference. ⁶ rēctāque
... regiōne: i.e. in a course parallel with the Danube. ⁷ sinistrōrsus:
i.e. to the north.

attingit. Neque quisquam est huius Germāniae quī sē aut adisse ad initium¹ eius silvae dicat, ²cum diērum iter LX prōcesserit, aut quō ex locō oriātur accēperit.

This forest contains many strange animals

Multaque in eā genera ferārum nāscī³ cōnstat quae reli-
5 quis in locīs vīsa nōn sint; ex quibus quae maximē differant
ab cēterīs et memoriae prōdenda videantur haec sunt.

The ox with a single branching horn

26. Est ⁴bōs cervi figurā, cuius ā mediā fronte inter aurēs
ūnum cornū existit excelsius magisque dērēctum hīs quae
nōbis nōta sunt cornibus. Ab eius summō sicut ⁵palmae
10 rāmīque lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae marisque
nātūra, eadem fōrma magnitudōque cornuum.

The elk with short horns and jointless legs

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōnsi-
milis caprīs figurā et varietās pellium; sed magnitudīne
paulō antecēdunt ⁶mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine
15 nōdis articulisque habent; neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt
neque, sī quō adflictae cāsū concidērunt, ērigere sēsē ac
sublevāre possunt. His⁷ sunt arborēs prō cubilibus; ⁸ad
eās sē adplicant atque ita paulum modo reclinātae quiētem
capiunt. Quārum ex vēstigiis cum est animadversum ā

¹ *initium*: as we should say, 'the end' eastward. ² *cum . . . prōcesserit*: concessive. ³ *nāscī*: we should say 'live.' ⁴ *bōs . . . figurā*: 'an ox of the shape of a stag.' *Bōs* is a name given loosely to any large-horned, unfamiliar beast; here, perhaps, the reindeer. ⁵ *palmae rāmīque*: 'antlers branching like the fingers of a hand' (lit. 'palms and branches'). ⁶ *mutilaeque . . . cornibus*: 'short-horned'; *cornibus* is the ablative of respect. ⁷ *His*: dative of possession. ⁸ *ad eās* etc.: 'they lean themselves against these, and so reclining only a little' etc.

vēnātōribus quō sē recipere cōnsuērint, omnēs ¹ eō locō aut ab rādicibus subruunt aut accidunt arborēs, ² tantum ut summa speciēs eārum stantium relinquiātur. Hūc cum sē cōnsuētūdine reclināvērunt, infirmās arborēs pondere adfligunt atque unā ipsae concidunt.

5

The aurochs, which spares neither man nor beast

28. Tertium est genus eōrum quī ūri appellantur. Hi sunt magnitudine paulō infrā elephantōs; speciē et colōre et figurā taurī. Magna vis eōrum est et magna vēlōcitas; neque hominī neque ferae quam cōspexērunt parcut. Hōs studiōsē foveis ³ captōs interficiunt. Hōc sē labōre dūrant 10 adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis exercent; et quī plūrimōs ex his interfēcērunt, relātis in pūblicum cornibus ⁴ quae sint testimōniō, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed adsuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuēfieri ⁵ nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt. Amplitūdō cornuum et figurā et speciēs multum 15 ā nostrōrum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquisita ⁶ ab labris argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimis epulis prō pōculis ūtuntur.

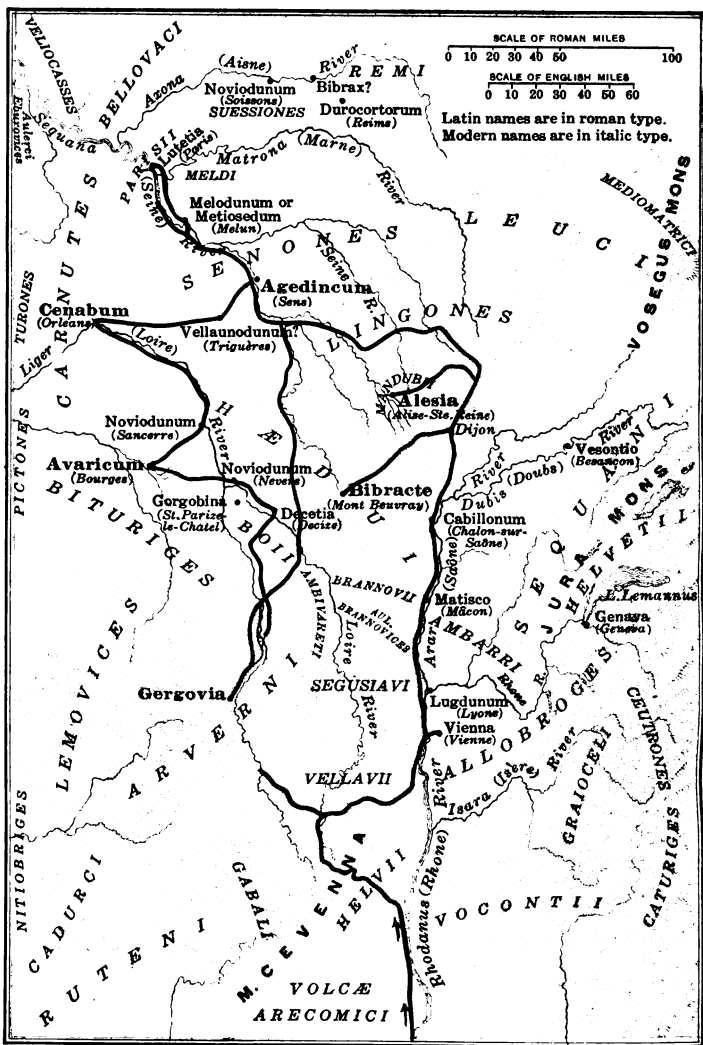
SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 29-44

Cæsar, deeming it unwise, because of a possible scarcity of grain, to follow the Suebi into their forest retreats, destroyed the farther end of the bridge, and, leaving a strong guard on the Gallic side, set forth against Ambiorix, whom he had vowed to destroy (cf. p. 159, footnote 1).

¹ omnēs: with *arborēs*. ² tantum ut . . . relinquiātur: 'so that to all appearances they (the trees) are standing firmly.'—Chapter 27 is full of absurdities. Cæsar is evidently only repeating marvelous tales of travelers. It seems unlikely that he believed them all. ³ foveis: 'with pitfalls.' ⁴ quae sint testimōniō: 'to serve as evidence'; a purpose clause. ⁵ nē parvulī . . . exceptī: 'not even when caught young.' ⁶ ab labris . . . circumclūdunt: 'they trim with silver about the rims.'

Hoping to catch him unawares, he sent ahead a force of cavalry. Ambiorix was surprised, but, disbanding his army, managed to escape. Cæsar, gathering all his baggage at Aduatuca, left Cicero there with one legion to guard it, and, dividing his army into three parts, started in pursuit of Ambiorix. At the same time he invited the neighboring tribes to assist him in laying waste the land of Ambiorix and in destroying the Eburones, his people. Hearing of this, the Sugambri came from across the Rhine to share in the pillage; but deeming the baggage of the Romans stored at Aduatuca a richer prize, they attacked Cicero instead, and almost succeeded in overwhelming him and his small force. Cæsar's opportune return frightened the Sugambri away. He then resumed his relentless pursuit of Ambiorix. Again and again the barbarian chieftain was almost in his grasp, but each time he eluded him, and was never captured. Late in the fall Cæsar distributed his legions in winter quarters and returned to Italy.

n-
e.
th
ed
ng
y-
om
of
ro
ce.
en
ar-
m.
ons



CAMPAIGN MAP FOR 52 B.C.

BOOK VII

CÆSAR'S SEVENTH CAMPAIGN, 52 B.C.

THE WAR WITH VERCINGETORIX

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 1-3

While Cæsar was in Italy, serious riots occurred at Rome. A rumor straightway spread among the Gauls that Cæsar was likely to be detained, and that this was the time to strike a blow for freedom. Following a general council, the Carnutes began to revolt by massing at Cenabum and killing Roman citizens who had settled there. The news of this traveled so rapidly that in a few hours it reached the Arverni, one hundred and sixty miles away.

Vercingetorix, chief of the Arverni, takes the lead

SIMILI ratiōne ibi Vercingetorix, Celtilli filius, Arvernus, summae potentiae adulēscēns, — cuius pater principātum ¹tōtius Galliae obtinuerat, et ob eam causam, quod rēgnum adpetēbat, ā civitāte erat interfectus, — convocātis suis clientibus facile incendit.² Cognitō eius cōnsiliō ad 5 armā concurritur. Prohibētur³ ā Gobannitiōne, patruō suō, reliquisque principibus, quī hanc temptandam fortūnam nōn existimābant; expellitur ex oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēstitit tamen atque in agris habet dēlēctum egentium ac perditōrum. Hāc coāctā manū quōscumque adit ex civitāte ad suam sen- 10 tentiam perdūcit; hortātur ut commūnis libertātis causā arma

¹ tōtius Galliae: i. e. Celtic Gaul. ² incendit: sc. cōs. ³ Prohibētur: 'an attempt is made to prevent him.'

capiant ; magnisque coactis cōpiis adversariōs suos, ā quibus



STATUE OF VERCINGETORIX

paulō ante erat ēiectus, expellit ex civitāte. Rēx ab suis appellātur. Dimittit quōqueversus¹ lēgatiōnēs ; obtestātur ut in fidē maneant.

Many tribes join his standard

Celeriter sibi Senonēs, Parisiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcōs, Turonōs, Aulercōs, Lemovicēs, Andōs, reliquōsque omnēs qui Ōceanum attingunt adiungit ; omnium cōnsensū ad eum dēfertur imperium. Quā oblātā potestāte omnibus his civitātibus obsidēs imperat ; certum numerum militum ad sē celeriter

21 addūci iubet ; armōrum quantum quaeque civitās domi, 2 quodque ante tempus efficiat, cōstituit ; in primis equitātui studet.

He maintains severe discipline

Summae diligentiae summam imperi severitatem addit ; magnitudine supplicii dubitantēs³ cōgit : nam maiōre commisso delictō igni atque omnibus tormentis necat ; leviōre

¹ quōqueversus : 'in every direction.' ² quodque ante tempus : 'and before what time' ; quod is interrogative. ³ dubitantēs : 'those who hesitated.'

dē causā auribus dēsectis aut singulis effossis oculis domum remittit, ut sint reliquis documentō et magnitudine poenae perterreant aliōs.

He invades the country of the Bituriges, who ask the Hædui to send them assistance

5. His suppliciis celeriter coāctō exercitū Lucterium Cadūrcum, summae hominem audāciae, cum parte cōpiārum 5 in Rutēnōs mittit; ipse in Biturigēs proficiscitur. Eius adventū Biturigēs ad Haeduōs (quōrum erant in fidē) lēgātōs mittunt subsidium rogātum, quō facilius hostium cōpiās sustinēre possint.

The Hædui fail them, and so, unable to resist, they join Vercingetorix

Haedui ¹ dē cōsiliō lēgātōrum, quōs Caesar ad exercitum 10 reliquerat, cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque subsidiō Biturigibus mittunt. Qui ² cum ad flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturigēs ab Haeduis dividit, paucōs diēs ibi morāti neque flūmen trānsire ausi, domum revertuntur, lēgātisque nostris renūntiant sē Biturigum perfidiam veritōs revertisse, ¹⁵ ³ quibus id cōsiliū fuisse cognōverint ut, si flūmen trānsissent, unā ex parte ipsi, ⁴ alterā Arvernī sē circumsisterent. ⁵ Id eāne dē causā quam lēgātis prōnūntiārunt an perfidiā adducti fēcerint, quod ⁶ nihil nōbīs cōstat, nōn vidētur prō certō esse pōnendum. Biturigēs eōrum discessū statim sē cum 20 Arvernīs iungunt.

¹ dē cōsiliō: 'on the advice.' ² Qui: meaning the *equitātūs peditātūsque*. ³ quibus id etc.: 'who they knew had this plan.' ⁴ ipsi: the Bituriges. ⁵ Id eāne etc.: 'whether they did this for the reason which' etc. ⁶ nihil . . . cōstat: 'is not at all clear.'

Cæsar leaves Italy and hastens to Gaul

6. His rēbus in Italiam Cæsari nūntiātis, cum iam ille urbānās rēs ¹virtūte Cn. Pompēi commodiōrem in statum pervēnisse intellegeret, in Trānsalpinam Galliam profectus est. Eō cum vēnisset, magnā difficultāte adficiēbātur, ²quā ratiōne
 5 ad exercitum pervenire posset. Nam si legiōnēs in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente in itinere proeliō dimicātūrās intellegēbat; si ipse ad exercitum contenderet, nē eis quidem eō tempore quī quiētī vidērentur suam salūtem rēctē committi vidēbat.

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 7-12

Lucerius, a commander under Vercingetorix, made plans to assail Narbo. Cæsar checked these plans, and then, pushing his way through deep snow, crossed the Cévennes Mountains and entered the borders of the Arverni. Leaving Brutus in command there, he hastened north and gathered all his forces into one place. Vercingetorix thereupon hastened to storm Gorgobina, a town of the Boii, friendly to the Romans. Cæsar, in spite of difficulties, hurried to its relief. When he arrived at Noviodunum in the country of the Bituriges, and its inhabitants had accepted and partially carried out his terms of surrender, the approach of a cavalry force sent by Vercingetorix, who had heard of Cæsar's advance, caused them to change their plans and to prepare for resistance. But the cavalry of Vercingetorix was dispersed with great slaughter, and the submission of Noviodunum followed.

Cæsar sets out for Avaricum, the stronghold of the Bituriges

13. Quibus rēbus cōfectis Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum,
 10 quod erat maximum mūnitissimumque in finibus Biturigum atque agri fertilissimā regiōne, profectus est; quod eō oppidō receptō civitātem Biturigum sē in potestātem redāctūrum cōfidēbat.

¹ *virtūte Cn. Pompēi* etc.: the disturbances at Rome had been quieted by Pompey, who had been made dictator. ² *quā . . . posset*: indirect question depending on the idea of doubt in *difficultāte*.

Vercingetorix advises the Gauls to lay waste their country and thus deprive the Romans of their supplies

14. Vercingetorix tot continuis incommodis Vellaunodūni, Cēnabi, Noviodūni acceptis suōs ad concilium convocat. Docet 'longē aliā ratiōne esse bellum gerendum atque¹ antea gestum sit; omnibus modis huic rei studendum ut pābulatiōne et commeātū Rōmāni prohibeantur; id esse facile, 5 quod² equitātū ipsi abundant et quod anni tempore subleventur; pābulum secārī nōn posse; necessariō dispersōs hostēs ex aedificiis³ petere; hōs omnēs cotidiē ab equitibus delēri posse. Praetereā, salūtis causā⁴ rei familiāris commoda neglegenda; vicōs atque aedificia incendi oportēre⁵ hōc spatiō 10 quōqueversus, quō pābulandi causā adire posse videantur. Hārum ipsis rērum cōpiam suppetere, quod quōrum in finibus bellum gerātur eōrum opibus subleventur: Rōmānōs aut inopiam nōn lātūrōs aut magnō cum periculō longius ā castris prōcessūrōs; ⁶neque interesse ipsōsne interficiant an 15 impedimentis exuant, quibus āmissis bellum gerī nōn possit.

He urges them to burn their towns

'Praetereā, oppida incendi oportēre quae nōn mūnitiōne et loci nātūrā ab omnī sint periculō tūta; nē suis sint ad dētrectandam militiam receptācula, neu Rōmānis prōposita⁷ ad cōpiam commeātūs praedamque tollendam. Haec⁸ si 20 gravia aut acerba videantur, multō illa⁹ gravius aestimāri dēbere, liberōs, coniugēs in servitūtem abstrahī, ipsōs interfici; quae sit necesse accidere victis.'

¹ atque: 'than.' ² equitātū ipsi abundant: 'they themselves (the Gauls) are well supplied with cavalry.' ³ aedificiis: i.e. 'granaries.' ⁴ rei familiāris commoda: 'the interests of private property.' ⁵ hōc spatiō: correlative with *quō*. ⁶ neque interesse . . . -ne . . . an: 'nor does it make any difference whether . . . or' etc. ⁷ prōposita: 'offered' (to be captured by the Romans). ⁸ Haec: 'the foregoing.' ⁹ illa: 'the following.'

They burn more than twenty in a single day

15. Omnium cōsēnsū hāc sententiā probātā ūnō diē amplius xx urbēs Biturigum incenduntur. Hoc idem fit in reliquīs civitatibus. In omnibus partibus incendia cōspiciuntur ; quae etsi magnō cum dolōre omnēs ferēbant, tamen



VERCINGETORIX AND OTHER GALLIC CHIEFTAINS

5 hoc sibi sōlāci prōpōnēbant, quod sē prope explorātā victoriā celeriter āmissa¹ recuperātūrōs cōfidēbant.

But they spare Avaricum

Dēliberātur dē Avaricō in commūnī conciliō, incendi placeat an dēfendī. Prōcumbunt omnibus Gallīs² ad pedēs Biturigēs, nē pulcherrimam prope tōtius Galliae urbem,

¹ āmissa : 'what they had lost'; object of *recuperātūrōs*. ² Gallis : dative of reference ; see G. § 85.

quae et praesidiō et ōrnāmentō sit civitāti, suis manibus succendere cōgantur; facile sē loci nātūrā dēfēnsūrōs dicunt, quod, prope ex omnibus partibus flūmine et palūde circumdata, ūnum habeat et perangustum aditum. Datur petentibus venia, dissuādente primō Vercingetorige, post concēdente, et 5 p̄cibus ipsōrum et misericordiā volgī.¹ Dēfēnsōrēs oppidō idōneī dēliguntur.

Vercingetorix follows Caesar and attacks his foraging parties

16. Vercingetorix minōribus Caesarem itineribus subsequitur, et locum castris dēligit palūdibus silvisque mūnitum, ab Avaricō longē milia passuum xvi. Ibi per certōs explō- 10 rātōrēs ² in singula diēi tempora quae ad Avaricum gererentur cognōscēbat, et quid fieri vellet imperābat. Omnēs nostrās pābulatiōnēs frūmentātiōnēsque observābat, dispersōsque, cum longius necessariō p̄cēderent, adoriēbātur magnōque incommodō adficiēbat; ³ etsi, quantum ratiōne p̄vidērī poterat, 15 ab nostris occurrēbātur, ut incertis temporibus diversisque itineribus irētur.

Caesar, though greatly harassed, begins the siege of Avaricum

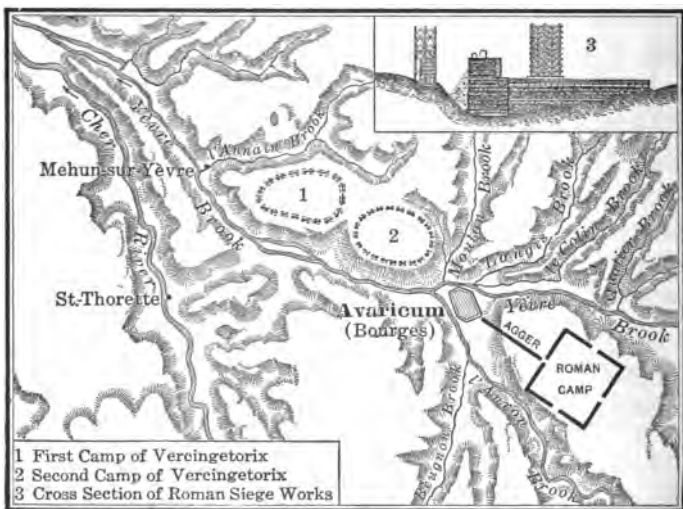
17. Castris ad eam partem oppidi positis Caesar quae intermissa flūmine et palūde aditum, ut suprā ⁴ diximus, angustum habēbat, aggerem adparāre, vineās agere, turrēs 20 duās cōstituere coepit; nam circumvallāre loci nātūra prohibēbat. Dē rē frūmentāriā Bōiōs atque Haeduōs adhortārī nōn dēstitit: quōrum alterī,⁵ quod nullō studiō agēbant,

¹ volgī: objective genitive: i. e. his compassion 'for the poor people,' who would be turned out of house and home in the winter if the towns should be burned. ² in . . . tempora: 'from hour to hour.' ³ etsi . . . irētur: 'although so far as skillful planning (*ratiōne*) could provide (against this danger), our men took the precaution of going at uncertain times and in different directions.' ⁴ suprā: see ll. 3 and 4. ⁵ alterī: i. e. the Hædui; *alterī* (next line), the Bōii.

nōn multum adiuvābant; alterī nōn magnis facultātibus, quod civitās erat exigua et infirma, celeriter quod habuērunt cōsumpsērunt.

The soldiers show a heroic spirit

Summā difficultāte rei frūmentāriae adfectō exercitū, tenui-
5 tātē¹ Bōiōrum, indiligiētiā Haeduōrum, incendiis aedificiōrum,



THE SIEGE OF AVARICUM

— ūsque eō ut complūrēs diēs frūmentō militēs caruerint, et pecore ē longinquiōribus vicis adāctō extrēmam famem sustentārint, — nūlla tamen vōx est ab eis audita populi Rōmāni² maiestāte et superiōribus victōriis indigna. Quin etiam
10 Caesar cum in opere singulās legiōnēs appellāret, et, ³ si

¹ *tenuitāte*: 'scanty resources.' ² *maiestāte . . . victōriis*: after *indigna* (the ablative is regularly used with *dignus* and *indignus*). ³ *si . . . ferrent*: conditional clause of *sē dēmissūrum*.

acerbius inopiam ferrent, sē dimissūrum oppugnātiōnem diceret, ūniversi ab eō nē id faceret petēbant :

'Sic sē complūrēs annōs illō imperante meruisse ut nūllam ignōminiam acciperent, numquam infectā rē discēderent ; hoc sē ¹ ignōminiae lātūrōs locō, si inceptam oppugnātiōnem 5 reliquissent : praestāre omnēs perferre acerbitatēs quam nōn civibus Rōmānis quī Cēnabi perfidiā Gallōrum interissent parentārent.' ²

Haec eādem centuriōnibus tribūnisque militum mandābant, ut per eōs ad Caesarem dēferrentur. 10

Caesar hears that Vercingetorix is near and marches against him

18. Cum iam mūrō turrēs adpropinquāssent, ex captivis Caesar cognōvit Vercingetorigem cōsumptō pābulō castra mōvisse propius Avaricum, atque ipsum cum equitatū expeditisque ³ quī inter equitēs proeliārī cōsuēssent, insidiandi causā eō profectum quō nostrōs posterō diē pābulātum ventū- 15 rōs arbitrārētur. Quibus rēbus cognitis mediā nocte silentiō profectus ad hostium castra māne pervēnit. Illi, celeriter per explorātōrēs adventū Caesaris cognitō, carrōs impedimentaque sua in artiōrēs silvās abdidērunt, cōpiās omnēs in locō ēditō atque apertō instrūxērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Cae- 20 sar celeriter sarcinās cōferri, arma expediti iussit.

But finds him too strongly entrenched to warrant an attack

19. Collis erat lēniter ab infimō acclivis. Hunc ex omnibus ferē partibus palūs difficilis atque impedita cingēbat, nōn lātior pedibus L. Hōc sē colle interruptis pōntibus Galli ⁴ fidūciā loci continēbant, generātimque distribūti omnia 25

¹ ignōminiae . . . locō: 'as a disgrace.' ² parentārent: sc. ut before nōn. ³ quī . . . cōsuēssent: see Book I, chap. 48. ⁴ fidūciā loci: 'trusting to the strength of the position.'

vada eius palūdis obtinēbant, sic animō parātī ut, sī eam palūdem Rōmānī perrumpere cōnārentur, haesitantēs¹ premerent ex locō superiōre ; ut, quī propinquitātem loci vidēret,² parātōs prope aequō Mārte ad dimicandum existimāret ; quī
 5 iniquitātem condiōnis perspiceret, ³ inānī simulatiōne sēsē ostentāre cognōsceret. Indignantēs militēs Caesar, quod cōnspectum suum hostēs ferre possent tantulō spatiō interiectō, et signum proeli exposcentēs, ēdocet quantō dētrīmentō et quot virōrum fortium morte necesse sit cōnstāre victōriam ;
 10 quōs cum sic animō parātōs videat ut nūllum prō suā laude periculum recūsent, ⁴ summae sē iniquitātis condemnāri dēbere, nisi eōrum vītā laude suā habeat cārīorem. Sic militēs cōnsolātus eōdem diē reducit in castra ; reliquaue quae ad oppugnātiōnem oppidi pertinēbant administrāre
 15 instituit.

The Gauls accuse Vercingetorix of treason

20. Vercingetorix cum ad suōs redisset, prōditiōnis⁴ insimulātus, — 'Quod castra propius Rōmānōs mōvisset,⁵ quod cum omni equitātū discessisset, quod sine imperiō tantās cōpiās reliquisset, quod eius discessū Rōmānī tantā opportū-
 20 nitāte et celeritāte vēnissent ; nōn haec omnia fortuitō aut sine cōnsiliō accidere potuisse ; rēgnum illum Galliae malle Caesaris concessū quam ipsōrum habēre beneficiō,' — tāli modō accūsātus ad haec respondit :

¹ *haesitantēs*: 'struggling' (in the mud of the marsh). ² *vidēret*: 'whoever saw the nearness of the position'; *vidēret*, of casual observation; *perspiceret* (l. 5), of careful inspection. ³ *inānī* . . . *ostentāre*: 'that they were making an empty display of courage'; because they saw that they were in a safe position and that an attack by the Romans would be folly. ⁴ *summae* etc.: 'that he ought to be condemned for extreme injustice'; verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, etc. take the genitive of the charge or penalty; *prōditiōnis* (l. 16) is in the same construction. ⁵ *mōvisset*: this and the following subjunctives refer to the actions in chap. 18.

However, he makes a successful defense

'Quod castra mōvisset, factum inopiā pābuli, etiam ipsis hortantibus; quod propius Rōmānōs accessisset, persuāsum¹ loci opportunitate, ²quī sē ipse sine mūnitiōne dēfenderet; equitum vērō operam neque in locō palūstri dēsiderārī dēbuisse, et illic fuisse ūtilem quō sint profecti. Summam ⁵ imperi sē cōsultō nūlli discēdentem trādidisse, nē is multitudinis studiō ad dimicandum impellerētur; cui rei propter animi molliem studere omnēs vidēret, quod diūtius labōrem ferre nōn possent. Rōmānī sī cāsū intervēnerint, fortunae³; sī alicuius indicio vocāti, huic habendam grātiā, quod et ¹⁰ paucitatem eōrum ex locō superiōre cognōscere et virtutem dēspicere potuerint, quī dimicāre nōn ausi turpiter sē in castra recēperint. Imperium sē ā Caesare per prōditiōnem nūllum dēsiderāre, quod habere victoriā posset, quae iam esset sibi atque omnibus Gallis explorāta: quin etiam ¹⁵ ⁴ipsis remittere, sī sibi magis honōrem tribuere quam ab sē salutem accipere videantur.' "Haec ut intellegātis," inquit, "ā mē sincērē prōnūntiārī, audite Rōmānōs militēs." Prōdūcit servōs, quōs in pābulātiōne paucis ante diēbus excēperat, et famē vinctisque excruciaēverat. Hi, iam ante ēdocti quae ²⁰ interrogāti prōnūntiārent, militēs sē esse legiōnariōs dicunt; famē et inopiā adductōs clam ex castris exisse, ⁵sī quid frūmenti aut pecoris in agris reperire possent; simili omnem exercitum inopiā premī, ⁶nec iam virēs sufficere cuiusquam nec ferre operis labōrem posse: itaque statuisse imperātō- ²⁵ rem, sī nihil in oppugnātiōne oppidi prōfēcissent, triduō

¹ *persuāsum* (esse): impersonal; sc. *sibi*. ² *quī sē . . . dēfenderet*: 'which was its own defense.' ³ *fortunae*: this, as well as *huic*, with *habendam grātiā*, 'they ought to be grateful.' ⁴ *ipsis remittere*: 'that he was ready to resign to them.' ⁵ *sī . . . possent*: '(to discover) whether they could' etc. ⁶ *nec iam virēs* etc.: 'that no one any longer had sufficient strength,'

exercitum dēducere. "Haec," inquit, "ā mē," Vercingetorīx, "beneficia habētis, quem prōditiōnis insimulātis; cuius operā sine vestrō sanguine tantum exercitum victōrem famē cōsūmptum vidētis; quem¹ turpiter sē ex hāc fugā recipien-
5 tem nē qua civitās suis finibus recipiat, ā mē prōvisum est."

The Gauls are filled with new determination

21. Conclāmat omnis multitudō et suō mōre armīs con-
crepat, — quod facere ²in eō cōsuērunt cuius orātiōnem
adprobant: 'Summum esse Vercingetorigem ducem, nec
dē eius fidē dubitandum, nec maiōre ratiōne bellum admi-
10 nistrārī posse.'

Statuunt ut x milia hominum dēlēcta ex omnibus cōpiīs
in oppidum submittantur, nec sōlis Biturīgibus commūnem
salūtem committendam cēsent; quod paene in eō,³ si id op-
pidum retinuissent, summam victōriae cōstāre intellegēbant.

They show great skill in the defense of the town

15 22. Singulārī militum nostrōrum virtūti cōsilia cuiusque
modi Gallōrum occurrēbant, ⁴ut est summae genus sollertiae,
atque⁵ ad omnia imitanda et efficienda quae ā quōque trā-
duntur aptissimum. Nam et laqueis falcēs⁶ āvertēbant, quās,
cum dēstināverant, tormentis intrōrsus redūcēbant; et ag-
20 gerem cuniculis subtrahēbant,⁷ eō scientius quod apud eōs
magnae sunt ferrariae, atque omne genus cuniculōrum nōtum

¹ quem: construe with nē . . . recipiat, which is subject of prōvisum est.
² in eō: 'in the case of one.' ³ eō: 'that condition'; explained by si . . .
retinuissent. ⁴ ut est etc.: 'as they are a people of the utmost ingenuity
and most skillful in imitating and making everything which is brought to
them by any one.' ⁵ atque: connects sollertiae (descriptive genitive) and
aptissimum, both modifying genus. ⁶ falcēs: see Introd. III. 13. b. Trans-
late, 'for they turned aside the hooks with nooses, and when they had
caught them firmly, they drew them inside with engines.' ⁷ subtrahē-
bant: 'undermined.'

atque ūsitātum est. Tōtum autem mūrū ex omni parte turribus contabulāverant atque hās ¹coriis intēxerant. Tum crēbris diurnis nocturnisque ēruptiōnibus aut aggeri ignem inferēbant aut militēs occupātōs in opere adoriēbantur; ²et nostrārum turrium altitudinem, quantum hās cotidiānus agger ⁵expresserat, ³commissis suārum turrium mālīs adaequābant; et ⁴apertōs cuniculōs praeūstā et praeacūtā māteriā et pice fervefactā et maximi ponderis saxis morābantur moenibusque adpropinquāre prohibēbant.

Description of a Gallic wall

23. Mūrī autem omnēs Gallici hāc ferē fōrmā sunt. Tra- ¹⁰bēs dērēctae, ⁶perpetuae in longitudinem paribus intervāllis, distantēs inter sē binōs pedēs, in solō conlocantur. Hae revinciuntur intrōrsus et multō aggere vestiuntur; ea autem quāe diximus intervālla grandibus in fronte saxis effarciuntur. His conlocātis et coagmentātis ⁷alius insuper ōrdō ¹⁵additur, ut idem illud intervāllum servētur neque inter sē contingant trabēs, sed, paribus intermissis spatiis, singulae

¹ *coriis intēxerant*: i.e. to protect them from fire. ² *et nostrārum . . . expresserat*: they increased the height of their own *turres* from day to day to match the increased height of those of the Romans. ³ *commissis . . . mālīs*: by splicing the upright timbers. ⁴ *apertōs . . . prohibēbant*: they hurled these obstructions into the open passageways of the *agger* and thus 'blocked' (*morābantur*) the Roman mines leading to the walls. ⁶ *dērēctae*: 'at right angles' (with the course of the wall). ⁶ *perpetuae in longitudinem*: 'continuously along its length.' ⁷ *alius insuper ōrdō* etc.: the foundation timbers are laid two feet apart with the ends in the face of the wall, the intervening spaces being filled with earth (*agger*), except at the ends, where stones (*saxis*) were used. Inside (*intrōrsus*) the wall, and running lengthwise, timbers forty feet long are mortised into these foundation beams so as to form a continuous binding (*perpetuīs trabibus*). The whole system is duplicated in a second row, but in such a way that the timbers rest upon the intervening stones and earth; and this plan is continued until the desired height is reached. The face of the wall thus shows stone facings and timber ends in alternation.

singulis saxis intēiectis artē contineantur. Sic deinceps omne opus cōtextitur dum iūsta mūrī altitūdō expleātur. Hoc cum¹ in speciem varietātemque opus dēfōrme nōn est, alternis trabibus ac saxis, quae rēctis lineis suōs ordinēs
 5 servant, tum ad ūtilitātem et dēfēnsiōnem urbium summam habet opportunitātem; quod et ab incendiō lapis et ab ariete māteria dēfendit, quae perpētuis trabibus pedum quadrāgēnum plērumque intrōrsus revincta neque perrumpī neque distrahi potest.

The Gauls set fire to the Roman works and make a sally

10 24. His tot rēbus impeditā oppugnātiōne militēs, cum tōtō tempore frigore et adsiduīs imbris tardārentur, tamen continentī labōre omnia haec superāvērunt, et diēbus xxv aggerem lātum pedēs cccxxx, altum pedēs lxxx extrūxērunt. Cum is mūrū hostium paene contingeret, et Caesar
 15 ad opus cōsuētūdine excubāret militēsque hortārētur nē quod omnīnō tempus ab opere intermitterētur, — paulō ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum fūmare aggerem, quem cuniculō² hostēs succenderant; eōdemque tempore, tōtō mūrō clāmōre sublātō, duābus portis ab utrōque latere tur-
 20 rium³ ēruptiō fiēbat. Alii facēs atque āridam māteriam dē mūrō in aggerem ēminus iaciēbant; picem reliquāsque rēs quibus ignis excitārī potest fundēbant; ut, ⁴ quō primum occurrerētur aut cui rei ferrētur auxilium, vix ratiō iniri posset. Tamen, quod institūtō Caesaris duae semper legiōnēs prō
 25 castrīs excubābant, plūrēsque partitis temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est ut alii ēruptiōnibus resisterent,

¹ cum: correlates with *tum*, l. 5. ² cuniculō: i.e. 'a mine' running under the *agger*, which was largely made of wood. ³ turrium: i.e. the Roman towers flanking the *agger*. ⁴ quō primum occurrerētur: 'where resistance should first be made.'

aliī turrēs redūcerent¹ aggeremque interscinderent,² omnis vērō ex castris multitudō ad restinguendum concurreret.

Cæsar praises the valor of the enemy

25. Cum in omnibus locis, cōsūptā iam reliquā parte noctis, pugnārētur semperque hostibus spēs victōriæ redintegrārētur, — eō magis quod deūstōs pluteōs³ turrium 5 vidēbant, nec facile adire apertōs⁴ ad auxiliandum animadvertēbant, — semperque ipsī⁵ recentēs dēfessis succēderent, omnemque Galliae salūtem in illō vēstigiō temporis positam arbitrārentur; ⁶accidit inspectantibus nōbis 'quod dignum memoriā vīsum prætereundum nōn existimāvimus. Quīdam 10 ante portam oppidī Gallus ⁷per manūs sēbī ac picis trāditās glēbās in ignem ē regiōne turris prōiciēbat; scorpione⁸ ab latere dextrō trāiectus exanimātusque concidit. Hunc ex proximis ūnus iacentem trāsgressus eōdem illō mūnere fungēbātur; eādem ratiōne ictū scorpionis exanimātō alterō 15 successit tertius et tertiō quārtus; nec prius ille est ā prō-pugnātōribus vacuus relictus locus quam, restinctō aggere atque omni parte submōtis hostibus, finis est pugnandi factus.

The Gauls prepare to abandon the town, but are dissuaded by the women

26. Omnia expertī Galli, quod rēs nūlla successerat, posterō diē cōsiliū cēpērunt ex oppidō profugere hortante 20 et iubente Vercingetorige. Id silentiō noctis cōnāti nōn

¹ redūcerent: i. e. out of reach of the fire. ² interscinderent: i. e. they cut away the unfinished end of the *agger*, which was in flames, thus saving the rest. ³ pluteōs: see Introd. III. 13. b. ⁴ apertōs: sc. *militiās*. ⁵ ipsī: i. e. the Gauls. ⁶ accidit . . . nōbis: 'an incident occurred before my eyes'; *nōbis* is the "editorial we," plural for singular, referring to Cæsar. ⁷ per manūs . . . trāditās: 'passed along by hand' from man to man. ⁸ scorpione: see Introd. III. 4. c and the illustration.

magnā iactūrā suōrum sēsē effectūrōs spērābant ; propterea quod neque longē ab oppidō castra Vercingetorigis aberant, et palūs perpetua, quae intercēdēbat, Rōmānōs ad insequendum tardābat. Iamque hoc facere noctū adparābant, cum
 5 mātēs familiae repente in pūblicum prōcurrērunt flentēsq̄, prōiectae ad pedēs suōrum,¹ omnibus precibus petiērunt nē sē et commūnēs liberōs hostibus ad supplicium dēderent, quōs ad capiendam fugam nātūrae et viriū infirmitās impediret. Ubi eōs² in sententiā perstāre vidērunt, quod plē-
 10 rumque in summō periculō timor misericordiam nō recipit, conclāmāre et significāre dē fugā Rōmānis coepērunt. ³ Quō timōre perterriti Galli, nē ab equitātū Rōmānōrum viae praeoccupārentur, cōsiliō dēstitērunt.

Caesar storms the walls

27. Posterō diē Caesar prōmōtā turri dērēctisque operi-
 15 bus quae facere instituerat, magnō coōrtō imbrī, nō inūtilem hanc ad capiendum cōsiliū tempestātem arbitrātus, quod paulō incautius custodiās in mūrō dispositās vidēbat, suōs quoque languidiū in opere versārī iussit, et quid fieri vellet ostendit. Legiōnibusque intrā vineās in occultō expeditis,⁴
 20 cohortātus ut aliquandō prō tantis labōribus frūctum victōriae perciperent, eis quī primī mūrū adscendissent⁵ praemia prōposuit militibusque signum dedit. Illi subitō ex omnibus partibus ēvolāvērunt mūrūque celeriter complēvērunt.

Avaricum is taken, and most of the inhabitants are killed

28. Hostēs rē novā perterriti, mūrō turribusque dēiecti,
 25 in forō ac locis patentioribus cuneatim cōstitērunt, hōc

¹ suōrum: 'their husbands.' ² eōs: i.e. the Gallic men. ³ Quō timōre: caused by the betrayal of their proposed flight. ⁴ expeditis: 'having been stationed.' ⁵ adscendissent: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative.

animō ut, ¹ si quā ex parte obviam venirētur, aciē instrūctā dēpugnārent. Ubi nēminem in aequum locum sēsē dēmittere, sed tōtō undique mūrō circumfundi² vidērunt, veriti nē omnīnō spēs fugae tollerētur, abiectis armis ultimās oppidī partēs continentī impetū petivērunt; parsque ibi, cum 5 angustō exitū portārum sē ipsī premerent, ā militibus, pars iam ēgressa portis ab equitibus est interfecta; nec fuit quisquam quī praedae studēret. Sic et ³ Cēnabēnsī caede et labōre operis incitātī nōn aetāte cōfectis, nōn mulieribus, nōn infantibus pepercērunt. Dēnique ex omni numerō, 10 quī fuit circiter milium XL, vix DCCC, quī primō clāmōre auditō sē ex oppidō eiēcerant, incolumēs ad Vercingetorigem pervēnērunt.

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 29-90

The remaining sixty-two chapters of the seventh book continue the account of the mighty struggle between Cæsar and Vercingetorix, a foe-man worthy of his steel. The Gallic chief made a heroic effort to liberate his country, and was so successful in winning the various tribes to his support that even the Hædui, Cæsar's most faithful allies, revolted and enlisted under his banner.

After the loss of Avaricum, Vercingetorix retired to Gergovia. Cæsar followed, but, even after a most desperate assault, was unable to take the town. The Gauls, much encouraged, held a great council at Bibracte to make plans for finally crushing the Romans. Believing that Cæsar was retreating, they attacked him and suffered a great defeat.

Vercingetorix retired with 80,000 men to Alesia, and to this stronghold Cæsar now laid siege. The account is a terrible one. While the town was suffering all the horrors of starvation, the Gauls gathered a great army of a quarter of a million men to bring it relief. After a hard-fought battle the Gauls were defeated, and the city fell. Plutarch describes the surrender as follows:

¹ si quā . . . venirētur: 'if an attack should be made from any side.'
² circumfundi: 'that men were pouring in'; impersonal. ³ Cēnabēnsī caede: see summary of chapters 1-3, p. 175.

"Vercingetorix, who was the chief author of all the war, putting on his best armor, came out of the gate and rode round Cæsar, who was seated; then he dismounted from his horse, threw off his armor, and sat quietly at Cæsar's feet until he was led away to be reserved for the triumph."

The fate remaining for this gallant patriot, who lacked only success to be hailed as the savior of his country, was to be kept in chains for six years, and then, after being led in Cæsar's triumphal procession, to be put to death. A gigantic statue in his memory stands to-day on the heights of Alesia (see p. 176). Cæsar's own narration closes with the surrender of Vercingetorix. The remainder of the story of the Gallic War is told in the eighth book by Cæsar's faithful officer and friend, Aulus Hirtius.

After the fall of Alesia, sporadic attempts at revolt in various parts of Gaul were put down, and a final rally of the patriotic party at the stronghold of Uxellodunum was crushed. Cæsar then invited the chiefs of the tribes to come to him, told them of the great future that lay before them as members of a splendid imperial state, and gave them magnificent presents. He so impressed them by his gracious clemency that they served him faithfully thereafter, and never again made an effort to recover their independence.



CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR CONSUL

THE CIVIL WAR

BOOK III

CHAPTERS 82-112

THE BATTLE OF PHARSALIA AND THE BEGINNING OF THE ALEXANDRIAN WAR, 48 B.C.

Pompey joins Scipio in Thessaly

POMPĒIUS paucis post diēbus in Thessaliam pervēnit cōtiōnātusque apud cūctum exercitum suis agit grātiās, Scipiōnis militēs cohortātur ut partā iam victōriā praedae ac praemiōrum velint esse participēs, receptisque omnibus in ūna castra legiōnibus suum cum 5 Scipiōne honōrem partitur classicumque apud eum cani et alterum illi iubet praetōrium tendi.

The soldiers are confident of victory

Auctis cōpiis Pompēi duōbusque magnis exercitibus coniūctis pristina omnium cōfirmātur opiniō et spēs victōriae augētur, adeō ut, quicquid intercēderet temporis, 10 id morārī reditum in Italiam vidērētur, et, si quādo quid Pompēius tardius aut cōsiderātius faceret, ūnius esse negōtium diēi, sed illum dēlectārī imperiō et cōsulārēs praetōriōsque servōrum habēre numerō dicerent.

They quarrel over the division of the expected booty

Iamque inter sē palam dē praemiis ac sacerdotiis conten- 15 dēbant in annōsque cōsulātum dēfiniēbant, alii domōs bonaque eōrum quī in castris erant Caesaris petēbant;

magnaue inter eōs in cōnsiliō fuit contrōversia, oportēretne Lūcili Hirri, quod is ā Pompēiō ad Parthōs missus esset, 20 proximis comitiis praetōriis absentis ratiōnem habēri, cum eius necessariū fidem implōrārent Pompēi, praestāret quod proficiscenti recēpisset, nē per eius auctoritātem dēceptus vidērētur, reliquī, in labōre parī ac periculō nē ūnus omnēs antecēderet, recūsārent.

canō, -ere, cecinī, cantus, sing; sound

cīvilis, -e, civil; of citizens

classicum, -ī, *n.*, signal; trumpet

cōnsiderātus, -a, -um, *part. as adj.*, with deliberation

cōsulāris, -e, of consular rank

cōtiōnor, -ārī, -ātus, harangue, make an address

dēfiniō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, determine

Hirrus, -ī, *m.*, Lucilius Hirrus, a follower of Pompey

pariō, -ere, peperī, partus, produce; gain

Parthī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Parthians

particeps, -cipis, *m.*, sharer

praetōrium, -ī, *n.*, a general's tent

praetōrius, -a, -um, *adj.*, praetorian; *masc. as noun*, ex-praetor

sacerdōtium, -ī, *n.*, priesthood

Scipiō, -ōnis, *m.*, Quintus Caecilius Metellus Pius Scipio, colleague of Pompey

Thessalia, -ae, *f.*, Thessaly

3. *partā iam victōriā*: 'as if the victory had already been gained.'
 6. *apud eum*: 'at his quarters.' 7. *tendī*: 'to be set up' (lit. 'stretched').
 12. *tardius aut cōnsiderātius*: 'rather slowly or deliberately.' 14. *servōrum habēre numerō*: 'regarded as slaves.' 16. *in annōs*: 'for succeeding years.' 18. *oportēretne Lūcili Hirri . . . absentis ratiōnem habēri*: 'whether Lucilius Hirrus ought to be considered in his absence.' 21. *praestāret . . . recēpisset*: 'that he should fulfill that which he had guaranteed to him at his departure.' 22. *eius*: i.e. Pompey's. 24. *recūsārent*: 'made objection.'

The officers revile each other

83. Iam dē sacerdotiō Caesaris Domitius, Scipiō Spitherque Lentulus cotidiānis contentiōnibus ad gravissimās verbōrum contumeliās palam dēscendērunt, cum Lentulus aetātis honōrem ostentāret, Domitius urbānam grātiā 5 dignitātemque iactāret, Scipiō adfinitāte Pompēi cōfideret.

Postulāvit etiam L. Afrānium prōditiōnis exercitūs Acūtius Rūfus apud Pompēium, quod gestum in Hispāniā diceret.

Domitius suggests a plan for future vengeance on their enemies

Et L. Domitius in cōnsiliō dixit placēre sibi bellō cōfectō ternās tabellās dari ad iūdicandum eis quī ordinis essent senātōrii bellōque unā cum ipsis interfuisent, sententiāsque dē 10 singulis ferrent quī Rōmæ remānsissent quique intrā praesidia Pompēi fuissent neque operam in rē militārī praestitissent; unam fore tabellam quī liberandōs omni periculō cēnsērent; alteram quī capitis damnārent; tertiam quī pecūniā multārent.

In their greed for spoils they forget that the victory is yet to be won

Postrēmō omnēs aut dē honōribus suis aut dē praemiis 15 pecūniae aut dē persequendis inimicitiis agēbant, nec quibus ratiōnibus superāre possent, sed quem ad modum ūti victōriā dēbērent cōgitābant.

Acūtius, -i, *m.*, Acutius Rufus, mentioned only here

Afrānius, -i, *m.*, Lucius Afranius, a lieutenant of Pompey

Domitius, -i, *m.*, Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus, a supporter of Pompey

multō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, punish (by fine)

senātōrius, -a, -um, senatorial

Spinther, -eris, *m.*, Publius Cornelius Lentulus Spinther, one of Pompey's officers

tabella, -ae, *f.*, tablet, ballot

1. **sacerdōtiō**: Cæsar's office as pontifex maximus. 3. **cum . . . ostentāret**: 'Lentulus urging the respect due to his age.' 4. **urbānam grātiām dignitātemque**: 'his influence and standing in the city.' 5. **adfinītate**: Pompey had married Scipio's daughter. 6. **Postulāvit . . . exercitūs**: 'accused of betraying the army.' 9. **ad iūdicandum**: 'for voting.' 10. **sententiās . . . quī**: 'that they should express their opinions on each one of those who' etc. The antecedent of *quī* is (*eīs*) *singulīs*. 13. **liberandōs**: refers to *quī Rōmæ remānsissent* etc. 14. **quī capitis damnārent**: 'who would inflict the death penalty.' With verbs of condemning etc. the penalty is expressed sometimes by the genitive (as *capitis*) and sometimes by the ablative (as *pecūniā* in the same line).—**quī pecūniā multārent**: 'who would inflict a fine.' 16. **agēbant**: 'wrangled.'

Cæsar vainly offers battle several days in succession

84. Rē frumentariā praeparatā cōfirmātisque militibus
et satis longō spatiō temporis a Dyrrachinis proeliis inter-
missō, quō satis perspectum habēre militum animum
vidērētur, tentandum Caesar existimāvit quidnam Pompēius
5 prōpositi aut voluntātis ad dimicandum habēret. Itaque ex
castris exercitum edūxit, aciemque instrūxit, primō suis
locis paulōque ā castris Pompēi longius, continentibus vērō
diēbus ut prōgrederētur ā castris suis collibusque Pompēiānis
aciem subiceret. Quae rēs in diēs cōfirmātiōrem eius
10 exercitum efficiēbat.

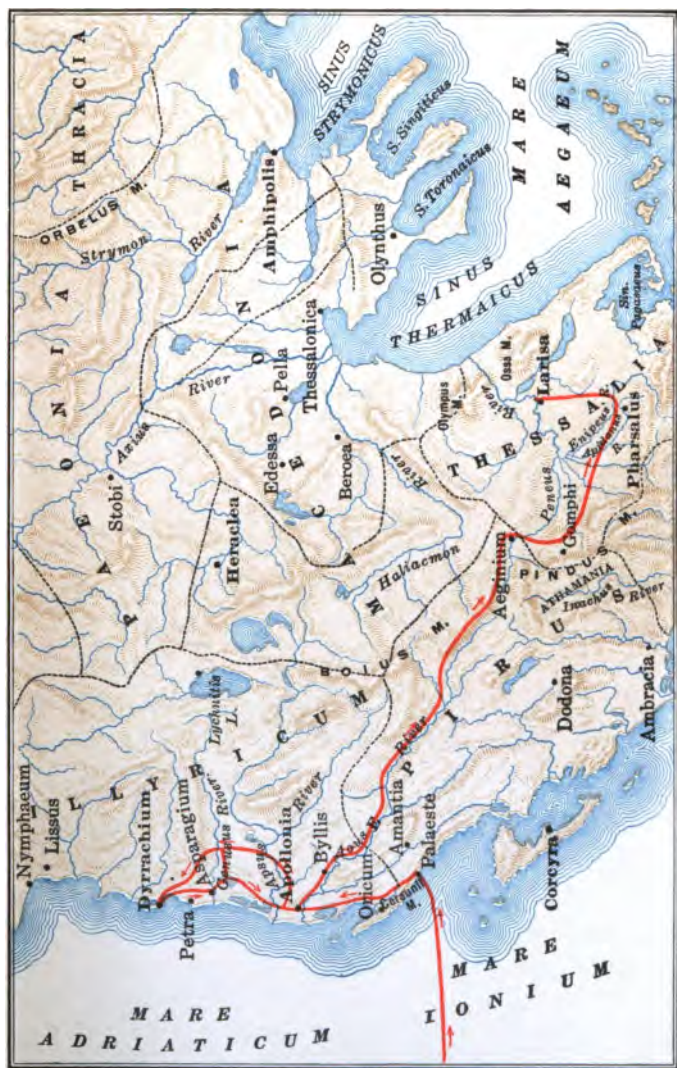
*Being inferior in cavalry, he trains a mixed force of
light-armed infantry and horse*

Superius tamen institūtum in equitibus, quod dēmōstrā-
vimus, servābat, ut, quoniam numerō multis partibus esset
inferior, adulēscentēs atque expeditōs ex antesignānis ēlēctis
ad pernīcitatē armis inter equitēs proeliārī iubēret, qui
15 cotidiānā cōsuētūdīne ūsum quoque eius generis proeliōrum
perciperent. His erat rēbus effectum ut equitum mille etiam
apertiōribus locis VII milium Pompēiānōrum impetum, cum
adesset ūsus, sustinēre audērent neque magnopere eōrum
multitūdine terrērentur. Namque etiam per eōs diēs proe-
20 lium secundum equestre fēcit atque ūnum Allobrogem ex
duōbus quōs perfūgissee ad Pompēium suprā docuimus cum
quibusdam interfēcit.

antesignānus, -ī, *m.*, a soldier fight-
ing in the first line
Dyrrachinus, -a, -um, of Dyrrachium

pernīcītās, -ātis, *f.*, swiftness
Pompēiānus, -a, -um, of Pompey
tentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make trial

3. quō . . . vidērētur: a descriptive clause. The antecedent of *quō* is
spatiō. 4. quidnam . . . habēret: 'what purpose or wish Pompey entertained



CAMPAIGN MAP FOR 48 B.C.

for the combat.' 6. *suīs locīs*: 'ground of his own choosing.' 7. *continentibus vērō diēbus*: 'but during successive days'; contrasting with *primō* above. 8. *collibus Pompēiānis*: 'the hills occupied by Pompey's men.' 11. *Superius . . . institūtum*: 'the former arrangement.' 12. *ut . . . iubēret*: in apposition with *institūtum*. 13. *ēlēctīs ad perniciatē armīs*: 'equipment chosen with reference to speed' (i.e. light armor). 16. *perciperent*: 'acquired.' 21. *suprā docuimus*: 'I have said above' (i.e. in a preceding chapter).

Despairing of a battle, Cæsar decides to break camp

85. Pompēius, quī castra in colle habēbat, ad infimās
rādicēs montis aciem instruebat, semper, ut vidēbātur,
expectāns, si iniquis locis Caesar sē subiceret. Caesar,
nullā ratiōne ad pugnam ēlici posse Pompēium existimāns,
hanc sibi commodissimam belli ratiōnem iudicāvit, uti castra 5
ex eō locō movēret semperque esset in itineribus, haec
spectāns, ut movendis castris plūribusque adeundis locis
commodiōre rē frūmentāriā ūterētur, simulque in itinere ut
aliquam occāsiōnem dimicandi nanciscerētur et insolitum ad
labōrem Pompēi exercitum cotidiānis itineribus dēfatigāret. 10

*Pompey unexpectedly offers battle. Cæsar addresses his troops
and leads them forth*

His cōstitutis rēbus signō iam profectiōnis datō taber-
nāculisque dētēnsis, animadversum est paulō ante extrā
cotidiānam cōsuētūdinem longius ā vāllō esse aciem Pompēi
prōgressam, ut nōn iniquō locō posse dimicārī vidērētur.
Tunc Caesar apud suōs, cum iam esset agmen in portis, 15
"Differendum est," inquit, "iter in praesentiā nōbis et dē
proeliō cōgitandum, sicut semper dēpoposcimus. Animō
simus ad dimicandum parātī; nōn facile occāsiōnem postea
reperiēmus"; cōnfestimque expeditās cōpiās ēdūcit.

dētendō, -ere, -tendī, -tēnsus, take down (a tent) (<i>lit.</i> unstretch)	insolitus, -a, -um, unaccustomed, unused
ēliciō, -licere, -licuī, -licitus, entice out, draw out	tunc, <i>adv.</i> , then, thereupon, forth- with

3. sē subiceret: 'would advance' ('would expose himself'). 6. *semperque . . . itineribus*: 'keep constantly on the move.' 8. *commodiōre . . . ūterētur*: 'avail himself of supplies more advantageously.' 12. *extrā*: 'contrary to.' 14. *nōn iniquō*: i.e. to Cæsar.

*Pompey, relying on his cavalry, is confident of an easy victory.
He explains his plan of attack*

86. Pompēius quoque, ut postea cognitum est, suorum omnium hortatū statuerat proeliō dēcertāre. Namque etiam in cōsiliō superiōribus diēbus dixerat, priusquam concurrerent aciēs, fore uti exercitus Caesaris pellerētur. Id cum
5 essent plērique admirāti, "Sciō mē," inquit, "paene incrēdibilem rem pollicērī; sed ratiōnem cōsili mei accipite, quō firmiōre animō in proelium prōdeātis. Persuāsi equitibus nostris, idque mihi factūrōs cōfirmāvērunt, ut, cum propius sit accessum, dextrum Caesaris cornū ab latere apertō
10 adgrederentur et circumventā ab tergō aciē prius perturbātum exercitum pellerent quam ā nobis tēlum in hostem iacerētur. Ita sine periculō legiōnum et paene sine vulnere bellum cōficiēmus. Id autem difficile nōn est, cum tantum equitātū valeāmus." Simul dēnūntiāvit ut essent animō
15 parāti in posterum et, quoniam fieret dimicandi potestās, ut saepe cōgitāvissent, nē ūsū manūque reliquōrum opiniōnem fallerent.

7. *quō . . . prōdeātis*: clause of purpose. 9. *sit accessum*: impersonal. 10. *prius*: to be construed with *quam*. 15. *in posterum*: 'for the future.'—*ut*: 'as.' 16. *ūsū manūque*: i.e. in the actual test of their prowess; opposed to *cōgitāvissent*.—*reliquōrum*: 'the rest' (of their comrades who were not present).

Labiēnus follows, and speaks with contempt of Cæsar's army

87. Hunc Labiēnus excēpit et, cum Cæsar's cōpiās dēspiceret, Pompēi cōnsilium summis laudibus efferret, "Nōli," inquit, "existimāre, Pompēi, hunc esse exercitum quī Galliam Germāniamque dēvicerit. Omnibus interfui proeliis, neque temerē incognitam rem prōnūntiō. Perexigua pars illius exercitūs superest; magna pars dēperiit, quod accidere tot proeliis fuit necesse, multōs autumnī pestilentia in Italiā cōnsūmpsit, multī domum discesserunt, multi sunt relictī in continētī. An nōn audistis ex eis quī per causam valētū dinis remānsērunt cohortēs esse Brundisi factās? Hæc cōpiæ quās vidētis ex dēlectibus hōrum annōrum in citeriōre Galliā sunt refectæ, et plērique sunt ex colōniis Trāspadānis. Ac tamen quod fuit rōboris duōbus proeliis Dyrrachinis interiit."

All swear never to return to camp unless victorious

Haec cum dixisset, iūrāvit sē nisi victōrē in castra nōn reversūrum, reliquōsque ut idem facerent hortātus est. Hoc laudāns Pompēius idem iūrāvit; nec vērō ex reliquīs fuit quisquam quī iūrāre dubitāret. Haec cum facta sunt in cōnsiliō, magnā spē et laetitiā omnium discessum est; ac iam animō victōriam praecipiebant, quod dē rē tantā et ā tam peritō imperātōre nihil frūstrā cōfirmārī vidēbātur.

autumnus, -i, *m.*, autumn

Brundisium, -ī, *n.*, Brundisium, a

seaport in southern Italy

laetitia, -ae, *f.*, gladness, joy

pestilentia, -ae, *f.*, scourge, pestilence

Trāspadānus, -a, -um, dwelling across the Po

1. excēpit: 'followed' (in speaking). — cum . . . dēspiceret (et) efferret: 'while he depreciated . . . (and) extolled.' 3. quī . . . dēvicerit: clause of description. 9. continētī: i. e. Italy. — ex eis: construe with *esse factās*. 13. quod fuit rōboris: 'what strength there was'; rōboris, partitive genitive. 18. discessum est: impersonal, but translate, 'they departed.'

Formation of Pompey's line of battle

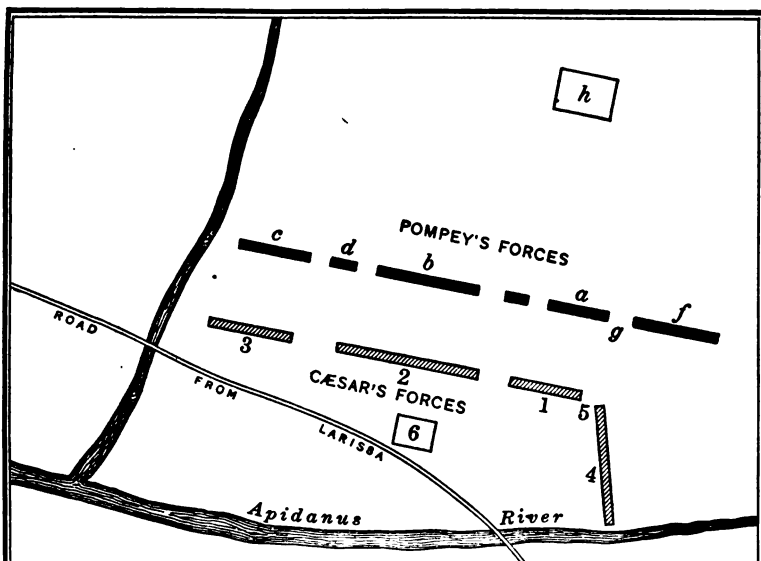
88. Caesar, cum Pompēi castris adpropinquasset, ad hunc modum aciem eius instructam animadvertit. Erant in sinistrō cornū legiōnēs duae trāditae ā Caesare initiō dissēnsiōnis ex senātūs cōsultō; quārum ūna prima, altera tertia appellābatur. In eō locō ipse erat Pompēius. Mediam aciem Scīpiō cum legiōnibus Syriacis tenēbat. Ciliciēnsis legiō coniūcta cum cohortibus Hispānis, quās trāductās ab Afrāniō docuimus, in dextrō cornū erant conlocātae. Hās firmissimās sē habēre Pompēius existimābat. Reliquās inter
 10 aciem mediam cornuaque interiēcērat numerōque cohortēs cx explēverat. Haec erant milia XLV, ēvocātōrum circiter duo, quae ex beneficiāriis superiōrum exercituum ad eum convēnerant; quae tōtā aciē disperserat. Reliquās cohortēs VII in castris propinquisque castellis praesidiō disposuerat.
 15 Dextrum cornū eius rīvus quidam impeditis ripis mūniēbat; quam ob causam cūctum equitātum, sagittariōs funditōrēsque omnēs sinistrō cornū obiēcērat.

beneficiārius, -ī, *m.*, a soldier exempt from menial duties; a favorite **Ciliciēnsis**, -e, Cilician
Syriacus, -a, -um, of Syria

1. **ad hunc modum**: 'after this fashion.' 4. **ex senātūs cōsultō**: 'by a decree of the senate.' 5. **Mediam aciem**: 'the middle of the line.' 7. **trāductās**: sc. *esse*. 8. **Hās . . . existimābat**: 'Pompey considered these the steadiest that he had.' 10. **numerō**: ablative of respect. 14. **praesidiō**: dative of purpose. 15. **impeditis**: 'presenting obstructions.'

Formation of Caesar's line of battle

89. Caesar superius institūtum servāns decimam legiōnem in dextrō cornū, nōnam in sinistrō conlocāverat, tametsi erat Dyrrachinis proeliis vehementer attenuāta, et huic sic adiūxit octāvam, ut paene ūnam ex duābus efficeret, atque
 5 alteram alteri praesidiō esse iusserat. Cohortēs in aciē LXXX



EXPLANATION

POMPEY'S LINE OF BATTLE

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p><i>a</i> Two legions turned over to Pompey by Cæsar before the Civil War began</p> <p><i>b</i> The center, commanded by Scipio</p> <p><i>c</i> The right wing, consisting of the Cilician legion in conjunction with the cohorts brought from Spain by Afranius</p> | <p><i>d</i> The remaining cohorts</p> <p><i>e</i> A river</p> <p><i>f</i> The left wing, consisting of the cavalry commanded by Labienus, the archers and slingers</p> <p><i>g</i> Pompey</p> <p><i>h</i> Pompey's camp, guarded by seven cohorts</p> |
|--|---|

CÆSAR'S LINE OF BATTLE

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p><i>1</i> The right wing, consisting of the tenth legion, commanded by Sulla</p> <p><i>2</i> The center, commanded by Domitius</p> <p><i>3</i> The left wing, consisting of the eighth and ninth legions, commanded by Antony</p> | <p><i>4</i> The fourth line, of six cohorts, designed to protect the right wing against Pompey's cavalry</p> <p><i>5</i> Cæsar, opposite Pompey</p> <p><i>6</i> Cæsar's camp, guarded by two cohorts</p> |
|---|--|

THE BATTLE OF PHARSALIA, 48 B.C.

cōstitūtās habēbat, quae summa erat milium XXII; cohortēs
 duās castris praesidiō reliquerat. Sinistrō cornū Antōnium,
 dextrō P. Sullam, mediā aciē Cn. Domitium praeposuerat.
 Ipse contrā Pompēium cōstitit. Simul his rēbus animad-
 10 versis quās dēmōnstrāvimus, timēns nē ā multitūdine equitum
 dextrum cornū circumvenīrētur, celeriter ex tertiā aciē sin-
 gulās cohortēs dētrāxit atque ex his quārtam instituit equitā-
 tuique opposuit, et quid fieri vellet ostendit, monuitque eius
 diēi victōriam in eārum cohortium virtūte cōnstāre. Simul
 15 tertiae aciēi tōtiq̄ue exercitūi imperāvit nē iniussū suō con-
 curreret; sē, cum id fieri vellet, vēxillō signum datūrum.

Antōnius, -ī, m., Marcus Antonius,
 the famous triumvir; served in
 the Civil War under Cæsar and
 was one of his active partisans
attenuō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, make
 thin; lessen

cōnstō, -stāre, -stiti, -stāturus, lit.
 stand together; **cōnstat,** depend
 upon (*with in*)
Sulla, -ae, m., Publius Cornelius
 Sulla, an officer of Cæsar; nephew
 of Sulla, the great dictator

8. **praeposuerat:** 'had placed in command.' We should expect datives
 with the accusatives. 14. **cōnstāre:** 'depended upon.'

*Cæsar reminds his men of his efforts for peace, then gives the
 signal for battle*

90. Exercitum cum militāri mōre ad pugnam cohortārētur
 suaque in eum perpetui temporis officia praedicāret, imprimis
 commemorāvit 'testibus sē militibus ūti posse quantō studiō
 pācem petisset; quae per Vatinius in conloquiis, quae per
 5 Aulum Clōdium cum Scipione ēgisset; quibus modis ad
 Ōricum cum Libōne dē mittendis lēgātis contendisset. Neque
 sē umquam abūtī militum sanguine neque rem pūblicam
 alterutrō exercitū privāre voluisse.' Hāc habitā ōrātiōne
 exposcentibus militibus et studiō pugnae ārdentibus, tubā
 10 signum dedit.

abūtor, -ātī, -ūsus, sacrifice**alteruter, -tra, -trum**, either**Libō, -ōnis, m.**, Lucius Scribonius

Libo, father-in-law of Sextus

Pompey

Ōricum, -ī, n., Oricum, a town of Illyricum**Vatinius, -ī, m.**, Publius Vatinius,

a subordinate of Cæsar

2. **sua . . . officia**: 'his constant services to it.' 3. **testibus . . . posse**: 'he could call his soldiers to witness.' 4. **in conloquiis**: 'to gain a conference' (with Labienus). 6. **contendisset**: 'he had striven.'

Heroism of Crastinus, a veteran volunteer

91. Erat Crāstinus ēvocātus in exercitū Caesaris, quī superiōre annō apud eum primum pilum in legiōne decimā dūxerat, vir singulārī virtūte. Hic signō datō, "Sequimini mē," inquit, "manipulārēs mei quī fuistis, et vestrō imperātōri quam cōstituistis operam date. Ūnum hoc proelium superest; quō cōfectō, et ille suam dignitātem et nōs nostram libertātem recuperābimus." Simul respiciēns Caesarem, "Faciam," inquit, "hodiē, imperātor, ut aut vivō mihi aut mortuō grātiās agās." Haec cum dixisset, primus ex dextrō cornū prōcucurrit, atque eum ēlēcti militēs circiter cxx voluntarii eiusdem centuriae sunt prōsecuti.

centuria, -ae, f., century, a company of nominally a hundred men

Crāstinus, -ī, m., Crastinus**hodiē, adv.**, to-day**manipulāris, -is, m.**, comrade (of the same maniple)**voluntārius, -ī, m.**, volunteer

2. **primum pilum . . . dūxerat**: 'had been primipilus' etc. 5. **quam . . . date**: 'exert yourselves as you have resolved' (lit. 'give the service which you have resolved upon'). 6. **ille**: i.e. Cæsar. 8. **ut . . . agās**: 'that you will thank me whether alive or dead.'

Pompey does not charge, but awaits Cæsar's attack

92. Inter duās aciēs tantum erat relictum spatī, ut satis esset ad concursum utriusque exercitiū. Sed Pompēius suis praedixerat ut Caesaris impetum exciperent nēve sē locō

movērent, aciemque eius distrahi paterentur ; idque admonitū
 5 C. Triārī fēcisse dicēbātur, ut primus excursus visque mili-
 tum infringerētur aciēsque distenderētur, atque in suis ōrdi-
 nibus dispositi dispersōs adorirentur ; leviusque cāsūra pila
 spērābat in locō retentis militibus quam si ipsi immissis
 tēlis occurrissent ; simul fore ut duplicātō cursū Caesaris
 10 militēs exanimārentur et lassitūdine cōficerentur.

He is criticized for so doing

Quod nōbis quidem nullā ratiōne factum ā Pompēiō vidētur,
 proptereā quod est quaedam animi incitātiō atque alacritās
 nātūrāliter innāta omnibus, quae studiō pugnae incenditur.
 Hanc nōn reprimere, sed augēre imperātōrēs dēbent ; neque
 5 frūstrā antiquitus institūtum est ut signa undique concinerent
 clāmōremque ūniversi tollerent ; quibus rēbus et hostēs ter-
 rērī et suōs incitārī existimāvērunt.

admonitus, -ūs, *m.*, advice
concinō, -ere, -uī, —, sound to-
 gether
distendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus,
 stretch out ; break
excursus, -ūs, *m.*, dash
incitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, enthusiasm
infringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctus, break

innātus, -a, -um, *part. of innāscor*,
 inborn
nātūrāliter, *adv.*, naturally
praedicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictus, say
 beforehand ; command before-
 hand, advise
Triārius, -ī, *m.*, Caius Valerius
 Triarius

3. **ut . . . exciperent** : 'to await Caesar's attack.' 4. **distrahi** : 'to be
 thrown into disorder.' 6. **in . . . dispositi** : 'and that they (i.e. the Pom-
 peians) remaining in their ranks.' 7. **leviusque . . . spērābat** : 'he
 hoped that the javelins would fall with less effect' (lit. 'more lightly').
 8. **retentis militibus** : ablative absolute with conditional force. — **immissis**
 . . . **occurrissent** : 'should charge against the missiles that were hurled
 against them.' 11. **nōbis** : 'to me,' i.e. Caesar. — **nullā ratiōne** : 'with
 no good reason.' 13. **nātūrāliter . . . omnibus** : 'implanted by nature
 in all.' 14. **neque . . . institūtum est** : 'nor was it a vain institution of
 our ancestors.'

Cæsar's men advance, halt to get breath, then charge

93. Sed nostri militēs datō signō cum infēstis pilis prōcucurrissent atque animadvertissent nōn concurrī ā Pompēiānis, ūsū peritī ac superiōribus pugnis exercitātī suā sponte cursum repressērunt et ad medium ferē spatium cōstitērunt, nē cōsūptis viribus adpropinquārent, parvōque intermissō 5 temporis spatiō ac rūsus renovātō cursū pila misērunt celeriterque, ut erat praeceptum ā Caesare, gladiōs strinxērunt.

Pompey's infantry receives the attack bravely. His cavalry attempts a flank movement

Neque vērō Pompēiāni huic rei dēfuērunt. Nam et tēla missa excēpērunt et impetum legiōnum tulērunt et ōrdinēs cōservārunt pilisque missis ad gladiōs rediērunt. Eōdem 10 tempore equitēs ab sinistrō Pompēi cornū, ut erat imperātum, ūniversī prōcucurrērunt, omnisque multitudō sagittāriōrum sē prōfūdīt; quōrum impetum noster equitātus nōn tulit, sed paulātīm locō mōtus cessit; equitēsque Pompēi hōc ācrius instāre et sē turmātīm explicāre aciemque nostram 15 ā latere apertō circumire coepērunt.

Cæsar's fourth line stampedes Pompey's cavalry, destroys the archers and slingers, and attacks the left wing in the rear

Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, quārtae aciēi, quam instituerat sex cohortium, dedit signum. Illi celeriter prōcucurrerunt infēstisque signis tantā vī in Pompēi equitēs impetum fēcērunt ut eōrum nēmō cōsisteret omnēsque conversi nōn 20 solum locō excēderent, sed prōtinus incitātī fugā montēs altissimōs peterent. Quibus submōtis omnēs sagittārii funditorēsque dēstitūtī inermēs sine praesidiō interfecti sunt.

Eōdem impetū cohortēs sinistrum cornū pugnantibus etiam
 25 tum ac resistentibus in aciē Pompēiānis circumiērunt eōsque
 ā tergō sunt adorti.

explicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, unfold;
 extend

infestus, -a, -um, hostile; in hos-
 tile array, *i. e.* with weapons and
 standards advanced

prōfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, *with*
sē, rush forward

stringō, -ere, **strinxī**, **strictus**,
 draw

turmātim, *adv.*, by squadrons

1. **cum**: conjunction. 2. **concurri**: impersonal. 3. **ūsū** . . . **exer-**
citāti: 'skilled through practice and trained in former battles.' 8. **huic**
rei dēfuērunt: 'lack resources to meet these tactics.' 24. **etiam tum**:
 'even under these circumstances.'

*Caesar's third line enters the action. Pompey's infantry
 breaks and flees*

94. Eōdem tempore tertiam aciem Caesar, quae quiēta
 fuerat et sē ad id tempus locō tenuerat, prōcurrere iussit.
 Ita cum recentēs atque integrī dēfessis successissent, alii
 autem ā tergō adorirentur, sustinēre Pompēiānī nōn potuē-
 5 runt atque ūniversī terga vertērunt. Neque vērō Caesarem
 fefellit, quin ab eis cohortibus quae contrā equitātum in
 quārtā aciē conlocātae essent, initium victōriae orirētur, ut
 ipse in cohortandis militibus prōnūntiāverat. Ab his enim
 primum equitātus est pulsus, ab eisdem factae caedēs sagit-
 10 tārīōrum ac funditōrum, ab eisdem aciēs Pompēiāna ā sinistrā
 parte circumita atque initium fugae factum.

*Pompey quits the field, flees to the camp, and retires into his
 tent in utter despair*

Sed Pompēius, ut equitātum suum pulsum vidit atque
 eam partem cui maximē cōfidēbat perterritum animadvertit,
 aliis quoque diffisus aciē excessit prōtinusque sē in castra

equō contulit et eis centuriōnibus quōs in stationē ad praetō- 15
riam portam posuerat, clārē, ut militēs exaudirent, "Tuēmīni,"
inquit, "castra et dēfendite diligenter, sī quid dūrius acci-
derit. Ego reliquās portās circumeō et castrōrum praesidia
cōfirmō." Haec cum dixisset, sē in praetōrium contulit
summae rei diffidēns et tamen ēventum exspectāns. 20

clārē, *adv.*, loudly, clearly, dis- diffidō, -ere, -fusus sum, distrust,
tinctly not have confidence

3. dēfessīs successissent: 'had come to the support of those who were
exhausted.' 5. Caesarem fefellit: 'escape Caesar's notice.' 7. ut: 'as.'
12. ut: 'when.' 14. aliis . . . diffisus: 'having no confidence in the
others.' 17. sī quid dūrius acciderit: 'if it goes too hard with us.'
18. circumeō: translate as future; also cōfirmō. 20. summae rei diffi-
dēns: 'apprehensive of the issue.'

Caesar follows up his advantage and attacks the camp

-95. Caesar Pompēiānis ex fugā intrā vāllum compulsis
nūllum spatium perterritis dare oportere existimāns, militēs
cohortātus est ut beneficiō fortunae ūterentur castraque
oppugnārent. Qui, etsi magnō aestū (nam ad meridiem rēs
erat perducta), tamen ad omnem labōrem animō parātī 5
imperio pāruērunt.

The camp is taken and its defenders flee

Castra ā cohortibus quae ibi praesidiō erant relictæ in-
dustriē dēfendēbantur, multō etiam ācrius a Thrācibus bar-
barisque auxiliis. Nam quī aciē refūgerant militēs, et animō
perterriti et lassitudīne cōfecti, missis plērique armis signis- 10
que militāribus, magis dē reliquā fugā quam dē castrōrum
dēfensiōne cōgitābant. Neque vērō diūtius quī in vāllō
cōstitērant multitudinē tēlōrum sustinēre potuērunt, sed
cōfecti vulneribus locum reliquērunt, prōtinusque omnēs

- 15 ducibus ūsī centuriōnibus tribūnisque militum in altissimōs montēs, quī ad castra pertinēbant, cōnfūgērunt.

cōnfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, —, flee, industriē, *adv.*, with energy
take refuge Thrāx, -ācis, *m.*, a Thracian

3. beneficiō: 'favor.' 4. magnō aestū: ablative absolute. — rēs erat perducta: 'the contest had been prolonged.' 15. ducibus . . . tribūnisque: 'under the leadership of the centurions and tribunes.'

Luxurious appointments of the camp

96. In castris Pompēi vidēre licuit trichilās strūctās, magnum argenti pondus expositum, recentibus caespitibus tabernācula cōnstrāta, Lūci etiam Lentuli et nōn nullōrum tabernācula prōtēcta hederā, multaque praetereā quae nimiam
5 lūxuriam et victōriae fidūciam dēsīgnārent, ut facile existimāri posset nihil eōs dē ēventū eius diēi timuisse, quī nōn necessariās conquirerent voluptātēs. At hī miserrimō ac patientissimō exercitui Caesaris lūxuriam obiciēbant, cui semper omnia ad necessariū ūsum dēfuisse.

Pompey with thirty horsemen escapes to the coast and embarks

- 10 Pompēius, iam cum intrā vāllum nostrī versārentur, equum nactus detrāctis insignibus imperātōris decumānā portā sē ex castris ēiēcit prōtinusque equō citātō Lārisam contendit. Neque ibi cōnstitit, sed eādē celeritāte paucōs suōs ex fugā nactus, nocturnō itinere nōn intermissō, comitātū
15 equitum xxx ad mare pervēnit nāvemque frūmentāriam cōnscendit, saepe, ut dicēbātur, querēns tantum sē opiniōnem fefellisse, ut, ā quō genere hominum victōriam spērasset, ab eō initio fugae factō paene prōditus vidērētur.

comitātus, -ūs, *m.*, attendance; cōnstrātus, -a, -um, *part. of cōn-*
company sternō, covered over, paved

hedera , -ae, <i>f.</i> , ivy	prôtectus , -a, -um, <i>part. of prô-</i>
Lārisa , -ae, <i>f.</i> , Larissa, a town in Thessaly	tegō , shielded
Lentulus , -ī, <i>m.</i> , Lucius Cornelius Lentulus	struō , -ere, strūxī , strūctus , erect, build
nimius , -a, -um, excessive	trichila , -ae, <i>f.</i> , arbor, summer- house

5. **victōriæ fidūciam**: 'confidence of victory.' 6. **nōn**: construe with *necessāriās*. 7. **conquīrerent**: subjunctive in a descriptive causal clause. 8. **lūxuriā obiciēbant**: 'imputed extravagance.' 9. **dēfuissent**: in a descriptive concessive clause. 11. **detrāctis . . . imperātōris**: 'stripping (from himself) the trappings of commander in chief.' 16. **tantum . . . fefelisse**: 'his expectations had so far failed him.' 18. **ab eō**: sc. *genere*.

*Cæsar, leaving a guard at Pompey's camp and his own, pursues
the retreating enemy with four legions*

97. Cæsar castris potitus, ā militibus contendit nē in
praedā occupāti reliquī negōti gerendi facultātem dimitterent.
Quā rē impetrātā montem opere circummūnīre instituit.
Pompēiāni, quod is mōns erat sine aquā, diffisi eī locō,
relictō monte, ūniversī iugis eius Lārisam versus sē recipere 5
coepērunt. Quā rē animadversā Cæsar cōpiās suās divisit
partemque legiōnum in castris Pompēi remanēre iussit, partem
in sua castra remisit, IIII sēcum legiōnēs dūxit commodiō-
reque itinere Pompēiānis occurrere coepit et prōgressus
milia passuum VI aciem instrūxit. 10

He besieges the remnants of Pompey's army on a mountain

Quā rē animadversā Pompēiāni in quōdam monte cōn-
stitērunt. Hunc montem flūmen subluēbat. Cæsar militēs
cohortātus, etsi tōtius diēi continentī labōre erant cōfecti
noxque iam suberat, tamen mūnitiōne flūmen ā monte
sēclūsit, nē noctū aquārī Pompēiāni possent. Quō perfectō 15
opere illi dē dēditiōne missis lēgātis agere coepērunt.

Pauci ōrdinis senātōrii, quī sē cum eīs coniūnxerant, nocte fugā salūtem petivērunt.

aquor, -āri, -ātus sum, get water subluō, -ere, —, -lūtus, flow at
 aēclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, shut off the foot of

1. ā militibus contendit: 'earnestly entreated the soldiers.' 2. reliquī negōti gerendī: 'of finishing the business.' 5. iugis eius: 'along its ridges.' 9. Pompēiānis occurrere coepit: 'started to intercept the Pompeians.'

They surrender and are pardoned. Cæsar goes to Larissa

98. Caesar primā lūce omnēs eōs quī in monte cōnsēderant ex superiōribus locis in plānitē dēscendere atque arma prōicere iussit. Quod ubi sine recūsatiōne fēcērunt passisque palmis prōiectī ad terram flentēs ab eō salūtem
 5 petivērunt, cōsōlātus cōsurgere iussit et pauca apud eōs dē lēnitāte suā locūtus, quō minōre essent timōre, omnēs cōservāvit, militibusque suis commendāvit, nē quī eōrum violārētur, neu quid sui dēsiderārent. Hāc adhibitā diligentīā ex castris sibi legiōnēs aliās occurrere et eās quās sēcum
 10 dūxerat in vicem requiēscere atque in castra revertī iussit, eōdemque diē Lārisam pervēnit.

recūsatiō, -ōnis, *f.*, refusal, objec- requiēscō, -ere, -quiēvi, -quiētus,
 tion rest

4. passisque palmis: 'and with outstretched hands.' 5. pauca . . . locūtus: 'speaking briefly.' 6. quō . . . timōre: 'to alleviate their fear'; *quō* being equivalent to *ut* and *timōre* being ablative of description. 8. neu quid sui dēsiderārent: 'and that they should not suffer any loss'; *sui*, partitive genitive.

Cæsar's losses

99. In eō proeliō nōn ampliūs cc militēs dēsiderāvit, sed centuriōnēs, fortēs virōs, circiter xxx āmisit. Interfectus est etiam fortissimē pugnāns Crāstinus, cuius

mentiōem suprà fēcimus, gladiō in ōs adversum coniectō. Neque id fuit falsum quod ille in pugnam proficiscēns 5 dixerat. Sic enim Caesar existimābat eō proeliō excellētissimam virtūtem Crāstini fuisse, optimēque eum dē sē meritum iūdicābat.

Pompey's losses

Ex Pompēiānō exercitū circiter milia xv cecidissee vidēbantur, sed in dēditiōem vērunt amplius milia xxiiii 10 (namque etiam cohortēs quae praesidiō in castellis fuerant sēsē Sullae dēdidērunt), multi praetereā in finitimās civitatēs refūgērunt; signaque militāria ex proeliō ad Caesarem sunt relāta CLXXX et aquilae viii. L. Domitius ex castris in montem refugiēns, cum virēs eum lassitūdine dēfēcissent, 15 ab equitibus est interfectus.

excellēns, -entis, part. of excellō, falsus, -a, -um, untrue
surpassing **mentiō, -ōnis, f.,** mention

1. **dēsiderāvit**: 'he suffered the loss of' (lit. 'he missed'). 4. **gladiō**
... **coniectō**: 'struck right in the face by a sword.' 5. **quod . . . dixerat**:
in chapter 91. 7. **optimē** . . . **meritum**: 'that he had most excellently
served his (Cæsar's) interests.'

*Cæsar pursues Pompey into Macedonia, where the latter tries to
raise an army*

102.¹ Caesar omnibus rēbus relictis persequendum sibi Pompēium existimāvit, quāscumque in partēs sē ex fugā recēpisset, nē rūsus cōpiās comparāre aliās et bellum renovāre posset, et, quantumcumque itineris equitātū efficere poterat, cotidiē prōgrediēbatur, legiōnemque ūnam minōribus 5 itineribus subsequi iussit. Erat ēdictum Pompēi nōmine Amphipoli prōpositum, uti omnēs eius prōvinciae iūniōrēs, Graeci civēsque Rōmāni, iūrandi causā convenirent. Sed

¹ Chapters 100 and 101 are omitted.

utrum āvertendae suspiciōnis causā Pompēius prōposuisset,
 10 ut quam diūtissimē longiōris fugae cōnsilium occultāret, an
 novis dēlēctibus, sī nēmō premeret, Macedoniam tenēre
 cōnārētur, existimāri nōn poterat.

At Cæsar's approach Pompey sails from Amphipolis

Ipse ad ancoram ūnā nocte cōstitit et, vocātis ad sē
 Amphipoli hospitibus et pecūniā ad necessāriōs sūmptūs
 15 corrogātā, cognitō Caesaris adventū, ex eō locō discessit et
 Mytilēnās paucis diēbus vēnit. Biduum tempestāte retentus
 nāvibusque aliis additis āctuāriis in Ciliciam atque inde
 Cyprum pervēnit.

*At Cyprus he learns that Antioch is closed against him. Rhodes
 too is hostile*

Ibi cognōscit cōnsēnsū omnium Antiochēnsium civiumque
 20 Rōmānōrum quī illic negōtiārentur arcem captam esse
 exclūdendī suī causā, nūntiōsque dimissōs ad eōs quī sē ex
 fugā in finitimās civitatēs recēpisse dicerentur, nē Antio-
 chiam adirent; id sī fēcissent, magnō eōrum capitis periculō
 futurum. Idem hoc L. Lentulō, quī superiōre annō cōsul
 25 fuerat, et P. Lentulō cōsulārī ac nōn nullis aliis acciderat
 Rhodi; quī cum ex fugā Pompēium sequerentur atque in
 insulam vēnissent, oppidō ac portū recepti nōn erant
 missisque ad eōs nūntiis ut ex hīs locis discēderent, contrā
 voluntātem suam nāvēs solvērunt. Iamque dē Caesaris
 30 adventū fāma ad civitatēs perferēbātur.

āctuārius, -a, -um, fast-sailing
 Amphipolis, -is, f., a city of Macedo-
 donia
 Antiochēnsis, -e, adj., of Antioch;
 masc. as noun, an inhabitant of
 Antioch

Antiochia, -ae, f., Antioch, capital
 of Syria
 Cilicia, -ae, f., Cilicia, a district of
 southeastern Asia Minor
 corrogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, collect,
 obtain by soliciting

Cyprus, -i, *f.*, Cyprus, an island
near Cilicia

ēdictum, -i, *n.*, edict

Macedonia, -ae, *f.*, Macedonia

Mytilēnae, -arum, *f.*, Mytilene, the
chief city of the island of Lesbos

quantumcumque, -icumque, *n.*,
however much

Rhodos, -i, *f.*, Rhodes, an island
in the Aegean Sea, about twelve
miles south of Caria in south-
western Asia Minor

7. **Amphipoli**: 'at Amphipolis.' 8. **iurandī causā**: 'to take the oath
of allegiance.' 11. **dēlēctibus**: ablative of means. 16. **diēbus**: ablative
of time within which. 19. **cōsēnsū**: modifies *captam esse*. 21. **exclūdendī
suī causā**: 'for the sake of shutting him out'; see G. § 225. *b.*—**suī**: indi-
rect reflexive (G. § 133). 23. **sī fēcissent**: future more probable condition
in indirect discourse (G. §§ 199. II. *a.*, 210).—**magnō . . . futūrum**: 'they
would be in great danger of losing their lives.' 26. **Rhodī**: locative case.

*Provided with men and money he sails from Cyprus for Pelusium,
a city on the easternmost mouth of the Nile*

103. Quibus cognitis rēbus Pompēius, dēpositō adeundae
Syriae cōsiliō, pecūniā societātis sublātā et ā quibusdam
privātis sūmptā et aeris magnō pōdere ad militārem ūsum
in nāvēs impositō duōbusque milibus hominum armātis,
partim quōs ex familiis societātum dēlēgerat, partim ā 5
negōtiātōribus coēgerat, quōs ex suis quisque ad hanc rem
idōneōs existimābat, Pēlūsium pervēnit.

*Through envoys Pompey begs Ptolemy, king of Egypt, for asylum in
Alexandria*

Ibi cāsū rēx erat Ptolemaeus, puer aetāte, magnis cōpiis
cum sorōre Cleopatrā bellum gerēns, quam paucis ante
mēnsibus per suōs propinquōs atque amicōs rēgnō expulerat; 10
castraque Cleopatrae nōn longō spatiō ab eius castris distā-
bant. Ad eum Pompēius misit, ut, prō hospitio atque
amiciā patris, Alexandriā reciperētur atque illius opibus in
calamitāte tegerētur.

The envoys arouse suspicion by talking with the king's troops

- 15 Sed quī ab eō missi erant, cōfectō lēgatiōnis officiō,
 liberius cum militibus rēgis conloquī coepērunt eōsque
 hortārī ut suum officiū Pompēiō praestārent nēve eius
 fortūnam dēspicerent. In hōc erant numerō complūrēs
 Pompēi militēs, quōs ex eius exercitū acceptōs in Syriā
 20 Gabinius Alexandriam trādūxerat bellōque cōfectō apud
 Ptolemāeum, patrem pueri, reliquerat.

Alexandria, -ae, *f.*, Alexandria,
 capital of Egypt

Cleopatra, -ae, *f.*, Cleopatra, the
 famous Egyptian queen

Gabinus, -i, *m.*, Aulus Gabinus,
 an officer of Cæsar

negōtiātor, -ōris, *m.*, business man

Pēlūsium, -i, *n.*, Pelusium, a city
 on the Nile

Ptolemæus, -i, *m.*, Ptolemy, Egyp-
 tian king

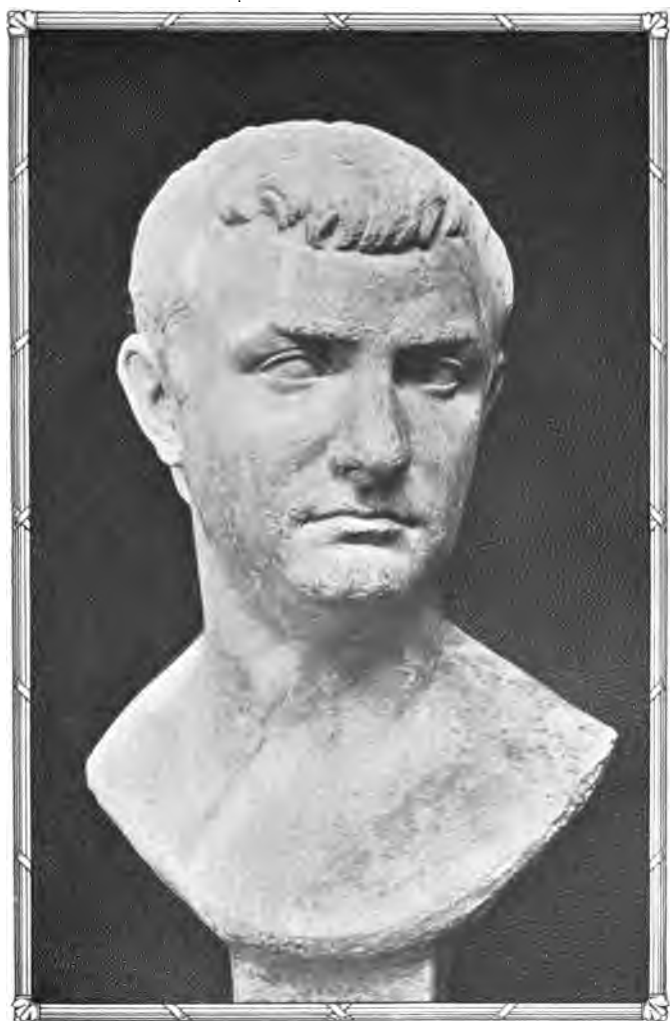
societās, -ātis, *f.*, *esp.* pūblicānō-
 rum, guild of revenue collectors

Syria, -ae, *f.*, Syria

2. pecūniā . . . sūptā: 'taking money from the tax collectors' guild
 and exacting it from certain private citizens.' 5. ex familiis: 'from the
 slaves.' 6. ex suis: 'of his friends.' 8. aetate: ablative of respect.
 11. spatiō: ablative of measure of difference. 15. quī: the antecedent
 is the subject understood of coepērunt. — ab eō: i.e. by Pompey.

The king's advisers act treacherously

104. His tunc cognitis rēbus amīcī rēgis, quī propter
 aetatem eius in cūratiōne erant rēgnī, sive timōre adductī,
 ut postea praedicābant, sollicitatō exercitū rēgiō, nē Pom-
 pēius Alexandriam Aegyptumque occupāret, sive dēspectā
 5 eius fortūnā, ut plērumque in calamitatē ex amicis inimici
 exsistunt, his quī erant ab eō missi palam liberaliter
 respondērunt eumque ad rēgem venīre iussērunt; ipsi clam
 cōsiliō initō Achillam, praefectum rēgium, singulārī
 hominem audaciā, et L. Septimium, tribūnum militum, ad
 10 interficiendum Pompēium misērunt.



GNAEUS POMPEIUS MAGNUS

Pompey is murdered

Ab his liberāliter ipse appellātus et quādam nōitiā Septimi prōductus, quod bellō praedōnum apud eum ordinem dūxerat, nāviculam parvulam cōnscendit cum paucis suis; ibi ab Achillā et Septimiō interficitur. Item L. Lentulus comprehenditur ab rēge et in custōdiā necātur. 15

Achillās, -ae, *m.*, Achilles, a prefect of the young Ptolemy

Aegyptus, -i, *f.*, Egypt

cūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, management

praedō, -ōnis, *m.*, robber, pirate

rēgius, -a, -um, royal

Septimius, -i, *m.*, Lucius Septimius

2. **in cūrātiōne erant rēgni**: 'held the regency of the kingdom.' 6. **his**: indirect object of *respondērunt*. — **palam**: contrasts with *clam* below. 11. **ipse**: i.e. Pompey. 12. **prōductus**: 'led on,' 'induced.' — **praedōnum**: 'pirates.' — **apud . . . dūxerat**: 'had commanded a division under him.' 13. **cum paucis suis**: 'with a few of his men.' 15. **in custōdiā**: 'while under guard,' or 'in prison.'

Caesar arrives in Asia and prevents the pillage of Diana's temple at Ephesus

105. Caesar, cum in Asiam vēnisset, reperiēbat T. Ampium cōnātum esse pecūniās tollere Ephesō ex fānō Diānae eiusque rei causā senātōrēs omnēs ex prōvinciā ēvocāsse, ut his testibus in summā pecūniae ūterētur, sed interpellātum adventū Caesaris prōfūgissee. Ita duōbus temporibus Ephesiae 5 pecūniae Caesar auxilium tulit.

Strange events occur on the day of Caesar's victory

Item cōnstābat Ēlide in templō Minervae, repetitis atque ēnumerātis diēbus, quō diē proelium secundum Caesar fēcisset, simulācrum Victōriae, quod ante ipsam Minervam conlocātum esset et ante ad simulacrum Minervae spectāvis- 10 set, ad valvās sē templi limenque convertisse. Eōdemque

diē Antiochiae in Syriā bis tantus exercitūs clāmor et signōrum sonus exauditus est, ut in mūris armāta civitās discurreret. Hoc idem Ptolemāide accidit. Pergamī in occultis ac reconditis templi, quō praeter sacerdōtēs adire fās nōn est, quae Graeci ἄδύτα appellant, tympana sonuerunt. Item Trallibus in templō Victōriae, ubi Caesaris statuam cōsecrāverant, palma per eōs diēs inter coāgmenta lapidum ex pavimento exstitisse ostendēbātur.

Ampius, -ī, *m.*, Titus Ampius Balbus, a friend of Pompey

Asia, -ae, *f.*, Asia Minor

coāgmentum, -ī, *n.*, joint

cōsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make sacred

Diāna, -ae, *f.*, Diana, the goddess

discurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursūrus, run to and fro

Ēlis, -idis, *f.*, Elis, a city in the Peloponnesus

ēnumerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, count, reckon

Ephesius, -a, -um, Ephesian

Ephesus, -ī, *f.*, Ephesus, a city of Ionia

fānum, -ī, *n.*, temple

līmen, -inis, *n.*, threshold

Minerva, -ae, *f.*, Minerva, the goddess

pavimentum, -ī, *n.*, pavement

Pergamum, -ī, *n.*, Pergamum, a city in western Asia Minor

Ptolemāis, -idis, *f.*, Ptolemais, a city of Phoenicia

reconditus, -a, -um, deep, hidden

sacerdōs, -ōtis, *m.*, priest

sonō, -āre, sonui, sonitus, sound, ring out

sonus, -ī, *m.*, sound

statua, -ae, *f.*, statue, image

templum, -ī, *n.*, temple

Trallēs, -ium, *f.*, Tralles, a city of Caria

tympanum, -ī, *n.*, drum, tambourine

valva, -ae, *f.*, door

2. pecūniās: 'treasures.' 4. testibus in summā: 'witnesses to the amount.' 5. duōbus temporibus: 'on two occasions.' 7. repetitis . . . diēbus: 'by recalling and reckoning the dates.' 10. ante: adverb, 'previously.' 12. Antiochiae: locative (as is also Pergamī below); see G. § 120. a. 13. armāta civitās: 'the citizens in arms.' 14. in occultis ac reconditis templi: 'in secret and remote parts of the temple.' 16. ἄδύτα: 'adyta,' a Greek neuter plural, 'shrines,' but meaning literally 'not to be entered.'

Cæsar with a small force follows Pompey to Egypt

106. Cæsar paucōs diēs in Asiā morātus cum audisset Pompēium Cypri visum, coniectāns eum Aegyptum iter habere propter necessitudinēs rēgni reliquāsque eius loci opportunitātēs, cum legiōne ūnā, quam sē ex Thessaliā sequi iusserat, et alterā, quam ex Achāiā ā Q. Fūfiō lēgātō 5 ēvocāverat, equitibusque dccc et nāvibus longis Rhodijs x et Asiaticis paucis Alexandriam pervēnit. In his erant legiōnibus hominum milia tria cc; reliqui volneribus ex proeliis et labōre ac magnitudine itineris cōfecti cōsequi nōn potuerant. Sed Cæsar cōnfisus fāmā rērum gestārum 10 infirmis auxiliis proficisci nōn dubitāverat, aequē omnem sibi locum tūtum fore existimāns.

At Alexandria he hears of Pompey's death. The Alexandrians resent Cæsar's display of authority

Alexandriae dē Pompēi morte cognōscit atque ibi primum ē nāve ēgrediēns clāmōrem militum audit quōs rēx in oppidō praesidi causā reliquerat, et concursum ad sē fieri videt, 15 quod fascēs anteferrentur. In hōc omnis multitūdō maiestātem rēgiāminuī praedicābat. Hōc sēdātō tumultū crēbrae continuis diēbus ex concursū multitūdinis concitātiōnēs fiēbant complūrēsque militēs huius urbis omnibus partibus interficiēbantur.

20

Achāia, -ae, f., Achaia, a Roman province, nearly corresponding to modern Greece

Asiaticus, -a, -um, of, or from, Asia

concitātiō, -ōnis, f., uprising

coniectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, infer

fascis, -is, m., a bundle; *in the*

plural, fascēs, the bundle of rods carried before the higher magistrates by a lictor

Fūfius, -i, m., Quintus Fufius Calenus, a lieutenant of Cæsar

Rhodius, -a, -um, of, or from, Rhodes

sēdō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, allay, settle

2. *Cypri*: locative. — *Aegyptum*: accusative of the place whither. We should expect a preposition. 3. *necessitudinēs rēgni*: 'his close relations with the kingdom.' 10. *cōfīsus . . . gestārum*: 'relying on the reputation of his exploits.' 13. *Alexandriae*: locative. 15. *concursum . . . videt*: 'saw a crowd throng toward him.'

Cæsar, detained by contrary winds, sends for more troops

107. Quibus rēbus animadversis legiōnēs sibi aliās ex Asiā addūci iussit, quās ex Pompēiānis militibus cōnfēcerat. Ipse enim necessāriō etēsīs tenēbatur, qui nāvīgantibus Alexandriā sunt adversissimī ventī.

He decides to act as arbiter between Ptolemy and Cleopatra

5 Interim contrōversiās rēgum ad populum Rōmānum et ad sē, quod esset cōnsul, pertinēre existimāns, atque eō magis officiō suō convenire, quod superiōre cōsulātū cum patre Ptolemaeō et lēge et senātūs cōsultō societās erat facta, ostendit sibi placēre rēgem Ptolemaeum atque eius
10 sorōrem Cleopatram exercitūs quōs habērent dimittere, et dē contrōversiis iūre apud sē potius quam inter sē armīs disceptāre.

disceptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, contend, etēsiae, -ārum, m., the etesian
dispute winds, trade winds

3. *etēsīs*: these winds prevail more than a month every summer in the eastern part of the Mediterranean. 7. *officiō suō convenire*: 'it was in accord with his official duty.' 11. *iūre apud sē*: contrasts with *inter sē armīs*.

The king's friends, angered, plot to destroy Cæsar and his army

108. Erat in prōcūratiōne rēgni, propter aetātem puerī, nūtricius eius, eunūchus nōmine Pothinus. Is primum inter suōs queri atque indignārī coepit rēgem ad causam dicendam ēvocārī; deinde adiūtōrēs quōsdam cōnsili sui nactus ex

rēgis amicis, exercitum ā Pēlūsiō clam Alexandriam ēvocā- 5
vit atque eundem Achillam, cuius suprā meminimus, omni-
bus cōpiis praefēcit. Hunc, incitātum suis et rēgis inflātum
pollicitātiōnibus, quae fieri vellet litteris nūntiisque ēdocuit.

The will of Ptolemy, father of Ptolemy and Cleopatra

In testāmentō Ptolemaei patris hērēdēs erant scripti ex
duōbus filiis maior et ex duābus filiabus ea quae aetāte 10
antecēdēbat. Haec uti fierent, per omnēs deōs perque foe-
dera quae Rōmae fēcisset, eōdem testāmentō Ptolēmaeus
populum Rōmānum obtestābātur. Tabulae testāmenti ūnae
per lēgātōs eius Rōmam erant adlātae, ut in aerārīō pōne-
rentur (haec, cum propter publicās occupātiōnēs pōnī nōn 15
potuissent, apud Pompēium sunt dēpositae), alterae eōdem
exemplō relictæ atque obsignatæ Alexandriae prōferēbantur.

adiūtor, -ōris, <i>m.</i> , helper, confed- erate	inflātus, -a, -um, <i>part. of inflō</i> , elated
aerārium, -ī, <i>n.</i> , treasury	nūtricius, -a, -um, fostering; <i>masc.</i> <i>as noun</i> , guardian
dēpōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, put down, deposit	prōcūrātiō, -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , administration
eunūchus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , eunuch	prōferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, bring forward, find
hērēs, -ēdis, <i>c.</i> , heir	

3. rēgem . . . ēvocārī: 'that a king should be summoned to defend him-
self.' 13. Tabulae testāmenti ūnae: 'one copy of the will.' 16. alterae:
i. e. tabulae. — eōdem exemplō: 'exactly like it'; ablative of description.

Achillas marches on Alexandria with the king's army

109. Dē his rēbus cum agerētur apud Caesarem, ipse
maximē vellet prō commūnī amicō atque arbitrō contrō-
versiās rēgum compōnere, subitō exercitus rēgius equitatus-
que omnis venire Alexandriam nūntiātur. Caesaris cōpiae
nēquāquam erant tantæ, ut eis, extrā oppidum sī esset 5

dimicandum, cōfideret. Relinquēbātur ut sē suis locis oppidō tenēret cōnsiliumque Achillae cognōsceret. Militēs tamen omnēs in armis esse iussit, rēgemque hortātus est ut ex suis necessariis quōs habēret maximae auctōritātis lēgātōs
10 ad Achillam mitteret, et quid esset suae voluntātis ostenderet.

He kills the king's ambassadors, sent by Caesar's advice

Ā quō missi Dioscoridēs et Serāpiōn, qui ambō lēgātī Rōmae fuerant magnamque apud patrem Ptolemaeum auctōritātem habuerant, ad Achillam pervēnērunt. Quōs ille, cum in cōspectum eius vēnissent, priusquam audiret aut
15 cuius rei causā missi essent cognōsceret, corripī atque interfici iussit; quōrum alter acceptō vulnere occupātus per suōs prō occisō sublātus, alter interfectus est. Quō factō rēgem ut in suā potestāte habēret Caesar efficit, magnam rēgium nōmen apud suōs auctōritātem habēre existimāns, et ut
20 potius prīvātō paucōrum et latrōnum quam rēgiō cōnsiliō susceptum bellum vidērētur.

ambō, ambae, ambō, both

corripīō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus, seize,

compōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, settle

arrest

2. prō: 'in the capacity of.' 10. quid esset suae voluntātis: 'what his desire was'; voluntātis, partitive genitive. 16. occupātus per suōs etc.: 'was caught up by his friends and carried off for dead.' 20. prīvātō paucōrum et latrōnum . . . cōnsiliō: 'by the private design of a few men, and brigands at that, than by that of the king.'

The forces of Achilles, their number and character

110. Erant cum Achillā cōpiaē, ut neque numerō neque genere hominum neque ūsū rei militāris contemnendae vidērētur. Milia enim xx in armis habēbat. Haec cōnstābant ex Gabiniānis militibus, qui iam in cōnsuētūdinem Alexan-
5 drinae vitae ac licentiae vēnerant et nōmen disciplinamque

populi Rōmāni dēdidicerant uxōrēsq̄e dūxerant ex quibus plērique liberōs habēbant. Hūc accēdēbant conlēcti ex prae-
dōnibus latrōnibusque Syriae Ciliciaeque prōvinciae finitimā-
rumque regiōnum. Multi praetereā capitis damnāti exsulēsq̄e
convēnerant; fugitivis omnibus nostris certus erat Alexan- 10
driae receptus certaue vitae condiciō, ut datō nōmine militum
essent numerō; si quis ā dominō prehenderētur, cōsēnsū
militum ēripiēbātur, quī vim suōrum, quod in simili culpā
versābantur, ipsi prō suō periculō dēfendēbant. Hī rēgum
amicōs ad mortem dēposcere, hī bona locuplētum diripere, 15
stipendi augendi causā rēgis domum obsidēre, rēgnō expel-
lere, aliōs arcessere vetere quōdam Alexandrinī exercitūs
institūtō cōsuērant. Erant praetereā equitum milia duo.
Inveterāverant hī omnēs complūribus Alexandriae bellis;
Ptolemaeum patrem in rēgnum redūxerant, Bibuli filiōs 20
duōs interfēcērant, bella cum Aegyptiis gesserant. Hunc
ūsum rei militāris habēbant.

Alexandrinus, -a, -um, of Alex-
andria

Bibulus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Calpurnius
Bibulus, naval commander under
Pompey

contemnō, -ere, -tempē, -temptus,
despise

dēdiscō, -ere, -didici, —, forget
exsul, -ulis, *m.*, exile

Gabiniānus, -a, -um, of Gabinius
licentia, -ae, *f.*, looseness

locuplēs, -ētis, rich

prehendō, *see prēndō in the vocab-
ulary*

3. **cōstābant ex**: 'consisted of.' 4. **in cōsuētūdinem . . . vñerant**:
'had become habituated.' 7. **conlēcti . . . latrōnibusque**: 'a collection
of robbers and highwaymen.' 9. **capitis damnāti**: 'who had been con-
demned to death.' 10. **fugitivis**: dative of reference (G. § 85). 11. **re-**
ceptus: 'refuge.'—**ut . . . essent**: in apposition with *condiciō*.—**milli-**
tum essent numerō: 'they should enlist as soldiers.' 12. **prehenderētur**:
'was on the point of being seized.' 13. **vim suōrum**: 'violence offered to
any of their number.' 14. **prō suō periculō**: 'at the risk of their lives.'—
Hī: subject of *cōsuērant*, l. 18. 15. **dēposcere**: this and the following
infinitives depend upon *cōsuērant*. 17. **vetere quōdam . . . institūtō**:
'by an old privilege of the Alexandrian army.'

Achillas seizes the whole city except the part occupied by Caesar

111. His cōpiis fidēns Achillās paucitātemque militum
Caesaris dēspiciēns occupābat Alexandriam praeter eam
oppidi partem quam Caesar cum militibus tenēbat. Primō
impetū domum eius inrumpere cōnātus est; sed Caesar dis-
5 positis per viās cohortibus impetum eius sustinuit.

At the port, however, Caesar gains the victory

Eōdemque tempore pugnātum est ad portum, ac longē
maximam ea rēs adtulit dimicātiōnem. Simul enim diductis
cōpiis plūribus viis pugnābātur, et magnā multitudīne nāvēs
longās occupāre hostēs cōnābantur; quārum erant L auxiliō
10 missae ad Pompēium proeliōque in Thessaliā factō domum
redierant, illae trirēmēs omnēs et quinquerēmēs aptae in-
strūctaeque omnibus rēbus ad nāvigandum, praeter hās XXII
quae praesidi causā Alexandriae esse cōsuērant; cōstrātae
omnēs; quās si occupāvissent, classe Caesarī ēreptā portum
15 ac mare tōtum in suā potestāte habērent, commeātū auxiliis-
que Caesarem prohibērent. Itaque tantā est contentiōne
āctum quantā agī dēbuit, cum illi celerem in eā rē victōriam,
hī salūtem suam cōsistere vidērent. Sed rem obtinuit
Caesar omnēsque eās nāvēs et reliquās quae erant in nāvāli-
20 bus incendit, quod tam lātē tuērī parvā manū nōn poterat,
cōnfestimque ad Pharum nāvibus militēs exposuit.

fidēns, -entis, *part. of fidō*, relying
upon

nāvālia, -ium, *n.*, docks, shipyards

Pharus, -i, *f.*, Pharos, an island

opposite Alexandria, with a
lighthouse of the same name,
which was one of the seven
wonders of the world

10. *proeliōque . . . factō*: 'and at the conclusion of the war in Thes-
saly.' 14. *si occupāvissent*: a future condition thrown into past time on
the principle of indirect discourse (implied). Their own thought was, 'if

we shall have seized' etc. 17. *actum*: impersonal; 'the contest was carried on with as great a struggle as might have been expected' (lit. 'as it ought to have been carried on'). — *quantā*: correlative with *tantā*, ablative of manner. 18. *rem obtinuit*: 'won the contest.' 21. *exposuit*: 'landed,' 'set on shore.'

Description of Pharos and its lighthouse

112. Pharos est in insulā turris magnā altitūdine, mirificis operibus exstrūcta; quae nōmen ab insulā accēpit. Haec insula obiecta Alexandriae portum efficit; sed ā superiōribus regiōnibus in longitudinem passuum dcccc, in mare iactis mōlibus, angustō itinere et ponte cum oppidō coniungitur. 5 In hāc sunt insulā domicilia Aegyptiōrum et vicus oppidi magnitūdine; quaeque ibi cumque nāvēs imprudentiā aut tempestāte paulum suō cursū dēcesserunt, hās mōre praedōnum diripere cōsuērunt. Eīs autem invitīs ā quibus Pharos tenētur, nōn potest esse propter angustias nāvibus introitus in portum. 10

*Cæsar takes possession of Pharos. Elsewhere the battle is indecisive.
Cæsar fortifies his headquarters*

Hoc tamen veritus Caesar, hostibus in pugnā occupātis, militibus expositis Pharamprehendit atque ibi praesidium posuit. Quibus est rēbus effectum ut tūtō frumentum auxiliaque nāvibus ad eum supportārī possent. Dīmisit enim 15 circum omnēs propinquās prōvinciās atque inde auxilia ēvocavit. Reliquis oppidi partibus sic est pugnātum, ut aequō proeliō discēderēt et neutri pellerentur (id efficiēbant angustiae loci), paucisque utrimque interfectis Caesar loca maximē necessāria complexus noctū praemūnit. In hōc trāctū oppidi 20 pars erat regiāe exigua, in quam ipse habitandī causā inītiō erat inductus, et theātrum coniūctum domui, quod arcis tenēbat locum aditūsq̄ue habēbat ad portum et ad reliqua

nāvālia. Hās mūnitiōnēs insequentibus auxit diēbus, ut prō
25 mūrō obiectās habēret neu dimicāre invitus cōgerētur.

*The younger daughter of Ptolemy joins Achilles. The Alexandrian
War now begins in earnest*

Interim filia minor Ptolemaei rēgis, vacuam possessiōnem
rēgni spērāns, ad Achillam sēsē ex rēgiā trāiēcit unāque
bellum administrāre coepit. Sed celeriter est inter eōs dē
principātū contrōversia orta; quae rēs apud militēs largi-
30 tiōnēs auxit; magnis enim iactūris sibi quisque eōrum animōs
conciliābat. Haec dum apud hostēs geruntur, Pothinus, nū-
tricius pueri et prōcūrātor rēgni, in parte Caesaris, cum ad
Achillam nūntiōs mitteret hortārēturque nē negōtiō dēsisteret
nēve animō dēficeret, indicātis dēprehēnsisque internūntiis,
35 ā Caesare est interfectus. Haec initia belli Alexandrīni
fuērunt.

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, dwell
indicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, discover
internūntius, -ī, *m.*, negotiator,
messenger between (two parties)
mirificus, -a, -um, causing wonder,
wonderful

praemūniō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, fortify
prōcūrātor, -ōris, *m.*, governor,
manager
rēgia, -ae, *f.*, royal palace
theātrum, -ī, *n.*, theater
trāctus, -ūs, *m.*, region, district

3. obiecta: 'situated opposite,' with the dative.—ā superiōribus
regiōnibus: 'on the upper side.' 4. in mare iactis mōlibus: 'piles
being set in the sea.' 7. magnitūdine: ablative of description; 'of the size
of a town.'—cumque: with quae, equal to quaecumque; 'whatever ships.'
9. Eis . . . invitis: ablative absolute with conditional force. 10. nōn potest
esse . . . nāvibus introitus: 'ships cannot enter.' 15. Dimisit: supply homi-
nēs as object. 22. arcis tenēbat locum: 'served as a citadel.' 24. ut . . .
habēret: 'that he might have them before him as a rampart.' 26. vacuam
. . . spērāns: 'hoping to get possession of the kingdom (now left) vacant.'
29. principātū: 'leadership.' 30. magnis . . . conciliābat: 'for each tried
by generous gifts to win their allegiance.'

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

BOOK I

13. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit : ' Si pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse voluisset ; sīn bellō persequi perseverāret, reminiscerētur et veteris incommodi populi Rōmāni et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum ei qui flūmen trānsissent suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūti tribueret, aut ipsōs dēspiceret ; sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suis didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut insidiis niterentur. Quā rē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōstitissent ex calamitāte populi Rōmāni et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.'

14. His Caesar ita respondit : ' Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari, quod eās rēs quās lēgāti Helvētiī commemorāssent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populi Rōmāni accidissent ; qui sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre ; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellexeret quā rē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriarum, quod eō invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse ? Quod suā victōriā tam insolenter

- glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās intulisse admirārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci velint, his secundiōrēs
- 5 interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen si obsidēs ab eis sibi dentur, uti ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et si Haeduis dē iniūriis quās ipsis sociisque eōrum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eis pācem esse factūrum.'
- 10 Dīvicō respondit: 'Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suis institūtōs esse, uti obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōsuērint; eius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem.' Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus . . . prōpōnit: 'Esse nōn nullōs
- 15 quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, qui privātīm plūs possint quam ipsi magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrere nē frūmentum cōferant quod dēbeant: praestāre, si iam principātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum
- 20 imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, si Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, unā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduis libertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab eisdem nostra cōnsilia quaeque in castris gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī: hōs ā sē coērcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessariō rem coactus Caesarī ēnūntiārīt,
- 25 intellegere sēsē quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.'

18. Eadem sēcrtō ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vērā: 'Ipsū esse Dumnorigem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberālītātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum.
- 30 Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaue omnia Haeduōrum vectigālīa parvō pretiō redēpta habēre, proptereā quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. His rēbus et suam rem

familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque solum domī sed etiam apud finitimās civitatēs largiter posse; atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturigibus hominī illic nōbilissimō ac potētissimō conlocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiis uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitatēs conlocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiis propter eam adfinitatē, odisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātie atque honoris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānis, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendi venire; imperiō populi Rōmāni nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā dēspērāre.

20. Diviciācus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus, obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātre statueret. 'Scīre sē illa esse vērā, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimū domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulescentiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervis nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā sed paene ad perniciem suā ūteretur; sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne volgi commovērī. Quod si quid ei ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, nēmīnem existimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futurum uti tōtius Galliae animi ā sē āverterentur.'

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō tōtius ferē Galliae lēgātī, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: 'Intellegere sēsē, tametsi prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populi Rōmāni ab his poenās bellō repetisset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populi Rōmāni accidis; proptereā quod eō cōsiliō flōrentissimis rēbus domōs suās

Helvētii reliquissent, uti tōti Galliae bellum inferrent imperi-
ōque potirentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent,
quem ex omni Galliā opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum
iūdicāssent, reliquāsque civitatēs stipendiāriās habērent.’

- 5 31. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesari ad pedēs
prōiēcērunt: ‘Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē
ea quae dixissent ēnūntiārentur, quam uti ea quae vellent
impetrārent; propterea quod, si ēnūntiātum esset, summum
in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent.’
- 10 Locūtus est prō hīs Diviciācus Haeduus: ‘Galliae tōtius
factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterius principātum tenēre
Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū
inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse uti ab Ar-
vernīs Sēquanisque Germāni mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum
15 primō circiter milia xv Rhēnum trānsisse; posteāquam agrōs
et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbari ada-
māssent, trāductōs plūrēs; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et
xx milium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduōs eōrumque clientēs
semel atque iterum armis contendisse; magnam calamitātem
20 pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum,
omnem equitātum amīsisse. Quibus proeliis calamitātibusque
frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte et populi Rōmāni hospitio atque
amicitia plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse
Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs civitātis, et iūre iūrandō
25 civitātem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs neque
auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs, neque recūsātūrōs
quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent.
Ūnum sē esse ex omni civitate Haeduōrum quī addūci nōn
potuerit ut iūrāret aut liberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam
30 rem sē ex civitate profūgissee et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse
auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque
obsidibus tenērētur.

'Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs vīctis accidis-
 disse, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum
 finibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquani, quī esset
 optimus tōtius Galliae, occupāvisset, et nunc dē alterā parte
 tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, proptereā quod paucis 5
 mēnsibus ante Harūdum milia hominum XXIII ad eum vēnis-
 sent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucis
 annis uti omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnēs
 Germānī Rhēnum trānsirent; neque enim cōnferendum esse
 Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc cōsuētūdinem 10
 vīctūs cum illā comparandam.

'Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō
 vicerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē
 et crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cuiusque liberōs
 poscere, et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, si qua 15
 rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta sit. Homi-
 nem esse barbarum, irācundum, temerārium; nōn posse
 eius imperia diūtius sustinēri.

'Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxilī, omni-
 bus Gallis idem esse faciendum quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut 20
 domō ēmigrant, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs remōtās ā
 Germānis petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accadat, experi-
 antur. Haec si ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre quīn
 dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sint gravissimum sup-
 plicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs 25
 vel recentī victoriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrere
 posse nē maior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur,
 Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti iniuriā posse dēfendere.'

32. Diviciācus Haeduus respondit: 'Hōc esse miseriō-
 rem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, 30
 quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem queri neque auxilium implō-
 rāre audērent; absentisque Ariovisti crūdēlitātem, velut si

cōram adesset, horrērent, proptereā quod reliquis tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanis vērō, quī intrā finēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendi.'

5 34. Eī lēgatiōni Ariovistus respondit: 'Sī quid ipsi ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre. Praetereā sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque
10 mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mirum vidērī quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vicisset, aut Caesarī aut omninō populō Rōmānō negōti esset.'

35. His respōnsis ad Caesarem relātis, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum his mandātis mittit: 'Quoniam tantō suō
15 populique Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōsulātū suō rēx atque amicus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiā referret, ut in conloquium venīre invitātus gravārētur neque dē commūni rē dicendum sibi et cognōscendum putāret, haec esse quae ab eō postulāret:
20 primum, nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde, obsidēs quōs habēret ab Haeduīs redderet, Sēquanisque permitteret ut quōs illi habērent voluntāte eius reddere illis liceret; nēve Haeduōs iniuriā lacerasset, nēve his sociisque eōrum bellum inferret.
25 Sī id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiā atque amicitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē — quoniam M. Messālā M. Pisōne cōsulibus senātus cēnsuisset uti quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō rei pūblīcae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōs-
30 que amicōs populi Rōmānī dēfenderet — sē Haeduōrum iniuriās nōn neglētūrum.'

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: 'Iūs esse belli ut qui vicissent, eis quōs vicissent, quem ad modum vellent, imperarent; item populum Rōmānum victis nōn ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōsuēsse. Si ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet quem ad modum 5 suō iūre ūteretur, nōn oportere sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impediri. Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortunam temptāssent et armis congressi ac superāti essent, stipendiāriōs esse factōs. Magnam Caesarem iniūriam facere qui suō adventū vectigālīa sibi dēteriōra faceret. Haeduis sē 10 obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque hīs neque eōrum sociis iniuriā bellum inlātūrum, si in eō manerent quod convēnisset stipendiumque quotannis penderent; si id nōn fēcissent, longē eis frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret sē Haeduōrum iniuriās nōn neglēctūrum, 15 nēmīnem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congredērētur; intellēctūrum quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs xiv tēctum nōn subissent, virtūte possent.'

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō, omnium- 20 que ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitis centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: primum quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. 'Ariovistum sē cōsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amicitiam adpetisse. Cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam 25 ab officiō discessūrum iūdicāret? Sibi quidem persuādēri, cognitis suis postulātis atque aequitāte condiōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrum. Quod si furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē 30 ipsius diligentiā dēspērārent? Factum eius hostis periculum

patrum nostrorum memoriā, cum, Cimbris et Teutonīs ā
C. Mariō pulsīs, nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse
imperātor meritis vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā
servilī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplina quam
5 ā nōbis accēpissent sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse
quantum habēret in sē bonī cōstantia, proptereā quod, quōs
aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timuissent, hōs postea armātōs
ac victōrēs superāssent.

‘Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quibuscum saepe-
10 numerō Helvētīi congressī, nōn solum in suis sed etiam in
illōrum finibus, plērumque superārīnt; quī tamen parēs esse
nostrō exercitūi nōn potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et
fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaerent, reperīre posse,
diūturnitāte belli dēfatigātis Gallis, Ariovistum, cum multōs
15 mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset, neque suī potestā-
tem fēcisset, dēspērāntēs iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō
adortum, magis ratiōne et cōsiliō quam virtūte vicisse.
Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperitōs locus
fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī
20 posse.

‘Quī suum timōrem in rei frūmentāriae simulatiōnem an-
gustiāsque itineris cōferrent, facere adroganter, cum aut
dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescribere vidēren-
tur. Haec sibi esse cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs,
25 Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mā-
tūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs.

‘Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī dican-
tur (militēs), nihil sē eā rē commovēri; scire enim, quibus-
cumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā
30 fortūnam dēfuisse, aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam
esse convictam; suam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, felicitātem
Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam.

'Itaque sē quod in longiōrem diem conlātūrus fuisset, re-
praesentātūrum, et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra
mōtūrum, ut quam primum intellegere posset utrum apud
eōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valeret. Quod si
praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne 5
itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibique eam praetōriam cohō-
tem futūram.'

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit; dē
suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: 'Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē
nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallis; nōn 10
sine magnā spē magnisque praemiis domum propinquōsque
reliquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs
ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capere iūre belli quod
victōrēs victis impōnere cōsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallis, sed
Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae civitatēs ad sē 15
oppugnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās
omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Si
iterum experiri velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre;
sī pāce ūti velint, iniquum esse dē stipendiō recūsāre quod
suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerit. 20

'Amicitiam populi Rōmāni sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō,
nōn dētrimentō esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petisse. Si
per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittātur et dēditicii
subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populi
Rōmāni amicitiam quam adpetierit. 25

'Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id
sē sui mūniendi, nōn Galliae impugnandae causā facere;
eius rei testimōnium esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit, et
quod bellum nōn intulērit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in
Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante 30
hoc tempus exercitum populi Rōmāni Galliae prōvinciae
finibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs

veniret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsi concēdi nōn oportēret, si in nostrōs finēs impetum faceret, sic item nōs esse iniquōs quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus.

- 5 'Quod frātēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs diceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rērum ut nōn sciret neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānis auxilium tulisse, neque ipsōs, in his contentiōnibus quās Haedui sēcum et cum Sēquanis habuissent, auxiliō populi Rōmāni ūsōs esse.
- 10 'Dēbēre sē suspicārī simulātā Caesarem amicitīā, quem exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī opprimendī causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēducāt ex his regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amicō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod si eum interfēcerit, multis sēsē nōbilibus principibusque populi
- 15 Rōmāni grātum esse factūrum (id sē ab ipsis per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre), quōrum omnium grātiā atque amicitiam eius morte redimere posset. Quod si discessisset et liberam possessiōnem Galliae sibi trādidisset, magnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum, et quaecumque bella geri
- 20 vellet, sine ūllō eius labōre et periculō cōfectūrum.'

45. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt quā rē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset: 'Neque suam neque populi Rōmāni cōsuētūdinem patī utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse Ariovisti quam

25 populi Rōmāni. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ab Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populi Rōmāni iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; si iū-

30 diciū senātūs observārī oportēret, liberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suis lēgibus ūtī voluisset.'

47. 'Quid ad sē venirent? an speculandī causā?'

BOOK II

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnium opiniōne
vēnisset, Rēmi, qui proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad
eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, primōs civitātis, mi-
sērunt, qui dicerent: 'Sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in
potestātem populi Rōmāni permittere; neque sē cum reliquis 5
Belgīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniū-
rāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et
oppidis recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs
omnēs Belgās in armis esse, Germānōsque, qui cis Rhēnum
incolant, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum 10
omnium furōrem ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōn-
sanguineōsque suōs, qui eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus ūtantur,
ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsis habeant,
dēterrere potuerint quin cum hīs cōsēntirent.'

4. Cum ab eis quaereret quae civitātēs quantaque in 15
armis essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiebāt: 'Plē-
rōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānis, Rhēnumque antiquitus
trāductōs propter loci fertilitātem ibi cōsēdisse, Gallōsque
qui ea loca incolerent expulisse, sōlōsque esse qui patrum
nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōs- 20
que intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fieri
utī eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōs-
que spīritūs in rē militāri sūmerent.

'Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explorāta' Rēmi di-
cēbant, 'proptereā quod propinquitātibus adfinitātibusque con- 25
iūcti, quantam quisque multitudinem in commūni Belgārum
conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognōverint. Plūrimum
inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum
numerō valēre; hōs posse cōnficere armāta milia centum,

pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta milia sexāgintā, tōtiusque belli imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitimōs ; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Diviciācum, tōtius Galliae
 5 potentissimum, quī cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit ; nunc esse rēgem Galbam ; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summam tōtius belli omnium voluntāte dēferri ; oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī milia armāta I ; totidem Nervios, quī
 10 maximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint ; xv milia Atrebātēs, Ambianōs x milia, Morinōs xxv milia, Menapiōs vii milia, Caletōs x milia, Velioassēs et Viromanduos totidem, Aduatucōs xix milia ; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germāni appellantur,
 15 arbitrārī <cōficere posse> ad xl milia.'

14. Prō his Diviciācus — nam post discessum Belgārum dimissis Haeduōrum cōpiis ad eum reverterat — facit verba : 'Bellovacōs omni tempore in fidē atque amicitīā civitātis Haeduae fuisse ; impulsōs ab suis principibus, quī dicerent
 20 Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumeliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduis dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōsili principēs fuissent, quod intellexerent quantam calamitātem civitatī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgis. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs sed
 25 etiam prō his Haeduōs ut suā clēmētiā ac mānsuetūdine in eōs utātur. Quod si fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella īnciderint, sustentāre cōsuērint.'

15. Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant ; quōrum dē nātūrā
 30 mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat : 'Nullum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus ; nihil pati vinī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īferri, quod his

rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remitti virtutem existimārent ; esse hominēs ferōs magnaēque virtūtis ; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, qui sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtutem prōiēcissent ; cōfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiōnem pācis acceptūrōs.’ 5

31. Ubi vērō movērī et adpropinquāre moenibus vidērunt, novā atque inūsītātā speciē commōti lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce misērunt, qui ad hunc modum locūtī : ‘ Nōn existimāre Rōmānōs sine ope divinā bellum gerere, qui tantāe altitudinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovērē possent ; sē 10 suaēque omnia eōrum potestāti permittere ’ dixērunt. ‘ Ūnum petere ac dēprecārī : si forte prō suā clēmētiā ac mānsuetūdine, quam ipsi ab aliis audirent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōservandōs, nē sē armis dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē finitimōs esse inimicōs ac suae virtūti invidēre ; ā quibus sē 15 dēfendere trāditis armis nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, si in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvis fortunam ā populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab his per cruciātum interfici inter quōs dominārī cōsuēssent.’

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit : ‘ Sē magis cōsuētūdine 20 suā quam meritō eōrum civitātem cōservātūrū, si, prius quam mūrū ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent ; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiōnem nisi armis trāditis. Sē id quod in Nerviiis fēcisset factūrū, finitimisque imperātūrū nē quam dēditiiciis populī Rōmānī iniūriam inferrent.’ 25

ABBREVIATIONS

abl. = ablative
abl. abs. = ablative absolute
adv. = adverb
cf. = confer, *i. e.* compare
dir. = direct
disc. = discourse
f. = feminine
ff. = and following
fig. = figure
fut. = future
gen. = genitive
ill. = illustration
impers. = impersonal
imprv. = imperative
ind. = indicative
indef. = indefinite
indir. = indirect
inf. = infinitive
Introd. = Introduction
l., ll. = line, lines
lit. = literally

m. = masculine
n. = neuter
neg. = negative
obj. = object or objective
p., pp. = page, pages
part. = partitive
pass. = passive
past abs. = past absolute
past descr. = past descriptive
perf. = perfect
plur. = plural
pred. = predicate
reflex. = reflexive
rel. = relative
sc. = scilicet, *i. e.* supply
sing. = singular
subj. = subject or subjective
subjo. = subjunctive
subord. = subordinate
subst. = substantive
transl. = translate

NOTES

THE LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR

References preceded by a section sign (§) are to the Grammar (pp. 311 ff.)

PAGE 1, LINE 1 **Gāius**: the regular Latin form, usually written 'Caius' in English. — **familiā**: abl. of origin (§ 102).

1 3 **Cinnae**: a prominent leader of the popular party.

1 4 **Sullae**: the great partisan of the nobility and the opponent of Cinna.

1 6 **impetrāvit**: distinguish from *imperāvit*.

1 10 **Rhodom**: Rhodes, an island near the coast of Asia Minor.

1 11 **prōgreditur**: historical present (§ 153. a).

1 13 **per pecūniās magnās**: 'by a great ransom.' What literally?

2 1 CHAP. II. **quaestor**: an officer appointed as assistant to a consul or praetor in charge of a province; see Introd. I. 5 and 6.

2 6 **Aedilis**: an officer at Rome, among whose duties was the charge of public buildings and games; see Introd. I. 5 and 6.

2 7 **lūdōs**: games were presented in the circus in great variety, and often at great expense, by the officials to gain the favor of the people. See p. xii.

2 8 **in aes aliēnum . . . incidit**: 'he incurred debt.'

2 9 **Cōsul**: the consuls were the highest officers at Rome. Two were elected each year. See Introd. I. 5 and 6. — **societātem**: the alliance known as the First Triumvirate; see Introd. I. 6.

2 10 **Lēgem . . . tulisset**: 'he had proposed a law.'

2 11 **rem ad populum rettulit**: 'he laid the matter before the people.'

3 5 CHAP. III. **primus Rōmānōrum**: i.e. he was the first of the Romans to do these things.

3 11 **conversum**: past participle of *convertō* modifying *aquiliferum*; transl. by a clause, 'who had turned' (§ 220. e).

3 14 **quibuscum**: for the preposition *cum* as enclitic with pronouns see § 150. a.

3 15 **parātās**: past participle modifying *legiōnēs*; *vinci* depends on *parātās*.

3 16 CHAP. IV. **Parthōs**: a warlike people dwelling southeast of the Caspian Sea.

3 21 **ut . . . peteret**: 'that he might be a candidate for the consulship a second time.'

4 1 *sē . . . velle*: 'that he wished to be a candidate while absent.'

4 4 *Rubicōnem*: a small stream between Italy and Cisalpine Gaul, the boundary of Cæsar's province. The crossing of this boundary with an army was equivalent to a declaration of war.

4 6 *cōgitāns*: see § 167.

4 9 *iacta est ālea*: 'the die is cast'; i.e. 'the decisive step has been taken.'

4 10 *Brundisium*: a port of Calabria in southern Italy, whence ships sailed, and still sail, to Greece.

5 1 CHAP. V. *Ēpirum*: Epi'rus, a district in northern Greece. See map, p. 196.

5 2 *Dyrrachī*: Dyrrach'ium, a town in Illyricum. — *dum cōpiæ . . . pervenirent*: 'until the forces . . . should arrive'; for the subjv. mood see § 198. III. *b*.

5 4 *ēgreditur*: historical present (§ 153. *a*); transl. as a past abs. (§ 156. *b*); so also *cōscendit*.

5 8 *prius*: to be taken with *quam*; the parts of *antequam* and *priusquam* are often separated in this way; for the ind. mood see § 197. *a*.

5 14 *mōre*: some ablatives of manner, even when not accompanied by an adjective, are used without *cum*.

6 1 CHAP. VI. *Āfricō*: understand *bellō*.

6 2 *Magnī*: an honorary name given to Pompey. See ill., p. 214.

6 6 *Proeliō quōdam*: 'in a certain battle'; *proeliō* is an abl. of time (§ 119), though the English idiom would lead us to expect *in proeliō*, an abl. of place where.

6 7 *suōrum*: the possessive reflex. adjective (§ 132); sc. *militum*. — *quod . . . servāsset*: a cause stated on the authority of some one other than the writer (§ 188. *b*); 'he upbraided Fortune because (as it seemed to him) she had kept him for this disaster.'

6 9 *sibi*: the dative of reference (§ 85), often used with the dative of purpose or end (§ 89); 'he thought that that war would prove disastrous to him' (lit. 'for a disaster to him').

6 13 *omnium*: an obj. gen. (§ 75. *b*); if *victor*, on which the gen. depends, were a verb, *omnium* would be the dir. obj. (accusative), *vicit omnes*.

7 2 CHAP. VII. *annumque . . . accommodāvit*: i.e. he made the number of days in the calendar year accord with that in the solar year. See § 227. *a*.

7 8 *Repetundārum*: a gen. used with a verb of convicting; 'those convicted of extortion.' — *convictōs*: a past participle agreeing with *edō* understood.

7 4 *quæ . . . minuerent*: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).

7 5 *exercuit*: 'enforced.'

7 7 *Dictātor*: a Roman magistrate appointed in times of danger and having absolute power. When Cæsar was appointed dictator *in perpetuum*, that

is, for a term extending beyond the period of danger and necessity, it was feared that he was aiming at regal authority. See Introd. I. 9.

7 8 *insolentius*: 'too arrogantly'; see § 145.

7 18 *unus et alter rogābant*: i. e. people generally were asking etc.

7 14 *Rēxne . . . Caesar*: see Introd. I. 10.

8 CHAP. VIII. The dramatic events recorded in this chapter are graphically presented by the colored plates, pp. 8, 311.

8 6 *Nōne scīs*: 'don't you know?' See § 170. a. 2.

8 7 *Īdūs Mārtiās*: see § 227. d.

8 8 *cum . . . vēnisset*: note the difference in time between *vēnisset* and *recūsāret* (l. 10); 'when he had come . . . when he kept refusing.'

8 11 *Caesarem*: obj. of *volnerat*, of which *Casca* is the subj.

9 1 CHAP. IX. *sī . . . data esset*: 'if it had been in his power to choose' (lit. 'if the power of choosing had been given to him'); a condition contrary to fact in past time (§ 199. III. b).

9 2 *prīdiē quam occīsus est*: 'on the day before he was killed.' There is a comparative idea in *prīdiē* ('the day sooner'), which allows the use of the same construction as follows *prīusquam* (§ 197. a).

9 3 *conlātō*: with *sermōne*; *sermōnem cōnferre*, 'to carry on a conversation.'

9 5 *quō . . . hōc*: these abls. of measure of difference may best be translated by the English correlatives 'the . . . the' (cf. "the deeper the well, the colder the water"); lit. 'by how much the more infrequent . . . by so much the more praiseworthy.'

9 7 *Cum enim dēprehendisset*: 'for when he had seized.'

9 8 *ab eis . . . restiterant*: 'by those who had opposed him'; for the case of *sibi*, see § 83.

9 15 CHAP. X. *Caesar . . . statūrā*: 'Caesar is said to have been tall' (lit. 'of high stature'). The abl. of description, *statūrā*, is in the pred. of the sentence, as are also *ore*, *oculis*, and *capite* (§ 116. b). See Introd. I. 11.

9 16 *Quam*: 'and this,' or simply 'this'; see § 143.

9 17 *molestē ferēbat*: 'he was annoyed at' (lit. 'he bore ill').

9 18 *gestandae*: the gerundive is to be carefully distinguished from the gerund, which is always governed as a noun, but has an active verbal force and so sometimes, but not generally, has an obj. in the accusative. The gerundive is pass. and agrees with its noun like an adjective. The gerund form corresponding to *iūs laureae gestandae* would be *iūs gestandī lauream*, 'the right of wearing the laurel wreath.' The gerundive is to be translated in the same way, though lit. it means 'the right of the laurel wreath to be worn.'

10 1 *Rei militāris . . . perfīssimus*: see § 80. See Introd. I. 12.

10 3 *equō*: 'on horseback.' — *pedibus*: 'on foot.'

10 5 *ut . . . perveniret*: a result clause.

10 7 *ut visum est*: 'as it seemed.'

THE GALLIC WAR — BOOK I

11 1 CHAP. 1. **Gallia**: the whole country of Gaul excepting the Roman Province (*Uterior Prōvincia*) and Cisalpine Gaul (*Citerior Prōvincia*, now known as northern Italy). See the map at the beginning of the book, and the Introd. II. 1. — **omnis**: 'as a whole.' — **divisa**: past participle used as an adjective.

11 2 **ūnam**: sc. *partem* from *partēs* above. — **incolunt**: 'inhabit.' The words *quādrum* . . . *incolunt* etc. may be translated freely, 'one of which is inhabited by the Belgæ' etc. — **quī**: the antecedent is *ei* ('those') understood, subj. of *incolunt*.

11 3 **ipsōrum**: shown to be emphatic by its position (see Composition, Lesson I. 2); 'in their own language.'

11 4 **linguā**: abl. of respect (§ 115). — **inter sē**: 'from one another' (lit. 'among themselves').

11 5 **Gallōs** etc.: trace these boundaries on the map. Use the maps in all cases to locate the names of places and peoples.

11 6 **dividit**: the verb is sing. because the rivers make one boundary (§ 68).

11 7 **Hōrum**: part. gen. with *fortissimī* (§ 76). — **propterea quod**: 'because' (lit. 'because of this, that').

11 8 **cultū**: 'civilization,' as shown by outward signs, dress, and habits of life. — **hūmānitāte**: 'refinement,' of mind or feeling. — **prōvinciae**: *Uterior Prōvincia*, the southeastern part of Transalpine Gaul. See map and Introd. II. 1. This territory was organized as a province, and was under the influence of Roman civilization.

11 9 **mercātōrēs**: traders, or peddlers. They traveled with mules, pack horses, and wagons.

11 10 **effeminandōs**: gerundive (§ 224. 6). Distinguish carefully from the gerund.

11 11 **Germānis**: dative with an adjective of nearness (§ 90). — **Rhēnum**: this natural boundary has always been patriotically guarded by the Germans and has inspired their well-known song "Die Wacht am Rhein."

11 12 **Quā dē causā**: 'and for this reason'; for the translation of a rel. pronoun beginning a sentence see § 143.

11 14 **cum**: 'while.' — **suīs** and **ipsī**: both refer to the Helvetii, *eōs* and *eōrum* to the Germans. For the reflexive *suīs* see § 132.

12 1 **quam** . . . **dictum est**: 'which it has been said (above) the Gauls occupy.' For the indir. disc. see § 204. The dir. disc. would be *Gallī obtinent*. Do not transl. *obtinere* 'obtain.'

12 3 *ab Sēquanis*: 'on the side of' etc.

12 4 *vergit* etc.: 'slopes to the north'; the highlands are along the southern boundary, and most of the rivers in that quarter flow in their main course northerly.

12 5 *Galliae*: Central (or Celtic) Gaul, the country just described, not *Gallia omnis*.

12 6 *spectant in*: 'face,' or 'lie toward.'

12 9 *inter occāsum* etc.: 'toward the northwest,' i.e. from the Province, the quarter from which this direction and that mentioned in l. 6 are considered.

12 11 CHAP. 2. *M(ārcō) Messālā et M(ārcō) Pisōne cōsulibus*: abl. abs. denoting time (§ 117. b). Transl., 'in the consulship of Marcus Messala' etc. In reading the Latin and in translating always give the names in full. Two consuls were elected annually, and the Romans designated the year by the names of the consuls in office (§ 228). The two named above were consuls in 61 B. C., three years before Cæsar went to Gaul.

12 12 *coniūrātiōnem*: 'a conspiracy.' The Helvetii had been governed by kings, but were now ruled by chiefs from among the nobles (*nōbīlēs*). Orgetorix, by making himself leader of the emigration, hoped to gain royal power over the Helvetii, and through them to extend his sway over the whole of Gaul. — *civitatī*: dative after *persuāsīt* (§ 83).

12 13 *ut . . . exirent*: subst. clause used as the obj. of *persuāsīt* (§ 183).

12 14 *perfacile esse* etc.: indir. disc. after a verb of saying implied in *persuāsīt*. The dir. words of persuasion used were *perfacile est* etc., *potīrī* being the subj. and *perfacile* in the pred. of *est*. 'He persuaded them . . . , (saying) that it was very easy.' — *cum . . . praestārent*: causal clause (§ 189). — *omnibus*: dative with a compound verb (§ 84).

12 15 *imperīō*: see § 107. a.

12 16 *Id*: dir. obj. of *persuāsīt*. See Composition, Lesson XXVIII. note 1. — *hōc*: abl. of cause (§ 109).

12 17 *ūnā ex parte*: 'on one side.'

12 22 *His rēbus fiēbat*: 'from these causes it came about' (§ 109). — *ut . . . vagārentur*: 'that they roamed about less widely' etc.; but transl. more freely and naturally, 'from these causes it came about that they were becoming less free to wander.' The clauses *ut . . . vagārentur . . . possent* are the subjs. of *fiēbat* (§ 187. II).

12 23 *finitimis*: see § 84. — *quā ex parte*: 'and for this reason'; for this translation of *quā* see § 143 and cf. p. 11, l. 12. — *hominēs*: 'being men,' in apposition with the subj. of *adficiēbantur*.

12 24 *bellandī*: gerund (§ 223. a).

12 26 *milia passuum*: 'miles.' The *passus* was the stretch from where one heel is raised to where it is set down again, and is reckoned at five

Roman feet. A Roman mile (1000 paces) was about 400 feet less than ours. — *mīlia*: accusative of extent (§ 96).

12 27 passuum: part. gen. (§ 76). — **CCXL**: *ducenta quadrāgintā*; always give the Latin words for numerals when reading the text. — **patēbant**: keep in mind the difference in meaning between the past descr. and the perf. (§§ 154. *b.*, 156).

13 1 **CHAP. 3. His rēbus**: 'by these considerations' (§ 109).

13 2 quae . . . pertinērent: dependent clause in indir. disc. (§ 203. *a*). There is, to be sure, no verb here that expressly means 'say' or 'think,' but from the main verb *cōstituērunt* one can see that the clause expresses the thought of the Helvetii, not of Cæsar, and for this reason the subord. verb is in the subjv.

13 3 quam maximum: 'as great as possible.'

13 6 cōficiendās: 'completing'; gerundive, denoting purpose (§ 225. *a*).

13 7 in tertium annum . . . cōfirmant: 'fix . . . for the third year.' For the tense of *cōfirmant* see § 153. *a*.

13 9 Casticō: see § 83.

13 10 filiō, Sēquanō: in apposition with *Casticō* (§ 58).

13 12 ut . . . occupāret: subst. clause, obj. of *persuādet* (§ 183). For the past tense see the rule for sequence of tenses (§§ 162, 164).

13 13 quod: rel. pronoun with *rēgnum* for antecedent (§ 137). — **Dumnorigi**: indir. obj. of *persuādet* (l. 15). Dumnorix was a younger brother of Diviciacus (l. 14), a strong representative of the old aristocratic clan-spirit among the Hædui. He was ambitious for power, a vigorous leader of the anti-Roman faction among his people, and caused Cæsar much trouble for many years.

13 14 Diviciāci: this Hæduan chief had been in Rome, knew Cicero and other prominent Romans, and was the constant friend and ally of Cæsar in his campaigns. He represented the popular element that was opposed to the old clannish aristocracy, of which such men as Orgetorix and Dumnorix were the leaders.

13 15 ut idem cōnārētur: 'to make the same attempt.'

13 17 Perfacile: pred. with *esse* of the sentence of which *cōnāta perficere* is the subj. (§ 48. I. *b*); n. gender because the subj. is an inf. *Cōnāta* is n. plur. accusative, obj. of *perficere*. — **factū**: see § 226. *b*. — **illīs probat**: 'undertook to show them'; historical present (§ 153. *a*).

13 19 esse: indir. disc. with a verb of saying understood; '(he told them) there was no doubt that' etc. (§ 203. *a*). — **quīn . . . possent**: see § 186. — **Galliae**: see § 76.

13 20 sē . . . conciliātūrum (esse): the indir. disc. continues; '(he told them) that he would win over' etc. The dir. form was *conciliābō*. Remember

that the reflexives *sē* and *suus* in their various forms refer, as a rule, to the subj. of their clause, and in indir. disc. to the subj. of the verb of saying (§ 133).

13 21 *ōrātiōne*: do not transl., 'oration'; the meaning is rather a 'plea,' or 'argument.' For the case see § 109.—*fīdem et iūs iūrāndum*: transl. freely, 'an assurance confirmed by oath.'

13 22 *rēgnō occupātō*: abl. abs. expressing time (§ 117. *b*). Such a construction can generally be expanded in translation into a clause denoting time, cause, condition, or concession, introduced by 'when,' 'since,' 'if,' or 'though,' according to the context.—*per trēs . . . populōs*: i.e. the Helvetii, Hædui, and Sequani.

13 23 *Galliæ*: see § 81. *d*.—*posse*: equivalent to a fut. inf.; indir. disc. with *sēsē* as subj. (§ 204).

13 24 CHAP. 4. *Mōribus*: see § 111.

13 25 *ex vinculis*: lit. 'out of chains'; i.e. '(standing) in chains.' We should say simply 'in chains.'—*causam dicere*: 'to plead his cause.'—*Damnātum*: a past participle expressing condition (§ 220. *c*) and modifying *eum* understood, which would be the obj. of *sequi*; the subj. of *sequi* is *poenam*, which is explained by the subst. appositive clause *ut . . . cremārētur* (§ 183, third example). The whole expression *damnātum poenam sequi . . . ut igni cremārētur* is the subj. of *oportēbat*. The following diagram will show the relation of these words:

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{poenam} \text{ (ut [is] cremārētur igni)} \\ \textit{sequi} \text{ ([eum] damnātum)} \\ \textit{oportēbat} \end{array} \right.$$

Transl. freely, 'he was doomed, if condemned, to be burned with fire.'

14 1 *Diē*: see § 119.—*causae dictiōnis*: 'for the trial' (lit. 'of the pleading of the case'). *dictiōnis* depends on *diē*, and *causae* is the obj. gen. after *dictiōnis* (§ 75. *b*).

14 2 *familiam*: 'clansmen.' See the vocabulary for the various meanings of this word.—*ad*: 'about'; adv. modifying the numeral adjective *decem*.

14 3 *clientēs*: 'retainers'; volunteer or adopted followers, the only class of slaves that seems to have been known in Gaul.

14 4 *nē . . . diceret*: neg. clause of purpose (§ 174).

14 6 *Cum . . . cōnārētur*: descriptive clause of time (§ 194. *b*).—*iūs*: the 'right' of the state to punish traitors.

14 9 *quī . . . cōnsciverit* (from *cōnsciscō*): 'that he committed suicide' (§ 186). The construction is analogous to that following *nōn est dubium*.

14 10 CHAP. 5. *nihilō*: 'none the less'; lit. 'less by nothing' (§ 114).

14 11 *ut . . . exeant*: subst. clause in apposition with *id* (§ 183).

14 13 numerō: see § 115; *ad* as above in l. 2. — **vīcōs**: 'villages,' i.e. unfortified groups of houses; *oppida*, on the other hand, are fortified (walled) towns capable of defense.

14 14 incendunt: 'set on fire.'

14 15 combūrant: 'burn up.' — **domum**: see § 97. The verbal idea of 'returning' in the noun *reditiōnis* allows this construction, which is usual only with verbs. — **spē sublātā**: equivalent to a temporal clause (§ 117. *b*). *Sublātā* is from *tollō*.

14 16 ad . . . subeunda: see § 225. *a*.

14 18 uti . . . proficiantur: subst. clause, dir. obj. of *persuadent* (§ 183). In this clause *ūti* agrees with the omitted subj. of *proficiantur*.

14 19 cōsiliō: abl. with *ūti* (§ 107. *a*). — **vīcis exūstis**: abl. abs.

14 22 receptōs . . . adasciunt: transl., 'they receive the Boii into their own number (*ad sē*) and unite them to themselves as allies.'

14 23 CHAP. 6. Erant etc.: 'there were in all (only) two ways' etc.

14 24 possent: the subjv. in a clause of description or characteristic (§ 177. *a*).

14 25 inter . . . Rhodanum: about nineteen Roman miles from Geneva. The Rhone at this part was the boundary of the Roman Province. — **vix quā . . . dūcerentur**: 'where carts could scarcely be drawn in single file.' *Dūcerentur* is a subjv. of description, like *possent* in l. 24.

15 1 possent: a subjv. of result (§ 179).

15 2 multō: see § 114. While this route was easier, it required them to crush the Roman force at Geneva before they could use it.

15 3 pācāti erant: 'had been subjugated,' three years before. The Roman idea of 'pacifying' a people was to subdue them.

15 4 locis: see § 120. *b*. — **vādō**: 'by ford(ing)' (§ 106).

15 7 persuāsūrōs (esse): indir. disc. Observe that *esse* is frequently omitted. The dir. expression was *persuādēbimus* (§ 204).

15 8 bonō animō: 'well disposed' (§ 116. *b*). — **vidērentur**: subord. clause in indir. disc. (§ 208).

15 9 paterentur: see § 183; *suōs* and the subj. of *paterentur* (understood) refer to the Allobroges; *eōs* refers to the Helvetii.

15 11 convenient: see § 175. — **a. d. v. Kal. Apr.**: = *ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprīlēs*; transl. as if it were *quintō diē ante Kalendās Aprīlēs*, 'on the fifth day before the Calends of April,' i.e. March 28 (§ 227. *h, i*).

16 1 CHAP. 7. Caesari: almost any word in a Latin sentence may be made emphatic by being placed first. CÆSAR here makes his first appearance. His dramatic entrance at the critical moment, after the stage has been carefully set by describing how difficult the situation was, is characteristic of his style and of the man. Observe how carefully he has set forth (1) the geography of the

country, chap. 1; (2) the situation and plans of the Helvetii, chaps. 2-6; and then (3) how he centers attention on himself, the main figure, as he enters on the scene. Observe that he regularly writes of himself in the third person.

16 2 ab urbe: Cæsar was at this time at Rome, having laid down his consulship preparatory to setting out for his province. See Introd. I. 7. The word *urbs* in Latin writers regularly means Rome, THE CITY.—**quam maximis potest itineribus:** 'by the longest possible marches' (§ 124).

16 3 ulteriorem: i. e. beyond the Alps, *Uterior Prœvincia*.

16 5 imperat: here used in the sense 'to make requisition on.' *Prœvinciæ* is the indir. obj., and *numerus* the dir. obj.

16 6 legiō: this was the tenth legion, which afterwards became so famous.

16 7 certiōrēs facti sunt: 'were informed' (lit. 'made more certain').

16 9 quī dicerent: rel. clause of purpose (§ 175); not 'who said,' but 'who should say,' or, in better English, 'to say.' The construction after *dicerent* is indir. disc. The direct words of the ambassadors were *nōbīs est in animō . . . quod aliud iter habēmus nullum; rogāmus ut tuā voluntāte id nōbīs facere liceat*.

16 10 sibi: dative of possession (§ 88).

16 12 ut . . . liceat: subst. clause, obj. of *rogāre* (§ 183).

16 13 memoriā tenēbat: 'remembered' (lit. 'held by memory'); equivalent to a verb of knowing and so followed by indir. disc.

16 14 sub iugum: the *iugum* was made by sticking two spears into the ground and laying another across them above. Conquered soldiers were made to pass under this as a sign of *sub-jugation*; this act was equivalent to the modern 'laying down arms.'

16 15 concēdendum (esse): impers., depending on *putābat*.—**hominēs:** subj. of *temperātūrōs (esse)* depending on *existimābat*.—**inimicō animō:** abl. of description (§ 116).

16 16 datā facultāte: abl. abs. expressing condition (§ 117. a).

16 18 dum . . . convenirent: 'until the men should' etc. (§ 198. III. b).

16 19 diem: the meaning here is 'time,' not 'day.'

16 20 ad Id. Apr.: 'April 13' (§ 227, d).—**reverterentur:** 'they should return' (§ 205).

16 21 CHAP. 8. legiōne: abl. of means (§ 106).

17 1 milia: accusative of extent (§ 96). Cæsar's *diem ad dēlībērandum* was used in fortifying the south bank of the river. The whole distance was, as Cæsar says, about nineteen miles, but the banks were so steep that only about three miles in all actually needed defense. Where this was necessary, the bank was cut down so as to be vertical. Then a trench was made a short distance back from the bank and running parallel to it. The earth from the trench was thrown in front of it to increase the height of the river bank. The *pēdum sēdecim* is the distance from the top of the wall of earth to the bottom of the ditch.

17 2 *pedum*: gen. of description (§ 77).

17 3 *quō facilius* . . . *posset*: why is *quō* used instead of *ut*? See § 176.

17 4 *sē invitō*: abl. abs.; 'against his will' (§ 117. c). — *cōnārentur* . . . *posset*: note that these verbs are in secondary sequence after the historical presents *dispōnit* and *commūnit* (§ 164).

17 6 *negat sē* . . . *posse*: 'says he cannot' etc. Do not transl. *negat* 'deny.'

17 8 *cōnentur*: subjv. because it is in a subord. clause in indir. disc. (§ 208). — *prohibitūrum (esse)*: supply *sē* for subj. and *eōs* for obj.

17 10 *nōn numquam*: 'sometimes'; the two negatives equal an affirmative.

17 11 *sī* . . . *possent*: indir. question depending on *cōnātī*; 'having tried (to see) whether' etc. (§ 201).

17 12 *cōnātū*: see § 101.

17 14 CHAP. 9. *ūna* . . . *via*: 'only the one way.'

17 16 *possent*: subjv. in a causal clause (§ 189).

17 17 *ut* . . . *impetrārent*: a purpose clause (§ 174). — *eō dēprecātōre*: 'by his intercession' (lit. 'he being intercessor').

17 18 *grātiā*: 'personal influence'; abl. of cause (§ 109).

17 20 *novīs rēbus*: 'revolution'; dative (§ 83).

17 22 *obstrictās*: used as a pred. adjective.

17 23 *patiantur* . . . *dent*: subjv. in subst. clauses of result (§ 187. I). — *obsidēs*: these were persons of prominence given by one state to another as security for fidelity. If the compact was broken, the hostages were held responsible and punished.

17 24 *Sēquanī* . . . *Helvētīi*: sc. *obsidēs dent*; *dent* is followed by the purpose clauses *nē* . . . *prohibeant* and *ut* . . . *trānseant* (§ 174).

18 4 CHAP. 10. *fieret*: subjv. in a subord. clause in indir. disc. after *intelligēbat* (§ 208).

18 5 *futūrum (esse) ut* . . . *habēret*: 'it would be to the great peril of the Province to have' etc.; *ut* . . . *habēret* is a subst. clause of result, subj. of *futūrum (esse)* (§ 187. II).

18 6 *locīs*: abl. of place where (§ 120. b).

18 7 *finitimōs*: pred., 'have as neighbors' etc.

18 8 *mūnitiōnī*: see § 84. — *Labiēnum*: an officer in whom Cæsar had the greatest confidence, and to whom he generously gives much credit.

18 9 *līgātum*: see Introd. III. 6. b. See vocabulary for two meanings of this word. The context will always tell which is intended.

18 10 *duās*: the eleventh and twelfth legions. — *trēs*: the seventh, eighth, and ninth. These together with *eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat* (p. 16, l. 21), which was already on the field of action, made up the six legions of Cæsar's army.

18 15 *Complūribus* . . . *pulsis*: *pulsis* agrees with *hīs* (abl. abs.) (§ 117. b).

18 21 CHAP. 11. *angustiās*: the pass between the Jura Mountains and the Rhone, described in chap. 6.

19 1 *rogātum*: supine (§ 226. *a* and note). A word of saying is implied in *rogātum* which accounts for the following indir. disc. The dir. form was *Ita omni tempore . . . meriti sumus ut paene in conspectu exercitus vestri agri vāstārī, liberī in servitūtem abducī, oppida expugnārī nōn debuerint* (§ 179).

19 6 *dēpopulātis*: pass., though from a deponent verb.

19 9 *sibi . . . nihil esse reliquī*: 'that they have nothing left' (lit. 'there was nothing of a remainder to themselves'). For *reliquī* see § 76; for *sibi*, § 88.

19 11 *expectandum (esse)*: impers.; transl. by the active, 'he must not' etc.

19 12 *pervenirent*: see §§ 198. III. *b*, 162.

19 13 CHAP. 12. *Flūmen est Arar*: 'there is a river (called) the Saône.'

19 14 *lēnitāte*: abl. of description (§ 116).

19 15 *in . . . fluat*: indir. question (§ 201). The clause is the subj. of *possit*.

19 16 *trānsībant*: note the continuative force of the past descr. (§ 154. *a*).

19 17 *partēs*: obj. of *dūxisse*; *flūmen* is accusative, depending on *trāns-in trādūxisse* (§ 95).

19 18 *citrā*: 'on this side of' (as viewed from Rome).

19 19 *dē tertiā vigiliā*: 'in the third watch,' i.e. between midnight and 3 A.M. See vocabulary.

19 23 *mandarunt*: contracted from *mandāvērunt*.

20 4 *quae pars . . . intulerat, ea . . . persolvit*: the normal order would be *ea pars quae* etc.; the antecedent of *quae* is *pars*, which is drawn into the rel. clause and made a part of it (§ 140).

20 5 *princeps poenās persolvit*: 'paid the penalty first'; *princeps*, though an adjective, is used with the force of an adverb (§ 126).

20 7 *eius socerī*: 'his father-in-law,' L. Calpurnius Piso, father of Cæsar's wife, Calpurnia, and consul of the present year (see end of chap. 6).

20 11 CHAP. 13. *pontem . . . faciendum cūrat*: 'had a bridge made' (§ 224. *d*).

20 13 *cum . . . intellegerent*: see § 195. — *diēbus viginti*: 'in the course of twenty days' (§ 119).

20 14 *ut . . . trānsirent*: a result clause in apposition with *id* (§ 187. I).

20 17 *Si . . . faciet . . . ibunt . . . erunt*: a future more probable condition (§ 199. II. *a*).

20 20 *incommodī*: for gen. see § 81. *a*.

20 22 *Quod*: 'as to the fact that' etc. (§ 182. *a*).

20 23 *suīs*: see §§ 82, 132. *Suīs* is used as a subst. (§ 127).

21 1 *ut . . . contendāmus . . . nitāmur*: see § 179.

21 6 CHAP. 14. *dubitātiōnis*: part. gen. (§ 76. a).

21 8 *eo* . . . *quō*: abl. of measure of difference (§ 114); 'I am the more incensed, the less' etc.

21 9 *si* . . . *fuisset*: a past condition contrary to fact (§ 199. III. b). Transl. *qui si* 'if it.' The subj. of *fuisset* is *qui*, which refers to the Roman people. Note the accent of *alicuius*.

21 11 *quā rē timēret*: *quā rē* is equivalent to *propter quod* with *quicquam* understood for the antecedent; 'the Roman people did not know that anything had been done by them to cause them to fear' (lit. 'on account of which they' etc.). *Timēret* is thus a subjv. of description (§ 177); observe that the collective noun *populus Rōmānus* takes a singular verb (§ 65. a).

21 12 *Quod si*: 'but if' etc.

21 13 *contumēliae*: see § 81. a. — *volō*: see § 199. I. a.

21 14 *quod* . . . *temptāstis* . . . *vexāstis*: 'the fact that' etc. These clauses are in apposition with *iniuriarum* (§ 182).

21 17 *Quod* . . . *glōriāminī* . . . *admirāminī*: 'the fact that' etc. These *quod* clauses are the subjects of *pertinet* (§ 182); for the singular verb see § 67.

21 19 *Cōnsuērunt*: emphatic position (see note on p. 11, l. 3); 'it is the custom of the gods to grant' etc. (lit. 'the gods are wont'). — *quō gravius* . . . *doleant*: see § 176. Cf. also p. 17, l. 3.

21 20 *quōs*: the antecedent of this rel. is *hīs* (§ 139).

21 23 *Cum* . . . *sint*: a concessive clause (§ 192. note). *Cum* with the subjv. may mean 'when,' 'since,' or 'although'; the presence of the word *tamen*, 'nevertheless,' in the main clause is generally a sure indication of the last meaning. — *si* . . . *dabuntur*: see § 199. II. a.

21 24 *ut* . . . *intellegam*: see § 174. — *Haeduis*: see § 84. a.

21 25 *ipsis sociisque*: see § 84.

21 26 *Allobrogibus*: cf. *Haeduis*, l. 24.

21 28 *utī* . . . *cōnsuērint*: a result clause with the antecedent word *ita* (§ 179 and note). — *cōnsuērint*: contracted from *cōnsuēverint*.

21 29 *Hōc respōnsō datō*: abl. abs. denoting time (§ 117. b).

22 2 CHAP. 15. *equitātum*: see Introd. III. 2. — *quem* . . . *coāctum habēbat*: 'which he had, collected'; more strictly 'held (had in hand) after being collected' (§ 156. b. note).

22 4 *videant*: rel. clause of purpose (§ 175); transl. 'to see' (lit. 'who should see'). It is followed by the indir. question *quā* . . . *faciant* as object.

22 5 *cupidius*: 'too eagerly' (§ 145). — *aliēnō locō*: 'on unfavorable ground' (lit. 'on another's ground'); see § 120. b.

22 10 *novissimō agmine*: 'at their rear'; abl. of place where (§ 120). When an abl. of place is qualified by an adjective, the preposition is sometimes omitted.

22 12 *rapinis*: see § 101.

22 15 *quinis aut sēnis*: distributives; 'five or six miles each day.'—*millibus*: see § 105.

22 16 CHAP. 16. *Haeduōs frūmentum . . . flāgitāre*: 'demanded grain of the Hædui' (§ 93).

22 17 *essent . . . polliciti*: subjv. because of the implied indir. disc.; 'which (as he said) they had promised' (§ 208. *b*). If Cæsar had given this as a fact on his own authority, he would have written *erant . . . polliciti*.—*flāgitāre*: historical inf. Transl. as if past descr. ind. (§ 218).

22 18 *frūmenta*: the plur. is regularly used of standing grain. The crops of grain were not ripe because it was too early in the season (about the last of June); the green fodder (*pābulū*) was scarce because Cæsar was following in the path of the Helvetii, whose thousands of cattle had swept the country almost bare.—*nē . . . quidem*: 'not . . . even of green fodder.' A word standing between *nē* and *quidem* is made emphatic.

22 19 *frūmentō*: abl. with *ūti* (§ 107. *a*).

22 20 *fūmine Ararī*: see § 120. *b*. note 1.

22 22 *Diem*: see § 96.—*dūcere*: historical inf. (§ 218); also *dūcere*, l. 23; cf. *flāgitāre*, l. 17.—*cōferri, comportāri, adesse*: the subj. is *frūmentum*. Note the climax, 'they said it was being gathered, it was on the way, it was already at hand.'

22 24 *diūtius*: 'too long'; cf. *cupidius*, l. 5.—*quō diē*: abl. of time (§ 119). Do not transl. *dīz*.

23 1 *summō magistrātūi praeerat*: 'held the chief office.' For the case of *magistrātūi* see § 84.

23 2 *vergobretum*: see § 94.

23 4 *posset*: the subj. is *frūmentum* understood. For the mood see § 214.

23 5 *propinquīs hostibus*: 'with the enemy so near'; abl. abs.

23 6 *sublevētur*: Cæsar is telling why he blamed the Hædui; but, looking back to that time as he writes, he speaks of himself as some other person upon whose authority the reason is given; 'he blamed them because (as he said)' etc. (§ 188. *b*).

23 7 *quod sit dēstitūtus*: subjv. on the same principle as *sublevētur*; 'because (as he said) he had been left in the lurch.'

23 9 CHAP. 17. *quod*: rel. pronoun, obj. of *tacuerat*. The antecedent is *id* understood, obj. of *prōpōnit*.

23 11 *valeat*: subjv. of description (§ 177. *a*).

23 12 *improbā ōrātiōne*: 'shameless talk.'

23 13 *nē frūmentum cōferant*: see § 185.

23 14 *Praestāre*: 'that it is better.'—*sī . . . possint*: see § 199. II. *b*.

23 16 *quā . . . sint ēreptūri*: see § 186. The verb is an active periphrastic form (§ 222. 1).

23 17 *Haeduis*: dative of separation (§ 86).

23 19 *quod . . . ēnūntiāvi*: 'as to the fact that' etc. (§ 182. a); cf. p. 20, l. 22 and note.

23 20 *quantō . . . fēcerim*: indir. question (§ 201).

23 23 *CHAP. 18. pluribus praesentibus*: 'in the presence of many' (§ 117. c).

23 24 *dimittit*: historical present (§ 153. a). A number of others follow.

24 1 *esse vēra*: 'that the facts are as follows'; explained by the quotation following. — *Ipsē est Dumnorix*: 'Dumnorix is the very man.'

24 2 *summā audāciā*: 'of the utmost boldness' (§ 116).

24 5 *pretiō*: abl. of value (§ 108). — *redēpta habet*: see § 156. b. note; cf. p. 22, l. 3. — *illō licente*: 'when he bid'; the verb is from *liceor*, not *licet*.

24 6 *rēbus*: see § 106.

24 7 *ad largiendum*: 'for bribery' (to buy political support); see § 223. c.

24 8 *sūptū*: see § 106.

24 9 *domī*: see § 120. a.

24 10 *causā*: 'for the sake' etc. This is the regular meaning of the word when following the gen. For the case see § 109 and note.

24 12 *sorōrem ex mātre*: 'sister on the mother's side,' 'half sister.'

24 13 *nūptum*: supine (§ 226. a). See vocabulary under *conlocō*.

24 15 *suō nōmine*: 'on his own account' (§ 109).

24 17 *Si quid accidit*: see § 199. I. a.

24 19 *imperio*: 'under the rule' (§ 112).

24 21 *quod*: 'as to the fact that' (§ 182. a).

24 22 *diēbus*: see § 114; there is a comparative idea in *ante* (lit. 'before by a few days').

24 24 *auxiliō Caesarī*: 'as an aid to Caesar' (§ 89).

25 2 *CHAP. 19. accēderent*: see § 189; the following *quod* clauses are in apposition with *rēs* ('facts'). The verbs are in the subjv. on the principle of implied indir. disc. (§ 208. b); cf. p. 22, l. 17 and note.

25 3 *dandōs*: see § 224. d; cf. p. 20, l. 11.

25 4 *inlūsū suō* etc.: 'without his authority or that of the state.'

25 5 *ipsis*: i. e. himself and the Hædui. For the case see § 117. e.

25 6 *causae*: part. gen. depending on *satīs*, which is used as a noun (§ 76. a). — *quā rē . . . animadverteret*: 'should proceed against (or 'punish') him'; subjv. of description (§ 177).

25 8 *quod . . . cognōverat*: 'the fact that he knew,' the clause is in apposition with *unum*, 'only one thing, namely' (§§ 181, 182, second example); for the meaning of *cognōscō* in the perf. tenses see vocabulary.

25 9 *studium*: 'attachment,' as a partisan.

25 10 *voluntātem*: 'good will,' as a friend.

25 11 *nē*: 'that' (§ 184). — *eius*: i.e. of Dumnorix.

25 13 *prius quam* . . . *cōnārētur*: 'before he should attempt' (§ 197. b).

25 16 *summam* . . . *fidem*: 'full confidence.' — *eō*: refers to Diviciacus, as does *ipsō* (l. 17); while *apud sē* (l. 19), 'in his presence,' refers to Cæsar.

25 20 *ipse*: i.e. Cæsar (§ 136). The gist of the request is in *sine eius offēsiōne animī*, referring to the displeasure of Diviciacus, whose friendship he desires to retain. Cæsar's diplomacy is constantly apparent.

25 22 CHAP. 20. *complexus*: i.e. he embraces Cæsar's knees, falling at his feet.

25 23 *nē quid gravius*: 'that not any too severe measures' (§ 122); *gravius* is an adjective modifying *quid*.

25 24 *ex eō*: 'from that fact,' referring to *haec esse vēra*.

25 25 *grātiā*: 'on account of my influence' (§ 109). — *domī*: loc. (§ 120. a).

26 4 *cum* . . . *teneō*: 'while I hold.'

26 6 *voluntāte*: see § 111.

26 10 *tanti*: 'of so great account,' gen. of value (§ 78). — *utī* . . . *eius voluntāti ac precibus condōnet*: 'that in deference to his wish and prayers he would overlook' etc. The clause is one of result (§ 179).

26 13 *reprehendat*: indir. question (§ 201). Two more instances follow.

26 15 *Diviciācō frātrī*: 'for the sake of his brother, Diviciacus' (§ 85).

26 19 CHAP. 21. *mīlia*: see § 96.

26 20 *cognōscerent*: the subj. is *quī*, whose antecedent is *quōsdam*, or some such word, to be supplied as the obj. of *misit* (§ 142). For the mood of the verb see § 175.

26 21 *facilem (ascēsum) esse*: subj. of *renūntiātum est*. — *Dē tertiā vigiliā*: cf. p. 19, l. 19 and note.

26 22 *prō prætōre*: the prætör had the power to command an army; a *légātus* might be given such power temporarily, and he was then called *légātus prō prætōre*.

26 24 *cōsili*: pred. gen. after *quid sit*, 'what his plan is' (§ 77. a). — *dē quārtā vigiliā*: the third watch always began at midnight; but the length of the watches varied according to the season, being shorter in the short nights of summer. This was in June, and the fourth watch began about 2.30 A.M.

26 26 *rei*: see § 80.

26 28 *in*: sc. *exercitū*.

27 2 CHAP. 22. *ipse*: '(and) he himself,' i.e. Cæsar.

27 3 *passibus*: abl. of measure of difference (§ 114), or of comparison after *longius* (§ 105. note 2).

27 4 *Labīēni*: sc. *adventus*. — *equō admissō*: 'at full speed.'

27 6 *armis*: the shields and helmets of the Gauls were distinctly different from those of the Romans, as may be seen by a comparison of the illustrations, pp. 31, 45, 52, 69, 180.

27 7 *insignibus*: i.e. devices on shields, helmets, etc. — *stags' horns, eagles' plumes*, etc.

27 8 *Caesar* . . . *Instruit*: the inference from the report would be that Labienus and his men had been overwhelmed. *Cæsar* in consequence falls back.

27 9 *ut*: 'since,' 'inasmuch as.' — *erat* . . . *praeceptum*: *impers.*; this verb cannot take a personal pass. construction (§ 83. a). The grammatical subj. is the clause *nē . . . committeret*, a negative subst. clause of purpose (§ 183).

27 13 *Multō* . . . *diē*: abl. of time; 'late in the day' (§ 119).

27 15 *quod nōn vidisset*: 'what he had not seen'; *id* understood, the obj. of *renūntiāsse*, is the antecedent; *prō visō*, 'as if seen' (lit. 'for a thing seen').

27 16 *intervallō*: sc. *eōdem*, 'at the same interval as usual'; for the case see § 112.

27 21 CHAP. 23. *milibus*: for the construction cf. note on l. 3.

27 22 *prōspiciendum (esse)*: *impers.*; sc. *sibi*, dative of apparent agent (§ 87); 'he thought he ought to look out for the supply of grain.'

27 23 *āvertit*: toward the north; the Helvetii were traveling westward; see campaign map, facing p. 12.

27 24 *fugitivōs*: 'runaway slaves.'

27 25 *quod . . . existimārent . . . cōfiderent*: subjv. because the reason is not given as surely the right one, but merely as the supposed one (§ 188. b).

27 26 *eō magis*: 'all the more' (lit. 'more by this'); see § 114.

27 28 *rē*: abl. of separation (§ 101). — *interclūdī*: complementary inf. (§ 217. c) after *posse*, the subj. of which is *eōs* (*Rōmānōs*) understood.

28 1 *itinere conversō*: 'facing about' (lit. 'altering their course completely'); i.e. instead of continuing on their way, by which they might have reached the coast, they returned and gave *Cæsar* the chance he was waiting for.

28 3 CHAP. 24. *id*: governed by *animum advertit*, as a compound verb.

28 4 *quī sustinēret*: rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).

28 5 *in colle mediō*: 'halfway up the hill' (§ 125). — *triplicem aciem*: see *Intro.* III. 12.

28 6 *legiōnum*: gen. of material (§ 79). The four veteran legions (VII-X) stood side by side, each in three lines. Legions XI and XII, which he had last raised (*proximē cōscripserat*), were not as yet sufficiently steady to bear the brunt of a battle and so were set to guard the camp. See battle plan.

28 8 *sarcinās*: see ill., p. 69, and *Intro.* III. 9. d.

28 10 cum omnibus suis carris : i.e. not sending a force of fighting men, but following with their whole train. It seems to have been the custom of migrating peoples to go to battle with their families and carts; the former for encouragement, the latter for defense.

28 12 phalange : great masses of men in close order, like the old Greek phalanx.

28 14 CHAP. 25. **suō (equō remōtō)** etc. : i.e. his own and those of his officers. Cæsar is reported to have said to his men, "I will mount again when the enemy run." Officers and men, sharing danger on equal terms, would be equally brave. Cæsar understood human nature thoroughly.

28 17 pīlis : see Introd. III. 9. c, with the ill., p. xxiv.

28 18 Gallis . . . impedimentō : dative of purpose and of the person affected (§ 89).

28 19 plūribus : 'several.'

28 20 ferrum : i.e. the long iron shank of the *pīlum*.

28 21 inflexisset : subjv. in a causal clause (§ 189).—**sinistrā impeditā** : abl. abs. denoting cause (§ 117. c) ; transl. 'since the left hand (which carried the shield) was hampered.'

28 22 multī ut : transl. as if it were *ut multī*; *multī* is made emphatic by its position. *Ut* here introduces a clause of result.

28 23 nūdō : 'unprotected.'—**corpore** : abl. of manner (§ 110).

29 1 agmen . . . claudēbant : 'brought up their rear.' The Boii and Tulingi, with about 15,000 men, had formed the van of the Helvetian line of march, and consequently became the rear when the line faced about (p. 28, l. 1) to attack Cæsar. They now struck at his exposed right flank (*latere apertō*) as they came on the field from the road (hence *ex itinere*). The right side is said to be *exposed* since the protecting shield is carried on the left arm.

29 2 novissimis praesidiō : see § 89, and cf. *Gallis . . . impedimentō*, p. 28, l. 18.

29 3 adgressi : 'having attacked.'—**circumvenire** : sc. *coepērunt* from l. 5.

29 5 conversa signa . . . intulērunt : 'faced about (lit. 'bore reversed standards') and charged in two divisions' (*bipartitō*). See battle plan.

29 6 victis . . . submōtis : i.e. the Helvetii (§ 83); *venientēs* refers to the Boii and Tulingi.

29 7 resisteret . . . sustinēret : see § 174.

30 1 CHAP. 26. **pugnātum est** : see § 66; transl. 'the fight was carried on' (lit. 'it was fought').

30 3 alterī . . . alterī : the Helvetii and the Boii and Tulingi respectively (§ 144. d).—**ut** : *as*.

30 5 cum : concessive (§ 192).—**hōrā septimā** : the day from sunrise to

sunset was divided into twelve equal parts (*hōrae*). The length of the hours varied, therefore, according to the length of the day. As sunset at this time was about eight o'clock, the daylight hours were equal to about an hour and a quarter of our time. This would make *ab hōrā septimā* a little past 1 P.M.

30 6 *āversum*: 'in retreat,' 'fleeing' (lit. 'turned away'). — **Ad multam noctem**: 'till late at night.'

30 9 *coniciēbant . . . subiciēbant*: 'hurled' (from above), 'thrust' (from below). For the use of the past descr. see § 154. a.

30 11 *impedimentis castrisque*: see § 107. a.

30 12 *captus est*: agrees with the nearer subject (§ 67).

30 14 *tōtā nocte*: see § 119. note.

30 16 *cum . . . potuissent*: a causal subjv. (§ 189).

30 18 *nē . . . iuvārent*: '(telling them) that they should not' etc. The subjv. stands for *nōlūe iuvāre* of dir. disc. (§§ 206, 203. a).

30 19 *sī iūvissent*: the dir. disc. would be *sī iūveritis*, 'if you shall have aided.' — *locō*: 'estimation.'

30 22 CHAP. 27. *Quī cum*: 'when they' etc. (§ 143).

30 26 *quī . . . perfūgissent*: a subord. clause in implied indir. disc. (§ 208. b; cf. p. 22, l. 16; p. 25, l. 2). Cæsar's words might have been, "Trāдите obsidēs . . . quī ad vōs perfūgērunt."

32 1 *Dum . . . conquiruntur et cōferuntur*: transl. as past (§ 198. I).

32 3 *perterrīti*: although *mīlia* is n., the participle agreeing with it is m., the construction being according to sense instead of form. — *nē . . . adficerentur*: depending on the verbal idea in *timōre*, the subjv. being used as with verbs of fearing (§ 184).

32 4 *quod . . . existimārent*: the subjv. is used because the reason is not given by the author as his own, but as the supposed reason of the Helvetii (§ 188. b).

32 5 *occultārī*: 'be hid' from Cæsar. — *ignōrārī*: 'be unknown' to anybody.

32 8 CHAP. 28. *Quod ubi*: a rel. beginning a sentence and followed by a conjunction should be transl. by a personal or a demonstrative pronoun after the conjunction, as here *quod ubi* = *ubi hoc* (§ 143). Cf. *Quī cum*, p. 30, l. 22. — *quōrum*: the antecedent is *hīs*, indir. obj. of *imperāvī*, which has for its dir. obj. the subst. clause *utī . . . redūcerent*.

32 9 *sī . . . vellent*: this subord. clause is part of what Cæsar said, and depending on the clause *utī . . . redūcerent* is also subjv. (§ 214). Cæsar's words probably were, "Conquīrite et redūcite, sī mihi pūrgātī esse vultis" (or "volētis"). — *sibi*: 'in his sight' or 'estimation'; dative of reference (§ 85).

32 10 *in hostium numerō habuit*: 'he treated as enemies' (lit. 'he held in the number of enemies'); i.e. he put them all to death, as a necessity of war and a warning to others.

32 15 *quō*: abl. of means (§ 106). — *tolerārent*: see § 177.

32 16 *ipsōs*: the Helvetii and their allies, as opposed to the others who were to provide food. — *quōs*: the rel. agrees with the nearer of the antecedents.

32 22 *petentibus Hæduis*: 'to the Hædui at their request' etc.; dative after *concessit*, of which the dir. obj. is *ut Bōiōs conlocārent*. The Boii would be valuable allies to the Hædui.

32 24 *parem . . . atque ipsi erant*: 'equal with their own' (lit. 'as they themselves were').

33 1 CHAP. 29. *tabulae*: 'tablets,' of the shape of a folding slate, with wax spread inside, written on with a pointed instrument called *stilus*. See illustration, p. 56. — *litteris Graecis*: this refers merely to the letters. There was a Greek colony at Marseilles, from which they had adopted the Greek alphabet, but not the language. The Gauls had no alphabet of their own, and probably written language was not used to any extent.

33 3 *ratio*: 'an account.' — *qui . . . exisset*: an indir. question.

33 4 *possent*: subjv. of description (§ 177). The antecedent of *qui* is *cōrum*.

33 8 *ad milia XCI*: 'about 92,000.' — *Summa*: 'the sum'; *fuērunt* agrees with the plur. pred. If we deduct the Boii, who were adopted by the Hædui, this reckoning would show an actual loss, in slain or captives, of nearly 250,000, including probably about 150,000 women and children or other noncombatants. Probably more escaped than the record shows.

THE WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS. The occasion of this new campaign was the following: The Hædui, jealous of the Sequani, who lived a little to the north, had laid excessive tolls on their trade, which consisted chiefly in the export of salted meats for the southern market. This led to a war, in which the Sequani had invited the aid of the Germans, under Ariovistus, about three years before the campaign of Cæsar. The Germans, once in Gaul, had seized a large share of territory, and proved to be grasping and oppressive masters. Meanwhile the Helvetian war began to threaten. The Roman senate, to make safe, passed a decree promising favor and friendship to the Helvetii. At the same time they sent messengers to Ariovistus, saluting him as king and friend (chap. 35), recognizing his claim on Gaul, and, it was said, inviting him to Rome. This occurred the year before, during Cæsar's consulship. However, now that the fear of the Helvetii was past, Cæsar found himself obliged to take sides in the old quarrel.

33 13 CHAP. 30. *grātulātum*: see § 226. *a*.

33 15 *populī Rōmānī*: an obj. gen. (§ 75. *b*).

33 16 *eam rem . . . accidisse*: 'nevertheless that event has happened not less advantageously (*ex ūsū*) to the land of Gaul than to the Roman people.'

33 17 *eō cōnsiliō*: abl. of cause (§ 109), and explained by the appositive clauses of purpose *ut . . . habērent* (§ 183, third example). — *flōrentissimis rēbus*: abl. abs. equivalent to a concessive clause (§ 117. d); 'although they were in prosperous circumstances.'

33 19 *imperio*: see § 107. a. — *domiciliō*: dative of purpose (§ 89).

33 24 *voluntate*: abl. of accordance (§ 111).

34 1 *iūre iūrādō . . . sānxērunt*: 'ordained by oath that no one, except (those) to whom it should have been intrusted by common consent, should make known (their meeting).'

34 4 *CHAP. 31. idem*: nominative plur. — *ante*: adv.

34 6 *dē suā omniumque salūte*: 'concerning their own safety and (that) of all.'

34 7 *Caesari ad pedēs*: dative of reference (§ 85); transl., 'at Caesar's feet.'

34 9 *nē . . . enūntientur . . . uti . . . impetrēmus*: subst. clauses in apposition with *id*, the obj. of *contendimus* and *labōrāmus* (§ 183, third example; cf. p. 33, l. 17).

34 12 *Galliae tōtius*: this does not include all of the *Gallia* defined in chap. 1, but only the eastern part of Celtic Gaul.

34 13 *alterius . . . alterius*: 'the one . . . the other' (§ 144. d); gens. after *principātum*.

34 16 *uti . . . arcesserentur*: a clause of result, subj. of *factum est*, 'it came to pass' (§ 187. II).

34 16 *mercēde*: 'for pay' (§ 108).

34 24 *qui*: the antecedent is *ei* understood, subj. of *coacti sunt* (§ 142).

35 3 *sēsē . . . repetitūrōs (esse) . . . recūsātūrōs (esse)*: indir. disc. depending on the idea of saying in *civitatē obstringere* (§ 203. a). The words of their oath were 'we will neither demand back hostages . . . nor refuse' etc.

35 4 *quō minus . . . essent*: a clause following a verb of refusing (§ 185). Transl. by an inf., 'refuse to be under their dominion' etc., i.e. to do the bidding of the Sequani.

35 6 *Ūnus . . . sum*: 'I am the only one.'

35 7 *potuerim*: see § 177. a. — *ut iūrārem*: 'to take an oath.'

35 8 *Rōmam ad senātum*: note that the preposition is used only with *senātum*; why not with *Rōmam*? See § 97.

35 9 *postulātum*: supine (§ 226. a).

35 11 *peius*: n. adjective used as a noun; 'a worse fate.'

35 14 *dē alterā parte tertiā*: 'from a second third.'

35 16 *paucis mēnsibus ante*: 'a few months before' (lit. 'before by a few months'). *Ante* is an adv. followed by an abl. of measure of difference (§ 114).

35 17 *Paucis annis*: abl. of time within which (§ 119).

35 19 *neque* . . . *agrō*: 'neither can the Gallic land be compared with that of the Germans.'

35 20 *haec*: 'this of ours.'—*illā*: 'that of the Germans.' The Gauls regarded the Germans as savages.

35 22 *ut semel*: 'as soon as.'

35 24 *nōbilissimī cuiusque*: 'of all the noblest'; the sing. form of *quisque* when used with superlatives has the meaning of 'every,' 'all.'

35 25 *omnia exempla cruciātūsque*: lit. 'all examples and tortures'; the meaning is that he employed every kind of torture.

35 27 *barbarus, irācundus, temerārius*: 'savage, passionate, hasty.'

36 1 *auxili*: part. gen. depending on the indef. pronoun *quid*, 'anything,' 'something' (§ 76. a).

36 2 *Galli*: dative of agent (§ 87) with *est faciendum*, the subj. of which is *idem*, which in turn is explained by the appositive clause *ut . . . experiantur*.

36 4 *Haec*: emphasized by position, as if he said, 'Why! if this very conversation should be reported' etc. (cf. note on p. 11, l. 3).

36 5 *quīn . . . sūmat*: see § 186.

36 7 *exercitūs*: gen.; 'that of the army.'

36 8 *nē . . . trādūcātur*: see § 185.

36 9 *Rhēnum*: depending on *trāns* in *trā(ns)ducātur* (§ 95. note).

36 15 CHAP. 32. *quae . . . esset*: indir. question (§ 201).

36 16 *respondēre*: historical inf. (§ 218). Observe that the subj. is nominative. Cf. *flāgitāre*, p. 22, l. 17.

36 20 *Hōc*: abl. of measure of difference (§ 114); freely translated, 'on this account.' It is explained by the appositive clause *quod . . . audent* (§ 182).

36 21 *nē . . . quidem*: 'not even in secret.' Cf. note on p. 22, l. 18.

36 22 *absentis*: predicate; 'even when absent' (§ 220. a).

36 23 *velut . . . adsit*: see § 200.

36 24 *tamen*: 'after all' (whatever they might have to suffer).—*Sēquanis*: dative of apparent agent (§ 87).

37 2 CHAP. 33. *sibi . . . cūrae* etc.: 'that he would see to it' (lit. 'it would be for a care to him'); see § 89.

37 3 *et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte*: construe after *adductum*, 'induced by both his favors and his influence'; *beneficiō* refers to services that would inspire gratitude, *auctōritāte* to the prestige that would inspire fear in Ariovistus.

37 6 *secundum ea*: 'besides these considerations'; *secundum* is here used as a preposition.—*quā rē . . . putāret*: 'on account of which he thought'; a descriptive clause (§ 177).

37 8 *quod . . . vidēbat . . . intellegēbat*: 'the fact that he saw . . . that he knew' etc. The clauses are in apposition with *multae res* in l. 6.

37 11 quod: rel. pronoun; the antecedent is the preceding indir. disc. *Hæduōs . . . tenērī, . . . obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanōs*, describing the plight of the Hædui and Sequani.—in *tantō . . . Rōmānī*: 'in view of the great power of the Roman people.'

37 15 periculōsum: 'he saw that it was dangerous to the Roman people for the Germans, little by little, to get in the way of crossing the Rhine' etc. *Germānōs* is the subj. of *cōsuēscere*, and *multitudinem* is subj. of *venīre*. These two clauses are the subjs. of *periculōsum (esse)*. The whole clause is the obj. of *vidēbat* (§§ 217. b, 203).—*sibi . . . temperātūrōs . . . quīn . . . exīrent*: 'would refrain (check themselves) from going forth.' For *sibi* see § 83; for *exīrent*, see § 185.

37 17 ut . . . fēcissent: 'as the Cimbri and Teutons had done before.' The form in the dir. disc. would be *fēcērunt* (§ 208).

37 19 quibus rēbus: see §§ 143, 84.—*occurrēdum (esse)*: impers. Were the agent expressed, it would be *sibi*. Transl. freely, 'possibilities which he thought must be met at once.' Observe again that a verb which governs the dative (like *occurrēdum*) cannot be used in the pass. with a personal subj.

37 22 CHAP. 34. ut . . . mitteret: a clause of purpose, subj. of *placuit* (§ 183, fourth example).

37 28 quī . . . postulārent: rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).—*mediū utriusque*: 'between the two.'

37 24 conloquīō: 'for a conference.'—*velle*: depends on the verb of saying implied in *postulārent*.—*rē publicā*: here 'matters of public interest' rather than 'the state.'

37 26 SI . . . esset: a condition contrary to fact (§ 199. I. b).

38 1 si quid ille mē vult: *vult* takes here two objs. like verbs in § 93. Transl., 'if he wants anything of me.'

38 7 negōtī: part. gen. with *quid*.—*sit*: indir. question.

38 9 CHAP. 35. mandātis: denoting a stern command. Cæsar now lays aside the language of diplomacy and presents his ultimatum.

38 10 adfectus: a participle denoting concession (§ 220. d).

38 12 ut . . . gravētur . . . putet: a result clause explaining *hanc grātiām* (§ 187. I).

38 15 nē quam: 'that not any.'

38 17 quōs: the antecedent is *eōs* understood, the obj. of *reddere* (§ 142). The subjs. in this sentence (except *liceat*) are introduced by *nē*, or *ut* implied, and are subst. clauses of purpose in apposition with *hæc*.—*illi . . . illis*: the Sequani.

38 23 quod . . . posset: 'so far as he could do it to the advantage of the republic.'—*commodō*: abl. of accordance (§ 111).

38 26 CHAP. 36. ut . . . imperent: a subst. clause in apposition with *iūs*.

The antecedent of *quī* is *ei* understood, the subj. of *imperant*. The dative *ei* is governed by *imperant* (§ 83).

38 27 *vicerint*: see § 214.—*quem ad modum*: 'in what manner.'

38 28 *victis*: dative with *imperāre* (§ 83); the participle is used as a noun.
—*ad*: 'according to.'

39 4 *mihi*: see § 90.

39 6 *quī . . . faciat*: a descriptive clause denoting cause (§ 190).

40 1 *sī . . . manēbunt*: 'if they will abide by the condition.'

40 3 *longē . . . aberit*: i.e. the fact that the Roman people call them brothers will do them little good (lit. 'will be far from them').

40 4 *Quod*: 'as to the fact that' (§ 182. a).

40 6 *congregiātur*: subjv. in a command (§ 172. b).—*quid . . . possint*: 'what they can do.'

40 10 CHAP. 37. *questum*: supine denoting purpose (§ 226. a).

40 11 *quod . . . populārentur*: a reason given on another's authority, which takes the subjv. on the principle of implied indir. disc.; 'because (as they said) the Harudes were devastating their fields' (§§ 188. b, 208. b).

40 12 *nē obsidibus quidem*: cf. note on p. 22, l. 18.

40 13 *Trēverī*: sc. *questum veniēbant*.

40 16 *commōtus*: a participle denoting cause (§ 220. b).

40 17 *mātūrāndum sibi (esse)*: impers. with dative of apparent agent; transl., 'that he should have to hasten' (§ 222. II. note).

40 19 *resistī*: impers.; transl., 'resistance could not be so easily made' (§ 83. a).—*celerrimē*: for the form see comparison of *ācritēr* (§ 17).

40 20 *contendit*: the general direction is north. Just where Ariovistus was is uncertain.

40 21 CHAP. 38. *trīduī*: gen. of measure (§ 77. b).—*viam*: accusative of kindred meaning (§ 98).

40 22 *occupāndum*: gerundive agreeing with *Vesontionem*. Distinguish from the gerund (§§ 224. b, 225. a).

40 23 *quod*: the antecedent is *Vesontionem*, but the agreement is with *oppidum* (§ 138).

40 24 *Id*: refers to *ad occupāndum Vesontionem*.

40 25 *praecavēndum (esse)*: impers.; the subj. is *nē accideret*, a subst. clause of purpose (§ 183, fourth example).

40 26 *ūsui*: dative of purpose or end (§ 89). Another dative might be looked for with this one. See § 85.

40 27 *idemque*: sc. *oppidum*.—*ut . . . facultātem*: 'that it afforded a great opportunity for protracting a war'; a clause of result.

42 2 *ut*: 'as if.'

42 4 *pedum*: pred. gen. after *est* (§ 77. a and b). For the construction

with *amplius* see § 105. note 2. The present site corresponds almost exactly to Cæsar's description. See illustration, p. 41. — *quā*: 'where.'

42 5 *altitudīne*: abl. of description (§ 116). — *rādīcēs*: obj., and *rīpae* subj., of *contingant*.

42 6 *Hunc (montem) . . . efficit*: 'this an encompassing wall makes into a fortress.'

42 7 *nocturnis . . . itineribus*: transl., 'marches by night and by day.'

42 11 *CHAP. 39. morātur*: see § 198. I. Cf. p. 32, l. 1.

42 12 *vōcibus*: 'reports' or 'talk.' — *magnitūdine . . . virtūte . . . exercitātiōne*: abls. of description (§ 116); cf. *altitudīne*, l. 5.

42 15 *congressōs*: 'having met them.'

42 17 *nōn mediocriter*: 'in no slight degree,' 'greatly.'

42 19 *Hic*: i.e. *timor*. — *ortus est ā*: 'began with' (lit. 'rose from'). — *reliquis*: young Romans of noble families often accompanied commanders in their campaigns for the sake of military experience. Cæsar probably alludes to these. See *Introd. III. 6. d.*

42 20 *urbe*: i.e. Rome. — *nōn magnum*: 'very little.'

42 21 *alius aliā causā inlātā*: 'on various pretexts' (lit. 'another, another pretext having been alleged'). Notice that in Latin this double statement is condensed, only the second half being fully expressed. This is the regular idiom when *alius* is repeated in another case, and should be remembered (§ 144. d. 1).

42 22 *quam . . . diceret*: see § 177.

42 25 *vultum fingere*: freely, 'to put on a brave face.'

42 28 *testāmenta obsignābantur*: the seal was necessary to the validity of the will. The making of the wills shows that they had given up hope of ever returning home.

43 1 *magnum . . . ūsum*: 'long experience in the service.'

43 3 *Quī*: the antecedent is *ei* understood, the subj. of *dūcēbant*.

43 6 *rem frūmentāriam*: lit. the obj. of *timēre*, 'they feared the supply of grain, that it might not' etc.; transl. it as if it were the subj. of *posset*, 'they feared that the supply of grain might not' etc. This figure of speech, which consists in placing a word *before* the clause in which a statement is made regarding it, is called "prolepsis." Compare

"Who knows the ways of the world,
How God will bring them about."

Observe the force of *ut* in *ut . . . posset* depending on *timēre* (§ 184).

43 8 *castra movērī ac signa ferri*: 'to break camp and advance.' These are the regular military expressions. Note the idiom *signa ferri*, 'advance.'

43 9 audientēs: used in the sense of 'obey' (i.e. 'hearken to'), and so followed by the dative (§ 83).

43 11 CHAP. 40. adhibitīs centuriōnibus: the centurions were not ordinarily invited into the councils of war; hence this special assertion. In addition to all the other grave dangers and difficulties of the war with the powerful German king, Cæsar now suddenly finds himself face to face with a peril still more serious: that of a possible mutiny of his own army. The campaign was a hazardous undertaking, even with his men eager and willing to fight. With his men reluctant, and some of them even rebellious, Cæsar stands for the moment alone, and his indomitable courage is nowhere better shown. He meets the emergency with the same decision and energy that he displays on the battle field, and manifests, in addition to supreme courage, marvelous diplomacy and knowledge of human nature. This speech, one of the most remarkable of antiquity, stamps Cæsar as a consummate orator as well as an able general. Skillfully glossing over the difficulties of the undertaking, masterfully meeting every one of the alleged causes for hesitation, now by reason, now by appeal, he contrives to inspire his men with the invincible spirit of Rome that conquered the world.

43 12 quod . . . putārent: a reason given on another's authority (§ 188. *b*). Here Cæsar the writer gives the reason of Cæsar the soldier, as if he were another person.

43 13 quaerendum . . . cōgitandum: sc. *esse*; an imper. construction (§§ 224. *a*, 66).

43 15 Cūr . . . quisquam . . . iūdicet: a rhetorical question; 'why should any one consider?' The question implies the answer that no one should consider (§ 172. *d*. note).

43 16 Mihi . . . persuādētur: 'I am convinced' (§ 83. *a*).

43 20 quid . . . vereāminī: cf. note on l. 15.

43 22 periculum: from the root of the verb *ex-perior*, 'try'; the word which came to mean 'danger' originally meant 'trial,' and this is the meaning here. — **Cimbris et Teutonis**: these were a great horde of barbarians that about forty years before had crossed the Rhine, swept through Gaul, and were about to invade Italy. Their seemingly irresistible march was checked by the Romans under Marius, and they were practically destroyed.

43 24 meritis (esse) vidēbātur: 'was seen to have deserved.'

43 25 servīlī tumultū: 'in the uprising of the slaves,' i.e. the insurrection of slaves and gladiators under Spartacus, 73-71 B.C. These consisted, at least in part, of Germans captured by Marius. The abl. denotes time. — **quōs**: this refers to *servōs* as antecedent implied in the adjective *servīlī*. — **aliquid**: adverbial accusative (§ 99); transl., 'somewhat.'

43 27 bonī: see § 76. *a*.

44 2 suis : 'their own' (of the Helvetii). — illōrum : 'of the Germans.'

44 4 Si quōs : 'if any.' — adversum proelium : the defeat at Magetobriga; see p. 35, l. 23.

44 6 Ariovistum : subj. of *vixisse* in indir. disc.

44 7 neque sui potestatem fecisset : 'and had given them no chance at him.'

44 9 ratiōne . . . cōsiliō . . . virtūte : see § 106.

44 10 Cui ratiōnī . . . hāc : this expression is equivalent to *hāc ratiōnē cui*; the antecedent is attracted into the rel. clause (§ 140); 'by this stratagem, for which there was opportunity against unskilled barbarians, not even Ariovistus himself hopes that our army can be caught.'

44 12 Quī : the antecedent is *eī* understood, the subj. of *faciunt*.

44 15 mihi . . . cūrae : 'I will take care of these things' (§ 89); cf. p. 37, l. 2.

44 18 Quod etc. : 'as to its being said that the soldiers will not obey the commands or advance' (§ 182. a).

44 19 quibuscumque etc. : lit. 'to whomsoever the army has not listened to the word, to these fortune has been lacking' etc.; *dictō* depends upon *audiēns*, and the two words combined, *dictō audiēns*, are treated as a single expression equivalent to a verb of obeying, governing the dative *quibuscumque*, whose antecedent is *eīs* understood, governed by *dēfuisse*.

44 22 innocentia : this disproves *avaritiam* as *fēlicitās* does *male rē gestā*. Observe the reversed order (chiasmus) of the words, a figure common in verse and oratory :

<i>male rē gestā</i>	<i>avaritiam</i>
<i>innocentia</i>	<i>fēlicitās</i>

Compare in English :

"So like they were, no mortal
Might one from other know;
White as snow their armor was,
Their steeds were white as snow."

vītā : see § 119. note.

44 24 quod . . . cōnlātūrus fui : sc. *id* as the antecedent of *quod* and the obj. of *repraesentābō*.

44 51 decimā legiōne : the legion especially distinguished for discipline and courage. Cf. note on p. 16, l. 6.

44 52 praetōria cohors : 'bodyguard,' made up of the bravest men.

44 57 CHAP. 41. innāta est : sing. verb agreeing with the nearest subj. (§ 67).

44 58 optimum iūdicium fecisset : 'had expressed the very highest opinion'; a reason stated on another's authority (§ 188. b).

44 10 cum tribūnis . . . ēgerunt etc. : 'arranged with the tribunes to apologize' (*satisfacerent*).

45 12 *neque dē summā belli* etc.: 'nor supposed that the judgment concerning the policy of the campaign was theirs (*suum*), but their general's.'

45 18 *suum . . . imperātōris*: preds. after *esse* (§ 73. a).

46 1 *itinere exquisitō . . . ut . . . dūceret*: lit. 'a route having been sought out that led' etc.; lit. 'such that it led,' rather an unusual result clause. The route lay in a northeasterly direction, and entered the valley of the Rhine near the southern part of the Vosges Mountains. See the campaign map, p. 39.

46 2 *eī*: 'in him'; dative after *fidem habēbat*, which is equivalent to a verb of trusting (§ 83).

46 3 *mīlium*: (sc. *passuum*) gen. of measure modifying *circuitū* (§ 77. b). Transl., 'by a circuit of more than fifty miles through an open country.'

46 5 *cum . . . intermitteret*: a causal clause (§ 189).

46 9 CHAP. 42. *Quod*: a rel. preceding its antecedent, *id.* — *per sē*: 'so far as he was concerned.'

46 10 *accessisset*: the subj. is *Cæsar*.

46 12 *ad sēnitātem reverti*: 'was beginning to return to his senses.'

46 18 *petentī*: 'when he (i.e. *Cæsar*) asked it.' — *ultrō pollicērētur*: 'he now promised of his own accord.' — *magnamque in spem veniēbat*: 'he began to have great hopes.'

46 15 *fore*: the lack of a fut. participle of the verb *dēsistere* is supplied by the periphrasis *fore uti . . . dēsisteret*, lit. 'that it would be that' etc.

46 16 *conloquiō*: see § 89.

46 18 *nē . . . addūceret*: a subst. clause used as obj. (§ 183). It would be a prohibition in dir. disc. (§ 172. c).

46 20 *uterque . . . venīret*: in the dir. disc. *veniat* (§ 172. b). — *aliā ratiōne*: 'on any other terms' (§ 111).

46 23 *Gallōrum equitātui*: he had no other; see Introd. III. 2. They numbered about 4000.

46 24 *commodissimum*: pred. adjective after *esse*, whose subj. is the inf. clause *eō . . . impōnere* (§ 216). — *omnibus equis . . . detrāctis*: see § 117. b. — *Gallis equitibus*: dative of separation (§ 86).

46 25 *eō*: adv.; 'on them,' i.e. the horses.

47 2 *sī quid* etc.: 'if there should be any need of active service'; *quid* is adverbial accusative (§ 99). — *factō*: see § 107. c.

47 3 *nōn inridiculē*: 'not without wit.' — *ex militibus*: instead of *militum* (§ 76, exception).

47 4 *pollicitum*: sc. *esse*.

47 6 *ad equum rescribere*: 'he was making knights of them.' The wit (cf. *nōn inridiculē*) in this expression consists in the fact that it has two meanings: (1) 'to enroll in the cavalry,' and (2) 'to enroll among the *equitēs*'

(knights), a privileged and wealthy class in Roman society. In other words, it is a pun. It is not often that Cæsar deviates from his straightforward narrative for an anecdote of any kind, and the fact that he does so here shows his keen sense of humor.

47 8 CHAP. 43. *spatiō*: see § 114.

47 10 *equis*: 'on horseback'; abl. of means.

47 13 *praeter se dēnōs*: 'besides themselves ten each'; *dēnōs* is a distributive numeral.

47 17 *amicus*: sc. *appellātus esset* (§ 94. note). — *mūnera* . . . *missa* (essent): the gifts are not mentioned but they may have included embroidered robes and jewelry.

47 18 *et . . . et*: 'both . . . and.'

47 22 *Docēbat*: 'he showed'; followed by a series of indir. questions (§ 201) introduced by *quam*, 'how'; *quamque*, 'and how' (l. 22); *quotiens quamque*, 'how often and how'; *ut*, 'how' (l. 24).

47 23 *ipsis cum Haeduis intercēderent*: 'existed between the Romans (*ipsi*) and the Haedui' (lit. 'to themselves with the Haedui').

47 26 *prius . . . quam . . . adpetissent*: see §§ 197. a, 208.

47 27 *ut . . . vellet*: a result clause explaining *hanc cōsuetūdinem* (§ 187, third example).

47 28 *sui nihil*: 'nothing of their own' (dignity etc.); *sui* is used substantively and is a part. gen. (§ 76. a).

47 29 *quod*: 'what they had brought to the alliance,' the rel. preceding its antecedent, *id* (§ 139).

47 30 *quis . . . posset*: the dir. form of this rhetorical question (§ 171) was *quis . . . possit*? For the mood see § 172. d and note. Transl., 'who could suffer this to be taken from them?' The thought is that the Romans would allow no one to deprive their allies of the prestige they had enjoyed before they became Rome's allies. Note that *eīs* is a dative (§ 86).

48 2 *nē . . . inferret . . . redderet . . . nē . . . pateretur*: these clauses are in apposition with *eadem*.

48 5 CHAP. 44. *pauca*: in contrast with *multa* in the next line.

48 8 *magnā spē magnisque praemiis*: transl. as if it were *magnā spē magnōrum praemiōrum*.

48 12 *ad mē oppugnandum*: a gerundive expressing purpose (§ 225. a).

48 16 *pāce*: see § 107. a.

48 19 *oportet*: impers.; the grammatical subj. is *amicitiā . . . esse* (§ 216. b).

48 23 *Quod . . . trādūcō*: 'as to the fact that' etc. (§ 182. a).

48 24 *Galliae impugnandae*: see § 225. b. For *mē mūniendū* see § 224. c.

48 25 *nisi rogātus*: 'except upon invitation' (lit. 'having been asked').

48 28 *finibus*: see § 101.

48 29 *Quid tibi vis*: lit. 'what do you wish for yourself?' i.e. 'what do you mean?' (§ 85).

48 30 *haec . . . Gallia*: 'this part of Gaul.'—*Ut . . . sic*: 'as . . . so.' *Oportet* is impers. Freely, 'as I ought not to be given a free hand if . . . so.'

49 4 *rērum*: see § 80.

49 5 *bellō . . . proximō*: four years before.

49 7 *habuērunt*: for indic. see § 208. a. So *habēs*, l. 10.

49 9 *Dēbeō suspicārī* etc.: 'I have grounds for suspecting that the army which you, under the pretense of friendship, have in Gaul, you are keeping for the purpose of crushing me.'

49 10 *mei opprimendī*: see § 224. c, and cf. p. 48, l. 24.

49 12 *Quod*: 'but'; so in l. 15.—*nōbilibus . . . grātum*: Cæsar, as the head of the popular party at Rome, was especially obnoxious to the senate and the aristocracy. Many would have rejoiced to hear that disaster had befallen him, and it is quite possible that suggestions of this sort had come to Ariovistus from Rome.

49 14 *compertum habeo*: almost the same in force as *comperi* (§ 156. b. note); cf. p. 24, l. 5.

49 15 *tuā morte*: see § 106.

49 18 *sine ullō tuō labōre*: 'without any toil on your part.'

49 19 *CHAP. 45. in eam sententiam . . . quā rē*: 'to this effect (to show) why.'—*quā rē . . . posset*: an indir. question. Transl. freely, 'why he could not recede from his position.'

49 24 *quibus*: with *ignōvit* (from *ignōscō*); see § 83.

49 26 *antiquissimum quodque tempus*: see note on p. 35, l. 24.

49 29 *suīs*: 'its own,' referring to Gaul.—*voluerit*: subjv. in a descriptive clause denoting cause (§ 190). Transl., 'which, though conquered in war, the senate has permitted to enjoy its own laws.'

50 1 *CHAP. 46. geruntur*: see § 198. I.

50 2 *tumulum*: governed by *propius*, which sometimes has the force of a preposition.

50 5 *nē . . . reicerent*: dir. obj. of *imperāvit*; the indir. obj. is *suīs*.

50 7 *committendum nōn putābat ut . . . dici posset*: 'he thought that no ground should be given for saying'; the subj. of *committendum* is the *ut* clause (§ 187. I).

50 8 *per fidem*: 'under pretense of (through) good faith.'

50 10 *omni Galliā*: abl. of separation with *interdixisset*. *Rōmānīs* is the indir. obj.

50 11 *interdixisset*: subjv. in an indir. question together with *fēcissent* and *dirēmisset*: 'when it was reported what insolence Ariovistus had displayed (lit.

'having employed what insolence'), how he had ordered the Romans out of all Gaul, how his cavalry had made an attack on our men, and how that fact had put an end to the interview.' The indir. questions are subjs. of *ēdātum est*.

50 13 *pugnandī*: gerund; obj. gen. (§ 75. b).

50 15 CHAP. 47. *coeptae*: this verb is regularly pass. in form when used with a pass. inf.

50 16 *utī . . . cōstitueret*: following *velle*, the idea of asking being implied (§ 183); *mitteret* is in the same construction.

50 17 *suis*: refers to Cæsar, *sē* (l. 18) to Ariovistus.

50 18 *causa vīsa nōn est*: 'there did not seem to be a good reason.'

50 19 *et eō magis, quod*: 'and all the more on this account, that' etc.; cf. p. 12, l. 16 and note.—*retinērī . . . quīn*: 'be kept from' (§ 185).

50 21 *missūrum . . . obiectūrum*: sc. *esse*.

50 23 *Commodissimum*: pred. adjective with *mittere* (p. 51, l. 2) as subj. (§ 216. a).

50 24 *virtūte et hūmānitāte*: not 'virtue and humanity'; it is rarely safe to transl. a Latin word by the English word derived from it. Transl., 'worth and culture.'

50 25 *cīvitāte*: abl. of means.

50 26 *quā multā . . . ūtēbātur*: 'which Ariovistus spoke freely' (§ 107. a).

51 1 *quod in eō*: 'because in his case.'

51 2 *peccandī . . . causa*: 'grounds for committing an offense.'

51 3 *ūtēbātur*: 'enjoyed.' Cf. *ūtēbātur* in l. 1. Observe how the verb *utor* demands different translations according to the context. In every instance, however, the idea of 'use' remains fundamental.

51 7 *Cōnantēs dicere prohibuit*: 'as they were trying to speak he shut them off.'

51 13 CHAP. 48. *supportārētur*: subjv. by attraction (§ 214). So also *vellet* (l. 16).

51 15 *instrūctam habuit*: 'kept his line drawn up'; cf. *comptertum habeo*, p. 49, l. 14.

51 18 *castris*: the "place where" may be expressed without a preposition when the idea of means is prominent.

51 19 *hoc*: explained by the following description.

51 21 *singulī (equitēs) singulōs (peditēs)*: i.e. one apiece.

51 23 *sī quid erat dūrius*: 'if there was unusual trouble' (lit. 'if there was anything too hard'); see § 122.

51 25 *sī quō . . . prōdeundum*: 'if there was need of advancing to any place.'

51 26 *ut . . . adaequārent*: 'that by holding on to (lit. 'supported by') the horses' manes they kept up with them in speed.'—*iubīs*: abl. of means.

52 3 CHAP. 49. *castris*: dative with an adjective (§ 90). By this move Cæsar has two camps, the first and larger one about two miles east of the Germans, and the second, a smaller one, rather more than half a mile to the south of them. See map, p. 56.

52 4 *aciē triplici*: see Introd. III. 12.

52 8 *expedita*: agreeing with *mīlia* in form, but with *hominum* in sense.

52 9 *terrērent*: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).

53 1 CHAP. 50. *institūtō suō*: abl. of accordance (§ 111).

53 13 *sortibus*: 'lots,' of leaves or twigs marked with certain signs and drawn by chance. — *vāticinātiōnibus*: perhaps omens interpreted from the noise of waters, river eddies, etc., or possibly prophecies arising from inner emotions. — *utrum . . . necne*: see § 170. b. 2.

53 14 *eās*: i.e. *mātrēs familiæ*. — *Nōn esse fās*: 'it was not fated.'

53 15 *novam lūnam*: a common superstition of many people.

53 18 CHAP. 51. *quod satis esse visum est*: sc. *id*, obj. of *reliquit* and antecedent of *quod*. — *ālārīōs*: the auxiliaries, as distinguished from the legionary (Roman) troops. They were usually stationed on the wings of the line of battle; hence their name, *ālārīi*, from *āla*, 'wing.'

53 19 *prō*: 'in front of.' Cf. this meaning with the one in l. 20.

53 20 *prō hostium numerō*: 'in comparison with the number of the enemy.'

53 21 *ad speciem*: 'for a show,' i.e. as if the two legions (p. 52, l. 12) were still there.

53 22 *necessariō*: the Germans had to come out and fight because their camp was not fortified strongly enough to withstand Cæsar's assault.

53 24 *intervallis*: see § 112.

53 27 *Eō*: 'thereon,' i.e. on the carts and wagons.

53 28 *proficiscentēs*: '(the men) as they advanced' (§ 167); obj. of *implorābant*.

54 1 CHAP. 52. *singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs*: 'a *lēgātus* in command of each legion'; however, having at this time only five *lēgātī* he appointed his quartermaster (*quaestōrem*) over one of the six legions. Read the description of a battle in the Introd. III. 12, and look at the illustration on p. 31 and the one facing p. 86.

54 3 *eam partem*: of course, the left wing of the enemy.

54 6 *pila . . . coniciendī*: the gerund with dir. obj. (§ 223. note). The gerundive construction might have been used (§ 224. b).

54 9 *impetūs*: accusative plur., fourth declension.

54 10 *insillirent . . . revellerent . . . vulnerārent*: subjvs. in clauses of description. The meaning is that they leaped upon the roof formed by the shields, pulled them up, and so thrust their swords down from above (*dēsuper*).

54 11 *Cum*: 'although.'

54 16 *tertiā aciem*: this line had been kept as a reserve for just such emergencies.

54 18 CHAP. 53. *prius . . . quam . . . pervēnerunt*: see § 197. a.

54 22 *eā*: abl. of means. It refers to *ndviculam*, obj. of *nactus* (from *nanciscor*).

54 23 *reliquos omnēs*: said to have been 80,000 in number.

54 24 *Duae . . . uxōrēs*: among the Germans only chiefs had more than one wife, and this was for the sake of honor and alliances. — *nātiōne*: see § 115.

54 25 *dūxerat*: 'had brought.' In the next line *dūxerat* means 'had married.'

55 1 *Procillus*: see p. 50, l. 23. — *trīnis*: used instead of *tribus*. *Catēnae* is usually found in the plur., and with such nouns distributive numeral adjectives are generally used instead of cardinals.

55 3 *Quae . . . rēs*: i.e. the rescue of Procillus. Cæsar's joy in the safety of his young friend offers a pleasing contrast to his usual sternness. For the rel. see § 143.

56 4 *neque . . . dēminuerat*: 'nor had fortune by his loss detracted aught from an occasion of such joy and congratulation.'

56 5 *ter*: it was the regular custom of the Germans to consult the lots three times.

56 6 *cōsultum (esse)*: impers.

56 11 CHAP. 54. *Rhēnum*: *propē*, *propior*, and *proximus* sometimes govern the accusative. Cf. p. 50, l. 2 and note.

56 13 *mātūrius*: 'earlier.' This was in September.

56 16 *conventūs*: the governor of a province not only commanded the army, but administered justice as well.

BOOK II

Cæsar by his first campaign (58 B.C.) had made himself master of central Gaul, and had made his conquest sure by establishing the winter quarters of his legions among the Sequani. During the winter, while he was in Cisalpine Gaul, the Belgian Gauls, fearing that they should be the next victims of Roman aggression, united in a conspiracy to resist any further advance of Roman arms. This was reported to Cæsar, who, with characteristic energy, set out for the country of the Belgæ as early in the spring (57 B.C.) as there was pasture enough to support his baggage animals.

The Belgian tribes, inhabiting what is now northeastern France, Belgium, and part of the Netherlands, were remote from any country hitherto occupied by the Romans. They lived amidst forests and swamps hard to penetrate, and had a fierce and resolute spirit of independence. In his campaign

against these tribes, especially the Nervii, Cæsar met the most formidable and desperate resistance yet encountered.

57 1 CHAP. 1. *Cum esset* etc.: for the subjv. see § 194. *b.*; *esset* is emphatic by its position. The clause is closely connected with the last sentence of the first book: *in citeriorem Galliam . . . profectus est. Cum esset Cæsar in citeriore Galliâ* etc. The effect may be brought out in translation by the use of a noun: 'during Cæsar's stay in Cisalpine Gaul.'

57 2 *dēmōnstrāvimus . . . dixerāmus*: In referring to himself as the writer Cæsar, like many modern writers, regularly uses the plur.—*adferēbantur*: the past descr. shows repeated action; 'kept coming in.' The force of the tense is aided by *crēbrī*.

57 4 *quam*: agrees with *partem*, though its real antecedent is *Belgæ* (§ 138). It is the subj. of *esse*.

57 5 *inter sē*: 'to one another.'

57 6 *hās esse causās*: 'that the following were the reasons'; explained by the *quod* clauses.—*quod verērentur . . . sollicitārentur*: subord. clauses in indir. disc. (§ 208).—*nē . . . addūcerētur*: subst. clause, obj. of *verērentur* (§ 184).

57 7 *omni pācātā Galliā*: 'after the subjugation of all Gaul'; abl. abs. (§ 117. *b.*). *Galliā* refers to central (or Celtic) Gaul.

57 8 *ab nōn nullis Gallis*: abl. of agent (§ 104).

57 9 *ut . . . ita*: 'just as . . . so,' correlatives.—*Germanōs . . . versāri*: obj. of *nōluerant*.

57 10 *hiemāre . . . inveterāscere*: these inf. with their subj. *exercitum* are in indir. disc. after the idea of thought in *molestē ferēbant*, 'they took it hard.'

57 11 *mōbilitāte*: abl. of cause (§ 109).

57 12 *novis imperiis studēbant*: 'were eager for a change of government' (lit. 'new ruling powers'); for the dative see § 83.—*ab nōn nullis . . . quod*: 'by some also (sc. *sollicitābantur*) they were incited because.'

57 13 *ad . . . facultātēs*: 'the means for hiring soldiers.'—*condūcendōs*: see § 225. *a.*

57 15 *rem*: i. e. royal power.—*imperio nostrō*: 'under our dominion'; abl. of attendant circumstance (§ 112).—*cōnsequi*: complementary inf. (§ 217. *c.*). In the passage above, beginning with *Coniūrandī*, note that the subord. verbs in indir. disc., that is, those that are a part of the report of Labienus, are in the subjv. mood (§ 208). Those, on the other hand, that are in the ind. (*nōluerant*, *ferēbant*, *studēbant*, *habēbant*, *occupābantur*, *poterant*) are not quoted from the report of Labienus, but state facts on Cæsar's authority (§ 208. *a.*).

57 16 CHAP. 2. *nūntiis*: abl. of cause.—*duās legiōnēs*: he had already six legions, numbered VII–XII, so that the addition of these two new ones, numbered XIII and XIV, made eight legions (about 30,000 men) for the Belgic campaign.

57 17 *initā aestāte*: abl. abs. expressing time when (§ 117. *b*).

57 18 *qui dēdūceret*: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).

58 1 *cum primum*: i.e. when grass and young grain began to be abundant, so that the cavalry horses and baggage animals could subsist.

58 2 *Dat negotium Senonibus*: 'he enjoins on the Senones' (lit. 'he gives business to the Senones').

58 3 *uti . . . cognōscant . . . faciant*: a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with *negotium* (§ 183, third example).—*gerantur*: subjv. by attraction, depending on *cognōscant* (§ 214).

58 4 *sē*: an indir. reflex., referring to Cæsar (§ 133).—*cōstanter*: 'consistently,' i.e. without variation.

58 5 *manūs*: accusative plur.; 'small bands,' or 'companies.'

58 6 *dubitandum (esse)*: impers. inf. in indir. disc. after *existimavit*; 'he thought that he ought not to hesitate.'—*quīn* . . . *proficiſcerētur*: 'to set out' (§ 186); *quīn* can follow only a verb with a negative.

58 7 *diēbus*: abl. of time within which (§ 119).

58 9 CHAP. 3. *Eō*: adv.—*omnium opiniōne*: 'than any one expected' (lit. 'than the opinion of all'); *opiniōne* is used after the comparative without *quam* (§ 105).

58 10 *Rēmī*: these were friendly to the Romans.—*Galliæ*: dative (§ 90).—*ex Belgis*: 'of the Belgæ'; used instead of the part. gen.

58 11 *lēgātōs*: 'as ambassadors.' What other meaning does *lēgātus* have?

58 12 *quī dicerent*: see § 175.—*Nōs . . . in fidem . . . permittimus*: 'put ourselves under the protection (good faith)' etc.

58 15 *parātī*: a participle used as an adjective. Depending on it are the complementary infinitives *dare*, *facere*, *recipere*, and *iuvare* (§ 217. *c*).

58 16 *oppidīs*: properly an abl. of means, but to be translated as if it were abl. of place, 'in our towns.'

58 18 *cis Rhēnum*: i.e. the west (or Gallic) side.

58 19 *tantus . . . ut . . . potuerimus*: 'so great is the frenzy of them all that we have not been able to restrain even the Suessiones' etc.; a clause of result with the antecedent word *tantus* (§ 179. note).

58 22 *quīn . . . cōsentirent*: 'from leaguings with'; subjv. clause after a *negatived* word of hindering (§ 185). Note that the perfect subjv. (*potuerimus*) is followed by a secondary tense.

58 24 CHAP. 4. *quæ . . . quantæque . . . essent*: indir. question (§ 201).

58 25 *quid . . . possent*: 'what strength they had in war'; *quid* is an adverbial accusative (§§ 98 and 99).

58 26 *Plērīque*: 'the most of.'—*ā Germānis*: abl. of origin with a preposition (§ 102).—*Rhēnum*: depending on *trāns* in *trā(ns)ductī* (§ 95. note).

58 28 *sōlique*: 'and . . . the only ones.'

59 1 *quī . . . prohibuerint*: a clause of description (§ 177. a). — *memoriā*: abl. of time within which (§ 119).

59 3 *quā ex rē fit utī . . . sūmant*: 'from this fact it comes about that they assume' etc. The result clause *utī . . . sūmant* is the subj. of *fit* (§ 187. II). — *memoriā*: abl. of cause (§ 109).

59 5 *omnia habēmus explorāta*: 'have found out and possess all (the facts) about' (*dē*) etc. The expression *habēmus explorāta* differs only slightly from *explorāvimus* (§ 156. b. note, and cf. *compertum habēō*, p. 49, l. 14).

59 6 *propinquitātibus*: 'ties of blood.' — *adfinitātibus*: 'alliances by marriage.'

59 9 *virtūte*: abl. of respect (§ 115).

59 10 *armāta milia centum*: equivalent to *armātōrum hominum milia centum*; grammatically, *armāta* agrees with *milia*. Likewise *ēlecta* in the next line agrees grammatically with *milia*, but is translated 'picked men.'

59 11 *sibi*: dative of reference (§ 85).

59 14 *cum . . . tum*: 'not only . . . but.'

59 17 *summa*: 'the chief command.' — *voluntāte*: see § 111.

59 18 *numerō*: see § 115.

59 19 *ferī*: pred. adjective after *habentur*, which is a copulative verb (§§ 48. II. b, 94. note). Transl. 'who are regarded as particularly savage.' — *inter ipsōs*: 'among them,' i.e. the Belgæ.

59 23 *Condruēs* etc.: subjs. of *posse*, which depends on *arbitrāmur*.

59 24 *Germānī*: for the case cf. *ferī*, l. 19.

59 26 CHAP. 5. *cohortātus . . . prōsecūtus*: 'after he had encouraged . . . and addressed them' etc.

59 27 *liberōs obsidēs*: 'their children as hostages'; *obsidēs* is an appositive. If faith was broken, the hostages were punished; often they were sold into slavery.

59 28 *Quae omnia*: 'and all this' etc.; for a rel. pronoun beginning a sentence see § 143.

60 1 *quantō opere . . . intersit*: 'how greatly it concerned'; indir. question. The subj. of *intersit* is the inf. clause, *manūs . . . distinerē*. — *rei publicae . . . salutis*: gens. with *intersit* (§ 81. c).

60 2 *nē . . . cōnfigendum sit*: gerundive in a neg. clause of purpose. The verb is impers.; transl. 'that it might not be necessary to contend' etc.

60 3 *Id fieri posse*: 'this (he said) could be done.'

60 4 *intrōdūxerint . . . coeperint*: in a fut. condition. In the dir. disc. these verbs would be in the fut. perf. ind.

60 6 *Postquam . . . posuit*: 'as soon as he was aware that all the forces of the Belgæ had been gathered into one place and were advancing against him, and had learned from the scouts whom he had sent forward, as well as

from the Remi, that they were not now far away, he hastily led his army across the river Aisne, which is on the outer boundaries of the Remi, and there pitched his camp.' For ind. with *postquam* see § 193. — *coāctās*: equivalent to a clause (§ 220. e).

60 8 *flūmen*: depends on *trāns* in *trā(ns)dūcere* (§ 95); cf. *Rhēnum*, p. 58, l. 26, and note.

60 9 *exercitum*: obj. of the transitive verb *trādūcere*. — *trādūcere*: complementary inf. with *mātūrāvit*; 'hastened to lead.'

60 10 *castra*: this camp was about twelve miles northwest of Rheims. Traces of it were discovered in 1862. — *Quae rēs*: 'this movement,' i.e. his having crossed the river and pitched his camp where he did. For *Quae* see § 143. — *et latus . . . mūniēbat et post eum . . . reddēbat, et . . . efficiēbat*: the three *et*'s are translated 'both . . . and . . . and.'

60 11 *post eum quae erant tūta . . . reddēbat*: 'made safe the country in the rear of his position' ('what things were behind him'); *tūta* is a pred. adj.

60 18 *ut . . . possent*: a subst. clause of result, obj. of *efficiēbat* (§ 187. I). The subj. of *possent* is *commēdātūs*, l. 12.

60 14 *efficiēbat*: the subj. is still *Quae rēs*.

60 15 *in alterā parte*: 'on the other side,' i.e. on the left bank of the Aisne, toward the Remi. Cæsar had crossed the stream and encamped on the side toward the Suessiones. See campaign map, facing p. 57, and battle plan, p. 63.

60 16 *pedum duodecim*: gen. of measure with *altitudinem* (§ 77. b).

60 17 *duodēviginti pedum*: i.e. a moat eighteen feet in width.

60 18 *CHAP. 6. nōmine*: abl. of respect (§ 115).

60 19 *mīlia passuum octō*: 'eight miles'; *mīlia* is accusative of extent (§ 96). — *passuum*: part. gen. — *ex itinere*: 'on the march,' i.e. turning aside 'from' their course to attack the town.

60 20 *Aegrē . . . sustentātum est*: 'it was with difficulty that they held out'; the verb is a pass. intransitive and hence impers. (§ 83. a). In English such verbs should be given a personal subject.

60 21 *Gallōrum . . . est haec*: 'the (mode of) attack, (which is) the same for the Gauls and the Belgæ, is as follows' (*haec*).

60 22 *circumiectā multitudīne*: abl. abs. — *moenibus*: dative (§ 84).

60 23 *iaci*: complementary inf. with *coepti sunt*. When are the forms of *coepti* pass.? Cf. p. 50, l. 15 and note. — *dēfēnsōribus*: abl. of separation.

60 24 *testūdīne factā*: 'having made a *testūdō*'; see Introd. III. 13.

60 25 *Quod*: 'this,' i.e. the actions just described. — *multitūdō*: a sing. collective noun may have a plur. verb, as often in English (§ 65. a).

60 26 *cōsistendi*: gen. of the gerund with *potestās* (§ 223. a).

60 27 *nūllī*: dative of possession (§ 88).

60 28 *summā nōbilitāte et grātiā*: '(a man) of the highest' etc. (§ 116).

61 1 *oppidō*: dative with *praeerat* (§ 84).—*ūnus ex eis*: 'one of those'; a construction used in place of the part. gen. (§ 76, exception).

61 2 *Nisi . . . posse*: indir. disc. depending on the idea of reporting contained in *nūntium mittit*. Transl. 'unless reinforcements (he said)' etc.—*sibi*: i.e. *Iccius*.

61 4 CHAP. 7. *Eō*: 'thither,' i.e. to Bibrax.—*isdem ducibus ūsus*: 'employing the same men (as) guides'; for the abl. see § 107. a; *ducibus* is an appositive (§ 58).

61 5 *Numidās et Crētas*: these peoples (especially the Cretans) were famous bowmen. *Crētas* is a Greek form.

61 6 *Baleārēs*: the inhabitants of the Balearic Isles, east of Spain, were famous slingers.—*subsidiō oppidānis*: dative of purpose and of the person affected (§ 89).

61 11 *hostibus*: 'from the enemy'; dative (§ 86).

61 12 *potiundī*: gerundive. Note the less regular spelling *potiundī* instead of *potiendī*.

61 15 *morāti . . . dēpopulāti . . . vicis . . . incēnsis*: the first two past participles are in the nominative case agreeing with the subj., because, being from deponent verbs, they are active in meaning; *incēnsī*, however, could not be used in a similar way, because, coming from a regular verb, it is pass. and means 'having been burned.' To employ this pass. meaning the abl. abs. had to be used.

61 18 *quō*: adv.; 'to which.'

61 20 *omnibus cōpiis*: for the omission of *cum* see § 113. note.—*ā milibus passuum minus duōbus*: 'less than two miles off'; *ā* is used adverbially; *milibus* is abl. of measure of difference (§ 114). *Minus* does not affect the construction (§ 105. note 2). In the next line *milibus* is abl. after the comparative *amplius*. Thus we have here both of the allowable constructions.

61 24 CHAP. 8. *primō*: 'at first.'

61 25 *eximiam opiniōnem virtūtis*: 'their high reputation for valor'; *virtūtis* is an obj. gen. (§ 75. b).—*proeliō*: abl. (§ 101).

61 26 *quid . . . posset . . . quid . . . audērent*: indir. questions; lit. 'what they were able, what they dared.' The thought may be rendered 'the prowess of the enemy and the daring of our soldiers.'—*virtūte*: see § 115.

62 1 *locō . . . opportūnō . . . idōneō*: abl. abs. (§ 117. c).

62 4 *tantum*: correlative with *quantum* 'as much . . . as.' The rel. adjective *quantus* is used as a subst. in the same way as the rel. pronoun *quī*. In this sentence the antecedent *tantum* is accusative of extent; the rel. *quantum* is the dir. obj. of *occupāre*.—*adversus*: 'in front.'—*locī*: part. gen. with *quantum*, but more conveniently translated with *tantum*, 'over as much ground.'

62 5 *ex utrāque parte*: 'on each side.'

62 6 *dēiectūs*: accusative plur. modified by *lateris*; 'lateral slopes' (lit. 'slopes of the side').—*in fronte* etc.: 'falling with an easy slope in front (i.e. to the west), sank gently to the plain.' See battle plan, p. 63.

62 7 *trānsversam fossam*: 'an intrenchment at right angles,' i.e. to the slope of the hill.

62 8 *passuum quadringentōrum*: gen. of measure (§ 77. b).

62 9 *extrēmās*: 'the ends of' (§ 125).—*tormenta*: see Intro. III. 4, with the accompanying illustrations and those on pp. 104 and 120.

62 10 *quod . . . poterant*: a parenthetical clause of explanation and hence not attracted to the subjv. Transl. 'because they were so strong in numbers.'

62 14 *esset*: 'if they were needed anywhere'; a fut. more probable condition (§ 199. II. a) attracted into the subjv. by the influence of *ut . . . possent* (§ 214).

62 16 *cōpiās . . . ēductās instrūxērunt*: transl. 'led out and drew up.'

62 17 CHAP. 9. *Palūs erat*: 'there was a swamp'; i.e. in the low valley of the Miette brook. See battle plan, p. 63.

62 18 *Hanc (paludem) sī nostrī trānsīrent*: '(to see) whether our men would cross this' (§ 201). Note the difference in translation between *sī*, 'if,' introducing a condition, and *sī*, 'whether,' introducing an indir. question.

62 19 *ut . . . adgrederentur*: a purpose clause depending upon *parātī* etc.

62 21 *contendēbātur*: impers. Transl. 'a cavalry engagement was going on.'

62 22 *nostrīs*: dative (§ 90).

62 27 *eō cōnsiliō*: 'with this intent.'—*ut . . . expugnārent . . . interscinderent . . . populārentur . . . prohibērent*: subst. clauses of purpose in apposition with *eō cōnsiliō* (§ 183, third example).—*sī possent . . . sī . . . potuissent*: represent respectively the fut. and fut. perf. ind. of the dir. form. For the change to the subjv. see § 208. b.

63 2 *ad bellum gerendum*: is this gerund or gerundive? why? See § 223. c and note, and § 224. b.

63 5 CHAP. 10. *levis armātūrae*: see § 77, and the ill., p. 65.

63 6 *trādūcit*: with two accusatives (§ 95).

63 9 *cōnantēs*: with *reliquōs*.

63 10 *equitātū*: considered as means, and therefore no preposition.—*circumventōs interfēcērunt*: 'surrounded and killed' (§ 220. e).

63 13 *spem . . . fefellisse*: 'that their expectations had failed' (lit. 'that hope had cheated them').

63 14 *pugnandī causā*: a gerund construction expressing purpose (§ 225. b).

64 1 *ipsōs*: i.e. the Belgæ.

64 2 *cōstituērunt* etc.: 'they decided that it was best for each one to return to his own home, and that they should assemble from all sides to

defend those into whose territory the Romans should first lead their army.' The two objects of *cōstituērunt* are (1) the inf. clause *optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī* (of which *revertī* is the subj. and *optimum esse* the pred.), and (2) the subst. purpose clause (*ut*) . . . *convenīrent*. The omission of *ut* is a reversion to an earlier form of expression. For the case of *domum* see § 97.

64 4 *intrōdūxissent*: past perf. subjv., attracted from the fut. perf. ind. by being made part of the purpose clause (*ut*) . . . *convenīrent* (§ 214).

64 10 *quod* . . . *cognōverant*: ind. because Cæsar gives the reason on his own authority (§ 188. a). The clause is in apposition with *haec ratiō*.

64 18 *His persuādēri* . . . *nōn poterat*: 'these could not be persuaded' (lit. 'it could not be persuaded to these'). Verbs that take the dative in the active are impers. in the pass., the dative being retained (§ 83. a).—*ut* . . . *morārentur neque* . . . *ferrent*: subst. clauses of purpose, grammatical subjs. of *poterat* (§ 183). Cæsar has manifestly succeeded in his plan of separating the forces of the Belgæ.

64 16 CHAP. 11. *secundā vigiliā*: approximately from 9 to 12 P.M.

64 17 *strepitū* . . . *tumultū*: abls. of manner (§ 110).

64 19 *ordine* . . . *imperio*: abls. of attendant circumstance (§ 112).

64 20 *cum* . . . *peteret* . . . *properāret*: descriptive temporal clauses expressing cause (§ 195).

64 22 *ut* . . . *vidērētur*: subst. clause of result, obj. of *fecērunt* (§ 187. I, first example); 'they made their departure seem like a rout.'

64 23 *per*: see § 104. note.—*speculātōrēs*: 'spies.' They obtained information by mingling in disguise with the enemy; while the 'scouts,' *explōrātōrēs*, were squads of cavalry who ranged the country in the vicinity of the army.

64 24 *veritus*: 'fearing.'—*discēderent*: indir. question (§ 201).

64 25 *castris*: 'in camp'; lit. 'by camp,' the Romans regarding the relation as means rather than as place (§ 106).

64 26 *ab explōrātōribus*: abl. of agent (§ 104). Compare this construction with *per speculātōrēs*, l. 23, where Cæsar gave the *speculātōrēs* directions, and used them as a "means to an end," hence the preposition *per* (§ 104. note); here the *explōrātōrēs* are "voluntary agents," hence *ab* with the abl.—*qui* . . . *morārētur*: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).

64 27 *His*: dative with *præfēcit* (§ 84).

65 1 *multa milia*: see § 96.

65 2 *cum*: cf. note on p. 64, l. 20.

65 3 *ab extrēmō agmine*: 'in the rear.'—*quōs*: the antecedent is *cī* understood, subj. of *cōsisterent* and *sustinērent*.

65 4 *prīōrēs*: sc. *et*, 'and those that were in the van.'—*quod* . . . *vidērentur* . . . *continērentur*: the verbs are in the subjv. by attraction (§ 214).

65 8 *sibi*: dative of reference (§ 85).

65 10 *tantam . . . quantum fuit diēi spatium*: 'killed as great a number of them as the time (before night) allowed' (lit. 'as great a number as the space of the day was'). Cf. p. 62, l. 4 and note.

65 15 CHAP. 12. *priusquam . . . recipere*: 'before the enemy should recover themselves' (§ 197. *b*).

65 17 *in finēs Suessōnum . . . dūxit*: i.e. following his plan of subduing the tribes one after the other. "Divide and conquer" was a famous Roman proverb.

65 19 *magnō itinere*: see Introd. III. 11, and the ill., p. 45.

65 20 *ex itinere*: i.e. as soon as he arrived, without waiting to construct the usual works preliminary to storming.

65 22 *esse*: supply *id* (*oppidum*) for subject.

65 23 *paucis dēfendentibus*: abl. abs. denoting concession (§ 117. *d*); 'though there were few defenders.'—*expugnāre*: 'to take' (by storm); cf. *oppugnāre* (l. 20), 'to attack.'

65 24 *vineās*: see Introd. III. 13.—*quaeque*: the antecedent of *quae* is *ea* understood, the obj. of *comparāre*.

65 27 *aggere . . . turribus*: see Introd. III. 13.

66 1 *magnitudine . . . celeritate*: abls. of cause (§ 109), modifiers of *permōi*.

66 4 *ut cōservarentur*: a subst. clause of purpose, obj. of *petentibus* (§ 183).

66 5 CHAP. 13. *obsidibus*: in apposition with *primis* and *filiis*.

66 8 *Qui cum*: 'and when they'; cf. note on p. 32, l. 8.

66 10 *maiōres nātū*: 'the older men' (lit. 'greater in respect to birth'); *nātū* is abl. of respect (§ 115).

66 11 *vōce significāre*: 'show by the tones of their voices'; of course they could not speak Latin.

66 12 *in eius fidem ac potestātem venire*: 'placed themselves under his protection and submitted to his commands' (lit. 'came into his faith and power').

66 13 *cum . . . accessisset . . . pōneret*: 'when he had approached and was pitching his camp.' Mark the difference in tenses; the clauses denote time and circumstance (§ 194. *b*).

66 15 *passis manibus*: 'with hands outstretched' (in supplication); *passis* is from *pandō*.—*suō mōre*: 'according to their custom' (§ 111).

66 22 CHAP. 14. *Qui*: '(those) who,' subj. of *fuere*; *principēs*, pred. noun.

66 23 *quantam . . . intulissent*: indir. question.

66 25 *ut . . . ūtāris*: a subst. clause, obj. of *petunt* (§ 183).

66 26 *Quod*: a connecting rel., referring to the idea in the preceding sentence; cf. *Qui*, l. 8.

66 28 *qua*: indef. pronoun with *bella*. For the form see § 28, footnote 1.

67 1 CHAP. 15. *honōris Diviciāci . . . causā*: 'out-of respect for Diviciacus' (lit. 'for the sake of the honor of Diviciacus').

67 2 *receptūrum*: sc. *esse*. The omission of *esse* is very common.

67 3 *auctōritāte*: abl. of description (§ 116).

67 4 *multitūdine*: abl. of respect (§ 115).

67 10 *mercātoribus*: dative (§ 88). — *vīni*: part. gen. with *nihil*.

67 13 *virtūtis*: see § 77.

67 14 *quī . . . dēdiderint . . . prōiēcērint*: 'for having surrendered' etc.; a descriptive causal clause giving the reason for *increpitant* and *incūsant* (§ 190).

67 17 CHAP. 16. *eōrum*: i.e. of the Nervii. — *trīduum*: '(marched) for three days'; accusative of duration of time (§ 96).

67 18 *nōn amplius milia*: *mīlia* is accusative of extent of space and is not affected by *amplius*; cf. p. 61, l. 20, and see § 105. note 2.

67 22 *utī . . . experirentur*: a subst. clause of purpose (§ 183).

67 24 *quique*: equals *quī plus que*, 'and those who.' The antecedent of *quī* is *eōs* understood, the obj. of *conīcisse*.

67 25 *quō*: rel. adv., equivalent to *in quem* referring to *locum*.

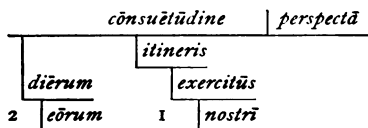
67 26 *esset*: this would be in the subjv. also in the dir. disc., being a descriptive rel. clause (§ 177).

68 2 CHAP. 17. *quī . . . dēligant*: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175). Cf. p. 57, l. 18.

68 3 *ūnā*: an adv. 'along (with him).'

68 4 *quīdam ex hīs*: for abl. with *ex* instead of part. gen. see § 76, exception.

68 5 *eōrum diērum cōsuētūdine . . . perspectā*: the following diagram shows the relation of the words:



Cōsuētūdine is modified by group 1 and the whole phrase is modified by group 2; lit. 'the custom of the march of our army of those days having been observed,' freely 'after they had observed the usual order of march of our army during those days.'

68 6 *inter singulās legiōnēs*: 'between the several legions.' For the usual order of the line of march see Introd. III. 11.

68 8 *negōtī*: part. gen. depending on *quicquam*. Cf. p. 67, l. 10. — *cum . . . vēnisset . . . abessent*: subjvs. in indir. disc., representing the fut. perf. and fut. ind. respectively of the dir.

68 10 *hanc . . . quā*: both refer to *prīma legiō*. — *sarcinīs*: see Introd. III. 9. d, and the illustrations, pp. 45 and 69.

68 11 *ut . . . nōn audērent*: subst. clause of result, subj. of *futūrum (esse)* (§ 187. II); lit. 'it would come to pass that they would not dare.'

68 12 *Adiuvābat*: the subj. is the subst. clause of fact *quod Nervii . . . effēcerant* (§ 182, first example), and the obj. is *cōsiliūm*.

68 13 *Nervii* etc.: this sentence is a good example of the Latin "periodic structure," in which, by holding the leading verb in abeyance, the thought is kept in suspense until the period is completed. *Nervii*, the subject in the nominative case, indicates that those people are the *doers* of an act that remains unexpressed until the reader has been informed of the circumstances attending the act. Holding the subj. *Nervii* in mind, he finds first *when* the act was performed (*antiquitus*); then *why* it was done (*cum . . . possent*); next *for what purpose* (*quō facilius . . . impedirent*); then *by what means* (*teneris arboribus . . . interiectis*); lastly, all is locked together into a completed whole by the *act itself* (*effēcerant ut . . . praebērent*). — *nihil possent*: 'had no strength'; *nihil* is adverbial accusative (§ 99).

68 14 *quicquid possunt* etc.: cf. *nihil* (l. 13), and transl. 'all the strength they have is in infantry.'

68 15 *quō facilius . . . impedirent*: a clause of purpose with a comparative (§ 176).

68 16 *vēnissent*: attracted into the subjv. from the fut. perf. ind. because of its position in the purpose clause (§ 214).

68 17 *in lātitudinem*: i.e., when the tree was bent over, shoots sprang out on all sides and made a thick mass of small branches. Among these were planted briars and thorns. Traces of such hedges still exist.

68 18 *ut . . . praebērent*: an obj. clause of result depending on *effēcerant*: (§ 187. I). — *īnstar*: an indeclinable noun, regularly followed by the genitive. Transl. 'like a wall' (lit. 'the image of a wall').

68 19 *quō*: 'into which'; a rel. adv. followed by *posset* in a clause of description (§ 177). Cf. *quō*, p. 67, l. 25.

68 20 *cum*: 'since' (§ 189).

68 21 *omittendum (esse)*: a pass. periphrastic denoting obligation, followed by *sibi*, a dative of agent (§ 87).

68 24 CHAP. 18. *aequāliter dēclivis*: 'with even downward slope.'

68 26 *pari acclivitāte*: see § 116. The description proceeds from the high ground northwest of the Sambre *downward* (*dēclivis*) to the stream; then across the river up the *ascent* (*acclivitate*) on the other side. — *adversus huic et contrārius*: 'opposite this and facing it.' See map, p. 71.

69 1 *passūs . . . apertus*: 'open at the base for about two hundred paces'; for *passūs* see § 96. — *īnīmus*: see § 125. — *ab superiōre parte*: 'along the upper portion.'

69 2 *silvestris*: an adjective modifying *collis*.—*ut nōn . . . posset*: a neg. clause of result. What would *nē posset* express?

69 3 in *apertō locō*: the open space of two hundred paces mentioned above.

69 4 *secundum*: a preposition governing *flūmen*.

69 5 *pedum . . . trium*: see § 77. *b*.

69 6 CHAP. 19. *cōpiis*: see § 113. note.

69 7 *aliter . . . dētulerant*: 'was different from what the Belgæ had reported' (lit. 'held itself otherwise than' etc.).

70 1 *cōsuētūdine suā*: 'according to his custom' (§ 111).—*legiōnēs expeditās*: see Introd. III. 11.

70 2 *conlocārat*: contracted from *conlocāverat*.

70 3 *proximē cōscriptae*: 'most recently levied.' These were legions XIII and XIV (see p. 57, l. 16 and note), which were not yet sufficiently trained to bear the brunt of the fight.

70 7 *reciperent . . . facerent*: 'kept retiring' etc.; the continuous action, indicated by the past tense, is emphasized by *identidem*.

70 8 *neque . . . audērent*: 'and our men dared not follow them further than to the line to which the open space extended'.—*quem ad finem*: translated as if it were *ad finem ad quem*.

70 9 *cōdentēs*: agrees with *cōs*, the obj. understood of *insequi*. The omission of the pronoun in cases like this is the rule.

70 10 *opere dimēnsō*: see Introd. III. 10, and the ill., p. 52.

70 13 *quod tempus . . . convēnerat*: 'the time that had been agreed upon' (lit. 'which time had' etc.). *Tempus* is in apposition with the clause *ubi . . . vīsa sunt*. An antecedent in apposition with something preceding is always placed in the rel. clause.

70 15 *atque (ita ut) ipsi sēsē cōfirmāverant*: 'and just as they had determined to do.'

70 20 *adversō colle*: 'straight up the opposite hill'; abl. of the way by which (§ 120. note 1).

70 22 CHAP. 20. *Caesari*: see § 87.—*vēxillum*: the large banner hoisted at headquarters to show that a battle was impending; see Introd. III. 7.

70 23 *prōpōnendum*: sc. *erat*; so with the several periphrastics that follow, the proper form of *sum* must be supplied.

70 24 *tubā*: the signal to take their places in the ranks; see Introd. III. 8.—*ab opere*: i.e. the work of fortification.

70 25 *quī*: the antecedent (*ei*) is the subj. understood of *arcessendū* (*erant*).—*aggeris*: 'material for a mound.'

70 26 *signum dandum*: the last signal for immediate action (§ 224. *a*).

72 1 *difficultātibus . . . subsidiō*: see § 89, and cf. p. 61, ll. 6 and 7.—*scientia . . . ūsus*: 'theoretical knowledge and experience.' The words are

in part apposition with *duae rēs*, and name only the first of the two helpful circumstances; the second is stated in the clause *quod . . . vetuerat* below.

72 2 quid . . . oportēret: indir. question, obj. of *praescribere*.

72 4 quod . . . vetuerat: 'the fact that he had forbidden the several lieutenants to leave the work and their several legions.'

72 7 nihil iam: 'no longer'; *nihil* is adverbial accusative (§ 99).—*per sē:* 'on their own responsibility.'—*quae vidēbantur:* 'what seemed best.' The antecedent of *quae* is *ea* understood, the obj. of *administrābant*.

The battle with the Nervii, one of the most critical episodes in Cæsar's career, is referred to by Longfellow, in "The Courtship of Miles Standish," in the following lines:

Now, do you know what he did on a certain occasion in Flanders,
When the rear-guard of his army retreated, the front giving way too,
And the immortal Twelfth Legion was crowded so closely together
There was no room for their swords? Why, he seized a shield from a soldier,
Put himself straight at the head of his troops, and commanded the captains,
Calling on each by his name, to order forward the ensigns;
Then to widen the ranks, and give more room for their weapons;
So he won the day, the battle of something-or-other.

72 10 CHAP. 21. quam in partem: equivalent to *in eam partem in quam* (§ 140).

72 11 decimam: this was Cæsar's favorite legion; cf. p. 45, ll. 1 ff.

72 12 uti . . . retinērent . . . perturbārentur . . . sustinērent: obj. clauses of purpose, expressing indirectly the commands given in his address (*ōrātiōne cohortātus*).

72 14 quam quō: introducing a rel. clause of description; transl. 'than the distance to which' (lit. 'than whither').

72 16 pugnantibus: sc. *suīs* or *militibus*, dative with *occurrit* (§ 84).

72 18 ut . . . tempus defuerit: a clause of result. Observe that in such clauses there is usually some antecedent word meaning 'so,' 'such,' 'so great,' 'to such a degree,' etc., on which the result clause depends; the words here are *tanta* and *tam* (§ 179. note).—*ad insignia accommodanda:* see § 225. a; 'for fitting on the decorations' (of the helmets etc.). See Introd. III. 9. b., and the ill., p. 74.

72 19 scūtis: dative (§ 86). See Introd. III. 9. b.

72 20 Quam . . . cōstitit: 'into whatever place chance took him, and whatever standards he saw first, there each took his stand.' So well were the soldiers drilled that each could fight well even among troops not his own.

72 23 CHAP. 22. magis ut . . . quam ut rei militāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat: 'rather as . . . demanded than as the theory and practice of warfare did.'

72 25 cum . . . resisterent . . . impedirētur: see § 189. — *aliae aliā* in *parte*: see note on p. 42, l. 21.

73 3 *neque quid . . . prōvidēri (poterat)*: 'neither could the necessities (lit. 'what was necessary') in each part be foreseen.' — *quid . . . esset*: see § 201.

73 6 *eventūs variī*: subj. of *sequēbantur*; modified by *fortūnae*.

73 7 CHAP. 23. In this chapter three sets of encounters, occurring at practically the same time, are described in order, (1) that of the Atrebatas with the ninth and tenth legions, (2) that of the Viromandui with the eighth and eleventh, and (3) that of the Nervii with the seventh and twelfth. Study carefully the lower battle plan, p. 71. — *ut . . . cōstitērant*: 'from their position' etc. (lit. 'as they had taken their position').

73 8 *aciē*: a genitive form. — *pilis ēmissis*: see Introd. III. 9 and 12.

73 9 *his*: i.e. the Atrebatas; dative with *obvenerat* (§ 84).

73 11 *cōnantēs*: sc. *cōs* (§ 167), obj. of *īnsecūtī*; 'while they were trying to cross.'

73 12 *Ipsi*: 'they themselves.'

73 13 *prōgressī*: i.e. continuing the charge up the wooded hill from which the enemy had rushed to the attack.

73 18 *nūdātis*: 'being exposed.' The only legions left near the camp were the seventh and twelfth on the right wing. — *cum . . . cōstitisset*: see § 189.

74 1 *intervallō*: abl. (§ 114).

74 2 *duce Boduognātō*: abl. abs.; 'under the leadership of Boduognatus.'

74 4 *apertō latere*: 'on the exposed flank'; i.e. on the right, not protected by shields.

74 6 CHAP. 24. *levisque armātūrae*: gen. (§ 77). See Introd. III. 3.

74 7 *unā*: adv.

74 8 *pulsōs*: sc. *esse*; subj. *quos*. — *dixeram*: 'have said,' p. 70, l. 17. When this is read, the writing is past; hence the past perf. for an earlier page.

74 10 *decumānā portā*: see Introd. III. 10 and the ill., p. xxxv.

74 13 *praecipitēs*: adjective agreeing with *cālōnēs*, but with the force of an adv., 'pell-mell,' 'in utter confusion' (§ 126). Concerning *cālōnēs* see Introd. III. 5.

74 14 *quī* etc.: this refers to the baggage train which was coming up with legions XIII and XIV as rear guard; see p. 70, ll. 1-4. — *clāmor*: the shouts of the men; *fremitus*, the confused noise of the train.

74 15 *oriēbātur*: sing. because of the single idea conveyed by *clāmor fremitusque* (§ 68).

74 16 *quōrum . . . virtūtis opiniō*: 'whose reputation for valor'; *virtūtis* is an obj. gen. (§ 75. b).

75 1 *complēri . . . premī . . . tenēri . . . fugere*: indir. disc. after *vidissent*. These present tenses represent what they saw going on.

75 4 *pulsōs superātōsque . . . potitōs*: sc. *esse*.

75 7 CHAP. 25. *Caesar*: subj. of *prōcessit* (l. 27). This is another instance of the periodic sentence; see note on p. 68, l. 13. In translating such long sentences it is desirable to make several short ones, each complete in itself. This example illustrates well how much more freely the absolute construction is used in Latin than in English. As a rule, it is well to avoid transferring it literally into English, as, 'the standard bearer having been killed' etc. However, a sparing use is permissible.

75 9 *ubi*: construe with *vīdit* (§ 193).—*signis*: see the illustrations, pp. 73 and 75.

75 11 *sibi . . . impedimentō*: 'hindered one another in fighting' (§ 89).

75 17 *primipilō*: in partial apposition with *centuriōnibus*. For the office see *Intro.* III. 6. *c.* *Baculus* was one of *Cæsar's* best centurions.

75 22 *ab novissimis*: 'in the rear.'—*dēsertō locō*: 'deserting their post.'

75 25 in *angustō*: 'in a difficult situation,' or 'at a crisis.'—*vīdit*: repeated from l. 12, on account of the length of the sentence.

75 26 *posset*: see § 177. The rear guard had not yet arrived.—*scūtō . . . militi detractō*: 'snatching a shield from a soldier.' For the dative *militi* cf. *hostibus*, p. 61, l. 11, and see § 86. For a description of the *scūtum* see *Intro.* III. 9. *b.*

75 29 *possent*: a purpose clause introduced by *quō* with a comparative (§ 176).

76 2 *etiam . . . rēbus*: 'even in his own extreme peril.'

76 5 CHAP. 26. *cōstitērat*: from *cōsistō*; 'had taken its position.'

76 6 *monuit*: with two accusatives, *tribūnōs* and the subst. clause *ut . . . coniungerent . . . inferrent* (§§ 93, 183), which represents one accusative.

76 7 *conversa* etc.: 'should face about and charge the enemy (in opposite directions)' (lit. 'bear turned standards against').

76 8 *alius alii* etc.: 'one was helping another'; see § 144. *d. 1.*

76 11 *legiōnum duarum*: i. e. XIII and XIV. See battle plan.

76 13 *colle*: i. e. the site of the Roman camp.

76 14 *Labiēnus*: he, with legions IX and X, had been pursuing the *Atrebatēs*; see the first lines of chapter 23 and the battle plan.

76 16 *Quī*: i. e. the soldiers of legion X. How should *Quī cum* be translated?

76 17 *quō . . . esset quantōque . . . versārētur*: indir. questions after *cognōvissent*; 'in what condition matters stood' etc.

76 19 *nihil . . . fēcērunt*: 'left nothing undone in the way of speed' (lit. 'made nothing of remainder'); *reliqui* is a part. gen. (§ 76. *a*).

76 21 CHAP. 27. *quī*: the antecedent is *ei* understood, in partial apposition with *nostrī*.—*prōcubuissent*: see § 177.

76 22 redintegrārent: result, depending on *tanta* (§ 179. note), as are also *occurrent* (l. 23) and *praeferrent* (l. 25).

77 2 ut . . . insisterent . . . pugnārent . . . conicerent . . . remitterent: result clauses dependent on the antecedent word *tantam*. Cf. p. 76, l. 20.—*iacentibus insisterent*: 'stood on the fallen.'

77 3 his: refers to *proximī*; transl. 'these too.'

77 4 qui: the antecedent is *eī* understood, subj. of *conicerent* and *remitterent*.—*ut ex tumulō*: 'as if from a mound.'

77 5 pila . . . remitterent: i.e. they picked up and hurled back the Roman javelins.

77 6 ut . . . debēret: 'so that we may consider that not without good hope of success did men' etc. (lit. 'so that it ought to be judged that not in vain did men' etc.). The subj. of *debēret* is the inf. clause *hominēs . . . ausōs esse* (§ 216. b). The *ut* clause expresses the result of the entire preceding description.

77 8 quae: the antecedents are the inf. *trānsire*, *ascendere*, and *subire*; transl. *quae* 'deeds which.' *Facilia* is pred. adjective.—The battle with the Nervii was the most desperate of the Gallic War. Only the steadiness of the troops and the inspiration of Cæsar's presence at the critical moment saved the day.

77 12 CHAP. 28. dixerāmus: see p. 67, ll. 24–26. Cf. note to p. 74, l. 8.

77 18 cum . . . arbitrārentur: a causal clause (§ 189).—*impeditum (esse)* etc.: 'there was no obstacle in the way of (lit. 'nothing impassable to') the conquerors.'

77 14 victis: dative (§ 85).

77 18 qui . . . possent: this is a descriptive clause and would be subjv. also in the dir. disc.

77 21 finitimis: dative (§ 83).—*ut . . . prohibērent*: a subst. clause of purpose, obj. of *imperāvit* (§ 183).

77 23 CHAP. 29. suprā: in p. 67, l. 23, the Aduatuci were said to be on the way to reënforce the Nervii.—*diximus*: tense as in English; contrast *dixerāmus*, l. 12.—*cum . . . venirent*: 'while they were on their way.'

77 27 Quod: transl. as a demonstrative pronoun, and cf. note on p. 32, l. 8.—*cum . . . habēret*: a concessive clause (§ 192).

78 2 pedum: gen. (§ 77. b). For the case used after *amplius* see § 105. note 2.

78 4 conlocābant: the past descr. tense often denotes an action in progress (§ 154. a).

78 6 impedimentis: refers to cattle as well as to portable baggage.

78 8 custōdiam: 'a guard' for booty etc.—*praesidium*: 'a garrison' to hold the place.

78 9 *ūnā*: adv.; 'with it.' — *Hī*: i.e. the six thousand. — *eōrum*: i.e. the Cimbri and Teutons. — *obitum*: 'destruction.' The Teutons were totally defeated by Caius Marius at Aquæ Sextiæ, 102 B.C.; the Cimbri, by Marius and Catulus, the next year, at Vercellæ.

78 10 *cum aliās . . . aliās . . . dēfenderent*: 'while sometimes they were waging war (aggressively) and sometimes were defending themselves when attacked' (lit. 'were warding off war brought against them').

78 14 CHAP. 30. *parvulisque proeliis*: 'skirmishes' (lit. 'small battles').

78 16 *oppidō*: abl. of means, hence the omission of *in*; but transl. 'in the town.'

78 17 *vineis . . . aggere . . . turrim*: see Introd. III. 13.

78 18 *inridēre . . . increpitāre*: historical infinitives (§ 218). — *quod . . . instituerētur*: subjv. in a causal clause stating a reason on another's authority; 'because (as they said)' etc.; see § 188. *b*.

78 19 *Quibusnam . . . cōfidunt*: *-nam* thus used with an interrogative word denotes extreme inquisitiveness. The early writers agree that the Gauls and Germans were tall and large as compared with the Romans. The Aduatuci, unused to Roman methods of warfare, supposed that their assailants, who in their eyes seemed puny, intended to *lift* on their wall the tower that they were building; hence their jeering question: "Pray, by what strength of hand do you — especially being such puny little fellows — expect to set a tower of such weight on our wall?"

79 1 CHAP. 31. *quī . . . possitis*: a rel. clause of cause (§ 190).

79 8 *trāditis armis*: abl. abs. (§ 117. *a*). — *sī . . . dēdūcāmur*: a future less probable condition (§ 199. II. *b*).

79 9 *quāvis*: from the pronoun *quīvīs*.

80 1 CHAP. 32. *cōsuētūdine . . . meritō*: see § 111.

80 3 *ariēs*: see Introd. III. 13. *b* and accompanying illustrations.

80 4 *nisi armis trāditis*: 'except on the condition of the surrender of your arms' (lit. 'except your arms having been surrendered'). — *in*: 'in the case of.'

80 5 *nē . . . Inferant*: a subst. clause, obj. of *imperābō*. The indir. obj. is *fīnitimīs* (§ 83). — *quam*: an indef. adjective pronoun modifying *iniūriam*.

80 7 *facere*: sc. *sē* as subj. We should expect *factūrōs* (*esse*).

80 8 *ut prope . . . adaequārent*: i.e. the arms filled the ditch and the deep chasm between the wall and the end of the *agger* almost to the top. The clause is one of result.

80 12 *eō diē pāce sunt ūsī*: 'for that day they enjoyed peace.' For the case of *pāce* see § 107. *a*.

80 14 CHAP. 33. *quam*: cf. l. 5.

80 15 *ante initō . . . cōsiliō*: abl. (§ 111); *ante* is an adv. modifying *initō*.

80 20 *quā*: 'where.'

80 23 *ignibus*: this signal was given by stretching out a great flaming torch from the side of a watchtower.

80 24 *concursum est, pugnatum . . . est*: *impers. use of the pass.*

80 26 *ita ācritur . . . ut*: *correlatives*; 'as bravely as.'

80 26 *quī . . . iacerent*: see § 177.

80 27 *pugnārī dēbuit*: *impers.*; *transl. as if virīs* (l. 25) *were the subj.*, 'as brave men ought to fight.' — *in ūnā virtūte*: 'in valor alone.'

81 1 *ad*: *adv.*; 'about.'

81 3 *sectionem . . . ūniversam*: *i.e. the whole people with all their possessions were sold as slaves.*

81 5 *mīlium*: *pred. gen. after esse understood* (§ 77. *a*; see also § 116. *a. 1*).

82 CHAP. 35. The student is urged to try to read the Latin manuscript of this chapter as it appears on page 81.

82 8 *incolerent*: *subjv. by attraction* (§ 214).

82 4 *quī . . . pollicērentur*: *a rel. clause of purpose.* — *datūrās*: *takes the f. gender from nātiōnibus.*

82 5 *in Italiam Illyricumque*: *i.e. Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum, which formed part of Cæsar's province. He went there, however, only during the winter.*

82 6 *in Carnutēs*: *to be taken with dēductīs, l. 9.*

82 10 *supplicātiō*: 'a public thanksgiving.' Ten days was the longest time that had ever been granted before, except to Pompey, who was honored with twelve for his victory over Mithridates. — *quod*: *the antecedent is the whole idea in the preceding clause.*

BOOK III

The events recorded in Book III belong chiefly to the campaign of the year 56 B.C.; but the uprising of the Alpine tribes, described in the opening chapters, occurred in the latter part of 57 B.C., beginning upon Cæsar's return to Italy after the subjugation of the Belgæ.

83 1 CHAP. 1. *Cum in Italiam proficiscerētur*: *connected in thought with in Italiam profectus est, p. 82, l. 9.* — *Galbam*: *this officer later became one of the assassins of Cæsar, his old general.*

83 6 *portōriis*: *these Alpine tribes subsisted largely by mining, grazing, and the levying of tolls on the goods of travelers.*

83 8 *arbitrārētur*: *subjv. of implied indir. disc.* (§ 208. *b*). — *utī . . . conlocāret*: *a subst. clause, obj. of permīsit.*

83 10 *secundis aliquot proeliis factis etc.*: *expand this series of abls. abs. into clauses*; cf. § 117, second paragraph.

83 16 **hic**: refers to *vicus*.

83 18 **vacuam**: pred. adjective after *relictam*. — **ab his**: 'by these,' i.e. the Gauls.

84 6 CHAP. 2. **ut . . . caperent**: a subst. clause of result, in apposition with *id*, 'it.'

84 8 **neque eam plēnissimam**: 'and that not entirely full.' This legion (the twelfth) had suffered severe losses in the battle with the Nervii (Book II, chap. 25), and was below normal strength before these detachments were sent off.

84 11 **cum ipsi . . . decurrerent**: 'when they should charge down from the hills into the valley.'

85 1 **Accēdēbat quod**: 'and besides' (lit. 'it was added that'). The subj. of *accēdēbat* is the clause *quod . . . dolēbant* (§ 182). A subst. clause with *ut* and the subjv. might have been used (§ 187. II).

85 2 **abstrāctōs**: sc. *esse*.

85 3 **Rōmānōs . . . adiungere**: indir. disc. after *sibi persuāsum habēbant*, 'they were convinced' (lit. 'they had it persuaded to themselves'). With *persuāsum habēbant* cf. *coāctum habēbat*, p. 22, l. 3; *cōmptum habēō*, p. 49, l. 14; *habemus explorāta*, p. 59, l. 5; and notes.

85 7 CHAP. 3. **perfectae**: agrees with the nearer subj., *mūnitiōnēs*, but belongs to *opus* as well.

85 8 **esset prōvisum**: impers., 'arrangements had been made.'

85 9 **timendum (esse)**: a pass. periphrastic (§§ 38. II, 224. a). Transl. 'that there need be no fear of war.'

85 14 **veniri**: depends on *posset*, understood from *possent*, l. 15. *Posset* is used impersonally, lit. 'neither could it be come for aid'; freely, 'and since no one could come to help them.'

85 15 **nōn nullae . . . sententiae**: 'several opinions' (or 'votes'), given by the officers in council.

85 16 **ut . . . contenderent**: a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with *eius modī*.

85 18 **Maiōri . . . placuit**: 'the majority decided' (lit. 'it pleased the majority'). — **tamen**: 'nevertheless'; i.e. in spite of other *sententiae*.

85 20 CHAP. 4. **ut . . . darētur**: a result clause.

85 22 **decurrere, conicere, prōpugnāre, mittere, occurrere, ferre, superārī**: historical infinitives (§ 218); as usual, describing the situation.

85 23 **gaesaeque**: Gallic javelins of unknown form.

85 26 **eō**: adv.

85 27 **quod . . . excēdēbant . . . succēdēbant**: subst. clauses explaining *hōc* (§ 182).

86 1 **nōn modo . . . sed nē . . . quidem**: 'not only not, but not even,' etc.

We should expect another negative after *modo*, but the Latin regularly omits it in this expression where both parts have the same predicate.

86 3 *sui recipiendi*: 'of recovering himself' (§ 224. c).

86 4 CHAP. 5. *Cum . . . pugnārētur*: 'when the fight had been going on.'

86 8 *Baculus*: see p. 75, ll. 17-18 and note.

86 11 *virtūtis*: gen. of description.

86 12 *ūnam esse spem salutis*: 'that there was only one hope of safety' etc.—*si . . . experirentur*: a conditional clause in apposition with *spem*. Note that *docent*, a historical present ind. (§ 153. a), allows secondary sequence, *experirentur* (§ 164).—*extrēmum auxilium*: 'the last resource.'

86 14 *intermitterent, exciperent, reficerent, ērumperent, pōnerent*: commands in indir. disc. (§ 205), following *certiorēs facit* in the sense of 'instructs.'

86 15 *tēla missa exciperent*: 'should (merely) catch (on their shields) the weapons that were hurled'; i.e. they should throw none back.

86 16 *post*: adv.

86 18 CHAP. 6. *Quod iussī sunt faciunt*: 'they did as (what) they were ordered.' *Faciunt* and the other presents that follow are historical.

86 19 *sui conligendi*: see § 224. c; 'of collecting their wits' (lit. 'of collecting themselves'); cf. l. 3.

86 21 *undique circumventōs interficiunt*: 'they surrounded on all sides and killed.'

86 24 *tertiā parte interfectā*: abl. abs.; *plūs* does not affect the case (§ 105. note 2).

86 26 *armis*: abl. of separation.—*exūtis*: belongs with *cōpiis*. The enemy threw down their arms as they fled.

87 2 *aliō . . . meminerat, aliis . . . viderat*: 'remembered that he had come with one plan (i.e. to open a way into Italy) . . . but saw that he had encountered other conditions.'

The episode of the uprising of the Nantuates, the Veragri, and the Seduni is concluded with chapter 6. With the following chapter begins the account of the main campaign of 56 B. C. against the hardy coast tribes, particularly the Veneti. Caesar's courage and resourcefulness are nowhere more strikingly shown.

87 12 CHAP. 7. *Crassus*: see p. 81, ll. 7 ff.

87 13 *mare*: accusative after *proximus*; cf. p. 56, l. 11.

87 15 *complūrēs*: modifies *civitatēs*.

87 17 *Coriosolitas*: accusative plur. of *Coriosolitēs*.

87 19 CHAP. 8. *Huius . . . civitātis*: i.e. of the Veneti.

87 21 *in Britanniam . . . cōsuērunt*: i.e. for the purposes of trade.—*cōsuērunt*: contracted from *cōsuēvērunt*, 'are accustomed.' The present would mean 'grow accustomed.'

87 22 *scientiā . . . ūsū*: abls. of respect (§ 115).

88 1 *vectigālēs*: adjunct accusative with *omnēs* (§ 94).

88 2 *se*: subj. of *recuperātūrōs* (*esse*); *suōs* agrees with *obsidēs*.

88 5 *subita . . . repentina*: 'sudden . . . unexpected.'

88 10 *quam . . . perferre*: 'than to endure,' *quam* following the comparative idea in *mālint*.

88 13 *remittat*: subjv. expressing a command in indir. disc., depending on the message implied in *lēgatiōnem . . . mittunt*. The dir. disc. would be *sī vīs tuōs recipere, obsidēs nōbīs remitte* (§ 205).

88 14 CHAP. 9. *Cæsar*: observe again how *Cæsar* has stated the difficulties and set the stage for action, and then personally appears as the chief actor.

88 15 *aberat longius*: 'was too far off'; i.e. to take immediate command in person.—*nāvēs . . . longās*: 'war galleys'; see Introd. III. 14. *a*, and the illustrations, pp. 92, 94, 117. The Gallic ships used sails alone and had no oars.—It will be remembered that *Cæsar*, at the close of the previous year (57 B.C.), had set out for Illyricum and Italy (p. 82, ll. 5–9). In April, 56 B.C., before his return to Gaul, he had a conference with the other triumvirs, Pompey and Crassus, and arrangements were made whereby the latter were to be consuls for the year 55 B.C., and *Cæsar's* term as governor of Gaul was to be extended for five years after the expiration of his first term (54 B.C.). Plans were also made to increase *Cæsar's* legions from eight to ten, and to provide pay for them from the public treasury. *Cæsar* seems thus to have been planning for future military support when he should finally return to Rome.

88 21 *quantum . . . admisissent*: transl. freely, 'how great a crime they had committed' (lit. 'how great a crime they had brought upon themselves').

88 22 *lēgātōs . . . retentōs*: explanatory of *facinus*.—*quod nōmen*: transl. as if the order were *nōmen quod*, with *nōmen* in apposition with *lēgātōs*, and cf. p. 70, l. 13 and note.

88 25 *hōc maiōre spē*: 'their hope being greater on this account.'

89 2 *inscientiam*: i.e. the Romans' lack of acquaintance.

89 4 *diūtius*: 'very long' (lit. 'longer,' i.e. than they desired); see § 145.

89 5 *ut . . . acciderent*: 'although everything should turn out contrary to their expectations' (§ 192).

89 6 *posse* and the following infinitives depend on *perspiciebant* (l. 10).

89 7 *gestūrī essent*: an active periphrastic (§ 222. I) and a subjv. in indir. disc.

89 8 *longē aliam . . . atque*: 'very different . . . from.'

89 9 *conclūsō*: i.e. like the Mediterranean, with which the Romans were familiar.

89 12 *ubi . . . cōnstābat*: 'where it was evident that *Cæsar* would first wage war.'

89 13 *Sociōs*: pred. accusative with *Osismās* etc.

89 18 CHAP. 10. *multa*: in part. apposition with this word are the nouns *iniūria*, *rebelliō*, *dēfectiō*, *coniūrātiō*, and the neg. purpose clause *nē . . . arbitrarentur*. This relation may be represented as follows:



89 21 *neglēctā*: i.e. left unpunished.

89 22 *sibi idem licēre*: 'that the same opportunity was open to them' (lit. 'the same thing was permitted to them').

89 25 *ōdisse*: 'hate'; perf. in form, but present in meaning (§ 46).—*priusquam . . . cōspirārent*: see § 197. *b*.

90 3 CHAP. 11. *adeat . . . contineat . . . prohibeat*: commands in indir. disc. (§ 205).

90 4 *arcessitī (esse)*: depends upon *dūcēbantur* and agrees with its subj. in case; 'were said to have been invited.'

90 10 *distinendam cūret*: cf. *pontem faciendum cūrat*, p. 20, l. 11 and note; *cūret* is subjv. in a rel. clause of purpose.

90 16 CHAP. 12. *eius modi . . . ut . . . habērent*: 'of such a sort that they had' etc. (§ 179).

90 17 *lingulis*: some of these narrow tongues of land are several miles long.

90 18 *cum . . . incitāvisset*: 'when the tide had risen.'

90 20 *minuente*: 'at the ebb'; intransitive.

90 21 *utrāque rē*: 'in either case' (lit. 'by each circumstance'), i.e. by land or by sea.

90 23 *hīs . . . adaequātis*: 'when these (i.e. *aggere ac mōlibus*) were brought level with the walls of the town.' The towns, being at the ends of the tongues of land, were inaccessible by land during high tide. The Romans, by extending dikes along the sides of the promontories, shut off the water and were thus enabled to extend the *agger* in each case up to the walls of the town. (For the *agger* see Introd. III. 13. *b*.) As soon as the Romans were in a position to take a town, the inhabitants escaped in ships to the next town.

91 1 *cuīus rei*: i.e. *nāvēs* taken collectively.

91 3 *Haec . . . faciēbant*: 'this they continued to do'; past descr. of repeated action (§ 154. *c*). There is the same force in *dēportābant* and *recipiēbant* above.

91 4 *partem*: accusative of duration of time (§ 96).

91 5 *summa*: with *difficultās*. — *vāstō* . . . *marī* etc.: abl. abs. In each of these points the ocean is contrasted with the sheltered and tideless waters of the Mediterranean.

91 8 CHAP. 13. *Namque*: introduces the reason for the fewer troubles of the Veneti; '(but the Veneti had less trouble) for.' — *ipsōrum*: 'their own.'

91 9 *aliquantō*: abl. of measure of difference. — *quam nostrārum nāvium*: 'than (those) of our ships.'

91 10 *quō facilius* . . . *possent*: purpose with a comparative word (§ 176).

91 13 *quamvis*: from *quīvīs*.

91 14 *trānstra* etc.: 'the cross beams of timbers a foot thick, fastened with iron bolts the thickness of a (man's) thumb.'

91 15 *crassitūdine*: abl. of description. — *prō*: 'instead of.'

91 16 *pellēs*: the Romans used sails made of flax; the Veneti of skins, untanned (*pellēs*) or tanned (*alutae*).

91 20 *tanta onera nāvium*: 'ships of so great weight.'

91 22 *nostrae classī*: dative of possession (§ 88), but transl. 'the encounter of our fleet with' etc.

91 23 *ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum*: 'only in swiftness and the power of the oars'; abl. of respect. — *reliqua*: '(but) everything else.'

91 25 *nostrae*: sc. *nāvēs*. — *rōstrō*: abl. of means; for a description of the *rōstrum* see Introd. III. 14. a.

91 27 *cōpulis*: 'grappling hooks.'

91 28 *Accēdebat ut*: 'there was this additional advantage, that,' followed by the subst. result clauses *ut* . . . *ferrent* . . . *cōsisterent* . . . *timērent*. — *sē ventō dedissent*: 'ran before the wind.'

92 1 *cōsisterent*: 'rode at anchor.'

92 2 *nihil*: see § 99.

92 3 *nāvibus*: see § 87.

92 6 CHAP. 14. *neque eis nocērī posse*: 'nor could they be harmed'; only the impers. construction can be used with the pass. of verbs of this sort; see § 83. a, and note on p. 64, l. 13.

92 7 *primum* . . . *vīsa est*: 'as soon as it was seen.'

92 10 *neque satis Brūtō* . . . *cōnstābat quid agerent*: 'and it was not clear to Brutus . . . what they should do.'

92 14 *turribus autem excitātis*: the word *tamen* following shows that this abl. abs. has adversative force (§ 192. note); 'though towers had been erected (on the Roman ships), nevertheless' etc.

93 1 *ex barbaris nāvibus*: 'of (lit. 'from') the barbarians' ships.'

93 4 *magnō ūsuī*: 'of great service'; dative of the end (§ 89); in fact, it turned threatened disaster to victory; but Caesar will not use words that hint of possible defeat. — *falcēs*: in apposition with *rēs*.

93 6 mūrālium falcium: 'wall hooks,' long poles with sickle-shaped hooks, like those used by hook-and-ladder companies for pulling down walls (see Introd. III. 13. *b*). The gen. limits *fōrmæ* understood, dative after *absimili* (§ 90); 'of a shape not unlike (the shape) of wall hooks.' *Fōrmā* is abl. of description.—**His . . . prærumpēbantur:** 'whenever the ropes which fastened the yards to the masts had been seized and drawn tight by these, the ship was driven forward by the oars and (in consequence) the ropes were torn off.'

93 7 adducti erant . . . prærumpēbantur: note the distinction in tenses and see § 196.

93 9 Gallicis nāvibus: dative of reference (§ 85).

93 13 in cōspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs: they had an audience that was calculated to inspire their best efforts. Cæsar does not forget the dramatic setting of his narrative.

93 14 paulō fortius: 'a little braver (than usual).'

93 17 CHAP. 15. cum . . . circumsteterant . . . contendēbant: the same use of tenses as in ll. 7–8, to express repeated action in past time.—**bīnæ ac ternæ:** distributives; 'when two or three ships (of the Romans) had surrounded each ship (of the Veneti).'

93 24. Quæ . . . rēs: i.e. the sudden calm.—**ad negōtium cōficiendum:** 'for finishing the business.'

93 27 ad terram pervēnerint: 'came to land.' For the exception to the rule of sequence see § 163. *c*.—**cum . . . pugnārētur:** 'although the battle had been going on.'

93 28 hōrā ferē quārtā: about 10 A.M.

94 2 CHAP. 16. cum . . . tum: 'not only . . . but also.'

94 4 nāvium quod: 'all the ships' (lit. 'what of ships'); part. gen.

94 5 neque quō sē reciperent . . . dēfenderent habēbant: 'had no place to which they could flee (for refuge) nor any way to defend their towns.' The subjunctive clauses are descriptive (§ 177). Cf. *quō . . . tolerārent*, p. 32, l. 15.

94 8 eō gravius . . . quō: abls. of measure of difference. Transl. 'the more severely . . . that.'—**vindicandum (esse):** impers., but transl. 'punishment should be inflicted.'

94 10 sub corōnā vëndidit: 'sold at public auction' (lit. 'under the wreath'); captives in war, when being sold for slaves, wore wreaths. The custom arose from the crowning of animals intended for sacrifice. The selling of captives by their conquerors was common in antiquity, and Cæsar's act must not be judged by modern standards.

95 1 CHAP. 17. Q. Titūrius Sabinus . . . in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit: see p. 90, ll. 8–11.

95 7 nōlēbant: i.e. the senate. Plur., referring to *senātū*, a collective noun (§ 65. *a*).

- 95 9 *perditōrum*: 'desperate.'
- 95 12 *idōneō* . . . *locō*: 'in a place suitable in all respects.'
- 95 13 *cum* . . . *cōnsēdisset*: concessive.
- 95 15 *hostibus* etc.: equivalent to *in contemptiōnem* . . . *hostium*; dative of reference.
- 95 19 *eō absente*: i.e. Cæsar.
- 95 21 *lēgātō*: dative of agent with *dīmīcandum* (*esse*).
- 95 25 CHAP. 18. *quid fieri velit* *ēdocet*: 'he tells him what he wants done.'
- 96 1 *prō perfugā*: 'in the character of a deserter.'
- 96 3 *neque longius abesse quā proximā nocte*: an expression amounting to 'and that not later than the following night.'
- 96 7 *irī*: *impers.*, depending on *oportere*.
- 96 8 *superiōrum diērum*: depends on *Sabīnī cunctatiō* taken together. In apposition with *rēs* are *cunctatiō*, *cōfirmatiō*, *inopia*, *spēs*, and the clause *quod* . . . *crēdunt*.
- 96 12 *nōn prius* . . . *quā*: 'not . . . until.'
- 96 13 *sit concessum*: see § 197. *b*.
- 96 15 *ut explorātā victoriā*: 'as if victory were already assured.'—*quibus* . . . *compleant*: a *rel. clause of purpose*.
- 96 18 CHAP. 19. *passūs mille*: accusative of extent of space. *Mille* is here an indeclinable adjective.
- 96 19 *quā minimum spatī*: 'as little time as possible'; subj. of *darētur*.
- 96 20 *exanimātiq̄ue pervēnerunt*: 'and they arrived all tired out.'
- 96 26 *Quōs*: a connecting *rel.* equivalent to *eōs* and obj. of *cōsecrātī* (§ 143).
- 97 2 *equitēs*: nominative.—*paucōs*: 'only a few,' the regular meaning of this word.—*quī* . . . *ēvāserant*: 'who had escaped from the fleeing crowd.'
- 97 6 *ut*: correlative with *sic*.—*ad bella suscipienda* etc.: they were eager and ready for undertaking war, but lacked grit in enduring reverses.
- 97 9 CHAP. 20. The third campaign of the year 56 B.C., that against the Aquitani, begins at this point. It seems to have been quite unnecessary, as well as difficult and dangerous.—P. Crassus: see p. 90, ll. 5–8.
- 97 12 *Praecōninus* . . . *Mānlius*: these defeats were twenty-two years before (78 B.C.), when the Aquitani united with Sertorius, the leader of the Marian party, who held Spain for ten years against Rome (82–72 B.C.).
- 97 17 *Galliæ provinciæ*: 'of the province of Gaul.'
- 97 18 *his regiōnibus*: dative after *finitimæ*, which agrees with *civitatēs*.—*nōminatim evocātis*: 'having been called to the colors' or 'having been drafted.'
- 98 1 CHAP. 21. *superiōribus victōriis*: see § 107. *b*.
- 98 3 *quid* . . . *possent*: indir. question, subj. of *perspicit*.—*sine imperātōrē* . . . *adulescentulō dūce*: an *imperātor* is the commander in chief of an army; *dux* refers to any person holding a command.

98 8 *vineās turrēque* ēgit: see Introd. III. 13. *b*, and the ill., pp. xxxviii, xl.

98 9 *cuniculiā*: 'mines' (lit. 'rabbits'), so called from their likeness to rabbits' burrows. These were intended to run under the Roman *agger*. The roof was propped up with wooden posts, and when these were set on fire and burned through, the entire mass of Roman works would fall into the pit.

98 11 *diligentiā*: abl. of cause. The Romans doubtless destroyed the enemy's mines by countermines.

98 14 *faciunt*: 'they do (so).'

98 18 CHAP. 22. *commodis*: with *fruantur* (§ 107. *a*). The clause is in apposition with *condiciō*.

98 19 *quōrum . . . amicitiae*: 'to whose friendship.'

98 20 *sibi mortem cōnascant*: 'commit suicide.' Cf. p. 14, l. 9.

98 22 *quī . . . recūsāret*: a rel. clause of description.

98 23 *cum his*: repeated from *cum . . . dēvōtīs* on account of the long parenthesis; 'with these (I say).'

99 3 CHAP. 23. *paucis diēbus . . . erat*: 'within only a few days after he had arrived there' (lit. 'within which it had been come there').

99 5 *quōqueversus*: 'in every direction.'

99 7 *citeriōris Hispāniae*: pred. gen. This was northern Spain. — *finitimae Aquitāniae*: 'bordering on Aquitania'; *fīnitimae* is a pred. adjective after *quae sunt*.

99 11 *Q. Sertōriō*: see note on p. 97, l. 12.

99 12 *cōnsuetūdine populi Rōmānī*: because of their service under Sertorius they were familiar with Roman methods of warfare.

99 15 *Quod*: explained by the four appositive clauses *suās cōpiās . . . augērī*.

99 19 *nōn . . . dēcertāret*: 'he thought a battle should not be delayed.' What is the literal translation?

99 23 CHAP. 24. *duplici*: i.e. two cohorts in depth. His numbers were too few to allow the usual formation of three divisions (*triplex acies*).

99 24 in *mediam aciem*: i.e. where they would be kept steady by the legionaries. Their ordinary position was on the wings. — *quid . . . cōnsili*: 'what plan' (lit. 'what of plan'); part. gen.

100 1 *victōriā*: abl. with *polīrī* (§ 107. *a*).

100 2 *sēsē recipere*: i.e. to withdraw from Aquitania.

100 3 *infirmiōrēs animō*: 'dispirited'; for the case of *animō* see § 115.

100 5 *prōductis cōpiis*: concessive; 'although' etc. (§ 117. *d*).

100 6 *opiniōne timōris*: 'the notion (they had given) of their own cowardice.'

100 8 *expectārī . . . quīn . . . Irētur*: freely, 'that they should go to the camp without further delay.'

100 10 *ad hostium castra*: this is the only instance in the "Commentaries" of an attack by Romans on a fortified Gallic camp. The fight usually took place on a carefully chosen level stretch between the hostile camps.

100 18 CHAP. 25. *quibus*: abl. with *cōfūdēbat* (§ 107. b). — *lapidibus . . . comportandis*: 'by supplying (the regular soldiers) with stones and javelins and fetching turf for (building) an *agger*.' The gerundives express means.

100 15 *opiniōnem pugnantium*: i.e. they gave the impression of being actually engaged in fighting (§ 221).

100 17 *ex locō* etc.: i.e. as they stood on the rampart of the camp.

100 19 *ab decumānā portā*: i.e. 'in the rear,' where this gate was situated; see Introd. III. 10 and the illustration on p. xxxv. The Gauls appear here to have adopted the Roman mode of constructing camps. Cf. note on p. 99, l. 12.

100 26 CHAP. 26. *omnium oculis . . . intentis*: 'while the eyes and minds of all were bent on the battle.'

100 28 *prius . . . cōstitērunt . . . quam . . . posset*: equivalent to *cōstitērunt priusquam posset* (§ 197. b).

101 2 *quod plerumque . . . cōsuēvit*: '(a thing) which usually happens.' The antecedent of *quod* is the idea contained in *redintegrātis viribus*. For the tense cf. note on p. 87, l. 21.

101 4 *per*: 'over.'

101 6 *quae*: accusative plur., subj. of *convēnissē*. It takes its gender from the antecedent *mīlium*.

101 18 CHAP. 27. *tempore*: cf. *quibus*, p. 100, l. 13, and see § 107. b.

101 17 CHAP. 28. *quī . . . essent . . . misissent*: subjv. clauses of description.

101 18 *arbitrātus*: 'thinking'; the past participle of a few deponent verbs is used nearly in the sense of a present. Cf. *veritus*, p. 64, l. 24.

101 19 *aliā . . . ac*: 'other . . . than' or 'different . . . from.'

101 22 *continentēs*: 'continuous': i.e. far-stretching.

101 23 *eō*: 'thither'; i.e. to the *silvās* and *palūdēs*.

102 6 CHAP. 29. *deinceps*: i.e. in the days next following.

102 9 *conversam*: 'fronting'; i.e. with the boughs turned toward the enemy. — *prō vallō*: 'as a palisade.'

102 11 *cōfectō*: 'cleared' (of timber); lit. 'finished.'

102 12 *tenērentur*: 'were being seized.'

102 13 *eius modi . . . utī . . . intermitterētur*: 'such that the work was necessarily interrupted.'

102 14 *sub pellibus*: the tents were of leather.

BOOK IV

In Book IV the scene shifts to the German frontier. In the winter of 56-55 B.C. two of the lesser German tribes, the Tencteri and Usipetes, crowded by the powerful Suebi, crossed the Rhine into Gaul. At the earliest moment Cæsar concentrated his forces in this quarter for the defense of Gaul, drove the Germans back across the Rhine, followed them up by an expedition into their own territory, and thus assured the supremacy of the Roman arms.

103 1 CHAP. 1. *Pompēiō . . . Crassō*: i.e. the year 55 B.C. The year was defined by naming the consuls in office (§ 228). The Triumvirate had decided that Cæsar should hold the government of Gaul while the other two members kept control of affairs at Rome.

103 4 *quō*: adv., equivalent to *in quod*.

103 11 *Hī . . . illi*: 'the latter . . . the former' (§ 134. a). — *annō post*: 'the following year.' For the case of *annō* see § 114.

103 12 *ratio*: 'theory' (theoretical knowledge); *usus*, 'practice' (knowledge derived from experience).

103 13 *privātī*: there was no private ownership, but all lands were held as common property. Further, no community remained in one place longer than a year, probably that they might not become too much attached to one place.

103 15 *frumentō*: abl. of means. — *maximam partem*: see § 99. Transl. 'for the most part.'

103 17 *quæ res*: i.e. the mode of living just described. *Rēs* is subj. of *alit* and *efficit*.

103 18 *nullō officiō . . . adsuēfactī*: 'accustomed to no service' (lit. 'trained by no service'; see § 106. The clause *quod . . . faciunt* is parenthetical.

104 2 *locis frigidissimis*: 'even in their extreme climate' (§ 117. d). — *neque*: correlative with *et*, l. 4.

104 3 *vestitūs*: part. gen. with *quicquam*.

104 6 CHAP. 2. *eō ut . . . habeant*: 'on this account, that they may have (persons) to whom' etc.

104 8 *quam quō . . . dēsiderent*: 'than because they want' etc. A reason given as supposable but not real is expressed by the subjv. (§ 188. b).

104 15 *impēnsō . . . pretiō*: 'at high cost.'

104 17 *importātis nōn ūtuntur*: 'do not import for use.'

104 22 *labōris*: pred. gen. of description (§ 77. a).

104 27 *mōribus*: abl. of accordance.

104 29 *quamvis paucī*: 'however few.'

105 1 *Vīnum omnīnō . . . importārī nōn patiuntur*: 'wine they do not allow to be brought into their country at all.'

105 4 CHAP. 3. **Pūblicē**: 'as a community.'

105 7 **ūnā** . . . **Suēbiis**: 'extending from (the territory of) the Suebi in one direction.'

105 9 **ut est captus Germānōrum**: 'according to the standard of the Germans.'

105 10 **paulō** . . . **hūmāniōrēs**: 'somewhat more civilized than the others, although they are of the same race' (i.e. Germans).

105 13 **cum**: concessive, as shown by the following *tamen* (§ 192. note).

105 15 **vectigālēs sibi fēcērunt**: 'have rendered them tributary to themselves.'

105 23 CHAP. 4. **trāns flūmen**: i.e. on the east side; *cis Rhēnum* (l. 24), the west side.

106 1 **Illī**: i.e. the *Germānī*.

106 4 **viam**: accusative of kindred meaning (§ 98).

106 5 **cōfectō**: with *itinere*.

106 11 **partem**: accusative of duration of time.

106 14 CHAP. 5. **veritus**: transl. as if present, 'fearing.' Cf. p. 64, l. 24.

106 15 **nihil** . . . **committendum (esse)**: 'no confidence should be placed in them.'

106 16 **Est** . . . **cōsuētūdinis**: 'for it is a Gallic custom' (lit. 'for there is this (point) of Gallic custom'); the following subjv. clauses are in apposition with *hoc*.

106 17 **etiam invītōs**: 'even though they are unwilling.'

106 21 **rēbus atque auditiōnibus**: 'facts and rumors.'

106 22 **quōrum eōs** . . . **paenitēre**: see § 81. *b.* — in **vēstigiō**: 'on the spot.'

106 23 **plērique**: i.e. the *viātorēs* and *mercātorēs*. — **ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant**: 'give answers fashioned according to the wish of their questioners' (*eōrum*).

106 25 CHAP. 6. **graviōrī bellō**: 'too serious a war' (§ 122)

106 26 **cōsuērat**: contracted from *cōsuēverat*. — **ad exercitum**: in winter quarters among the Aulerci and Lexovii; see p. 102, l. 17.

106 27 **ea** . . . **facta (esse)**: *ea* is explained by the inf. clauses *missās (esse) lēgatiōnēs* and *invītālōque (esse) eōs*.

107 2 **omnia** . . . **fore parāta**: used for the fut. pass. inf. depending on some word of promising implied in *invītālōs*; '(with the promise that) all things would be made ready.'

107 8 **equitātū imperātō**: 'cavalry being levied'; observe the meaning of *imperō* here.

107 10 CHAP. 7. **equitibus dēlēctis**: each of the allied states 'furnished its quota of cavalry.'

107 16 *quicumque*: the antecedent is *eis* understood as indir. obj. of *resistere*.

107 17 *Haec tamen dicere*: 'that this, however, they did say'; supply *sē* as the subj. of *dicere* and the following inf.

107 19 *eis*: i.e. to the Romans.—*attribuant*: subjv. for the impv. of dir. disc. (§ 205).

107 20 *eōs*: i.e. *agrōs*.

107 21 *concēdere*: 'yield,' as inferior.

107 22 *reliquum* etc.: 'there was no one *else* on earth' etc. Observe the emphatic position of *reliquum*; cf. p. 21, l. 19; p. 36, l. 4; and notes.

107 23 *possint*: subjv. in a clause of description (§ 177).

107 24 CHAP. 8. *quae visum est*: 'what it seemed proper (to answer).' Cæsar gives us only the last part of his speech, but we may imagine that it was after the fashion of his words to Ariovistus (Book I, chap. 43).

107 26 *quī . . . potuerint*: the verb in this clause of description would be subjv. in the dir. disc. also; likewise *quī . . . possint*, l. 28.

108 2 *quōrum sint* etc.: 'whose envoys (he informs them) are now with him and complaining.'

108 6 CHAP. 9. *post diem tertium*: i.e. the next day but one. The first and last days are usually included in the Roman reckoning (§ 227. g).

108 7 *propius sē*: 'nearer them,' *sē* being an indir. reflex. For the case see note on p. 56, l. 11.

108 10 *trāns*: i.e. westward.

108 13 CHAP. 10. *Vosgō*: 'the Vosges.' Cæsar is wrong here; the Meuse really rises a considerable distance west of the Vosges Mountains.

108 14 *parte . . . receptā*: the Rhine branches in these regions; one branch, the Vacalus, unites with the Meuse about eighty miles from its mouth. See the map.

108 20 *multis . . . effectis*: transl. actively, 'making many' etc.

108 26 CHAP. 11. *ut erat cōstitutum*: 'as had been arranged.'

109 2 *praemitteret*: used without an obj.; transl. 'send word.'

109 3 *sibique ut potestatem faceret*: 'give them an opportunity.'

109 4 *quōrum sī . . . fēcisset*: 'and if their leading men and senate should give them an oath-bound pledge'; *fēcisset* represents a fut. perf. ind. in the dir. disc. (§§ 208, 209. note). The verb is singular because it agrees with the nearest subject (§ 67) or because the two subjects form a single idea (§ 68).

109 5 *condiciōne*: abl. with *ū-ū-rōs* (*esse*); see § 107. a.

109 7 *daret*: subjv. in an indir. command or request (§ 205).

109 8 *eōdem illō pertinēre*: 'tended the same way'; *eōdem* and *illō* are advs.—*ut . . . reverterentur*: a purpose clause explaining *eōdem illō*.

109 14 *quī nūntiārent*: a rel. clause of purpose. The antecedent of *quī*

is the omitted obj. of *mittit*. — *nē . . . lacerarent . . . sustinerent*: commands in indir. disc. (§§ 205, 206).

109 16 *accessisset*: see § 198. III. *b*.

109 18 CHAP. 12. *amplius*: as usual, this word has no effect on the construction (§ 105. note 2).

109 22 *indūtiis*: dative of purpose.

109 23 *resistentibus*: sc. *nostris*, *his* being the indir. obj.

109 24 *subfossis* etc.: 'after stabbing our horses underneath and dismounting several of our men.'

109 26 *ut . . . vēnissent*: note that *dēsisterent* is subjv. of result with *ut*, and that *vēnissent* depends on it (§ 214); otherwise the clause with *prius . . . quam* would be in the ind. (§ 197. *a*).

110 8 *genere*: see § 102.

110 6 *quoad*: see § 198. II; compare this use of *quoad* with that on p. 109, l. 15.

110 11 CHAP. 13. *ab eis qui . . . intulissent*: 'from men who' etc.; a clause of description.

110 18 *dum . . . augērentur*: see § 198. III. *b*.

110 14 *dēmentiae*: descriptive gen. in the pred. after *esse* (§ 77. *a*); the subj. is *expectāre*. Transl. 'he thought it was the height of madness to wait.'

110 15 *quantum . . . auctōritātis*: 'how great prestige the enemy had gained by one battle'; for *auctōritātis* see § 76. *a*.

110 17 *quibus*: i.e. the enemy; a connecting rel., indir. obj. of *dandum* (*esse*).

110 19 *nē quem . . . praetermitteret*: a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with *cōnsiliō*. *Quem* is an indef. pronominal adjective, 'any.'

110 20 *quod . . . vēnerunt*: explanatory of *rēs*.

110 23 *simul . . . simul*: 'partly . . . partly.' — *pūgandī suī causā*: 'for the purpose of excusing themselves' (§§ 224. *c*, 225. *b*). — *quod . . . commississent*: see § 188. *b*.

110 25 *ut . . . impetrārent*: 'that they might obtain through treachery whatever they could in the way of truce.'

110 26 *Quōs . . . oblātōs (esse) gāvīsus*: 'delighted that they were put in his power'; *gāvīsus* is from *gaudeō*.

111 3 CHAP. 14. *Acīē triplici*: see Introd. III. 12.

111 6 *et . . . et*: correlative; *celeritātē* and *discessū* explain *omnibus rēbus*.

111 7 *perturbantur, cōpiāsne . . . an . . . an . . . praestāret*: 'they were confused as to whether it was better' etc. (§§ 201, 170. *b*. 1).

111 9 *Quōrum timor cum*: equivalent to *cum timor eōrum* (§ 143).

111 11 *quī*: the antecedent is the subj. understood of *restitērunt*.

111 16 *ad quōs cōnsectandōs*: 'to hunt them down.' This 'action of Cæsar's seems cruel. When thanksgivings were proposed in the senate for

Cæsar's victory, Cato, Cæsar's inveterate enemy, moved that he should be surrendered to the barbarians for this butchery. Such justification as can be found for the act rests on Cæsar's conviction that to secure the Roman power the Germans on the west side of the Rhine must be destroyed and that river kept as the boundary of the Roman possessions.

111 17 CHAP. 15. *Germāni* etc.: i.e. the Germans who were fighting heard the cries of those who were being massacred.

111 23 *ad ūnum*: 'to a man.'

111 24 *CCCCXXX milium*: pred. gen.; cf. p. 109, l. 18.

111 27 *veriti*: see p. 106, l. 14 and note.

111 28 *libertātem*: '(this) privilege.'

112 3 CHAP. 16. *iūstissima*: 'the most important.'

112 7 *Accessit . . . quod . . . recēperat . . . coniūxerat*: the *quod* clause is the subj. of *accessit*. Transl. 'a further reason was' etc. (lit. 'it was added that'). A subst. clause with *ut* often follows *accēdō*.

112 8 *quam . . . trānsisse*: see p. 108, ll. 8 ff.

112 13 *dēderent*: a subst. clause without *ut* after *postulārent*.

112 15 *sui . . . imperi*: pred. gen. after *esse*; 'under his power' (§ 73. a).

112 17 *Ubii autem*: 'moreover the Ubii' etc. This introduces the third of Cæsar's reasons (*multis dē causis*, l. 1) for crossing the Rhine. The first is introduced by *illa fuit iūstissima* (l. 2), the second by *Accessit etiam quod* (l. 7).

112 20 *premerentur*: see § 188. b.

112 21 *id sibi . . . satis futurum (esse)*: '(saying that) that would be enough for them.'

113 3 CHAP. 17. *neque suae neque populi Rōmāni dignitātis* etc.: 'and he decided that it was in keeping neither with his own dignity nor with that of the Roman people'; for *dignitātis* see § 77. a.

114 3 *Ratiōnem*: 'plan.' A good idea of the structure of this bridge can be gained by a careful comparison of the text with the diagram on p. 113. Any pupil handy with tools will find it interesting and helpful to make a wooden model of a section of this bridge. The site of the bridge was probably near Bonn, where there is to-day a magnificent structure, bearing a Latin inscription stating that Cæsar built a bridge there in the year 55 B.C.—*biua*: 'in pairs.'

114 4 *dimēnsa ad altitūdinem*: 'measured (and cut) according to the depth of the river.'

114 5 *pedum duōrum*: i.e. between the timbers of each pair.

114 7 *nōn publicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum*: 'not perpendicularly, like a pile' (lit. 'in the fashion of a pile').

114 8 *ut . . . prōcumberent*: 'so as to lean forward in the direction of the current.'

114 10 *ab inferiōre parte*: 'downstream.' — *contrā . . . conversa*: 'slanting against'; *conversa* agrees with *duo (tigna)*.

114 11 *Haec utraque . . . distinēbantur*: 'these two sets were held apart by two-foot timbers laid on above, equal (in thickness) to the interval left by the fastening of the piles (*quantum . . . distābat*), with a pair of clamps at each end.'

114 12 *bipedālibus trabibus*: compare with *pedum duōrum*, l. 5. The timbers were just wide enough to fit in between the piles forming each pair.

114 14 *quibus (tignis) . . . revinctis*: 'after these were held apart and secured in opposite directions,' i.e. by the horizontal beams.

114 15 *rērum*: 'structure.'

114 16 *quō maior . . . hōc artius*: 'the greater . . . the more closely'; abls. of measure of difference. A model constructed according to this description will readily illustrate how the whole structure is the more tightly locked together the greater the pressure exerted against the sloping *tigna* from above or below.

114 17 *Haec . . . contexēbantur*: 'these (the framework of timber) were covered with beams placed lengthwise.'

114 19 *sublicae . . . agēbantur*: 'piles were driven also on the lower side in a slanting direction' (so as to stay the bridge against the current).

114 20 *prō ariete subiectae*: 'serving as a buttress.'

114 21 *aliae item*: other piles a little way above, to serve as a break-water. These were probably independent of the bridge.

114 24 *neu . . . nocērent*: 'and that they (*trunci* etc.) might not harm the bridge.'

114 25 CHAP. 18. *Diēbus*: see § 119. — *coepta erat*: pass.; cf. p. 60, l. 23; also p. 115, l. 3.

115 4 *hortantibus eis quōs*: 'at the instigation of those whom.'

115 10 CHAP. 19. *premerentur*: implied indir. disc. (§ 208. b).

115 18 *uti . . . dēmigrārent . . . dēpōnerent . . . convenirent*: obj. clauses of purpose following the verbal phrase *nūntiōs . . . dīmīsisse*, which involves an idea of sending orders or advice.

115 15 *hunc* etc.: 'this had been selected about the middle.'

115 19 *ut . . . iniceret . . . ulciscerētur . . . liberāret*: substantive clauses of purpose in apposition with *rēbus* (§ 183, third example).

115 22 *satis . . . prōfectum (esse)*: 'enough had been done.'

115 23 *arbitrātus*: transl. as present, 'thinking'; cf. p. 106, l. 14 and note.

116 1 CHAP. 20. *Cæsar's* brief expedition to Britain described in the following chapters marks the beginning of the national history of England. *Cæsar* was the first Roman who entered Britain, and the first author who wrote about it from personal knowledge.

116 2 *ad septentrionēs*: 'toward the north'; cf. p. 12, l. 4 and l. 9.

116 4 *bellis*: abl. of time (§ 119).—*inde*: i.e. from Britain.

116 6 *si . . . cognovisset*: a fut. condition in indir. disc. changed from the fut. perf. ind. (§§ 208, 209. note, 210). The clauses are subjs. of *fore*.

116 9 *illō*: adv.

116 12 *quanta . . . poterat*: the indir. questions are objs. of *reperire*.

116 15 *quī*: with *portūs*, 'what harbors.'

116 18 CHAP. 21. *nāvi longā*: see the illustrations, pp. 92, 117.

116 23 *quam . . . classem*: lit. 'what fleet he had built'; transl. as if the order were *classem quam fecerat*. For the attraction of the antecedent into the rel. clause see § 140.

116 27 *quī polliceantur*: a rel. clause of purpose, but transl. by the pres. participle.

117 6 *magnī*: gen. of indef. value (§ 78).

117 7 *adeat*: a subst. clause without *ut*, obj. of *imperat*.

117 9 *quantum*: sc. *tantum* as the antecedent word; 'so far as opportunity could be given to him' etc.

117 10 *quī . . . auderet*: a rel. clause of cause (§ 190).

117 14 CHAP. 22. *superiōris temporis*: 'of the season before'; see Book III, chap. 28.

118 1 *cōnsuetūdinis*: see § 80.

118 2 *fēcissent*: the reason is given on the authority of the *lēgātī*, hence the verb is in the subjv.

118 6 *hās . . . antepōnendās*: 'that occupation about these trifling matters should take precedence of (the invasion of) Britain.'

118 8 *imperat*: 'demands,' with accusative of dir. and dative of indir. obj.

118 9 *Nāvibus . . . q̄nerāriis*: see Intro. III. 14. *b*, and the ill., p. 117.—*quot*: sc. *tot* as the antecedent; '(as many) as he thought' etc.

118 10 *quod*: the antecedent is *id* understood, the obj. of *distribuit*; 'what galleys he had besides' (lit. 'what of galleys,' part. gen.).

118 13 *ā*: adv., 'away,' 'off.'—*tenēbantur quō minus*: 'were detained from'; the usual construction after verbs of hindering (§ 185).

118 16 *in Menapiōs . . . in eōs pāgōs*: with *dūcendum*, which agrees with *exercitum*, obj. of *dedit*. The gerundive here expresses purpose (§ 224. *d*).

118 20 CHAP. 23. *nactus*: from *nanciscor*.

118 21 *tempestātem*: 'weather.'—*tertiā vigiliā*: probably soon after midnight.—*solvit*: 'cast off' the ropes; i.e. weighed anchor.—*ulteriōrem portum*: the port eight miles away. (l. 13). See the map.

118 23 *hōrā . . . quārtā*: about 10 A.M. The distance across is about thirty miles. He sailed from a port at or near Boulogne, and his approach to Britain was near Dover. There he lay at anchor till half past three.

118 26 *montibus angustē* etc.: i.e. the cliffs came close to the shore. See the ill., p. 119.

119 2 *dum* . . . *convenirent*: when is *dum*, 'until,' followed by the ind.? See § 198. III. a.

119 5 *Volusēnō*: cf. p. 116, l. 18, and p. 117, l. 8. — *monuitque* . . . *administrarentur*: 'and enjoined upon them that everything should be done promptly (lit. 'at the nod and at the time') as military science and particularly control of ships demand, since the latter have a swift and unsteady motion' (lit. 'as things which have' etc.). The obj. of *monuit* is the subst. clause (*ut*) . . . *administrarentur*.

119 6 *postularent*: see § 214.

119 7 *habērent*: see § 190.

119 9 *His dimissis* etc.: the first *et* connects *dīmissis* and *nactus*, the second *ventum* and *aestum*. Why are *dīmissis* and *nactus* not in the same construction? See note on p. 61, l. 15.

119 11 *prōgressus*: toward the north.

120 2 CHAP. 24. *essedāriis*: the *essedum* was a two-wheeled war chariot. — *quō* . . . *genere*: 'a kind (of fighting) which'; refers to the fighting both on horseback and with the chariots. *Genere* is attracted into the rel. clause.

120 3 *ēgredī*: the inf. is common after *prohibeō* instead of the subjv. with *nē*, *quān*, or *quō minus* (§ 185. a).

120 5 *cōstitutī*: 'to ride,' 'to be anchored.'

120 6 *militibus*: dative of agent with the impers. pass. periphrastics *dēsiliendum* . . . *cōsistendum* . . . *pugnandum erat*; *pressis* modifies *militibus*, 'weighted as they were.'

120 9 *cum illi* etc.: 'while they' (the Britons) etc.; a *cum* clause of description.

121 1 *generis*: see § 80.

121 2 *pedestribus*: 'on land,' where the main strength lay in infantry.

121 4 CHAP. 25. *nāvēs longās*: subj. of *removērī*, *incilārī*, and *cōstitutī*; the whole clause is the obj. of *iussit* (§ 183. note).

121 5 *barbaris inūsitatior*: 'more unfamiliar to the barbarians,' i.e. than ordinary ships.

121 8 *latus apertum*: i.e. the right, unprotected by shields; cf. p. 74, l. 4.

121 9 *inde*: i.e. from the ships.

121 10 *tormentis*: see Introd. III. 4.

121 19 *quī*: the antecedent is the subj. understood of *inquit*. For other conspicuous actions of the tenth legion cf. p. 45, l. 2; p. 76, l. 15. — *aquilam*: see Introd. III. 7.

121 20 *obtestātus* etc.: 'appealing to the gods that the action might result favorably to the legion.'

121 23 *ego certē*: 'I, at any rate.' The nominative of personal pronouns is not used except for emphasis. See colored plate, facing p. 120.

121 26 *inter sē*: 'one another.'—*nē* . . . *admitterētur*: a subst. clause, obj. of *cohortāti*.

121 29 *adpropinquāverunt*: the subj. is *mīlitēs* implied.

122 1 CHAP. 26. *tamen*: 'nevertheless,' i.e., in spite of the fact that they fought fiercely.

122 3 *alius aliā ex nāvi*: see § 144. d. 1. Transl. 'men from different ships rallied about whatever standards they happened on.'

122 4 *signis*: dative, depending on *occurrerat* (§ 84).

122 5 *ubi* . . . *cōspexerant*: 'whenever they saw'; cf. similar clauses introduced by *cum* meaning 'whenever,' p. 93, ll. 6 and 17 (§ 196).

122 6 *singulārēs*: 'scattered soldiers.'

122 8 *latere apertō*: see p. 121, l. 8.

122 10 *speculātōria nāvigia*: swift, light boats for reconnoissance.—*quōs*: the antecedent is *hīs*, 'whomsoever he saw hard pressed, to these' etc.

122 11 *simul* (atque): 'as soon as' (§ 193).

122 13 *longius*: 'very far.'

122 14 *equitēs*: concerning these see chap. 23, first sentence.

122 15 *fortūnam*: Cæsar's belief in *fortūna* was real. Cf. p. 44, ll. 18–23.

122 20 CHAP. 27. *Commīus*: cf. p. 117, l. 3.

122 22 *ōrātōris modō*: 'in the character of an envoy.'

122 24 *remīsērunt*: sc. *cum*, i.e. *Commīum*.

122 26 *ignōscerētur*: impers. (§ 83. a).

122 27 *cum* . . . *petissent*: concessive.

123 6 CHAP. 28. *post diem quārtum*: 'three days after,' according to our reckoning (§ 227. g).—*quam*: after the comparative idea implied in *post*.

123 11 *aliae* . . . *aliae*: 'some . . . others.'

123 13 *propius*: adv. with the force of a preposition. Cf. p. 50, l. 2, and p. 56, l. 11.

123 14 *tamen*: i.e. though Britain was so near.—*ancorīs iactis*: concessive; 'since they, though the anchors had been cast, began to fill.'

123 15 *adversā nocte*: 'in the face of the darkness.'—*in altum prōvectae*: 'putting out to sea' (lit. 'into the deep').

123 17 CHAP. 29. *ut esset*: a result clause, subj. of *accidit* (§ 187. II).—*qui diēs*: why does *diēs* stand in the rel. clause?

123 18 *aestūs maximōs*: 'very high tides'; the ocean tides, rising here between twenty and thirty feet, were strange to those who had known only the tideless waters of the Mediterranean.

123 20 *nāvēs*: obj. of *complēbat*.

123 25 *id quod*: *id* is in apposition with the clause *magna . . . facta est*.

123 27 *quibus . . . possent*: a result clause; *quibus* = *ut eis*.

124 1 *quod . . . cōnstābat*: see §188. *a*; 'because it was clear to all.' The subj. of *oportere* is *hiemārī*, and the whole clause is subj. of *cōnstābat*.

124 7 CHAP. 30. *paucitātem militum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscere*: 'inferred the fewness of soldiers from the small size of the camp.'

124 8 *hōc*: 'on this account'; correlative with *quod*.

124 10 *factū*: see § 226. *b*. — *dūxērunt*: 'they considered.' What does *dūcō* usually mean?

124 11 *prohibēre . . . prōducere*: subjs. of *esse*. — *his . . . interclūsīs*: 'if these should be overcome or cut off from return'; abl. abs. expressing condition.

124 15 *dēducere*: i.e. from their farms; cf. p. 123, ll. 3-4.

124 16 CHAP. 31. *At*: regularly introduces a new scene or a new speaker.

124 17 *ex ēventū nāvium*: 'from what had befallen the ships.' — *quod . . . intermiserant*: the clause explains *eō*.

124 18 *fore . . . suspicābātur*: 'began to suspect that what actually happened would happen.' For this use of the past descr. tense see § 154. *c*.

124 20 *quae . . . nāvēs, eārum*: transl. as if *eārum nāvium quae*.

124 21 *aere*: the Romans used the word *aes* for both copper and bronze. These metals were more commonly used than iron in the Roman ships, as they do not rust.

124 22 *quae*: the antecedent of *quae* is *ea*, the subj. understood of *comportārī*.

124 24 *reliquis . . . effecit*: 'he managed so that they could sail tolerably well with the rest' (lit. 'it could be sailed').

125 1 CHAP. 32. *Dum . . . geruntur*: see § 198. I. — *frumentātum*: supine (§ 226. *a*).

125 5 *statiōne*: such outposts or pickets were always on duty to guard the camp, usually a cohort at each gate.

125 6 *quam cōsuētūdō ferret*: 'than usual.'

125 8 *aliquid . . . initum (esse)*: inf. clause in apposition with *id*.

125 9 *cōnsili*: part. gen.

125 11 *armārī*: 'to arm themselves.'

125 15 *ūna*: 'only one.' — *suspiciātī*: as present; 'supposing.' Cf. *arbitrātus*, p. 101, l. 18 and note.

125 17 *dispersōs . . . occupātōs*: agreeing with *nostrōs* understood, the obj. of *adortī*.

125 20 CHAP. 33. *ex essedīs*: these chariots held several men each besides the driver.

125 21 *equōrum*: obj. gen.; 'the very terror that the horses cause.'

125 26 *expeditum . . . receptum*: 'a ready retreat.'

126 3 *incitātōs equōs sustinēre*: 'to check their horses in full gallop.'

126 5 *iugō*: 'the yoke,' resting on the necks of the horses and supporting the end of the pole or tongue (*iēmō*).

126 7 CHAP. 34. *Quibus rēbus*: 'by means of these tactics.'—*perturbātis nostris*: dative of indir. obj. after *tulit*.

126 13 *qui*: i.e. the Britons; the antecedent is the subj. understood of *discessērunt*.

126 16 *continērent . . . prohibērent*: subjvs. of description.

126 19 *sui liberandi*: 'of setting themselves free' (§ 224. c).

126 23 CHAP. 35. *idem . . . fore*: 'that the same thing would happen'; explained by the result clause *ut . . . effugerent*.

126 25 *Commius*: cf. p. 117, l. 3, and p. 122, l. 20.

127 1 *tantō spatiō . . . quantum*: 'over as much ground as'; *spatiō* is abl. (§ 106. a).

127 10 CHAP. 36. *propinquā diē aequinocti*: 'since the time of the equinox (in September, usually a stormy season) was near.'

127 11 *infirmis . . . subiciendam*: 'that unseaworthy ships should be exposed to storms' (lit. 'that with unseaworthy ships the voyage should be exposed to storms'). *Nāvibus* is the abl. of attendant circumstance (§ 112).

127 19 *quōs reliquae*: obj. and subj. respectively of *capere potuērunt* understood.

127 21 CHAP. 37. *Quibus ex nāvibus*: the *onerāriae duae* mentioned in l. 18.

127 22 *in castra*: i.e. of which Sulpicius Rufus had command (p. 118, ll. 17 ff.).

127 24 *primō*: adv.

127 25 *si . . . nōllent*: attracted into the subjv. from the present ind. (§ 214).

128 1 *orbe factō*: 'forming a circle.' The arrangement was somewhat like that of the modern hollow square.

129 3 CHAP. 38. *siccitātēs*: the plur. is used because many swamps are referred to.

129 4 *quō sē reciperent*: a rel. clause of description (§ 177).—*quō perfugiō*: i.e. *palūdum*.—*superiōre annō*: cf. p. 101, ll. 22–23.

129 18 *supplicātiō*: cf. p. 82, ll. 9 ff., where the *supplicātiō* of fifteen days was said to exceed in time any ever granted before.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Before beginning an analysis of the passages in indirect discourse study carefully §§ 202–213 in the Grammar.

NOTES ON THE PASSAGES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE IN BOOKS I AND II

In general, in analyzing constructions in indirect discourse, first be sure to get the meaning of the passage; next consider what the direct quotation would be; and then determine the reasons for the changes in mood and tense.

In the analysis of the following passages it will be well for the pupil to compare carefully the passages in indirect discourse with the corresponding passages of the direct as given in the first two books of this text.

BOOK I

225 1 CHAP. 13. **Si . . . voluisset**: in the dir. disc. of this statement (p. 20, l. 17), the subj. of the main clause is *Helvētiī* and the preds. are *ibunt* and *erunt*. These verbs become fut. inf. (§ 204), while *Helvētiī* becomes accusative, *Helvētiōs* (§ 92), with which the fut. participles in the inf. (*itūrōs, futūrōs*) agree.

The first subord. verb, *faciet*, becomes subjv. (§ 208); and the tense is past (§ 209 and note), because the main verb on which the whole passage depends is the perf. *ēgit*, a secondary tense (§§ 161, 162). On the same principle the other subord. verbs, *cōstitueris* and *volueris*, are changed to the subjv. mood (§ 208) and the past perfect tense (§ 209 and note).

225 4 **sīn bellō . . . Helvētiōrum**: in the dir. disc. (p. 20, l. 20), the main verb is the impv. *reminiscere*, which becomes subjv. (§ 205), and takes the past by the rules of sequence.

225 6 **Quod . . . dēspiceret**: in the dir. disc. (p. 20, l. 22), the main verb is *nōtī*, with the infis. *tribuere* and *dēspicere*. These expressions are changed to past subjvs., *tribueret* and *dēspiceret*, with *nē* (§§ 162, 206). The subord. verbs *adortus es* and *trānsierant* are changed regularly to the past perfect subjv.; *possent*, being already subjv. (§ 194. 6), remains in the same form.

225 9 *ipsōs . . . sē*: both these pronouns were *nōs* in the dir. disc. (p. 20, l. 24); for their equivalence to each other see § 136. *a*. *Ipsōs* is essentially emphatic, *sē* not especially so; hence *ipsōs* is appropriate to the emphatic contrast with *suae*; moreover, *sē* referring to the Helvetii could not without confusion have been used in the same sentence with *suae* referring to Cæsar. — *sē . . . nīterentur*: in the dir. disc. (p. 20, l. 24), the main verb is *didicimus*, which is changed regularly to the inf. *didicisse*. The subord. verbs, *contendāmus* and *nīdāmur*, are already subjvs. (§ 179) and remain in the same mood, but are changed from the present to the past by the rule of sequence.

225 11 *Quā rē . . . prōderet*: in the dir. disc. (p. 21, l. 2), the main verb is *nōlī*, which with *committere* is changed to *nē committeret* (cf. note on l. 6). The subord. verb *cōstitutimus* becomes past perfect subjv. regularly; while *capiat* and *prōdat*, being already in the subjv. (§ 187. I), remain in the same mood, but are changed to the past by the rule of sequence.

225 18 CHAP. 14. *fuisse*: this represents the conclusion of a condition contrary to fact in past time, and stands for *fuit* in the dir. disc. If the dir. form had been *fuisset*, as we might have expected (§ 199. III. *b*), we should have had *futūrum fuisse* in the indir. (§ 213. *a*). — *dēceptum*: sc. *esse*.

225 19 *commissum*: sc. *esse*. This depends on *intellegeret*, a verb of thinking, and is thus in indir. disc. within indir. disc.

225 24 *posse*: a main verb in a rhetorical question (§ 207. II. *a*).

226 4 *doleant*: we might have expected *dolērent*; see § 162 and § 163. *a*. The same principle applies to *velint*, which might have been *vellent*; it applies also to the remaining subord. verbs in the chapter.

226 14 CHAP. 17. Note that most of the subord. verbs in this chapter would be in the subjv. in the dir. disc. All these, of course, simply remain in the subjv., subject to the rule for the sequence of tenses.

227 12 CHAP. 18. *Sī quid accadat*: a less probable fut. condition (§ 199. II. *b*) in indir. disc. In indir. disc. the more probable and the less probable fut. condition have the same form and cannot be distinguished (§§ 210, 211).

227 23 CHAP. 20. *Quod sī . . . accidisset*: do not mistake this for a condition contrary to fact. The dir. form was *acciderit*, 'if anything shall have happened' (§ 199. II. *a*).

227 25 *futūrum (esse) utī . . . āverterentur*: see § 212.

228 6 CHAP. 31. *Nōn minus* etc.: the verb of saying is easily understood (§ 203. *a*).

229 7 *Futūrum esse . . . utī . . . pellerentur*: see § 212.

229 32 CHAP. 32. *velut sī cōram adesset*: be careful not to mistake this for a condition contrary to fact. The dir. disc. was *velut sī . . . adsit* (§ 200 and note).

230 5 CHAP. 34. *ipsī*: for *mīhi* of the dir. disc. For this use of the intensive pronoun for the reflexive see note on p. 225, l. 9, and § 136. *a*.

230 6 *ventūrum fuisse*: the regular form for the conclusion of a condition contrary to fact in indir. disc. (§ 213. a).

230 14 CHAP. 35. Throughout this chapter Cæsar is speaking to the ambassadors. The references to Ariovistus, therefore, are in the third person.

230 25 *Sī . . . fēcisset*: a more probable fut. condition representing the fut. perf. ind. in dir. disc.

231 9 CHAP. 36. *quī . . . faceret*: note that this would be *faciat* in the dir. disc. (§ 190).

231 26 CHAP. 40. *iudicāret*: a deliberative question in the dir. disc. (§ 172. d and note); *verērentur* and *dēspērārent* following are in the same construction; for the change to indir. disc. see § 207. II. b.

232 12 *Sī . . . commovēret*: a non-committal condition in indir. disc. (§§ 199. I. a, 210).

BOOK II

236 28 CHAP. 14. *inciderint*: in dir. disc. this would be *incidērunt* in a past non-committal condition (§ 199. III. a).

237 3 CHAP. 15. *dēdidissent*: this would be subjv. also in the dir. disc.; so also *prōiēcissent* (§ 190).



From the painting by Sir Edward Poynter
THE IDES OF MARCH
(See page 8)

ESSENTIALS OF GRAMMAR

A. DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS

NOUNS

1. Nouns are inflected in five declensions, distinguished by the final letter of the stem and by the termination of the genitive singular.

FIRST DECLENSION — **Ā**-stems, Gen. Sing. **-ae**

SECOND DECLENSION — **O**-stems, Gen. Sing. **-ī**

THIRD DECLENSION — Consonant stems and **I**-stems, Gen. Sing. **-is**

FOURTH DECLENSION — **U**-stems, Gen. Sing. **-ūs**

FIFTH DECLENSION — **Ē**-stems, Gen. Sing. **-ēī**

a. The *base* of a noun is found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular. The *stem* is formed from the base by adding to it the distinguishing vowel of the declension. Observe below the *base* and *stem* of *domina*.

2. FIRST DECLENSION. **Ā**-STEMS

domina, lady STEM *dominā-* BASE *domin-*

SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	TERMINATIONS		TERMINATIONS	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>domina</i>	-a	<i>dominae</i>	-ae
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>dominae</i>	-ae	<i>dominārum</i>	-ārum
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>dominae</i>	-ae	<i>dominis</i>	-is
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>dominam</i>	-am	<i>dominās</i>	-ās
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>dominā</i>	-ā	<i>dominis</i>	-is

a. *Dea* and *filia* have the termination **-abus** in the dative and ablative plural.

3.

SECOND DECLENSION. O-STEMS

a. MASCULINES IN -us

dominus, master STEM domino- BASE domin-

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
		TERMINATIONS			TERMINATIONS
Nom.	dominus	-us	dominī		-ī
Gen.	dominī	-ī	dominōrum		-ōrum
Dat.	dominō	-ō	dominīs		-īs
Acc.	dominum	-um	dominōs		-ōs
Abl.	dominō	-ō	dominīs		-īs

1. Nouns in -us of the second declension have the termination -e in the vocative singular, as *domine*.

2. Proper names in -ius, and filius, end in -ī in the vocative singular, and the accent rests on the penult, as *Vergī'li*, fili.

b. NEUTERS IN -um

pilum, spear STEM pilo- BASE pil-

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
		TERMINATIONS			TERMINATIONS
Nom.	pilum	-um	pila		-a
Gen.	pilī	-ī	pilōrum		-ōrum
Dat.	pilō	-ō	pilīs		-īs
Acc.	pilum	-um	pila		-a
Abl.	pilō	-ō	pilīs		-īs

1. Masculines in -ius and neuters in -ium end in -ī in the genitive singular, not in -iī, and the accent rests on the penult.

c. MASCULINES IN -er AND -ir

puer, boy ager, field vir, man
 STEMS puero- agro- viro-
 BASES puer- agr-

	SINGULAR			TERMINATIONS
Nom.	puer	ager	vir	—
Gen.	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
Dat.	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō
Acc.	puerum	agrum	virum	-um
Abl.	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō

PLURAL				TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
<i>Gen.</i>	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	-ōs
<i>Abl.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs

4.

THIRD DECLENSION

CLASSIFICATION	I. CONSONANT STEMS	1. Stems that add <i>-s</i> to the base to form the nominative singular: masculines and feminines only. 2. Stems that add no termination in the nominative singular: <i>a.</i> masculines and feminines; <i>b.</i> neuters.
	II. <i>I</i> -STEMS	Masculines, feminines, and neuters.

5.

I. CONSONANT STEMS

1. *Nouns that add -s to the base to form the nominative singular: masculines and feminines only*

	princeps, m., chief	mīles, m., soldier	lapis, m., stone	
BASES OR STEMS	} princip-	milit-	lapid-	
SINGULAR				
			TERMINATIONS	
Nom.	princeps	mīles ¹	lapis ¹	-s
Gen.	principis	militis	lapidis	-is
Dat.	principi	militi	lapidi	-ī
Acc.	principem	militem	lapidem	-em
Abl.	principe	militē	lapide	-e
PLURAL				
Nom.	principēs	militēs	lapidēs	-ēs
Gen.	principum	militum	lapidum	-um
Dat.	principibus	militibus	lapidibus	-ibus
Acc.	principēs	militēs	lapidēs	-ēs
Abl.	principibus	militibus	lapidibus	-ibus

¹ In the nominative a final *-t* or *-d* of the stem is dropped before *-s*.

	<i>rēx</i> , m., <i>king</i>	<i>iūdex</i> , m., <i>judge</i>	<i>virtūs</i> , f., <i>virtue</i>	
BASES OR STEMS	<i>rēg-</i>	<i>iūdic-</i>	<i>virtūt-</i>	
	SINGULAR			TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>rēx</i> ¹	<i>iūdex</i> ¹	<i>virtūs</i> ¹	-s
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rēgis</i>	<i>iūdicis</i>	<i>virtūtis</i>	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rēgī</i>	<i>iūdicī</i>	<i>virtūtī</i>	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rēgem</i>	<i>iūdicem</i>	<i>virtutem</i>	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rēge</i>	<i>iūdice</i>	<i>virtute</i>	-e
	PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>rēgēs</i>	<i>iūdicēs</i>	<i>virtutēs</i>	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rēgum</i>	<i>iūdicum</i>	<i>virtutum</i>	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rēgibus</i>	<i>iūdicibus</i>	<i>virtutibus</i>	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rēgēs</i>	<i>iūdicēs</i>	<i>virtutēs</i>	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rēgibus</i>	<i>iūdicibus</i>	<i>virtutibus</i>	-ibus

2. Nouns that have no termination in the nominative singular

a. MASCULINES AND FEMININES

	<i>cōsul</i> , m., <i>consul</i>	<i>legiō</i> , f., <i>legion</i>	<i>ōrdō</i> , m., <i>row</i>	<i>pater</i> , m., <i>father</i>	
BASES OR STEMS	<i>consul-</i>	<i>legiōn-</i>	<i>ōrdin-</i>	<i>patr-</i>	
	SINGULAR				TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>cōsul</i>	<i>legiō</i> ²	<i>ōrdō</i> ²	<i>pater</i>	—
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cōsulis</i>	<i>legiōnis</i>	<i>ōrdinis</i>	<i>patriis</i>	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cōsulī</i>	<i>legiōnī</i>	<i>ōrdinī</i>	<i>patri</i>	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>cōsulem</i>	<i>legiōnem</i>	<i>ōrdinem</i>	<i>patrem</i>	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>cōsule</i>	<i>legiōne</i>	<i>ōrdine</i>	<i>patre</i>	-e
	PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>cōsulēs</i>	<i>legiōnēs</i>	<i>ōrdinēs</i>	<i>patrēs</i>	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cōsulum</i>	<i>legiōnum</i>	<i>ōrdinum</i>	<i>patrum</i>	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cōsulibus</i>	<i>legiōnibus</i>	<i>ōrdinibus</i>	<i>patribus</i>	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>cōsulēs</i>	<i>legiōnēs</i>	<i>ōrdinēs</i>	<i>patrēs</i>	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>cōsulibus</i>	<i>legiōnibus</i>	<i>ōrdinibus</i>	<i>patribus</i>	-ibus

¹ In the nominative a final -c or -g of the stem unites with -s and forms -x; and a final -t or -d is dropped.

² Stems in -in and -ōn drop -n and end in -s in the nominative.

b. NEUTERS

BASES OR STEMS		<i>flūmen</i> , n., <i>river</i>	<i>tempus</i> , n., <i>time</i>	<i>opus</i> , n., <i>work</i>	<i>caput</i> , n., <i>head</i>
		<i>flūmin-</i>	<i>tempor-</i>	<i>oper-</i>	<i>capit-</i>
SINGULAR					TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>flūmen</i>	<i>tempus</i>	<i>opus</i>	<i>caput</i>	—
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>flūminis</i>	<i>temporis</i>	<i>operis</i>	<i>capitis</i>	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>flūminī</i>	<i>temporī</i>	<i>operī</i>	<i>capitī</i>	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>flūmen</i>	<i>tempus</i>	<i>opus</i>	<i>caput</i>	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>flūmine</i>	<i>tempore</i>	<i>opere</i>	<i>capite</i>	-e
PLURAL					TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>flūmina</i>	<i>tempora</i>	<i>opera</i>	<i>capita</i>	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>flūminum</i>	<i>temporum</i>	<i>operum</i>	<i>capitum</i>	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>flūminibus</i>	<i>temporibus</i>	<i>operibus</i>	<i>capitibus</i>	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>flūmina</i>	<i>tempora</i>	<i>opera</i>	<i>capita</i>	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>flūminibus</i>	<i>temporibus</i>	<i>operibus</i>	<i>capitibus</i>	-ibus

NOTE. Most stems in -er and -or have -us in the nominative singular.

6.

II. I-STEMS

a. MASCULINES AND FEMININES

BASES		<i>caedēs</i> , f., <i>slaughter</i>	<i>hostis</i> , m., <i>enemy</i>	<i>urbs</i> , f., <i>city</i>	<i>cliēs</i> , m., <i>retainer</i>
STEMS		<i>caedi-</i>	<i>hosti-</i>	<i>urbi-</i>	<i>clienti-</i>
BASES		<i>caed-</i>	<i>host-</i>	<i>urb-</i>	<i>client-</i>
SINGULAR					TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>caedēs</i>	<i>hostis</i>	<i>urbs</i>	<i>cliēs</i>	-s, -is, or -ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>caedis</i>	<i>hostis</i>	<i>urbis</i>	<i>clientis</i>	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>caedī</i>	<i>hostī</i>	<i>urbī</i>	<i>clientī</i>	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>caedem</i>	<i>hostem</i>	<i>urbem</i>	<i>clientem</i>	-em (-im)
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>caede</i>	<i>hoste</i>	<i>urbe</i>	<i>cliente</i>	-e (-ī)
PLURAL					TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>caedēs</i>	<i>hostēs</i>	<i>urbēs</i>	<i>clientēs</i>	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>caedium</i>	<i>hostium</i>	<i>urbium</i>	<i>clientium</i>	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>caedibus</i>	<i>hostibus</i>	<i>urbibus</i>	<i>clientibus</i>	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>caedīs, -ēs</i>	<i>hostīs, -ēs</i>	<i>urbīs, -ēs</i>	<i>clientīs, -ēs</i>	-īs, -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>caedibus</i>	<i>hostibus</i>	<i>urbibus</i>	<i>clientibus</i>	-ibus

1. *Avis*, *civis*, *finis*, *ignis*, *nāvis*, have the abl. sing. in -ī or -e.

2. *Turris* has accusative *turrim* and ablative *turri* or *turre*.

b. NEUTERS

	<i>insigne, n., decoration</i>	<i>animal, n., animal</i>	<i>calcar, n., spur</i>	
STEMS	insigni-	animāli-	calcāri-	
BASES	insign-	animāl-	calcār-	
SINGULAR			TERMINATIONS	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>insigne</i>	<i>animal</i>	<i>calcar</i>	-e or —
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>insignis</i>	<i>animālis</i>	<i>calcāris</i>	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>insignī</i>	<i>animālī</i>	<i>calcārī</i>	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>insigne</i>	<i>animal</i>	<i>calcar</i>	-e or —
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>insignī</i>	<i>animālī</i>	<i>calcārī</i>	-ī
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>insignia</i>	<i>animālia</i>	<i>calcāria</i>	-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>insignium</i>	<i>animālīum</i>	<i>calcārium</i>	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>insignibus</i>	<i>animālībus</i>	<i>calcāribus</i>	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>insignia</i>	<i>animālia</i>	<i>calcāria</i>	-ia
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>insignibus</i>	<i>animālībus</i>	<i>calcāribus</i>	-ibus

7. THE FOURTH DECLENSION. U-STEMS

	adventus, m., arrival	cornū, n., horn		
STEM	adventu-	BASE advent-	STEM	cornu- BASE corn-
				TERMINATIONS
		SINGULAR		MASC. NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	adventus	cornū	-us	-ū
<i>Gen.</i>	adventūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
<i>Dat.</i>	adventuī (ū)	cornū	-uī (ū)	-ū
<i>Acc.</i>	adventum	cornū	-um	-ū
<i>Abl.</i>	adventū	cornū	-ū	-ū
		PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	adventūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Gen.</i>	adventuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	adventibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	adventūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Abl.</i>	adventibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus

8. THE FIFTH DECLENSION. *Ē*-STEMS

	<i>diēs</i> , m., <i>day</i>		<i>rēs</i> , f., <i>thing</i>
STEM	<i>diē-</i>	BASE <i>di-</i>	STEM <i>rē-</i>
			BASE <i>r-</i>
		SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>diēī</i>	<i>rēī</i>	<i>-ēī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>diēī</i>	<i>rēī</i>	<i>-ēī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>diem</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>-em</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>diē</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>-ē</i>
		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>rērum</i>	<i>-ērum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>

9. SPECIAL PARADIGMS

	<i>deus</i> , m., <i>god</i>	<i>domus</i> , f., <i>house</i>	<i>vis</i> , f., <i>strength</i>	<i>iter</i> , n., <i>way</i>
STEMS	<i>deo-</i>	<i>domu-</i>	<i>vī-</i> and <i>vīri-</i>	<i>iter-</i> and <i>itiner-</i>
BASES	<i>de-</i>	<i>dom-</i>	<i>v-</i> and <i>vīr-</i>	<i>iter-</i> and <i>itiner-</i>
		SINGULAR		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>deus</i>	<i>domus</i>	<i>vis</i>	<i>iter</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>dei</i>	<i>domūs</i>	<i>vis</i> (rare)	<i>itineris</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>deō</i>	<i>domui</i> , <i>-ō</i>	<i>vī</i> (rare)	<i>itinerī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>deum</i>	<i>domum</i>	<i>vim</i>	<i>iter</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>deō</i>	<i>domō</i> , <i>-ū</i>	<i>vī</i>	<i>itinere</i>
		PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>dei</i> , <i>dī</i>	<i>domūs</i>	<i>vīrēs</i>	<i>itinerā</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>deōrum</i> , <i>deum</i>	<i>domuum</i> , <i>-ōrum</i>	<i>vīrium</i>	<i>itinerum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>deīs</i> , <i>dīs</i>	<i>domibus</i>	<i>vīribus</i>	<i>itineribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>deōs</i>	<i>domōs</i> , <i>-ūs</i>	<i>vīrīs</i> , <i>-ēs</i>	<i>itinerā</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>deīs</i> , <i>dīs</i>	<i>domibus</i>	<i>vīribus</i>	<i>itineribus</i>

a. The vocative singular of *deus* is like the nominative.

b. The locative of *domus* is *domī*.

ADJECTIVES

10. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. O-STEMS AND Ā-STEMS

a. ADJECTIVES IN -us

bonus, *good* STEMS bono- m. and n., bonā- f. BASE bon-

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

b. ADJECTIVES IN -er

liber, *free* STEMS libero- m. and n., liberā- f. BASE liber-

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	liber	libera	liberum
<i>Gen.</i>	liberī	liberae	liberī
<i>Dat.</i>	liberō	liberae	liberō
<i>Acc.</i>	liberum	liberam	liberum
<i>Abl.</i>	liberō	liberā	liberō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Gen.</i>	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
<i>Acc.</i>	liberōs	liberās	libera
<i>Abl.</i>	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

pulcher, pretty STEMS **pulchro-** m. and n., **pulchrā-** f. BASE **pulchr-**

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

11.

THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

alius, another STEMS **alio-** m. and n., **aliā-** f. BASE **ali-**

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	alius	alia	aliud	aliī	aliae	alia
<i>Gen.</i>	alius	aliūs	aīus	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	aliī	aliī	aliī	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
<i>Acc.</i>	aliūm	aliām	aliud	aliōs	aliās	alia
<i>Abl.</i>	aliō	aliā	aliō	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs

ūnus, one, only

STEMS **ūno-** m. and n., **ūnā-** f.

BASE **ūn-**

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	ūnōs	ūnās	ūna
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs

a. So also **ūllus, nūllus, sōlus, tōtus, alter (altera, alterum), uter (utra, utrum), neuter (neutra, neutrum).**

12. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. I-STEMS

I. THREE ENDINGS

	<i>ācer, ācris, ācre, keen, eager</i>			STEM <i>ācri-</i>	BASE <i>ācr-</i>	
	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācris, -ēs</i>	<i>ācris, -ēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

II. TWO ENDINGS

	<i>omnis, omne, every, all</i>		STEM <i>omni-</i>	BASE <i>omn-</i>	
	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnēs</i>	<i>omnia</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omnium</i>	<i>omnium</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>omnem</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnis, -ēs</i>	<i>omnia</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	

III. ONE ENDING

	<i>pār, equal</i>		STEM <i>pari-</i>	BASE <i>par-</i>	
	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>pār</i>	<i>pār</i>	<i>parēs</i>	<i>paria</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>paris</i>	<i>paris</i>	<i>parium</i>	<i>parium</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>parī</i>	<i>parī</i>	<i>paribus</i>	<i>paribus</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>parem</i>	<i>pār</i>	<i>paris, -ēs</i>	<i>paria</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>parī</i>	<i>parī</i>	<i>paribus</i>	<i>paribus</i>	

I. Observe that all i-stem adjectives have -ī in the ablative singular.

13.

PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

amāns, loving STEM *amanti-* BASE *amant-*

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>amāns</i>	<i>amāns</i>	<i>amantēs</i>	<i>amantia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>amantis</i>	<i>amantis</i>	<i>amantium</i>	<i>amantium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>amantī</i>	<i>amantī</i>	<i>amantibus</i>	<i>amantibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>amantem</i>	<i>amāns</i>	<i>amantis, -ēs</i>	<i>amantia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>amante, -ī</i>	<i>amante, -ī</i>	<i>amantibus</i>	<i>amantibus</i>

iēns, going STEM *ienti-, eunti-* BASE *ient-, eunt-*

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>iēns</i>	<i>iēns</i>	<i>euntēs</i>	<i>euntia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>euntis</i>	<i>euntis</i>	<i>euntium</i>	<i>euntium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>euntī</i>	<i>euntī</i>	<i>euntibus</i>	<i>euntibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>euntem</i>	<i>iēns</i>	<i>euntis, -ēs</i>	<i>euntia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eunte, -ī</i>	<i>eunte, -ī</i>	<i>euntibus</i>	<i>euntibus</i>

14.

REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE

COMPARATIVE

SUPERLATIVE

	MASC.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM. NEUT.
<i>altus</i> (alto-)		<i>altior</i>	<i>altius</i>	<i>altissimus</i>	<i>-a -um</i>
<i>liber</i> (libero-)		<i>liberior</i>	<i>liberius</i>	<i>liberrimus</i>	<i>-a -um</i>
<i>pulcher</i> (pulchro-)		<i>pulchrior</i>	<i>pulchrius</i>	<i>pulcherrimus</i>	<i>-a -um</i>
<i>audāx</i> (audāci-)		<i>audāclor</i>	<i>audācius</i>	<i>audācissimus</i>	<i>-a -um</i>
<i>brevis</i> (brevi-)		<i>brevior</i>	<i>brevius</i>	<i>brevissimus</i>	<i>-a -um</i>
<i>ācer</i> (ācri-)		<i>ācrior</i>	<i>ācrius</i>	<i>ācerrimus</i>	<i>-a -um</i>

15.

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

altior, higher

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>altior</i>	<i>altius</i>	<i>altiōrēs</i>	<i>altiōra</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>altiōris</i>	<i>altiōris</i>	<i>altiōrum</i>	<i>altiōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>altiōrī</i>	<i>altiōrī</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>altiōrem</i>	<i>altius</i>	<i>altiōrēs</i>	<i>altiōra</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>altiōre</i>	<i>altiōre</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>

		<i>plūs, more</i>		
<i>Nom.</i>	—	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrēs</i>	<i>plūra</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	—	<i>plūris</i>	<i>plūrium</i>	<i>plūrium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	—	—	<i>plūribus</i>	<i>plūribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	—	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūris (-ēs)</i>	<i>plūra</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	—	<i>plūre</i>	<i>plūribus</i>	<i>plūribus</i>

16. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>bonus, -a, -um, good</i>	<i>melior, melius, better</i>	<i>optimus, -a, -um, best</i>
<i>malus, -a, -um, bad</i>	<i>peior, peius, worse</i>	<i>pessimus, -a, -um, worst</i>
<i>magnus, -a, -um, great</i>	<i>maior, maius, greater</i>	<i>maximus, -a, -um, greatest</i>
<i>multus, -a, -um, much</i>	—, <i>plūs, more</i>	<i>plūrimus, -a, -um, most</i>
<i>parvus, -a, -um, small</i>	<i>minor, minus, smaller</i>	<i>minimus, -a, -um, smallest</i>
<i>senex, senis, old</i>	<i>senior</i>	<i>maximus nātū</i>
<i>iuvenis, -e, young</i>	<i>iūnior</i>	<i>minimus nātū</i>
<i>vetus, veteris, old</i>	<i>vetustior, -ius</i>	<i>veterrimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>facilis, -e, easy</i>	<i>facilior, -ius</i>	<i>facillimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>difficilis, -e, difficult</i>	<i>difficilior, -ius</i>	<i>difficillimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>similis, -e, similar</i>	<i>similior, -ius</i>	<i>simillimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>dissimilis, -e, dissimilar</i>	<i>dissimilior, -ius</i>	<i>dissimillimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>humilis, -e, low</i>	<i>humilior, -ius</i>	<i>humillimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>gracilis, -e, slender</i>	<i>gracilior, -ius</i>	<i>gracillimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>exterus, outward</i>	<i>exterior, outer, exterior</i>	<i>extrēmus</i> } <i>outermost,</i>
		<i>extimus</i> } <i>last</i>
<i>inferus, below</i>	<i>inferior, lower</i>	<i>infimus</i> } <i>lowest</i>
		<i>imus</i> } <i>lowest</i>
<i>posterus, following</i>	<i>posterior, later</i>	<i>postrēmus</i> } <i>last</i>
		<i>postumus</i> } <i>last</i>
<i>superus, above</i>	<i>superior, higher</i>	<i>suprēmus</i> } <i>highest</i>
		<i>summus</i> } <i>highest</i>
[<i>cis, citrā, on this side</i>]	<i>citerior, hither</i>	<i>citimus, hithermost</i>
[<i>in, intrā, in, within</i>]	<i>interior, inner</i>	<i>intimus, inmost</i>
[<i>prae, prō, before</i>]	<i>prior, former</i>	<i>primus, first</i>
[<i>prope, near</i>]	<i>propior, nearer</i>	<i>proximus, next</i>
[<i>ultrā, beyond</i>]	<i>ulterior, further</i>	<i>ultimus, furthest</i>

17. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cārē (cārus), <i>dearly</i>	cārius	cārissimē
miserē (miser), <i>wretchedly</i>	miserius	miserimē
ācritē (ācer), <i>sharply</i>	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile (facilis), <i>easily</i>	facilius	facillimē

18. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
diū, <i>long, a long time</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
bene (bonus), <i>well</i>	melius, <i>better</i>	optimē, <i>best</i>
male (malus), <i>ill</i>	peius, <i>worse</i>	pessimē, <i>worst</i>
magnopere, <i>greatly</i>	magis, <i>more</i>	maximē, <i>most</i>
multum (multus), <i>much</i>	plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimum, <i>most</i>
parum, <i>little</i>	minus, <i>less</i>	minimē, <i>least</i>
saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius	saepissimē

19. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES

The cardinal numerals are indeclinable excepting ūnus, duo, trēs, the hundreds above one hundred, and mille used as a noun. The ordinals are declined like bonus, -a, -um.

CARDINALS (How many)	ORDINALS (In what order)
1, ūnus, -a, -um <i>one</i>	prīmus, -a, -um <i>first</i>
2, duo, duae, duo <i>two</i>	secundus (or alter) <i>second</i>
3, trēs, tria <i>three,</i>	tertius <i>third,</i>
4, quattuor <i>etc.</i>	quārtus <i>etc.</i>
5, quīque	quīntus
6, sex	sextus
7, septem	septīmus
8, octō	octāvus
9, novem	nōnus
10, decem	decīmus
11, ūndecim	ūndecīmus
12, duodecim	duodecīmus
13, tredecim (decem (et) trēs)	tertius decīmus
14, quattuordecim	quārtus decīmus

CARDINALS

15, quīndecim
16, sēdecim
17, septendecim
18, duodēvigintī (octōdecim)
19, ūndēvigintī (novendecim)
20, vigintī
21, { vigintī ūnus <i>or</i> ūnus et vigintī, etc.
30, trīgintā
40, quadrāgintā
50, quīnquāgintā
60, sexāgintā
70, septuāgintā
80, octōgintā
90, nōnāgintā
100, centum
101, centum (et) ūnus, etc.
120, centum (et) vigintī
121, centum (et) vigintī ūnus, etc.
200, ducentī, -ae, -a
300, trecentī
400, quadringentī
500, quīngentī
600, sexcentī
700, septingentī
800, octingentī
900, nōngentī
1000, mille

ORDINALS

quīntus decimus
sextus decimus
septimus decimus
duodēvicēsimus
ūndēvicēsimus
vicēsimus
{ vicēsimus prīmus <i>or</i> ūnus et vicēsimus, etc.
tricēsimus
quadrāgēsimus
quīnquāgēsimus
sexāgēsimus
septuāgēsimus
octōgēsimus
nōnāgēsimus
centēsimus
centēsimus (et) prīmus, etc.
centēsimus vicēsimus
centēsimus (et) vicēsimus prīmus
ducentēsimus
trecentēsimus
quadringentēsimus
quīngentēsimus
sexcentēsimus
septingentēsimus
octingentēsimus
nōngentēsimus
mīllēsimus

20. Declension of *duo*, *two*, *trēs*, *three*, and *mille*, *a thousand*.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria	mille	milia
<i>G.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	mille	miliūm
<i>D.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	mille	milibus
<i>A.</i>	duōs <i>or</i> duo	duās	duo	trīs <i>or</i> trēs	tria	mille	milia
<i>A.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	mille	milibus

NOTE. *Mille* is used in the plural as a noun with a modifying genitive, and is occasionally so used in the nominative and accusative singular. For the declension of *ūnus* cf. § 11.

PRONOUNS

21.

PERSONAL

FIRST PERSON			SECOND PERSON		
SING. <i>ego, I</i> ; PLUR. <i>nōs, we</i>			SING. <i>tū, thou, you</i> ; PLUR. <i>vōs, you</i>		
	SING.	PLUR.		SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ego</i>	<i>nōs</i>		<i>tū</i>	<i>vōs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>meī</i>	<i>nostrum, -trī</i>		<i>tuī</i>	<i>vestrum, -trī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mihi</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>		<i>tibi</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>nōs</i>		<i>tē</i>	<i>vōs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>		<i>tē</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>

a. The demonstrative pronoun *is, ea, id* is regularly used as the personal pronoun of the third person.

22.

REFLEXIVE

FIRST PERSON			SECOND PERSON			THIRD PERSON		
SING. <i>me, myself</i>			SING. <i>thee, you, yourself</i>			SING. <i>him(her,it)self</i>		
PLUR. <i>us, ourselves</i>			PLUR. <i>you, yourselves</i>			PLUR. <i>themselves</i>		
	SING.	PLUR.		SING.	PLUR.		SING. AND PLUR.	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>meī</i>	<i>nostrum, -trī</i>		<i>tuī</i>	<i>vestrum, -trī</i>		<i>suī</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mihi</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>		<i>tibi</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>		<i>sibi</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>nōs</i>		<i>tē</i>	<i>vōs</i>		<i>sē, sēsē</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>		<i>tē</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>		<i>sē, sēsē</i>	

NOTE. Reflexive pronouns have no nominative.

23.

POSSESSIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

The possessive pronominal adjectives *my, mine, your, yours*, etc. are declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions.

SINGULAR		
<i>1st Pers. meus, mea, meum</i>		<i>my, mine</i>
<i>2d Pers. tuus, tua, tuum</i>		<i>your, yours</i>
<i>3d Pers. suus, sua, suum</i>		<i>his (own), her (own), its (own)</i>
PLURAL		
<i>1st Pers. noster, nostra, nostrum</i>		<i>our, ours</i>
<i>2d Pers. vester, vestra, vestrum</i>		<i>your, yours</i>
<i>3d Pers. suus, sua, suum</i>		<i>their (own), theirs</i>

NOTE. *Meus* has the irregular vocative singular masculine *mī*; as, *mī fili*, *O my son*.

24. *Suus* is used only as a reflexive, referring to the subject; as, *puer patrem suum videt*, *the boy sees his (own) father*; *agricolae agrōs suos amant*, *the farmers love their (own) fields*.

When not reflexive, *his*, *her*, and *its* are usually expressed by *eius*, the genitive singular of *is*, *ea*, *id*; and *their* by *eōrum* (masculine and neuter) and *eārum* (feminine), the genitive plural of *is*, *ea*, *id*. Thus:

puer patrem eius videt, *the boy sees his (not his own) father*
agricolae agrōs eōrum amant, *the farmers love their (not their own) fields*

25.**INTENSIVE AND DEMONSTRATIVE**

These pronouns belong to the first and second declensions, but have the pronominal endings *-ius* and *-ī* in the genitive and dative singular.

	— ipse, self					
	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsī'us	ipsī'us	ipsī'us	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

hic, this (here), he

<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

iste, this, that (of yours), he

<i>Nom.</i>	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
<i>Gen.</i>	istī'us	istī'us	istī'us	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
<i>Acc.</i>	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
<i>Abl.</i>	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

ille, that (yonder), he

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illī'us	illī'us	illī'us	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illī	illī	illī	illis	illis	illis
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis

is, this, that, he

<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	īī, eī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs

idem, the same

<i>Nom.</i>	īdem	e'adem	idem	{ īī'dem eī'dem	eae'dem	e'adem
<i>Gen.</i>	eius'dem	eius'dem	eius'dem	eōrun'dem	eārun'dem	eōrun'dem
<i>Dat.</i>	eī'dem	eī'dem	eī'dem	{ iīs'dem eīs'dem	iīs'dem	iīs'dem
<i>Acc.</i>	eun'dem	ean'dem	idem	eōs'dem	eās'dem	e'adem
<i>Abl.</i>	eō'dem	eā'dem	eō'dem	{ iīs'dem eīs'dem	iīs'dem	iīs'dem

NOTE. In the plural the two i's in *iīdem* and *iīsdem* are pronounced as one, and the forms are sometimes written *īdem* and *īsdem*.

26.

RELATIVE

quī, who, which, that

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

27.

INTERROGATIVE

quis, substantive, *who*, *what*

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quis</i>	<i>quid</i>	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quid</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

The interrogative adjective *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, is declined like the relative.

28.

INDEFINITES

quis and *quī*, as declined above,¹ are used also as indefinites (*some*, *any*). The other indefinites are compounds of *quis* and *quī*.

SUBSTANTIVE			ADJECTIVE		
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quisque</i>	<i>quidque</i>	<i>quisque</i>	<i>quaeque</i>	<i>quodque</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cuius'que</i>	<i>cuius'que</i>	<i>cuius'que</i>	<i>cuius'que</i>	<i>cuius'que</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cuique</i>	<i>cuique</i>	<i>cuique</i>	<i>cuique</i>	<i>cuique</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quemque</i>	<i>quidque</i>	<i>quemque</i>	<i>quamque</i>	<i>quodque</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quōque</i>	<i>quōque</i>	<i>quōque</i>	<i>quāque</i>	<i>quōque</i>

29.

quīdam, a certain one, a certain

Observe that in the neuter singular the adjective has *quoddam* and the substantive *quiddam*.

SINGULAR		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quīdam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cuius'dam</i>	<i>cuius'dam</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cuidam</i>	<i>cuidam</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quendam</i>	<i>quandam</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quōdam</i>	<i>quādam</i>

¹ *qua* is generally used instead of *quae* in the feminine nominative singular and in the neuter nominative and accusative plural.

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrun'dam	quārun'dam	quōrun'dam
<i>Dat.</i>	quibus'dam	quibus'dam	quibus'dam
<i>Acc.</i>	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
<i>Abl.</i>	quibus'dam	quibus'dam	quibus'dam

30. **quisquam**, substantive, *any one* (at all)

MASC. AND FEM.

<i>Nom.</i>	quisquam
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius'quam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuiquam
<i>Acc.</i>	quemquam
<i>Abl.</i>	quōquam

NEUT.

quicquam (quidquam)
cuius'quam
cuiquam
quicquam (quidquam)
quōquam

31. **aliquis**, substantive, *some one*. **aliquī**, adjective, *some*

SINGULAR

SUBSTANTIVE

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquis	aliquid
<i>Gen.</i>	alicu'ius	alicu'ius
<i>Dat.</i>	alicui	alicui
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquem	aliquid
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquō	aliquō

ADJECTIVE

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquī	aliqua	aliquod
<i>Gen.</i>	alicu'ius	alicu'ius	alicu'ius
<i>Dat.</i>	alicui	alicui	alicui
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquem	aliquam	aliquod
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL FOR BOTH SUBSTANTIVE AND ADJECTIVE

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
<i>Gen.</i>	aliquō'rum	aliquā'rum	aliquō'rum
<i>Dat.</i>	ali'quibus	ali'quibus	ali'quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
<i>Abl.</i>	ali'quibus	ali'quibus	ali'quibus

a. quis (quī), *any one, any*, is the least definite of these. *aliquis (aliquī)*, *some one, some*, is more definite than *quis*. *quisquam*, *any one* (at all), and its adjective *ullus*, *any*, occur mostly with a negative, expressed or implied, and in clauses of comparison.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

amem	amēmus	amer	amēmur
amēs	amētis	amēris, -re	amēmini
amet	ament	amētur	amentur

PAST

amārem	amārēmus	amārer	amārēmur
amārēs	amārētis	amārēris, -re	amārēmini
amāret	amārent	amārētur	amārentur

PERFECT

amāverim	amāverimus	amātus, { sim	amāti, { simus
amāveris	amāveritis	-a, -um { sis	-ae, -a { sitis
amāverit	amāverint	sit	sint

PAST PERFECT

amāvissēim	amāvissēmus	amātus, { essem	amāti, { essemus
amāvissēs	amāvissētis	-a, -um { essēs	-ae, -a { essētis
amāvissēt	amāvissēt	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

amā, <i>love thou</i>	amāre, <i>be thou loved</i>
amāte, <i>love ye</i>	amāmini, <i>be ye loved</i>

FUTURE

amātō, <i>thou shalt love</i>	amātor, <i>thou shalt be loved</i>
amātō, <i>he shall love</i>	amātor, <i>he shall be loved</i>
amātōte, <i>you shall love</i>	
amantō, <i>they shall love</i>	amantor, <i>they shall be loved</i>

INFINITIVE

Pres. amāre, <i>to love</i>	amārī, <i>to be loved</i>
Perf. amāvisse, <i>to have loved</i>	amātus, -a, -um esse, <i>to have been loved</i>
Fut. amātūrus, -a, -um esse, <i>to be about to love</i>	amātum irī, <i>to be about to be loved</i>

PARTICIPLES

Pres. amāns, -antis, <i>loving</i>	Pres. ———
Fut. amātūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to love</i>	Gerundive ¹ amandus, -a, -um, <i>to be loved</i>
Past ———	Past amātus, -a, -um, <i>having been loved, loved</i>

GERUND

Nom. ———	
Gen. amandī, <i>of loving</i>	
Dat. amandō, <i>for loving</i>	
Acc. amandum, <i>loving</i>	
Abl. amandō, <i>by loving</i>	

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. amātum, <i>to love</i>
Abl. amātū, <i>to love, in the loving</i>

¹ Sometimes called the future passive participle.

33. SECOND CONJUGATION. *Ē-VERBS.* **MONĒO**PRINCIPAL PARTS **monēō, monēre, monuī, monitus**PRES. STEM **monē-** PERF. STEM **monu-** PART. STEM **monit-**

ACTIVE

INDICATIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

*I advise, etc.**I am advised, etc.*

monēō	monēmus
monēs	monētis
monet	monent

moneor	monēmur
monēris, -re	monēmini
monētur	monentur

PAST DESCRIPTIVE

*I was advising, etc.**I was advised, etc.*

monēbam	monēbāmus
monēbās	monēbātis
monēbat	monēbant

monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbāris, -re	monēbāmini
monēbātur	monēbantur

FUTURE

*I shall advise, etc.**I shall be advised, etc.*

monēbō	monēbimus
monēbis	monēbitis
monēbit	monēbunt

monēbor	monēbimur
monēberis, -re	monēbimini
monēbitur	monēbuntur

PERFECT

*I have advised, I advised, etc.**I have been (was) advised, etc.*

monuī	monuimus
monuisti	monuistis
monuit	monuerunt, -re

monitus,	{	sum	moniti,	{	sumus
-a, -um	{	es	-ae, -a	{	estis
	{	est		{	sunt

PAST PERFECT

*I had advised, etc.**I had been advised, etc.*

monueram	monuerāmus
monuerās	monuerātis
monuerat	monuerant

monitus,	{	eram	moniti,	{	erāmus
-a, -um	{	erās	-ae, -a	{	erātis
	{	erat		{	erant

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have advised, etc.**I shall have been advised, etc.*

monuerō	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

monitus,	{	erō	moniti,	{	erimus
-a, -um	{	eris	-ae, -a	{	eritis
	{	erit		{	erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

monēam	monēāmus	monēar	monēāmur
monēās	monēātis	monēāris, -re	monēāmini
moneat	moncant	monēatur	moncantur

PAST

monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris, -re	monērēmini
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur

PERFECT

monuerim	monuerimus	monitus, -a, -um	sim	moniti, -ae, -a	simus
monueris	monueritis		sīs		sitis
monuerit	monuerint		sit		sint

PAST PERFECT

monuissem	monuissēmus	monitus, -a, -um	essēm	moniti, -ae, -a	essēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis		essēs		essētis
monuisset	monuissent		esset		essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

monē, advise thou	monēre, be thou advised
monēte, advise ye	monēmini, be ye advised

FUTURE

monētō, thou shalt advise	monētor, thou shalt be advised
monētō, he shall advise	monētor, he shall be advised
monētōte, you shall advise	
monentō, they shall advise	monentor, they shall be advised

INFINITIVE

Pres. monēre, to advise	monērī, to be advised
Perf. monuisse, to have advised	monitus, -a, -um esse, to have been advised
Fut. monitūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to advise	monitum iri, to be about to be advised

PARTICIPLES

Pres. monēns, -entis, advising	Pres. ———
Fut. monitūrus, -a, -um, about to advise	Ger. monendus, -a, -um, to be advised
Past ———	Past. monitus, -a, -um, having been advised, advised

GERUND

Nom. ———
Gen. monendī, of advising
Dat. monendō, for advising
Acc. monendum, advising
Abl. monendō, by advising

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. monitum, to advise
Abl. monitū, to advise, in the advising

34. THIRD CONJUGATION. *Ē*-VERBS. *REGŌ*PRINCIPAL PARTS *regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus*PRES. STEM *rege-* PERF. STEM *rēx-* PART. STEM *rēct-*

ACTIVE

INDICATIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

*I rule, etc.**I am ruled, etc.*

regō *regimus*
regis *regitis*
regit *regunt*

re'gor *re'gimur*
re'geris, -re *regi'mini*
re'gitur *regun'tur*

PAST DESCRIPTIVE

*I was ruling, etc.**I was ruled, etc.*

regēbam *regēbāmus*
regēbās *regēbātis*
regēbat *regēbant*

regē'bar *regēbā'mur*
regēbā'ris, -re *regēbā'mini*
regēbā'tur *regēban'tur*

FUTURE

*I shall rule, etc.**I shall be ruled, etc.*

regam *regēmus*
regēs *regētis*
reget *regent*

re'gar *regē'mur*
regē'ris, -re *regē'mini*
regē'tur *regen'tur*

PERFECT

*I have ruled, etc.**I have been ruled, etc.*

rēxī *rēximus*
rēxistī *rēxistis*
rēxit *rēxērunt, -re*

rēctus, { *sum* *rēctī,* { *sumus*
 es *-ae, -a* { *estis*
 -a, -um { *est* *sunt*

PAST PERFECT

*I had ruled, etc.**I had been ruled, etc.*

rēxeram *rēxerāmus*
rēxerās *rēxerātis*
rēxerat *rēxerant*

rēctus, { *eram* *rēctī,* { *erāmus*
 erās *erātis*
 -a, -um { *erat* *erant*

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have ruled, etc.**I shall have been ruled, etc.*

rēxerō *rēxerimus*
rēxeris *rēxeritis*
rēxerit *rēxerint*

rēctus, { *erō* *rēctī,* { *erimus*
 eris *-ae, -a* { *eritis*
 -a, -um { *erit* *erunt*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

regam	regāmus	regar	regāmur
regās	regātis	regāris, -re	regāmini
regat	regant	regātur	regantur

PAST

regerem	regerēmus	regerer	regerēmur
regerēs	regerētis	regerēris, -re	regerēmini
regeret	regerent	regerētur	regerentur

PERFECT

rēxerim	rēxerimus	rēctus, { sim	rēcti, { simus
rēxeris	rēxeritis	-a, -um { sis	-ae, -a { sitis
rēxerit	rēxerint	{ sit	{ sint

PAST PERFECT

rēxissem	rēxissemus	rēctus, { essem	rēcti, { essemus
rēxisseis	rēxisseitis	-a, -um { essēs	-ae, -a { essētis
rēxisset	rēxisset	{ esset	{ essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

rege, <i>rule thou</i> ¹	regere, <i>be thou ruled</i>
regite, <i>rule ye</i>	regimini, <i>be ye ruled</i>

FUTURE

regitō, <i>thou shalt rule</i>	regitor, <i>thou shalt be ruled</i>
regitō, <i>he shall rule</i>	regitor, <i>he shall be ruled</i>
regitōte, <i>ye shall rule</i>	_____
reguntō, <i>they shall rule</i>	reguntor, <i>they shall be ruled</i>

INFINITIVE

Pres. regere, <i>to rule</i>	regī, <i>to be ruled</i> [ruled]
Perf. rēxisse, <i>to have ruled</i>	rēctus, -a, -um esse, <i>to have been</i>
Fut. rēctūrus, -a, -um esse, <i>to be</i>	rēctum iri, <i>to be about to be ruled</i>
about to rule	

PARTICIPLES

Pres. regēs, -entis, <i>ruling</i>	Pres. _____
Fut. rēctūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to</i>	Ger. regendus, -a, -um, <i>to be</i>
rule	ruled
Past _____	Past rēctus, -a, -um, <i>having been</i>
	ruled, ruled

GERUND

Nom. _____	
Gen. regendī, <i>of ruling</i>	
Dat. regendō, <i>for ruling</i>	
Acc. regendum, <i>ruling</i>	
Abl. regendō, <i>by ruling</i>	

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. rēctum, <i>to rule</i>
Abl. rēctū, <i>to rule, in the ruling</i>

¹ The corresponding imperative forms for the four verbs *dicō*, *dūcō*, *faciō*, and *ferō* are *dic*, *dūc*, *fac*, and *fer*.

35. FOURTH CONJUGATION. *Ī*-VERBS. **AUDIŌ**PRINCIPAL PARTS **audiŏ, audīre, audīvī, audītus**PRES. STEM **audi-**PERF. STEM **audīv-**PART. STEM **audīt-**

ACTIVE

INDICATIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

I hear, etc.

audiŏ	audīmus
audīs	audītis
audit	audiunt

I am heard, etc.

au'dior	audī'mur
audī'ris, -re	audī'mini
audī'tur	audiun'tur

PAST DESCRIPTIVE

I was hearing, etc.

audiēbam	audiēbāmus
audiēbās	audiēbātis
audiēbat	audiēbant

I was heard, etc.

audiē'bar	audiēbā'mur
audiēbā'ris, -re	audiēbā'mini
audiēbā'tur	audiēban'tur

FUTURE

I shall hear, etc.

audiam	audiēmus
audiēs	audiētis
audiet	audient

I shall be heard, etc.

au'diar	audiē'mur
audiē'ris, -re	audiē'mini
audiē'tur	audien'tur

PERFECT

I have heard, etc.

audīvī	audīvimus
audīvistī	audīvistis
audīvit	audīverunt, -re

I have been heard, etc.

audītus, {	sum	audītī, {	sumus
-a, -um {	es	-ae, -a {	estis
	est		sunt

PAST PERFECT

I had heard, etc.

audiveram	audiverāmus
audiverās	audiverātis
audiverat	audiverant

I had been heard, etc.

audītus, {	eram	audītī, {	erāmus
-a, -um {	erās	-ae, -a {	erātis
	erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have heard, etc.

audiverō	audiverimus
audiveris	audiveritis
audiverit	audiverint

I shall have been heard, etc.

audītus, {	erō	audītī, {	erimus
-a, -um {	eris	-ae, -a {	eritis
	erit		erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris, -re	audiāmini
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

PAST

audīrem	audirēmus	audīrer	audirēmur
audirēs	audirētis	audirēris, -re	audirēmini
audiret	audirent	audirētur	audirentur

PERFECT

audiverim	audiverimus	auditus, -a, -um	auditi, -ae, -a	sim	auditi, -ae, -a	simus
audiveris	audiveritis			sis		sitis
audiverit	audiverint			sit		sint

PAST PERFECT

audivissem	audivissemus	auditus, -a, -um	auditi, -ae, -a	esset	auditi, -ae, -a	esset
audivisses	audivissetis			essēs		essētis
audivisset	audivissent			esset		essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

audi, hear thou	audire, be thou heard
audite, hear ye	audimini, be ye heard

FUTURE

auditō, thou shalt hear	auditor, thou shalt be heard
auditō, he shall hear	auditor, he shall be heard
auditōte, ye shall hear	
audiuntō, they shall hear	audiuntor, they shall be heard

INFINITIVE

Pres. audire, to hear	audiri, to be heard
Perf. audivisse, to have heard	auditus, -a, -um esse, to have been heard
Fut. auditūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to hear	audītum iri, to be about to be heard

PARTICIPLES

Pres. audiēns, -entis, hearing	Pres. ———
Fut. auditūrus, -a, -um, about to hear	Ger. audiendus, -a, -um, to be heard
Past ———	Past auditus, -a, -um, having been heard, heard

GERUND

Nom. ———	
Gen. audiēdi, of hearing	
Dat. audiēdō, for hearing	
Acc. audiendum, hearing	
Abl. audiēdō, by hearing	

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. auditum, to hear
Abl. auditū, to hear, in the hearing

36. THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN -IŌ. *CAPĪŌ*PRINCIPAL PARTS *capĭō, capere, cēpī, captus*PRES. STEM *cape-* PERF. STEM *cēp-* PART. STEM *capt-*

ACTIVE		INDICATIVE		PASSIVE
		PRESENT		
<i>capĭō</i>	<i>capimus</i>	<i>ca'pior</i>		<i>ca'pimur</i>
<i>capis</i>	<i>capitis</i>	<i>ca'peris, -re</i>		<i>capī'minī</i>
<i>capit</i>	<i>capiunt</i>	<i>ca'pitur</i>		<i>capiun'tur</i>
		PAST DESCRIPTIVE		
<i>capĭēbam</i>	<i>capĭēbāmus</i>	<i>capĭē'bar</i>		<i>capĭēbā'mur</i>
<i>capĭēbās</i>	<i>capĭēbātis</i>	<i>capĭēbā'ris, -re</i>		<i>capĭēbā'minī</i>
<i>capĭēbat</i>	<i>capĭēbant</i>	<i>capĭēbā'tur</i>		<i>capĭēban'tur</i>
		FUTURE		
<i>capiam</i>	<i>capĭēmus</i>	<i>ca'piar</i>		<i>capĭē'mur</i>
<i>capĭēs</i>	<i>capĭētis</i>	<i>capĭē'ris, -re</i>		<i>capĭē'minī</i>
<i>capiet</i>	<i>capient</i>	<i>capĭē'tur</i>		<i>capien'tur</i>
		PERFECT		
<i>cēpī, cēpistī, cēpit, etc.</i>		<i>captus, -a, -um</i>	<i>sum, es, est, etc.</i>	
		PAST PERFECT		
<i>cēperam, cēperās, cēperat, etc.</i>		<i>captus, -a, -um</i>	<i>eram, erās, erat, etc.</i>	
		FUTURE PERFECT		
<i>cēperō, cēperis, cēperit, etc.</i>		<i>captus, -a, -um</i>	<i>erō, eris, erit, etc.</i>	
		SUBJUNCTIVE		
		PRESENT		
<i>capiam, capiās, capiat, etc.</i>		<i>capiar, -iāris, -re, -iātur, etc.</i>		
		PAST		
<i>caperem, caperēs, caperet, etc.</i>		<i>caperer, -erēris, -re, -erētur, etc.</i>		
		PERFECT		
<i>cēperim, cēperīs, cēperit, etc.</i>		<i>captus, -a, -um</i>	<i>sim, sis, sit, etc.</i>	
		PAST PERFECT		
<i>cēpissem, cēpissēs, cēpisset, etc.</i>		<i>captus, -a, -um</i>	<i>essem, essēs, esset, etc.</i>	
		IMPERATIVE		
		PRESENT		
<i>2d Pers. cape</i>	<i>capite</i>	<i>capere</i>	<i>capimini</i>	

FUTURE

<i>2d Pers.</i> capitō	capitōte	capitor	—
<i>3d Pers.</i> capitō	capiantō	capitor	capiuntor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i> capere	capī
<i>Perf.</i> cēpisse	captus, -a, -um esse
<i>Fut.</i> captūrus, -a, -um esse	captum irī

PARTICIPLES

<i>Pres.</i> capiēns, -ientis	<i>Pres.</i> —
<i>Fut.</i> captūrus, -a, -um	<i>Ger.</i> capiendus, -a, -um
<i>Past</i> —	<i>Past</i> captus, -a, -um

GERUND

<i>Gen.</i> capiendī
etc.

SUPINE (Active Voice)

<i>Acc.</i> captum
<i>Abl.</i> captū

37.

DEPONENT VERBS

PRINCIPAL PARTS	I.	hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, <i>urge</i>
	II.	vereor, verērī, veritus sum, <i>fear</i>
	III.	sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, <i>follow</i>
	IV.	partior, partīrī, partītus sum, <i>share, divide</i>

NOTE. In addition to the passive conjugation, deponent verbs use certain forms from the active. These are marked with a star. Deponent -iō verbs of the third conjugation are inflected like the passive of capiō.

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i> hortor	vereor	sequor	partior
hortāris, -re	verēris, -re	sequeris, -re	partīris, -re
hortātur	verētur	sequitur	partitur
hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	partimur
hortāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	partiminī
hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	partiuntur
<i>P. D.</i> hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	partiēbar
<i>Fut.</i> hortābor	verēbor	sequar	partiar
<i>Perf.</i> hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	partitus sum
<i>P. P.</i> hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	partitus eram
<i>F. P.</i> hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	partitus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	horter	verear	sequar	partiar
<i>Past</i>	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	partirer
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	partītus sim
<i>P. P.</i>	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	partītus essem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	hortāre	verēre	sequere	partire
<i>Fut.</i>	hortātor	verētor	sequitor	partītor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	hortārī	verērī	sequī	partīrī
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	partītus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	*hortātūrus esse	*veritūrus esse	*secūtūrus esse	*partītūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

<i>Pres.</i>	*hortāns	*verēns	*sequēns	*partiēns
<i>Fut.</i>	*hortātūrus	*veritūrus	*secūtūrus	*partītūrus
<i>Past</i>	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	partītus
<i>Ger.</i>	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	partiendus

GERUND

*hortandī, etc.	*verendī, etc.	*sequendī, etc.	*partiendī, etc.
-----------------	----------------	-----------------	------------------

SUPINE

*hortātum, -tū	*veritum, -tū	*secūtum, -tū	*partītum, -tū
----------------	---------------	---------------	----------------

38. I. Active Periphrastic Conjugation :

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amātūrus sum, <i>I am about to love</i>
<i>Past Descr.</i>	amātūrus eram, <i>I was about to love</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	amātūrus erō, <i>I shall be about to love</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	amātūrus fuī, <i>I have been, was, about to love</i>
<i>Past Perf.</i>	amātūrus fueram, <i>I had been about to love</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	amātūrus fuerō, <i>I shall have been about to love</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amātūrus sim
<i>Past</i>	amātūrus essem
<i>Perf.</i>	amātūrus fuerim
<i>Past Perf.</i>	amātūrus fuisset

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amātūrus esse, <i>to be about to love</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	amātūrus fuisse, <i>to have been about to love</i>

II. Passive Periphrastic Conjugation :

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amandus sum, <i>I am to be, must be, loved</i>
<i>Past Descr.</i>	amandus eram, <i>I was to be, had to be, loved</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	amandus erō, <i>I shall have to be loved</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	amandus fuī, <i>I was to be, had to be, loved</i>
<i>Past Perf.</i>	amandus fueram, <i>I had had to be loved</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	amandus fuerō, <i>I shall have had to be loved</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amandus sim
<i>Past</i>	amandus essem
<i>Perf.</i>	amandus fuerim
<i>Past Perf.</i>	amandus fuissem

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amandus esse, <i>to have to be loved</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	amandus fuisse, <i>to have had to be loved</i>

IRREGULAR VERBS

39.

sum, am, be

PRINCIPAL PARTS sum, esse, fuī, futūrus

PRES. STEM es- PERF. STEM fu- PART. STEM fut-

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

SINGULAR		PLURAL
sum, <i>I am</i>		sumus, <i>we are</i>
es, <i>thou art</i>		estis, <i>you are</i>
est, <i>he (she, it) is</i>		sunt, <i>they are</i>
PAST DESCRIPTIVE		
eram, <i>I was</i>		erāmus, <i>we were</i>
erās, <i>thou wast</i>		erātis, <i>you were</i>
erat, <i>he was</i>		erant, <i>they were</i>

FUTURE

erō, I shall be
eris, thou wilt be
erit, he will be

erimus, we shall be
eritis, you will be
erunt, they will be

PERFECT

fuī, I have been, was
fuistī, thou hast been, wast
fuit, he has been, was

fuimus, we have been, were
fuistis, you have been, were
fuērunt, } they have been, were
fuēre, }

PAST PERFECT

fueram, I had been
fuerās, thou hadst been
fuerat, he had been

fuerāmus, we had been
fuerātis, you had been
fuerant, they had been

FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō, I shall have been
fueris, thou wilt have been
fuerit, he will have been

fuerimus, we shall have been
fueritis, you will have been
fuerint, they will have been

PRESENT

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>sim</i>	<i>simus</i>
<i>sis</i>	<i>sitis</i>
<i>sit</i>	<i>sint</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PAST

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>essem</i>	<i>essēmus</i>
<i>essēs</i>	<i>essētis</i>
<i>esset</i>	<i>essent</i>

PERFECT

<i>fuerim</i>	<i>fuerimus</i>
<i>fueris</i>	<i>fueritis</i>
<i>fuerit</i>	<i>fuerint</i>

PAST PERFECT

<i>fuisset</i>	<i>fuissēmus</i>
<i>fuissēs</i>	<i>fuissētis</i>
<i>fuisset</i>	<i>fuissent</i>

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2d Pers. Sing. es, be thou
2d Pers. Plur. este, be ye

FUTURE

2d Pers. Sing. estō, thou shalt be
3d Pers. Sing. estō, he shall be
2d Pers. Plur. estōte, ye shall be
3d Pers. Plur. suntō, they shall be

INFINITIVE

Pres. esse, to be
Perf. fuisse, to have been
Fut. futūrus, -a, -um esse or fore,
to be about to be

PARTICIPLE

futūrus, -a, -um, about to be

40.

possum, be able, canPRINCIPAL PARTS **possum, posse, potui, —**

INDICATIVE

SINGULAR

PLURAL

<i>Pres.</i>	possum	pos'sumus
	potes	potes'tis
	potest	possunt
<i>Past</i>	poteram	poterāmus
<i>Fut.</i>	poterō	poterimus
<i>Perf.</i>	potuī	potuimus
<i>P. P.</i>	potueram	potuerāmus
<i>F. P.</i>	potuerō	potuerimus

SUBJUNCTIVE

SINGULAR

PLURAL

possim	possī'mus
possis	possī'tis
possit	possint
possem	possē'mus
_____	_____
potuerim	potuerīmus
potuissem	potuissēmus
_____	_____

INFINITIVE

Pres. posse*Perf.* potuisse

PARTICIPLE

Pres. potēns, *gen.* -entis, (adjective) *powerful*

41.

prōsum, benefitPRINCIPAL PARTS **prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfuturus**PRES. STEM **prōdes-**PERF. STEM **prōfu-**PART. STEM **prōfut-**

INDICATIVE

SINGULAR

PLURAL

<i>Pres.</i>	prōsum	prō'sumus
	prōdes	prōdes'tis
	prōdest	prōsunt
<i>Past</i>	prōderam	prōderāmus
<i>Fut.</i>	prōderō	prōderimus
<i>Perf.</i>	prōfui	prōfuimus
<i>P. P.</i>	prōfueram	prōfuerāmus
<i>F. P.</i>	prōfuerō	prōfuerimus

SUBJUNCTIVE

SINGULAR

PLURAL

prōsim	prōsī'mus
prōsis	prōsī'tis
prōsit	prōsint
prōdessem	prodessē'mus
_____	_____
prōfuerim	prōfuerīmus
prōfuissem	prōfuissēmus
_____	_____

IMPERATIVE

Pres. 2d Pers. prōdes, prōdeste*Fut. 2d Pers.* prōdestō, prōdestōte

INFINITIVE

Pres. prōdesse*Perf.* prōfuisse*Fut.* prōfuturus, -a, -um esse

FUTURE PARTICIPLE prōfuturus, -a, -um

42.	PRINCIPAL PARTS	volō, velle, volui, —, be willing, will, wish
		nōlō, nolle, nōlui, —, be unwilling, will not
		mālō, malle, mālui, —, be more willing, prefer

Nōlō and **mālō** are compounds of **volō**. **Nōlō** is for **ne** (*not*) + **volō**, and **mālō** for **mā** (from *magis*, *more*) + **volō**. The second person **vīs** is from a different root.

INDICATIVE			
SINGULAR			
<i>Pres.</i>	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	volt	nōn volt	māvolt
PLURAL			
	volumus	nolumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
<i>P. D.</i>	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
<i>Fut.</i>	volam, volēs, etc	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
<i>Perf.</i>	volui	nōlui	mālui
<i>P. P.</i>	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
<i>F. P.</i>	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE			
SINGULAR			
<i>Pres.</i>	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velis	nōlis	mālis
	velit	nōlit	mālit
PLURAL			
	velī'mus	nōlī'mus	mālī'mus
	velī'tis	nōlī'tis	mālī'tis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
<i>Past</i>	vellem	nōllem	māllem
<i>Perf.</i>	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
<i>P. P.</i>	voluisssem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE			
<i>Pres.</i>	_____	nōlī	_____
		nōlite	
<i>Fut.</i>	_____	nōlitō, etc.	_____

INFINITIVE		
<i>Pres.</i>	velle	nōlle
<i>Perf.</i>	voluisse	nōluisse
		mālle
		māluisse

PARTICIPLE		
<i>Pres.</i>	volēns, -entis	nōlēns, -entis

43. ferō, bear, carry, endure

PRINCIPAL PARTS ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus

PRES. STEM **fer-** PERF. STEM **tul-** PART. STEM **lāt-**

ACTIVE		INDICATIVE		PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	ferō ferimus		feror	ferimur
	fers fertis		ferris, -re	feriminī
	fert ferunt		fertur	feruntur
<i>P. D.</i>	ferēbam		ferēbar	
<i>Fut.</i>	feram, ferēs, etc.		ferar, ferēris, etc.	
<i>Perf.</i>	tulī		lātus, -a, -um sum	
<i>P. P.</i>	tuleram		lātus, -a, -um eram	
<i>F. P.</i>	tulerō		lātus, -a, -um erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE			
<i>Pres.</i>	feram, ferās, etc.		ferar, ferāris, etc.
<i>Past</i>	ferrem		ferrer
<i>Perf.</i>	tulerim		lātus, -a, -um sim
<i>P. P.</i>	tulissem		lātus, -a, -um essem

IMPERATIVE			
<i>Pres. 2d Pers.</i>	fer	ferre	feriminī
<i>Fut. 2d Pers.</i>	fertō	fertote	fertor
<i>3d Pers.</i>	fertō	feruntō	fertor
			feruntor

INFINITIVE		
<i>Pres.</i>	ferre	ferri
<i>Perf.</i>	tulisse	lātus, -a, -um esse
<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus, -a, -um esse	_____

PARTICIPLES		
<i>Pres.</i>	ferēns, -entis	<i>Pres.</i> _____
<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus, -a, -um	<i>Ger.</i> ferendus, -a, -um
<i>Past</i>	_____	<i>Past</i> lātus, -a, -um

GERUND			SUPINE (Active Voice)	
<i>Gen.</i>	ferendī	<i>Acc.</i>	ferendum	<i>Acc.</i> lātum
<i>Dat.</i>	ferendō	<i>Abl.</i>	ferendō	<i>Abl.</i> lātū

44. *eo, go*

PRINCIPAL PARTS *eo, ire, ii (ivī), itum* (n. perf. part.)

PRES. STEM *i-* PERF. STEM *i-* OR *iv-* PART. STEM *it-*

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	
				SING.	PLUR.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>imus</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>ad Pers. i</i>	<i>ite</i>
	<i>is</i>	<i>itis</i>			
	<i>it</i>	<i>eunt</i>			
<i>Past</i>	<i>ibam</i>		<i>irem</i>		
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>ibō</i>		—	<i>ad Pers. itō</i>	<i>itōte</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>ii (ivī)</i>		<i>ierim (iverim)</i>	<i>ad Pers. itō</i>	<i>euntō</i>
<i>P. P.</i>	<i>ieram (iveram)</i>		<i>issem (ivissem)</i>		
<i>F. P.</i>	<i>ierō (iverō)</i>				

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLES	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ire</i>	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>iēns, gen. euntis</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>isse (ivisse)</i>	<i>Fut.</i>	<i>itūrus, -a, -um</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>itūrus, -a, -um esse</i>	<i>Ger.</i>	<i>eundum</i>

GERUND		SUPINE	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eundī</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eundum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eundō</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eundō</i>
		<i>Acc.</i>	<i>itum</i>
		<i>Abl.</i>	<i>itū</i>

a. The verb *eo* is used impersonally in the third person singular of the passive, as *itur, itum est, etc.*

b. In the perfect system the forms with *v* are very rare.

45. *fiō, passive of faciō; be made, become, happen*

PRINCIPAL PARTS *fiō, fieri, factus sum*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>fiō</i>	<i>fiam</i>	<i>ad Pers. fi</i>	<i>fite</i>
	<i>fis</i>			
	<i>fit</i>			
	<i>fīunt</i>			
<i>Past</i>	<i>fiēbam</i>	<i>fierem</i>		
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>fiam, fiēs, etc.</i>	—		

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE		
<i>Perf.</i>	factus, -a, -um	sum	factus, -a, -um	sim	
<i>P.P.</i>	factus, -a, -um	eram	factus, -a, -um	essem	
<i>F.P.</i>	factus, -a, -um	erō			
INFINITIVE			PARTICIPLES		
<i>Pres.</i>	fieri		<i>Past</i>	factus, -a, -um	
<i>Perf.</i>	factus, -a, -um	esse	<i>Ger.</i>	faciendus, -a, -um	
<i>Fut.</i>	factum iri				

46.

I. DEFECTIVE VERBS

INDICATIVE			
<i>Perf.</i>	coepī, <i>began</i>	meminī, <i>remember</i>	ōdī, <i>hate</i>
<i>P.P.</i>	coeperam	memineram	ōderam
<i>F.P.</i>	coeperō	meminerō	ōderō
SUBJUNCTIVE			
<i>Perf.</i>	coeperim	meminerim	ōderim
<i>P.P.</i>	coepissem	meminissem	ōdissem
IMPERATIVE			
SINGULAR		PLURAL	
mementō		mementōte	
INFINITIVE			
<i>Perf.</i>	coepisse	meminisse	ōdisse
<i>Fut.</i>	coeptūrus esse		ōsūrus esse
PARTICIPLE			
<i>Past</i>	coeptus		ōsus
<i>Fut.</i>	coeptūrus		ōsūrus

II. IMPERSONAL VERBS

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	licet, <i>is permitted</i>	liceat	
<i>Past</i>	licēbat	licēret	
<i>Fut.</i>	licēbit		
<i>Perf.</i>	licuit (licitum est)	licuerit (licitum sit)	
<i>P.P.</i>	licuerat (licitum erat)	licuisset (licitum esset)	
<i>F.P.</i>	licuerit (licitum erit)		
INFINITIVE			
licēre, licuisse, licitūrum esse			

B. SYNTAX

SENTENCES

47. A sentence is a group of words expressing a complete thought.

Kinds of Sentences. Sentences are declarative, interrogative, or imperative :

a. A declarative sentence is one that makes a statement :

Caesar venit, Cæsar is coming

b. An interrogative sentence is one that asks a question :

venitne Caesar? is Cæsar coming?

c. An imperative sentence is one that expresses a command :

venī, Caesar, come, Cæsar

48. Parts of Sentences. Every sentence consists of two parts, the subject and the predicate :

I. Subject. The subject of a sentence is a noun, or some expression used as a noun, about which something is said :

Caesar respondit, Cæsar made answer; responditne Caesar? did Cæsar make answer?

In both of these sentences **Caesar** is the subject.

a. In Latin the subject is often not expressed by a separate word, but is contained in the termination of the verb :

scribit, he writes; scribunt, they write; scribimus, we write

b. The subject may be some word or group of words used as a noun :

haec perficere est facile, to accomplish these things is easy; accidit ut plēna lūna esset, it happened that the moon was full

II. *Predicate.* The predicate is that part of the sentence which says something about the subject:

lūna est plēna; the moon is full

a. The predicate may be a verb, or it may consist of a noun, pronoun, or adjective combined with some form of the verb **sum** or its equivalent, and describing or defining the subject:

Pisō erat cōsul, Piso was consul; tū es ille, you are he; oppidum erat magnum, the town was large

b. The verb **sum**, combined with a noun, pronoun, or adjective as above, is called the *copula*, that is, the connective. When an intransitive or passive verb is used in the same way, it is called a copulative verb:

Dīviciācus appellātur amicus, Diviciacus is called friend

49. **Transitive Verb.** A transitive verb has or requires a direct object to complete its sense:

imperātōrem videō, I see the general

50. **Intransitive Verb.** An intransitive verb does not admit of a direct object to complete its sense:

imperātor venit, the general is coming

51. **Phrase.** A phrase is a group of connected words not containing a subject and predicate. A phrase is often used as an adjective or an adverb:

vir erat magnae virtūtis, he was a man of great courage; omnibus precibus orābant, they implored with all (manner of) entreaties

In these sentences *magnae virtūtis* and *omnibus precibus* are respectively adjective and adverbial phrases.

52. **Direct Object.** The person or thing directly affected by the action of a verb is called the direct object:

Caesar eum incūsat, Caesar upbraids him

Helvētīi aciem instrūxērunt, the Helvetii drew up a line of battle

53. Indirect Object. The person toward whom or the thing toward which an action or feeling is directed, is called the indirect object:

agrōs Hædūs dat, he gives fields to the Hædui

54. Appositive. A noun or pronoun used to describe or explain another noun or pronoun denoting the same person or thing, without the use of a verb, is called an appositive:

Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, vēnit, Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, came

NOTE. A noun or pronoun used as above is said to be in apposition with the word it describes or explains, and agrees with it in case.

55. Forms of Sentences. In their form sentences are simple, compound, or complex:

a. A *simple* sentence is a sentence containing but one subject and one predicate:

Caesar venit, Cæsar comes

b. A *compound* sentence consists of two or more independent sentences:

Caesar vēnit et hostēs fūgerunt, Cæsar came, and the enemy fled

c. A *complex* sentence consists of at least one independent sentence and one or more dependent sentences:

cum Caesar vēnisset, hostēs fūgerunt, when Cæsar had come, the enemy fled

56. Clause. A clause is a group of words that forms part of a sentence and that contains a subject and a predicate.

In the last two Latin sentences above, each group of words, *Caesar vēnit*, *hostēs fūgerunt*, *cum Caesar vēnisset*, is a clause.

a. If one statement modifies another in any way, the modifying clause is said to be subordinate, and the clause modified is called the main clause:

cum Caesar vēnisset, hostēs fūgerunt, when Cæsar had come, the enemy fled; here *cum Caesar vēnisset* is the subordinate clause and *hostēs fūgerunt* is the main clause

b. If one statement is simply added to another, the clauses are said to be coördinate. They are usually connected by a coördinating conjunction (§ 151. *a*):

Caesar vēnit et hostēs fūgerunt, Caesar came and the enemy fled;
here both clauses are coördinate

57. Modifiers. A subject or a predicate may be modified by a word, a phrase, or a clause:

miles fortis ācritur pugnāt, the brave soldier fights fiercely; the words *fortis* and *ācritur* modify the subject and predicate respectively

imperātor bonō animō in urbem vēnit, a general of great courage has come into the city; the phrases *bonō animō* and *in urbem* modify the subject and predicate respectively

imperātor quem nōmināvi pontem aedificāvit ut flūmen trānsiret, the general whom I have named built a bridge that he might cross the river; the clauses *quem nōmināvi* and *ut flūmen trānsiret* modify the subject and predicate respectively

AGREEMENT

NOUNS

58. Predicate or Appositive. A noun used as predicate or appositive agrees in case with the word which it explains or describes:

Ariovistus erat rēx, Ariovistus was king
Labiēnum, legātum, misit, he sent Labienus, the lieutenant

ADJECTIVES

59. General Rule. Adjectives and words used as adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case:

iter est longum, the journey is long
mōns altissimus impendēbat, a very high mountain overhung
Gallia est divisa, Gaul is divided

60. Predicate Adjective. When an adjective forms a part of the predicate with the verb *sum* or its equivalent (§ 48. II. a), it is called a *predicate* adjective:

Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxīma et bellicōsissīma Germānōrum omnium,
the tribe of the Suebi is by far the greatest and most warlike of
all the Germans

61. Attributive Adjective. When an adjective immediately describes a noun without the use of a copulative verb, it is called an *attributive* adjective:

prīma legiō in castra vēnit, the first legion came into camp

AGREEMENT WITH TWO OR MORE NOUNS

62. Number. When an adjective modifies two or more nouns connected by *et*, *-que*, or *atque (ac)*, a *predicate* adjective is in the plural number, and an *attributive* adjective agrees in number with the nearest noun:

dominus et servus sunt dissimīlēs, master and slave are unlike
bonus rēx et rēgīna, the good king and queen

63. Gender. When an adjective modifies two or more nouns of different genders, a *predicate* adjective is usually masculine if the nouns denote living beings, neuter if they denote things without life; and an *attributive* adjective agrees with the nearest noun:

pater et māter sunt cārī, father and mother are dear
gladius et scūtum sunt magna, the sword and shield are large
cārus pater et māter
pater et māter cāra } *the dear father and mother*

NOTE. If the nouns denote both persons and things, a predicate adjective is usually neuter plural, but may follow the gender of the persons and be either masculine or feminine:

rēx et libera civitās sunt inimīca, a king and a free state are incompatible
rēx et classis sunt tūtī, the king and the fleet are safe

PRONOUNS

64. Pronouns used as nouns (substantively) have the construction of nouns; used as adjectives they agree with their nouns in the same way as adjectives (§ 59):

*hī sunt extrā prōvinciam primī, these are the first beyond the province
hoc proelium factum est, this battle was fought*

a. Note, however, that a relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but that its case depends on its construction in the clause in which it is used:

*lēgātī quī convocātī erant convēnērunt, the envoys who had been
summoned assembled*

*lēgātī quōs convocāverat convēnērunt, the envoys whom he had
summoned assembled*

NOTE. When the relative clause contains a predicate noun, the relative pronoun agrees with this noun rather than with an antecedent of different gender and number:

Rhēnus, quod est flūmen Gallicum, the Rhine, which is a Gallic stream

VERBS

65. General Rule. Finite verbs agree with their subjects in person and number:

Orgetorix dēligitur, Orgetorix is chosen

Helvētīī oppida incendunt, the Helvetii burn their towns

NOTE. A finite verb is one having person and number.

a. A verb is usually singular if it has for its subject a collective noun, — that is, a noun singular in form but referring to more than one person or thing, — but it may be plural if individuals are thought of:

senātus haec intellegit, the senate knows this

magna multitūdō vēnērunt, a great multitude came

66. Impersonal Verbs. When a verb is used impersonally, that is, without a personal subject, it is put in the third person singular, and a perfect participle or gerundive ends in *-um*:

pugnātur, fighting is carried on; pugnātum est, fighting was carried on

67. Agreement with Two or More Subjects. With two or more subjects connected by *et*, *-que*, or *atque (ac)* the verb may agree with the nearest or be plural:

summa alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī innāta est, very great eagerness and desire for waging war were inspired
oppidum et vicus incenduntur, the town and village are burned

68. With two or more subjects forming a single idea the verb may be singular:

Matrona et Sēquana dividit etc., the Marne and Seine divide etc.,
 B. G. I. I

69. With two or more singular subjects connected by conjunctions meaning *or* or *nor* the verb is in the singular number:

neque imperātor neque lēgātus erat timidus, neither the general nor the lieutenant was afraid

CASES OF NOUNS

NOMINATIVE

70. The nominative case is used as the subject of a finite verb or as the predicate after a copulative verb:

Caesar respondit, Caesar replies
Labiēnus erat lēgātus Labienus was a lieutenant

71. The nominative case is used as the subject of the historical infinitive (§ 218):

cotidiē Caesar frumentum flāgitāre, Caesar daily demanded grain,
 B. G. I. 16

GENITIVE

GENITIVE WITH NOUNS

72. General Rule. The genitive is used to limit or define another noun not meaning the same person or thing.

This general rule includes all the varieties of the genitive with nouns mentioned below.

73. Possessive Genitive. A noun may be modified by a genitive denoting the possessor or owner :

inter finēs Helvētiorum et Allobrogum, between the territories of the Helvetii and the Allobroges, B. G. I. 6

a. The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate :

duae fuerunt Ariovisti uxores, Ariovistus had two wives, B. G. I. 53

74. Possessive pronominal adjectives are used instead of the possessive genitive of personal pronouns :

nōn oportet mē ā populō Rōmānō in meō (instead of mei) iūre impediri, it is not proper that I should be hindered in my rights by the Roman people, B. G. I. 36

75. Subjective and Objective Genitive. A noun that suggests action or feeling may be modified by a genitive. The context will generally tell whether the genitive is the *subject* or the *object* of the action or feeling denoted by the noun :

a. timor militum tantus erat ut fugerent, the fear of the soldiers was so great that they fled

Here the phrase *timor militum* means that the soldiers fear; hence *militum*, as the subject of the feeling expressed by *timor*, is a subjective genitive.

Cf. patrum nostrorum memoriā, within the memory of our fathers, B. G. II. 4

b. timor militum hostēs dēterrui, the (their) fear of the soldiers kept the enemy back

Here the phrase *timor militum* means that the soldiers are feared; hence *militum*, as the object of the feeling expressed by *timor*, is an objective genitive.

Cf. prō veteribus Helvētiorum iniūriis populī Rōmānī, for the ancient wrongs of (inflicted by) the Helvetii upon the Roman people, B. G. I. 30.

In this sentence *Helvētiorum* is a subjective genitive, *populī Rōmānī* is an objective genitive.

76. Partitive Genitive. Words denoting a part of an object or group are followed by a genitive denoting the whole object or group:

trēs partēs cōpiarum trādūxērunt, they led across three quarters (parts) of their forces

a. The partitive genitive may be used not only with nouns, but also with neuter singular adjectives and pronouns used substantively (§§ 127, 128):

quantum habeat in sē bonī cōstantia, how much advantage (of good) firmness has, B. G. I. 40

nisi quid erit auxili, unless there shall be some (of) aid, B. G. I. 31
satis esse causae arbitrābātur, he thought there was sufficient reason
(enough of reason), B. G. I. 19

EXCEPTION. Cardinal numerals (except *mīlia*) and the indefinite pronoun *quidam* usually take the ablative with *ē* (*ex*) instead of the partitive genitive:

ūnus ex eis, one of those; quidam ex militibus, one of the soldiers

77. Genitive of Description or Quality. The genitive of a noun is used to denote quality or kind. Such a genitive is regularly accompanied by an adjective (cf. Ablative of Description, § 116. *a*):

vir et cōsili magni et virtutis, a man of (both) great discretion and courage, B. G. III. 5

a. Genitive of Description as Predicate. The descriptive genitive is often used as the predicate of a sentence:

est enim hoc Gallicae cōsuetudinis, for this is a Gallic custom, B. G. IV. 5

flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium, the depth of the river was about three feet, B. G. II. 18

b. The descriptive genitive is often used with numerals to denote measure (Genitive of Measure):

fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum, he extended a ditch of about four hundred paces, B. G. II. 8

78. Genitive of Value. The adjectives *tantī*, *quantī*, *plūris*, and *minōris* are used substantively in the predicate to denote indefinite value:

tantī eius apud eō grātiām esse ostendit, *he pointed out that his good will was of so great value in his sight (apud eō)*, B. G. I. 20

79. Genitive of Material. The genitive may denote the substance, or material, of which anything consists:

aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor, *he drew up a line of battle of four legions*, B. G. I. 24

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

80. Adjectives denoting *desire*, *knowledge*, *memory*, *fullness*, *power*, *sharing*, *guilt*, and their opposites, also participles in *-ns* used as adjectives, are followed by the genitive:

hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōsuetūdinis imperitī, *men uncivilized and unacquainted with our customs*, B. G. IV. 22

rei militāris peritissimus, *thoroughly skilled in military practice*, B. G. I. 21

vir amāns rei publicae, *a man fond of the republic*

GENITIVE WITH VERBS

81. The genitive is used with the following verbs:

a. Verbs of Memory. With *reminiscor*, *remember*, and *obliscor*, *forget*:

quod si veteris contumēliae obliscī velim, *but if I should be willing to forget the old affront*, B. G. I. 14

reminiscere veteris incommodī populi Rōmānī, *remember the former misfortune of the Roman people*, B. G. I. 13

b. Verbs of Feeling. With *paenitet*, *repent*, and some others. These take the accusative of the person with the genitive of the thing:

cōsiliōrum eōs paenitet, *they repent of their plans* (lit. *it repents them of their plans*), cf. B. G. IV. 5

c. With the verb *interest*, *it concerns*:

docet quāto opere rei publicae intersit, he shows how greatly it concerns the common welfare, B. G. II. 5

d. Sometimes with the verb *potior*, *get possession of*, which, however, commonly takes the ablative (§ 107. a):

tōtius Galliae potiri, to get possession of the whole of Gaul, B. G. I. 3

DATIVE

82. Dative of Indirect Object. The dative is the case of the indirect object, and denotes that *to which* or *for which* anything is or is done.

It is used not only with intransitive verbs, but also with transitive verbs in connection with a direct object:

ei filiam suam dat, he gives (to) him his daughter, B. G. I. 3

83. Dative with Special Verbs. The dative of the indirect object is used with many intransitive verbs meaning *to favor, please, help, trust*, and their contraries; also *to believe, persuade, threaten, injure, envy, command, obey, serve, resist, pardon, and spare*; also with *temperō* meaning *to refrain*:

civitati persuāsit, he persuaded the state, B. G. I. 2

prima acies victis resistit, the first line resists the vanquished,
cf. B. G. I. 25

NOTE. Most of these verbs are transitive in English, take a direct object in the objective case, and are usually translated as if transitive. But in Latin the real idea is *to give a command to, to grant pardon to, to be obedient to*, etc., and the dative of the indirect object follows as a natural consequence.

a. In the passive voice these verbs are used impersonally (§ 66), and the dative follows as with the active voice:

mihi quidem persuādētur, I am indeed persuaded (lit. it is persuaded to me), B. G. I. 40

84. Dative with Compounds. The dative of the indirect object is found after many verbs compounded with *ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super*, and sometimes *circum*:

Iccius, qui tum oppidō praeerat, Iccius, who was then in command of the town, B. G. II. 6

NOTE. Some of these verbs are transitive and some intransitive, the former taking both a direct and an indirect object:

pars civitātis calamitātem populō intulerat, part of the state had brought disaster on the people, B. G. I. 12

a. The dative of the indirect object is used also with several compounds of *bene* and *satis*:

sī Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, if you will make amends to the Allobroges, B. G. I. 14

85. Dative of Reference. The dative is used to denote the person or thing for whose benefit, or to whose injury, the action is performed:

omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnēbant, all sought safety for themselves in flight, cf. B. G. II. 11

tōtius bellī imperium sibi postulant, they demand for themselves the command of the entire war, B. G. II. 4

86. Dative of Separation. Some verbs signifying *to take away from*, particularly compounds of *ab*, *dē*, and *ex*, take the dative:

scūtō militi detractō, the shield being snatched from a soldier, B. G. II. 25

Rōmānī Haeduis libertātem ēripiēnt, the Romans will take away liberty from the Haedui, cf. B. G. I. 17

NOTE. This dative differs from the ablative of separation (§ 101) in the fact that there is almost always an idea of *advantage* or *disadvantage* to the person concerned. It is thus closely connected with the dative of reference.

87. Dative of Apparent Agent. The dative is sometimes used to denote *agency*; regularly with the passive periphrastic conjugation (§ 222. II):

Sēquanīs omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendī, all tortures must be endured by the Sequani, B. G. I. 32

omnibus Gallīs idem est faciendum, the same thing must be done by all the Gauls, B. G. I. 31

88. Dative of Possession. The dative is used as a predicate with the verb *sum* to denote *possession* :

in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nulli, no one was able to keep his footing on the wall (lit. *the possibility was to no one*), B. G. II. 6
nullus aditus est ad eōs mercatōribus, traders have no access to them (lit. *no access to them is to the traders*), B. G. II. 15

Notice that the idea of motion (*to them*) is expressed by the accusative with *ad*, while the idea of possession (*to the traders*) is expressed by the dative.

89. Dative of Purpose or End. The dative is used to denote *purpose* or *end*, often with another dative denoting the person benefited or injured (§ 85) :

pollicitus est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram, he promised that he would look out for that matter (lit. *that matter should be for a care to himself*), B. G. I. 33
novissimīs praesidiō erant, they were (for) *a protection to the rear*, B. G. I. 25

90. Dative with Adjectives. The dative is used with adjectives or adverbs denoting *nearness, likeness, fitness, service*, and their opposites :

finitimī Belgīs erant, they were adjacent to the Belgæ, B. G. II. 2
castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit, he chose a place suitable for the camp, B. G. I. 49
proximī Galliae sunt, they are nearest to Gaul, cf. B. G. II. 3

ACCUSATIVE

91. Direct Object. The *direct object* of a transitive verb is put in the accusative :

legātōs dē pāce misērunt, they sent envoys in regard to peace, B. G. IV. 27

92. Subject of Infinitive. The subject of an infinitive is put in the accusative :

nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, he found that our men were not inferior, B. G. II. 8

NOTE. The subject of the historical infinitive (§ 218), is regularly in the nominative (§ 71).

93. Two Accusatives — Direct Object and Secondary Object. Some verbs of *asking*, *demanding*, and *teaching* may be followed by two accusatives — one (the direct object) of the person and the other (the secondary object) of the thing:

Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre, Caesar demanded grain of the Haedui, B.G. I. 16

NOTE. This construction is found with *ūrō*, *poscō*, *rogō*, *flāgitō*, *doceō*, and a few other verbs.

a. With the passive of *rogō* and of verbs of *teaching* and a few others the accusative of the *person* becomes the subject, and the accusative of the *thing* is retained:

ACTIVE: *agrōs Gallōs rogāvit, he asked the Gauls for territory*

PASSIVE: *Gallī agrōs rogātī sunt, the Gauls were asked for territory*

94. Two Accusatives — Direct Object and Adjunct Accusative. Verbs of *making*, *choosing*, *calling*, *regarding*, *showing*, etc. often take a second accusative referring to the same person or thing as the direct object. This second object is called the *adjunct accusative*:

eum vergobretum appellant Haeduī, the Haedui call him vergobretus, cf. B.G. I. 16

Ariovistum amicum appellant, they call Ariovistus friend

NOTE. In the passive the direct object becomes the subject nominative, and the adjunct accusative becomes the predicate nominative:

Ariovistus amicus appellātur, Ariovistus is called friend

95. Accusative with Compounds. Transitive verbs compounded with *trāns* may take, in addition to the direct object, a secondary object depending on the preposition:

trēs partēs cōpiārum Helvētīī id flūmen trādūxerant, the Helvetii had led three fourths of their forces across that river, cf. B.G. I. 12

NOTE. In the passive these verbs retain the secondary object:

Belgae Rhēnum trāductī sunt, the Belgæ were led across the Rhine, cf. B.G. II. 4

96. Accusative of Duration and Extent. The accusative denotes *duration of time* and *extent of space*:

haec magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, they continued to do this during a great part of the summer, B. G. III. 12

finēs in longitudinem mīlia passuum CCXL patēbant, the territories extended in length two hundred and forty miles, cf. B. G. I. 2

97. Accusative of Place Whither. Place *whither* is regularly expressed by the accusative with the preposition *ad* or *in*; but with names of towns and the word *domus*, *home*, the preposition is omitted:

in Italiam profectus est, he set out for Italy, B. G. II. 35

Rōmam ad senātum vēnī, I came to Rome to the senate

Bibracte ire contendit, he hastened (to go) to Bibracte, B. G. I. 23

domum suam quisque revertitur, each returns to his home, cf. B. G. II. 10

NOTE. *Ad* is used with names of towns after verbs of motion when the meaning is *to the neighborhood of* instead of *to*:

ad Genāvam pervēnit, he came to (the vicinity of) Geneva, B. G. I. 7

98. Accusative of Kindred Meaning. An intransitive verb may be used with the accusative of a noun, or of a neuter pronoun or adjective of indefinite meaning, which has or suggests the same meaning as the verb:

id eis persuāsit, he persuaded them to this course (lit. he persuaded this (course) to them), B. G. I. 2

In this sentence *id*, the object of *persuāsit*, represents the persuasion itself, and so repeats the idea of the verb.

99. Adverbial Accusative. The accusative is often used with the force of an adverb:

nihil saxa timēbant, they did not fear the rocks at all, cf. B. G. III. 13

maximam partem lacte vivunt, they live for the most part on milk, B. G. IV. 1

In these sentences *nihil* and *partem* are used adverbially.

VOCATIVE

100. The word denoting the person called or addressed is put in the vocative case. This has the same form as the nominative except in the singular of nouns in **-us** of the second declension, which have the vocative in **-e** :

ibi erunt Helvētīi ubi eōs tū, Caesar, esse volueris, the Helvetii will be
(in the place) where you, Caesar, shall have wished them to be,
 B.G. I. 13
et tū quoque, Brūte! and thou too, Brutus!

ABLATIVE

101. Ablative of Separation. The ablative, with or without **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**, is used to denote *separation* :

hostem ā pugnā prohibēbant, they kept the enemy from battle, cf. B. G.
 IV. 34
proeliō supersedēre statuit, he decided to hold aloof from battle,
 B. G. II. 8

a. When the *place from which* is the name of a town or the word **domus**, *home*, the ablative is used without a preposition :

erant itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exire possent, there were two
routes by which they could go out from home, B.G. I. 6

NOTE. When the idea is not directly *out of* or *from* a town, but *from the neighborhood of* it, the preposition **ab** is used :

ab Ocelō in finēs Vocontiorum pervēnit, he came from (the vicinity of)
Ocelum into the territories of the Vocontii, B.G. I. 10

102. Ablative of Origin. The ablative is used, with or without **ab** or **ex**, to denote the *origin* from which anything is derived :

initium ortum est ab Ambiorige, the beginning was made by (lit. arose
from) Ambiorix, B.G. V. 25
Pisō amplissimō genere nātus est, Piso was born of most distin-
guished family, cf. B.G. IV. 12

103. Ablative of Material. The ablative is used with **ex** or **dē** to denote the *material* of which anything consists :

nāvēs factae sunt ex rōbre, the ships were made of oak, cf. B. G. III. 13

104. Ablative of Agent. The *agent* or *doer* of an act is expressed after passive verbs by the ablative with **ā** or **ab** :

ab nōn nullīs Gallīs sollicitābantur, they were incited by some (of the) Gauls, cf. B. G. II. 1

NOTE. When the agent is considered as a *means to an end*, the accusative with **per** is used :

per trēs potentēs populōs Galliae potiri posse spērant, through three powerful nations they hope to be able to get possession of Gaul, cf. B. G. I. 3

105. Ablative of Comparison. The comparative degree without **quam** is regularly followed by the ablative :

celerius omnium opinione vēnit, he came more quickly than any one had expected (lit. *than the expectation of all*), cf. B. G. II. 3

NOTE 1. The comparative may, however, be followed by **quam**, and the two things compared are then put in the same case :

iūstitia est melior quam laus, justice is better than praise

NOTE 2. After the comparatives **plūs**, **minus**, **amplius**, and **longius**, without **quam**, a word of measure or number is often used in the case it would have if there were no comparative :

aditus in lātitudinem nōn amplius pedum CC relinquēbātur, an approach of not more than two hundred feet in width was left (lit. *an approach of two hundred feet — not more*), B. G. II. 29

In this sentence **pedum** is the genitive of measure (§ 77. *b*), the construction it would have if **amplius** were not used.

106. Ablative of Means. The ablative is used without a preposition to denote the *means* or *instrument* of an action :

equitātum suō sūptū alit, he maintains the cavalry at (by means of) his own expense, cf. B. G. I. 18

a. The ablative of means is used to denote the *way by which* :

eōdem itinere contendit, he hastened by the same route, B. G. I. 21

107. Ablative with Special Words. The ablative is used:

a. With the verbs *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vāscor*, and their compounds:

Caesar isdem ducibus ūsus est, Caesar employed the same guides, cf.

B. G. II. 7

castris nostrī potitī sunt, our men got possession of the camp, B. G. I. 26

commodis fruuntur, they enjoy advantages, cf. B. G. III. 22

NOTE. *Potior* may take the genitive (§ 81. *d*).

b. With the verbs *fidō*, *cōfidō*, *nitor*, and the verbal adjective *frētus*:

ais Crassus nōn multum cōfidēbat, Crassus placed little reliance in these, cf. B. G. III. 25

Sōtiātēs superiōribus victōriis frēti sunt, the Sotiates relied on their former victories, cf. B. G. III. 21

c. With *opus est* and *ūsus est*, *there is need*:

opus factō est, there is need of action, cf. B. G. I. 42

NOTE. *Opus* may be used as a predicate with the thing needed as subject nominative. The person needing is in the dative:

sī quid mihi opus est, if I need anything

108. Ablative of Value or Price. With verbs of *buying* and *selling* the *price* is expressed by the ablative:

parvō pretiō redēpta, bought in at a low price, B. G. I. 18

NOTE. For the genitive of value see § 78.

109. Ablative of Cause. The ablative, with or without a preposition, is used to express *cause*:

Dumnorix grātiā plūrimum poterat, Dumnorix had great power because of his influence, B. G. I. 9

NOTE. The ablatives *causā* and *grātiā*, *for the sake*, regularly follow a noun in the genitive:

huius potentiae causā, for the sake of this power, B. G. I. 18

110. Ablative of Manner. The *manner* of an action is expressed by the ablative, either with an adjective modifier or with *cum*, sometimes with both:

nūdō corpore pugnant, they fight with body unprotected, cf. B.G. I. 25
magno cum strepitū egressi sunt, they went forth with great din, cf.
B.G. II. 11

111. Ablative of Accordance. The ablative may express that *in accordance with* which anything is, or is done, often with **ex** or **dē** :

institūtō suō Caesar cōpiās suās ēdūxit, Caesar led out his forces according to his custom, B.G. I. 50

112. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance. The *circumstance* or situation under which an action occurs is expressed by the ablative :

eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequi nōn poterant, they could not accomplish that under our sway, cf. B.G. II. 1

113. Ablative of Accompaniment. The ablative is used to denote *accompaniment*, regularly with **cum** :

intellegō quantō id cum periculō fēcerim, I know with how great danger I did that, B.G. I. 17

cum pueris mulieribusque, with children and women, B.G. II. 28

NOTE. With some military expressions **cum** may be omitted; the noun is then regularly modified by an adjective :

Caesar subsequēbātur omnibus cōpīs, Caesar followed with all his forces, B.G. II. 19

a. Verbs of *contention* and the like require **cum** :

cum Germānis contendunt, they fight with the Germans, B.G. I. 1

114. Ablative of Measure of Difference. With words that express or imply comparison the ablative is used to denote the *measure of difference* :

alterum iter erat multō facilius, the other route was much easier (lit. easier by much), cf. B.G. I. 6

ā milibus passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum expectābant, about two miles away they were awaiting the arrival of the Romans (lit. off (ā) by two miles), B.G. V. 32. The preposition ā is here used as an adverb

115. Ablative of Respect. The ablative denotes *in what respect* something is true:

linguā inter sē differunt, they differ from one another in language,

B. G. I. 1

infirmiōrēs animō, dispirited (lit. weaker in respect to courage),

B. G. III. 24

116. Ablative of Description or Quality. The ablative with an adjective modifier is used to denote quality or kind:

hominēs inimicō animō, men of unfriendly disposition, B. G. I. 7

a. Either the genitive (§ 77) or ablative may be used in description, but in general:

1. Statements of *measure, number, time, and space* are in the genitive.

2. Physical qualities are in the ablative.

mūrum pedum sēdecim perdūcit, he extended a wall (of) sixteen feet,

B. G. I. 8

Germānī ingentī magnitudīne corporum sunt, the Germans are of great size of body, cf. B. G. I. 39

b. The ablative of description, like the genitive of description, may be used as the predicate of a sentence; cf. *magnitudīne* in the last example.

117. Ablative Absolute. The ablative of a noun or pronoun with a participle expressed or understood in agreement may be used absolutely, that is, grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence.

While grammatically independent, the ablative absolute has a logical relation to the rest of the sentence. This relation is best expressed in translation by changing the ablative absolute into a clause introduced by *if, when, since, though*, etc.

The ablative absolute may express the following relations:

a. Condition:

ā quibus nōs dēfendere, trādītis armīs, nōn poterimus, from these we cannot defend ourselves if we surrender our arms (lit. our arms having been surrendered), B. G. II. 31

b. Time :

initā aestāte Q. Pedium mīsit, *in the beginning of summer* (lit. *summer having been begun*) he sent Quintus Pedius, B. G. II. 2

c. Cause :

Caesarem certiorē faciunt sēsē, *depopulātis agris*, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre, *they inform Cæsar that, since their fields have been laid waste, they cannot easily ward off the violence of the enemy from their towns* (lit. *their fields having been laid waste*), B. G. I. 11

d. Concession :

turribus excitātis, tamen hās altitudō puppiū ex barbariis nāvibus superābat, *even though towers had been erected, nevertheless the height of the sterns of the barbarian ships rose above them* (lit. *towers having been erected*), B. G. III. 14

e. Circumstance :

ea omnia, inscientibus ipsīs, fēcerat, *he had done all those things without their knowledge* (lit. *they being unaware*), cf. B. G. I. 19

f. Means :

nāvibus iunctis, cōnātī sunt, *they tried by means of joining boats* (lit. *boats having been joined*), cf. B. G. I. 8

118. Special Constructions of the Ablative Absolute. A noun (or pronoun) with an adjective, or a noun (or pronoun) with a noun, may form an ablative absolute construction without an accompanying participle. This occurs when the sense demands the present participle of *sum*, which is lacking in Latin :

Sēquanis invītis, ire nōn poterant, *if the Sequani should be unwilling, they could not go* (lit. *the Sequani* (being) *unwilling*), B. G. I. 9

ea omnia, mē invītō, fēcisti, *you have done all those things against my will* (lit. *I* (being) *unwilling*), cf. B. G. I. 19

is, M. Messālā et M. Pisōne cōsulibus, cōnīrātiōnem fēcit, *he made a conspiracy in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso* (lit. *Messala and Piso* (being) *consuls*), B. G. I. 2

119. Ablative of Time. The time *at which* or *within which* is expressed by the ablative :

eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat, at that time he held the chief position in the state, B. G. I. 3

paucis annis omnes ex Galliae finibus pellentur, within a few years all will be driven from the territories of Gaul, B. G. I. 31

NOTE. Duration of time is sometimes expressed by the ablative instead of by the accusative (§ 96) :

ea tota nocte continenter ierunt, they marched uninterruptedly during that entire night, B. G. I. 26

120. Ablative of Place Where. Place *where* is regularly expressed by the ablative with the preposition *in*. Names of towns omit the preposition :

in Germānōrum finibus bellum gerunt, they wage war in the territories of the Germans, cf. B. G. I. 1

proelium Philippis factum est, the battle was fought at Philippi

a. The so-called *locative case* is used instead of the ablative of place in the singular of the names of towns of the first and second declensions; also *domi*, *at home*. The locative case ends in *-ae* in the first declension, and in *-i* in the second, being just like the genitive singular :

concilio Gallōrum Samarobrivae peractō, after a council of the Gauls had been brought to an end at Samarobriva, B. G. V. 24

Caesar Avarici complures dies commoratus, Caesar after tarrying several days at Avaricum, B. G. VII. 32

domi nihil erat, there was nothing at home, B. G. I. 28

b. The preposition is regularly omitted with the ablatives *locō*, *locis*, *parte*, *partibus*, when they are modified by an adjective or a genitive :

alieno loco proelium committunt, they join battle in an unfavorable place, B. G. I. 15

NOTE 1. The *way by which* is put in the ablative case without a preposition :

frumentum flumine Arari subvexerat, he had brought grain up the river Sabne, cf. B. G. I. 16

NOTE 2. For expressions denoting the *place from which* see § 101. *a.*

ADJECTIVES

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

121. Adjectives have in general the same distinctions of meaning for the *positive*, *comparative*, and *superlative* degrees as in English :

altus, high; altior, higher; altissimus, highest

122. The comparative of an adjective sometimes denotes merely a high degree of the quality :

sī quid erat dūrius, if there was any uncommonly hard (task),
B. G. I. 48

123. The superlative of an adjective sometimes denotes simply a very high degree of the quality :

mōns altissimū impendēbat, a very high mountain overhung, B. G. I. 6

124. The superlative of an adjective with *quam* preceding denotes the highest degree possible of the quality :

quam maximum numerum coemēbant, they purchased the largest number possible, B. G. I. 3

SPECIAL USES OF ADJECTIVES

125. The adjectives *medius*, *imū*, *summū*, and *reliquū* may denote a part of the object described :

in colle mediō aciem instrūxit, he drew up a line of battle in the middle of the hill, B. G. I. 24

summū mōns ā Labiēnō tenēbātur, the top of the mountain was held by Labienus, cf. B. G. I. 22

126. An adjective in regular agreement with a noun sometimes has the meaning of an adverb :

animadvertit Caesar Sēquanōs tristēs terram intuēri, Caesar noticed that the Sequani sadly kept their eyes upon the ground, B. G. I. 32

127. Adjectives are often used *substantively*, that is, like nouns :

nostrī magnum numerum eōrum occidērunt, our (men) slew a large number of them, B. G. II. 10

PRONOUNS

128. Pronouns in general may be used either as substantives or as adjectives, and the rules for nouns and adjectives apply to them accordingly. In their substantive use they are properly called pronouns. In their adjective use they should be called pronominal adjectives.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

129. Nominative Use. The nominative forms of the personal pronouns, *ego*, *tū*, *nōs*, and *vōs*, are not used except for emphasis.

ego certē meum officium praestiterō, *I, at least, will have done my duty*, B.G. IV. 25

130. Personal Pronouns of the Third Person. There are no regular personal pronouns of the third person, their place being supplied by a demonstrative, generally is (§ 135):

lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque ei dēdidērunt, *they sent envoys to Caesar and surrendered to him*, B.G. II. 28

POSSESSIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

131. The possessive pronominal adjectives, *meus*, *tuus*, *noster*, *vester*, *suus*, agree in gender, number, and case with the word they modify, not with the word denoting the possessor:

puella librōs meōs habet, *the girl has my books*

Here the possessive, *meōs*, agrees with *librōs*, the things possessed, although this is plural masculine accusative, while the possessor, *puella*, is singular feminine nominative.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

132. Direct Reflexives. The reflexive pronoun, *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, and its possessive adjective, *suus*, *-a*, *-um*, regularly refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand:

sē suaque dēdidērunt, *they surrendered themselves and their property*, B.G. II. 15

133. Indirect Reflexives. In a subordinate clause the reflexive and its possessive adjective often refer back to the subject of the main clause. They are then called *indirect* reflexives :

dat negotium Gallis uti sē certiōrem faciant, he directs the Gauls to inform him, cf. B. G. II. 2

NOTE. The reflexive, *sūi, sibi, sē*, refers to the *third person* only. For the first and second persons the personal pronouns are used as reflexives, thus :

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>laudō mē, I praise myself</i>	<i>laudāmus nōs, we praise ourselves</i>
<i>laudās tē, you praise yourself</i>	<i>laudātis vōs, you praise yourselves</i>
<i>laudat sē, he praises himself</i>	<i>laudant sē, they praise themselves</i>

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

134. Hic and Ille. *Hic* refers to something near ; *ille* to something remote. Their most common meaning is conveyed by the words *this* and *that* :

mea haec est Gallia, sicut illa vestra, this (part of) Gaul is mine, just as that (part) is yours, cf. B. G. I. 44

a. When *hic* and *ille* are used together, *hic* generally refers to the *latter* of two objects, and *ille* to the *former* :

hī rursus in vicem annō post in armis sunt, illī domi remanent, the latter (just mentioned) again in their turn are in arms the year after, the former (mentioned previously) remain at home, B. G. IV. 1

135. Is. *Is* as a demonstrative pronoun may mean either *this* or *that*.

Is is often used as a personal pronoun of the third person (*he, she, it, her, him, them*) :

et filiam dat, he gives (to) him his daughter, B. G. I. 3

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

136. The intensive pronoun, *ipse*, standing either alone or in agreement with another word, expresses emphasis or contrast. Its use must be carefully distinguished from that of the reflexive, particularly as we use the word *self* in translating both. The following examples illustrate the difference:

sē laudat, he praises himself; ipse puerum laudat, he himself praises the boy

a. *Ipse* is sometimes used in place of the indirect reflexive (§ 133):

sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, (he said) if he needed anything from Caesar (lit. if any need was to himself), B.G. I. 34

b. *Ipse* is often used in the genitive case with a possessive pronoun to strengthen the possessive idea:

suā ipsōrum linguā ūtuntur, they employ their own language
suum ipsius exercitum habet, he has his own army

RELATIVE PRONOUNS

137. General Rule. Relative pronouns agree with their antecedents in gender and number, but their case depends on their construction in the clause in which they are found:

Sabinus, cum eīs cōpiīs quās ā Caesare accēperat, Sabinus, with those forces which he had received from Caesar, B.G. III. 17

138. Agreement with a Predicate Noun or Appositive. A relative pronoun regularly agrees with a predicate noun or appositive in its own clause, rather than with its antecedent:

Vesontio, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, Vesontio, which is the largest town of the Sequani, B.G. I. 38

139. Relative Clause preceding. A relative clause when emphatic precedes the clause containing the antecedent:

quōrum per finēs ierant, his imperāvit, he ordered these through whose territories they had gone, B.G. I. 28

140. Antecedent in the Relative Clause. The antecedent of a relative pronoun is sometimes placed in the relative clause:

quam fēcerat classem iubet convenīre, he ordered the fleet which he had built up to assemble (lit. *what fleet he had* etc.), B. G. IV. 21

141. Repetition of the Antecedent. The antecedent is sometimes repeated with the relative:

erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent, there were two ways by which (ways) they could go out from home, B. G. I. 6

142. Omission of the Antecedent. The antecedent may be omitted if it is a pronoun or an indefinite word:

quī cognōscerent mīsit, he sent (men) to reconnoiter, B. G. I. 21

143. Relative beginning a New Sentence. A relative pronoun, referring to an antecedent in the preceding sentence, often stands at the beginning of a new sentence. In such cases the relative is best translated by a personal or demonstrative pronoun:

quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent etc., when these had met him on the way etc., B. G. I. 27

nostrī nōn eādem alacritāte ūtēbantur. Quod ubi Cæsar animadvertit, nāvēs longās removērī iussit, our men did not exert themselves with the same eagerness. When Cæsar noticed this, he ordered the ships of war to be removed, B. G. IV. 24, 25

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

144. The indefinite pronouns and adjectives are used to indicate that *some* person or thing is meant without designating *which one*; some of the most common and their uses are:

a. *Quis*, *some one*, *any one*, *some*, *any*, is the least exact of the indefinites, and stands generally after *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, or *num*; *quīdam*, *a certain one*, *a certain*, is the most definite:

sī quis dīcit, if anybody says

verētur nē quis veniat, he fears that some one may come

quīdam ex militibus dixit, a certain one of the soldiers said, B. G. I. 42

b. Aliquis, some one, some, is more definite than quis :

aliquis dicat, some one may say

c. Quisquam, any one, and the indefinite adjective ullus, any, are used commonly in negative sentences, and in sentences implying a negative :

cūr quisquam iudicāret ? why should any one judge ? B. G. I. 40

neque ullā necessitatē continēbantur, nor were they restrained by any necessity, B. G. II. 11

d. Alius, another, and alter, the other (of two), when used in pairs have the following meanings :

alius . . . alius, one . . . another

alii . . . alii, some . . . others

alteri . . . alteri, the one party . . . the other

1. Alius used twice in different cases in the same clause expresses just half the meaning conveyed :

alius aliā ex nāvī sē adgregābat, they gathered, (one from one ship,) another from another ship, B. G. IV. 26

alii aliam in partem ferēbantur, they rushed, (some in one direction,) others in another direction, B. G. II. 24

ADVERBS

145. Adverbs in the comparative degree, like adjectives (§§ 122, 123), may indicate merely a high degree of what they express without denoting real comparison. The superlative also may express a very high degree, instead of the highest :

sē diūtius dūci intellēxit, he realized that he was being put off too long, B. G. I. 16

plūrimum domi poterat, he was very powerful at home, cf. B. G. I. 20

NEGATIVE ADVERBS

146. The usual negative adverb is *nōn* ; this is regular with the indicative mood.

a. Nōn combined with another negative word, as nullus, makes an indefinite affirmative :

nōn nulli, some

147. *Nē* is used with the subjunctive denoting negative purpose, will, or desire; this includes commands in indirect discourse:

ad haec cōstitit nē tempus dīmitteret, he took his stand by these that he might not lose time, B.G. II. 21

quā rē nē committeret, (he told him) that he should therefore not bring it to pass, B.G. I. 13

PREPOSITIONS

148. Prepositions are used with the accusative and ablative cases.

149. Prepositions with the Accusative. The prepositions used with the accusative are *ad*, *adversus*, *ante*, *apud*, *circā*, *circum*, *circiter*, *cis*, *citrā*, *contrā*, *ergā*, *extrā*, *in*, *infrā*, *inter*, *intrā*, *iūxtā*, *ob*, *penes*, *per*, *post*, *praeter*, *prope*, *propter*, *secundum*, *sub*, *super*, *suprā*, *trāns*, *ultrā*, *versus*.

NOTE. The adjectives *propior*, *proximus*, and the adverbs *propius*, *proximē*, sometimes govern the accusative like prepositions:

proximī Rhēnum, next to the Rhine; propius tumulum, nearer the mound

150. Prepositions with the Ablative. The prepositions used with the ablative are *ā* (*ab*, *abs*), *cōram*, *cum*, *dē*, *ē* (*ex*), *in*, *prae*, *prō*, *sine*, *sub*, *tenuis*.

a. Cum is attached to the ablative of the personal, reflexive, interrogative, and relative pronouns as an enclitic:

nēmō mēcum sine suā perniciē contendit, no one has striven with me without his destruction, B.G. I. 36

hunc sēcum habēre in prīmīs cōstituerat, him especially he had decided to keep with him, B.G. V. 6

proximī sunt Germānis, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt, they are nearest to the Germans, with whom they continually wage war, B.G. I. 1

NOTE. *In* and *sub* govern both cases. With the accusative they denote motion toward a place; with the ablative rest in a place:

exercitum sub iugum mittit, he sends the army under the yoke in oppidō manet, he remains in the town

CONJUNCTIONS

151. Conjunctions connect words, phrases, and clauses of the same rank, or main clauses with subordinate clauses.

a. Coördinating Conjunctions. Coördinating conjunctions (connecting expressions of equal rank) are such words as **et, atque, ac, -que, enim, sed, autem**, etc.

b. Subordinating Conjunctions. Subordinating conjunctions (connecting dependent clauses with the clauses upon which they depend) are such words as **cum, antequam, quod, si, etsi, quamvis**, etc.

VERBS

152. Terms. The terms transitive, intransitive, impersonal, voice (active and passive), mood, tense, etc. are used in general as in English.

TENSES AND MOODS

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

153. Present Tense. The present tense represents an action or state as now taking place or existing :

hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, the Belgæ are the bravest of all these, B. G. I. 1

a. Historical Present. The present is sometimes used instead of a past tense to describe a past action more vividly :

ad Galbam accurrunt atque docent etc., they rush up to Galba and point out etc., B. G. III. 5

NOTE. The historical present may be translated by either a present or a past tense.

154. Past Descriptive¹ Tense. The past descriptive tense is used :

a. To denote an action going on in past time :

Helvētī agrōs populābantur, the Helvetii were devastating the fields, B. G. I. 11

¹ The past descriptive is often called the imperfect.

b. In description :

mōns altissimus impendebat, a very high mountain overhung, B.G. I. 6

c. To denote an action as attempted, as customary, or as begun :

nostrōs prohibebant, they tried to keep back our men, B.G. V. 9

eō in proxima oppida recipiebant, they (regularly) retreated to the nearest town, B.G. III. 12

suspiciabatur, he was beginning to suspect, B.G. IV. 31

NOTE. In narration the forward steps of the action are in the perfect tense, descriptive passages in the past descriptive.

155. Future Tense. The future tense denotes an act or state that will take place in the future :

vōbiscum pācem faciam, I will make peace with you, B.G. I. 14

156. Perfect Tense. The perfect tense has two uses. It may represent :

a. An action as now completed (present perfect). It is then translated with the English auxiliary *have* :

utī suprà dēmōstrāvimus, as I have shown above, B.G. II. 1

b. An action or state as a fact in past time (past absolute) :

eō exercitum dūxit, he led his army thither, B.G. III. 28

NOTE. The past participle with *habeō* has almost the same meaning as a perfect active, but denotes the *continued effect* of the action of the verb :

vectigālīa redēpta habet, he has bought up the revenues, B.G. I. 18

157. Past Perfect¹ Tense. The past perfect tense represents an action as completed in past time :

Helvētīī iam suās cōpiās trādūxerant, the Helvetii had already led their troops across, B.G. I. 11

158. Future Perfect Tense. The future perfect tense represents the action as completed in the future :

ubi cōstitueris, where you shall have determined, B.G. I. 13

¹ The past perfect is often called the pluperfect.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

In Independent Clauses

159. When the subjunctive is used independently, its tense values are as follows:

a. The present and perfect subjunctive refer to future time:

eāmus (§ 172. *a*), *let us go*

nē dēspexeris (§ 172. *c*), *do not despise*

NOTE. Exhortations, wishes, commands, etc., from their very nature, refer to the future. *Eāmus* and *dēspexeris* above imply that the acts are not yet performed.

b. The past¹ subjunctive generally refers to present time, but sometimes to past time:

utinam scriberet (§ 172. *e. 2*), *O that he were writing* (now). This implies that the act is *not now going on*

quid facerem? (§ 172. *d*), *what was I to do?*

tum viderēs (§ 172. *f*), *then you might have seen*

c. The past perfect¹ subjunctive refers to past time:

utinam scripsisset (§ 172. *e. 3*), *O that he had written* (then). This implies that the act was *not then performed*

In Dependent Clauses

160. In dependent clauses the tenses of the subjunctive are determined by the tenses of the main verb, and conform to the rule for the sequence of tenses.

161. Sequence of Tenses. The tenses of the indicative and subjunctive are classified as *primary* and *secondary*. The primary tenses are those referring to present or future time; the secondary tenses are those referring to past time.

¹ The past subjunctive is often called the imperfect, and the past perfect the pluperfect.

The following table represents this division, the primary tenses being marked (1) and the secondary tenses (2):

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
(1) Present	(1) Present
(2) Past descriptive	(2) Past
(1) Future	
(2) Perfect (past absolute, § 156. b)	(1) Perfect
(2) Past perfect	(2) Past perfect
(1) Future perfect	

I. The present and past subjunctive denote incomplete action (that is, present or future with reference to the main verb), and their use by the rule for sequence of tenses is shown below :

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>I ask</i>	(1) <i>quaerō</i>	<i>quid dicat</i> (1) <i>what he says</i>
<i>I asked</i>	(2) <i>quaerēbam</i>	<i>quid diceret</i> (2) <i>what he said</i>
<i>I shall ask</i>	(1) <i>quaeram</i>	
<i>I asked</i>	(2) <i>quaesivī</i>	
<i>I had asked</i>	(2) <i>quaesiveram</i>	
<i>I shall have asked</i>	(1) <i>quaesiverō</i>	

II. The perfect and past perfect subjunctive denote completed action (that is, past with reference to the main verb), and their use by the rule for sequence of tenses is shown below :

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>I ask</i>	(1) <i>quaerō</i>	
<i>I asked</i>	(2) <i>quaerēbam</i>	
<i>I shall ask</i>	(1) <i>quaeram</i>	
<i>I asked</i>	(2) <i>quaesivī</i>	<i>quid dixerit</i> (1) <i>what he said</i>
<i>I had asked</i>	(2) <i>quaesiveram</i>	<i>quid dixisset</i> (2) <i>what he had said</i>
<i>I shall have asked</i>	(1) <i>quaesiverō</i>	

From this use of tenses follows the rule :

162. *Primary tenses in the indicative are followed by primary tenses in the subjunctive, and secondary by secondary.*

163. Exceptions. Occasional exceptions to sequence occur, especially in long passages:

a. Sometimes a secondary tense of the indicative is followed by a primary tense of the subjunctive:

respondit si obsidēs dentur scōē pācem esse factūrum, he replied that he would make peace if hostages should be given, B.G. I. 14

b. The perfect indicative, when past absolute (§ 156. *b*), is regularly a secondary tense; but when used as a present perfect (§ 156. *a*) it may be followed by the primary sequence:

ita didicimus ut magis virtūte contendāmus, we have been so trained that we strive more by courage, B.G. I. 13

c. A perfect subjunctive, particularly in clauses of result (§ 179), may follow a secondary tense:

temporis tanta fuit exiguitās ut tempus defuerit, so short was the time that there was no opportunity, B.G. II. 21

164. Historical Present. The historical present (§ 153. *a*) allows either primary or secondary sequence:

diem dicunt quā diē convenient, they appoint a day on which (day) they shall assemble, B.G. I. 6

esse spem docent, si extrēmum auxilium experirentur, they showed that there was hope, if they should try a last resource, B.G. III. 5

165. Historical Infinitive. The historical infinitive (§ 218) is regularly followed by a secondary tense:

interim cotidiē Caesar Haeduōs frumentum, quod essent polliciti, flūgitāre, meanwhile Caesar demanded of the Haedi every day the grain which they had promised, B.G. I. 16

TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE

166. *a.* Not in Indirect Discourse. Except in indirect discourse (§ 203) only the present and perfect infinitives are used; the present represents the action of the verb as in progress with no distinct reference to time, the perfect as completed.

bellum gerere debet, he ought to be waging war
pudet mē hoc fecisse, I am ashamed to have done this

δ. In Indirect Discourse. In indirect discourse the tenses of the infinitive denote a time that is *present*, *past*, or *future* with reference to the time denoted by the verb of *saying* etc. by which the indirect discourse is introduced. Thus:

1. The present infinitive expresses *the same time* as that of the verb of *saying*:

dicīt esse spēm, he says that there is hope

dicēbat esse spēm, he said that there was hope

dicet esse spēm, he will say that there is hope

2. The perfect infinitive expresses *time before* that of the verb of *saying*:

dicīt fuisse spēm, he says that there was hope

dicēbat fuisse spēm, he said that there had been hope

dicet fuisse spēm, he will say that there was hope

3. The future infinitive expresses *time later* than that of the verb of *saying*:

dicīt futūram esse spēm, he says that there will be hope

dicēbat futūram esse spēm, he said that there would be hope

dicet futūram esse spēm, he will say that there will be hope

TENSES OF THE PARTICIPLE

167. The tenses of the participle, like those of the infinitive in indirect discourse (§ 166. δ), express a time *present*, *past*, or *future* with reference to the verb with which it is used:

haec fēns ā Caesare petiit, weeping he asked this from Caesar,
B. G. I. 20

dē his rēbus certior factus, transeuntēs adgressus est, when he had been informed of these matters, he attacked them as they were crossing
(lit. *having been informed, he attacked (them) crossing*)

MOODS IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

THE INDICATIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

168. The indicative mood is used to state a real or an assumed fact or to ask a question.

169. Statement of Facts. Any form of the indicative may be used to state a real or an assumed fact :

est aliud iter, there is another road
Ariovistus fuit rēx, Ariovistus was king
Caesar veniet, Caesar will come

170. Questions. A question may be asked, as in English, by the use of an interrogative pronoun or adverb :

quis hoc fēcit ? who did this ?
ubi est puer ? where is the boy ?

a. Questions that may be answered by "yes" or "no" have no introductory interrogative in English, but in Latin are regularly introduced by the interrogative particles **-ne**, **nōne**, or **num**.

1. If information only is sought, and no particular answer suggested, the enclitic **-ne** is added to the first word :

scrībitne epistulam ? is he writing the letter ?

2. **Nōne** expects an affirmative answer :

nōne epistulam scrībit ? he is writing the letter, is he not ? or, is he not writing the letter ?

3. **Num** expects a negative answer :

num epistulam scrībit ? he is not writing the letter, is he ?

b. A double, or alternative, question asks which of two supposed cases is true.

1. The first member of a double question is generally introduced by **utrum** or **-ne** (neither of which is to be translated); the second member by **an**, or :

utrum scrībet, an veniet ? will he write, or come ?
scrībetne, an veniet ? will he write, or come ?

NOTE. Frequently the first member has no introductory word:

scribet, an veniet? *will he write, or come?*

2. If the second member means simply *or not*, *annōn* is used in direct questions, *necne* in indirect questions (§ 201):

scribitne annōn? *is he writing or not?*

quaerō scribatne necne, *I ask whether he is writing or not*

dēclārābant utrum ex ūsū esset necne, *they announced whether it was advantageous or not, cf. B. G. I. 50*

171. **Rhetorical Questions.** A rhetorical question is one that is asked simply for effect, and seeks no information:

tālēsne iniuriās perferre possum? *can I endure such injuries?*

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

172. The subjunctive is used in independent sentences to express:

a. EXHORTATION, in the first person plural, present tense; the negative is *nē*:

nē hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus, *let us not kill these robbers, cf. B. G. VII. 36*

b. COMMAND, in the third person, present tense:

obsidēs reddat, *let him return the hostages, B. G. I. 35*

c. NEGATIVE COMMAND, or PROHIBITION, with the negative *nē*:

nē dēspexeris or *nē dēspiciās,* *do not despise*

NOTE 1. Negative command is generally expressed, however, by *nōli, nōlite*, with the present infinitive. See § 173. note.

NOTE 2. The uses under a, b, and c are often called volitive (from *volō, will*) subjunctives, since they express an act of the will.

d. DELIBERATION, in questions implying doubt, perplexity, or indignation:

quam ratiōnem pugnae insistam? *what plan of battle shall I adopt?*
cf. B. G. III. 14

cūr dēspērētis? *why should you despair?* B. G. I. 40

NOTE. Such questions are usually rhetorical (§ 171) in character.

e. WISH (Optative Subjunctive), often with **utinam**. The negative is **nē**. The three forms of wishes and their expression in Latin are as follows :

1. A future wish regarded as possible of fulfillment ; present (less frequently perfect) subjunctive, with or without **utinam** :

(utinam) *scribat*
(utinam) *scripserit* } *may he write*

2. A wish unfulfilled in present time ; past subjunctive with **utinam** :

utinam scriberet, *would (or I wish) that he were writing*

3. A wish unfulfilled in past time ; past perfect subjunctive with **utinam** :

utinam scripsisset, *would (or I wish) that he had written*

f. POSSIBILITY (Potential Subjunctive), to express what may be or might be. The negative is **nōn** :

aliquis dicat, *some one may say*
tum viderēs, *then you might have seen*

NOTE. The subjunctive denoting possibility is often used as the conclusion of an expressed or implied condition :

laudētur (si hoc faciat), *he would be praised* (if he should do this)
laudārētur (si hoc faceret), *he would be praised* (if he were doing this)
laudātus esset (si hoc fecisset), *he would have been praised* (if he had done this)

THE IMPERATIVE

173. The imperative is used to express a command or entreaty :

"*dēsīte*," inquit, "*commilitōnēs*," "*leap down, fellow soldiers*,"
he said, B. G. IV. 25

NOTE. A negative command, or prohibition, is regularly expressed by **nōli**, **nōlite**, with the infinitive (§ 172. c. note 1) :

nōli committere, *do not bring it to pass*, cf. B. G. I. 13

MOODS IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

174. Clauses denoting the purpose of an action are usually introduced by *ut, that (in order that)*, affirmative; and *nē, that not, lest*, negative; and stand in the subjunctive mood:

nōn nulli ut timōris suspiciōnem vitārent remanēbant, some remained that they might avoid the suspicion of fear, B.G. I. 39

nē graviōri bellō occurreret ad exercitum proficiſcitur, he set out for the army that he might not meet with too serious a war, B.G. IV. 6

175. Relative Clauses of Purpose. A purpose clause may be introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb:

lēgātōs mittunt quī dicerent, they sent envoys to say (lit. who should say), B.G. I. 7

176. Relative Purpose Clauses containing a Comparative. Purpose clauses containing a comparative are regularly introduced by *quōd*, which is equivalent to *ut eō*:

manipulōs laxāre iussit quō facilius gladiis ūti possent, he gave orders to open the ranks that they might be able to use their swords more easily, B.G. II. 25

NOTE. For substantive clauses of purpose see (§ 183). Purpose may be expressed also by the gerund (§§ 223, 225), the gerundive (§§ 224, 225), or the supine (§ 226. a).

CLAUSES OF DESCRIPTION OR CHARACTERISTIC

177. A relative clause that describes an antecedent by telling *what kind* of person or thing it is, is called a clause of *description* or *characteristic*, and takes the subjunctive:

domi nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, there was nothing at home whereby they could allay hunger, B.G. I. 28

a. Relative clauses of description are especially common after such expressions as *est quī, sunt quī, finis est quī, sōlus est quī* :

erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exire possent, there were in all two ways by which they could go out from home, B.G. I. 6

Unus sum quī addūcī nōn potuerim, I am the only one who could not be influenced, B. G. I. 31

178. A relative clause that simply tells *what* person or thing the antecedent is, instead of *what kind* it is, or one that only *adds a fact* without which the antecedent clause would still be complete, takes the indicative :

ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, negat sē posse etc., when the day which he had decided upon with the envoys came, he said that he could not etc., B.G. I. 8

Quam cōstituerat tells *what* day, not *what kind* of day.

auxilia ex Britannīā, quae contrā eas regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt, they summoned reënforcements from Britain, which is situated opposite to those regions, B.G. III. 9

The antecedent clause makes complete sense without the *quae* clause.

For relative clauses of description denoting cause see § 190.

CLAUSES OF RESULT

179. Clauses that express the result of some act or state mentioned in the main clause are introduced by *ut, so that*, and take the subjunctive mood. The negative in clauses of result is *nōn* :

mōns impendēbat, ut facile perpauci prohibēre possent, a mountain towered above, so that a very few (men) could easily keep (them) back, B.G. I. 6

collis nāscēbātur silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset, a hill rose, wooded, so that a view within could not easily be gained, B.G. II. 18

NOTE. A result clause may often be recognized by the presence in the main clause of some word meaning *so, so great, such, etc.*, like *ita, sic, tantus, talis, etc.*:

ita Helvētīi institūtī sunt ut obsidēs accipere cōsuērīnt, the Helvetii have been so trained that they are accustomed to take hostages, B.G. I. 14

180. Relative Clauses of Result. A clause of result may be introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb:

nēmō est tam senex quī sē annum nōn putet posse vīvere, no one is so old that he does not think (lit. who does not think) that he can live for a year

NOTE. Relative clauses of purpose or result may often be tested by noting whether *ut* with a personal or demonstrative pronoun can be substituted for the relative. In the last sentence *ut* is might have been used instead of *quī*.

For substantive clauses of result see § 187.

SUBSTANTIVE, OR NOUN, CLAUSES

181. A substantive clause is one that is used like a noun, that is, as the subject or object of a verb, or as an appositive or predicate.

182. Quod Clauses of Fact. Substantive clauses introduced by *quod*, *that*, take the indicative to state a fact:

quod glōriāmini, eōdem pertinet, (the fact) that you boast, amounts to the same thing, B.G. I. 14

The *quod* clause is the subject of *pertinet*.

hōc est miserior fortūna, quod nē in occultō quidem querī audent, their lot is the more pitiful in this, that they do not dare to complain even in secret, B.G. I. 32

The *quod* clause is in apposition with *hōc*.

a. Quod at the beginning of a sentence often has the meaning *as to the fact that*:

quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus es etc., as to the fact that you attacked one canton unexpectedly etc., B.G. I. 13

183. Substantive Clauses of Purpose. Substantive clauses with *ut* or *nē* and the subjunctive are used after verbs of *commanding, persuading,*

requesting, urging, wishing, and similar verbs whose action is directed toward the future :

his uti conquirerent imperavit, *he ordered these to hunt (them) up*
(lit. *that they should hunt (them) up*), B.G. I. 28

persuadet Casticō ut rēgnum occupāret, *he persuades Casticus to seize*
the supreme power (lit. *that he should seize*), B.G. I. 3

In these sentences the *ut* clause is used as object.

dat negotium Senonibus ut ea cognoscant, *he employs the Senones to*
find this out (lit. *he gives employment to the Senones etc.*), B.G. II. 2

Here the *ut* clause is in apposition with *negotium*.

erat ei praeceptum ne proelium committeret, *it had been enjoined on*
him that he should not engage in battle, B.G. I. 22

Here the *ne* clause is the subject of *erat praeceptum*.

NOTE. Cōnor, iubeō, patior, volō, nōlō, and mālō take the infinitive :

nāvēs longās paulum removērī iussit, *he ordered the ships of war to be*
withdrawn a little, B.G. IV. 25

184. Substantive Clauses after Verbs of Fearing. After verbs of *fearing* substantive clauses with the subjunctive are introduced by *ne*, rendered *that, lest*, or by *ut*, rendered *that not* :

verēbantur ne ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur, *they feared that our*
army would be led against them, cf. B.G. II. 1

verēbantur ut exercitus noster ad eos adduceretur, *they feared that our*
army would not be led against them

185. Substantive Clauses after Verbs of Hindering and Opposing. Verbs of *hindering, opposing*, and the like, are followed by substantive clauses with the subjunctive, introduced by *ne*, *quā*, or *quō minus*. *Nē* is used when the main verb is affirmative, *quā* when it is negated, *quō minus* in either case :

dēterrere potes ne maior multitūdō trādūcatur, *you are able to prevent*
a larger number from being brought over, B.G. I. 31

Germānī retinērī nōn poterant quā tela conicerent, *the Germans could*
not be prevented from hurling their weapons, B.G. I. 47

neque recusābunt quō minus sub Germānōrum imperiō sint, *nor will*
they refuse to be under the sway of the Germans, cf. B.G. I. 31

a. Some of these verbs also allow the infinitive :

nostrōs nāvibus egredi prohibēbant, they kept our men from going forth from the ships, B. G. IV. 24

186. Substantive Clauses after *nōn dubitō*, etc. Negated expressions of doubt (*nōn dubitō*, *I do not doubt*; *nōn dubium est*, *there is no doubt*) are followed by *quā* (*that*) and the subjunctive :

nōn dubitō quā supplicium sūmat, I do not doubt that he will exact punishment, B. G. I. 31

nōn est dubium quā tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētīi possint, there is no doubt that the Helvetii are the most powerful (tribe) of all Gaul, B. G. I. 3

187. Substantive Clauses of Result. I. Substantive clauses of result with *ut* and the subjunctive are used as the subject or object of verbs of *accomplishing, effecting*, etc., especially *faciō*, *efficiō*, *perficiō*, etc. They may be used also as appositives :

obsidēs ut inter sē dent perficit, he brings it about that they give hostages to one another, B. G. I. 9 (object)

factum est ut Germāni mercōde arcesserentur, it was brought about that the Germans were invited for pay, B. G. I. 31 (subject)

hanc grātiā refert, ut gravetur, he makes this return, (namely) that he objects, B. G. I. 35 (appositive)

II. Substantive clauses of result with *ut* and the subjunctive are used as the subject of certain impersonal verbs, such as *it happens, it remains, it is added*, etc., as *fit*, *accidit*, *accēdit*, etc. :

accidit ut esset lūna plēna, it happened that there was a full moon, B. G. IV. 29

NOTE 1. Substantive clauses with *ut*, substantive clauses with *quod* (§ 182), and infinitive clauses with subject accusative (§§ 216, 217) are constructions so nearly equivalent that any one of the three may at times be used with relatively little difference in meaning.

NOTE 2. Indirect questions (§ 201), and infinitive clauses with subject accusative after verbs of *saying* etc. (§ 203), are also substantive clauses.

CAUSAL CLAUSES

188. Causal Clauses introduced by *quod*, etc. Causal clauses introduced by *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, or *quandō*, *because*, take :

a. The *indicative* when the reason given is that of the speaker or writer :

fortissimi sunt Belgae propterea quod longissimē absunt, the Belgae are the bravest because they are farthest away, B.G. I. 1

Here Cæsar gives *his own reason* why the Belgæ are the bravest.

b. The *subjunctive* when the reason given is not that of the speaker or writer, but is simply *alleged* as the reason of some one else :

Hædui (veniēbant) questum quod Harūdēs finēs populārentur, the Hædui came to complain because (they said) the Harudēs were devastating their fields, B.G. I. 37

Here Cæsar gives, not his own reason, but the reason *alleged* by the Hædui.

189. Causal Clauses introduced by *cum*. Causal clauses introduced by *cum*, *since* or *because*, take the subjunctive :

his cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs mittunt, since they could not persuade these of their own accord, they sent envoys, B.G. I. 9

praesertim cum eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscepit queritur, he complains especially because influenced by their entreaties he has undertaken the war, B.G. I. 16

190. Relative Clauses of Cause. Cause may be denoted by a relative clause with the subjunctive :

magnam Caesar iniūriam facit quā vectigālīa dēteriōra faciat, Cæsar does a great wrong in making (lit. who makes, i.e. because he is making) the revenues lower, B.G. I. 36

NOTE. In this use the relative is equivalent to *cum* *is* etc. It is often preceded by *ut*, *utpote*, or *quippe*. Cf. B.G. IV. 23, *ut quae . . . habērent*.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

191. Concessive Clauses with the Indicative. Concessive clauses with the indicative are introduced by **quamquam**, **etsi**, **tametsi**, *although* :

quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt hūmāniōrēs, although they are of the same race, they are more civilized, B. G. IV. 3

nam etsi vidēbat, tamen nōn putābat etc., for although he saw, nevertheless he did not think etc., B. G. I. 46

NOTE. **Quamquam** often introduces a *principal* clause to mark a transition to a new subject of discussion. It is then translated *and yet*.

192. Concessive Clauses with the Subjunctive. Concessive clauses with the subjunctive are introduced by **cum**, **ut**, **quamvis**, *although* :

cum ea ita sint, tamen si obsidēs dabuntur, pācem faciam, although these things are so, nevertheless, if hostages shall be given, I will make peace, B. G. I. 14

ac iam ut omnia contrā opiniōnem acciderent, tamen perspiciebant etc., and although now all things should fall out contrary to their expectation, nevertheless they were well aware etc., B. G. III. 9

NOTE. **Cum** is used in temporal clauses (*when*, § 194) and in causal clauses (*since*, § 189) as well as in concessive clauses (*although*). When **tamen** (*nevertheless*) occurs in the main clause, the **cum** clause is concessive; if **praesertim** (*especially*) precedes, the **cum** clause is probably causal.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

193. Temporal Clauses introduced by postquam, ut, ubi, etc. Temporal clauses introduced by **postquam**, *after*, **ut**, **ubi**, *when*, **cum**, **primum**, **simul**, **simul atque (ac)**, *as soon as*, take the indicative, usually the perfect, sometimes the historical present :

postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās ad sē venire vidit, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit, after he saw that all the forces of the Belgae were coming toward him, he hastened to lead his army across, B. G. II. 5

Caesar ubi suōs urgērī vidit, prōcessit, when Cæsar saw that his men were hard pressed, he advanced, B. G. II. 25

194. Temporal Clauses introduced by *cum*. Temporal clauses introduced by *cum*, *when*, and referring to the present or future, take the indicative; but referring to the past they have two uses:

a. Definitive: to define or fix the time at which the action of the main verb occurred. The mood is indicative:

cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis principēs erant Hæduī,
when Cæsar came into Gaul, the Hædui were at the head of one
faction, B.G. VI. 12

b. Descriptive: to describe the situation or circumstances under which the action of the main verb took place. The mood is subjunctive (past or past perfect):

cum ab his quæreret, sic reperiebatur, when he made inquiries from these,
he gained the following information, B.G. II. 4

cum dē imprōvisō vēnisset, Rēmī lēgātōs misērunt, when he had come
unexpectedly, the Remi sent envoys, B.G. II. 3

In the sentence (§ 194. *a*) *cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis principēs erant Hæduī*, the time of the Hæduan supremacy is merely *dated*, or *fixed*, by the *cum* clause, and is true independently of Cæsar's coming. They were at the head of one faction whether he came or not.

In the sentence (§ 194. *b*) *cum dē imprōvisō vēnisset, Rēmī lēgātōs misērunt*, the fact *Rēmī lēgātōs misērunt*, *the Remi sent envoys*, is not true independently of his coming. They sent them under the circumstances occasioned by his coming. They would not have sent them if he had not come.

NOTE. Temporal clauses of description with *cum* correspond closely with relative clauses of description (§ 177).

195. *Cum* Clauses denoting Time and Cause. Sometimes the idea of *time* is combined with that of *cause*. In such cases *cum* with the subjunctive is always used:

Helvētīī, cum id intellegent, lēgātōs misērunt, the Helvetii sent envoys
when (since) they learned that, cf. B.G. I. 13

NOTE. This use corresponds with the relative clause of cause (§ 190).

196. *Cum* meaning *whenever*. *Cum*, *whenever*, denoting a repeated action, is generally followed by the indicative:

ad eos sē, cum usus est, recipiunt, *they retreat to these whenever it is necessary*, cf. B. G. IV. 2

cum funēs adducti erant, praerumpēbantur, *whenever the ropes were drawn tight, they were broken off*, B. G. III. 14

197. Temporal Clauses introduced by *antequam* or *priusquam*. Temporal clauses introduced by *antequam* or *priusquam*, *before*, have the following uses :

a. When they denote an *actual fact* they take the indicative :

neque prius fugere dēstitērunt, quam ad flūmen Rhēnum pervēnērunt, *nor did they cease to flee, before they reached the river Rhine*, B. G. I. 53

b. When they denote something *anticipated*, but not sure, they take the subjunctive :

priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet, *before undertaking anything, he orders Diviciacus to be summoned to him*, B. G. I. 19

198. Temporal Clauses introduced by *dum*, *dōnec*, or *quoad*. I. *Dum*, meaning *while*, takes the indicative in the historical present (§ 153. *a*), even though the time is past :

dum haec geruntur, Caesarī nūtiātum est, *while this was going on, word was brought to Caesar*, B. G. I. 46

II. *Dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, meaning *as long as*, take the indicative :

quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit, *he resisted bravely as long as he was able*, B. G. IV. 12

III. *Dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, meaning *until*, have two uses :

a. The indicative, to denote an *actual fact* :

neque finem sequendī fēcērunt quoad praecipitēs hostēs agērunt, *nor did they cease pursuing until they routed the enemy*, B. G. V. 17

b. The subjunctive, to denote something *anticipated* :

dum nāvēs convenirent exspectāvit, *he waited until the ships should arrive*, B. G. IV. 23

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

199. Definition. A conditional sentence is a complex sentence containing an independent clause and a subordinate clause introduced by *sī*, *if*, or *nisi*, *sī nōn*, *unless*, *if not*. The subordinate clause is called the *condition* (or *protasis*) and the main clause the *conclusion* (or *apodosis*).

Conditional clauses are divided as to time into the following three classes :

I. PRESENT CONDITIONS :

a. Non-Committal Conditions (that is, those in which nothing is implied as to the truth or falsity of the case supposed); these take the present indicative :

sī hoc facit, laudātur, if he is doing this, he is praised

b. Conditions Contrary to Fact; these take the past (imperfect) subjunctive :

sī hoc faceret, laudārētur, if he were doing this (but he is not), he would be praised (at the present time)

II. FUTURE CONDITIONS :

a. More Probable Conditions; these take the future or future perfect indicative :

sī hoc faciet, laudābitur, if he does (shall do) this, he will be praised

sī hoc fecerit, laudābitur, if he shall have done this, he will be praised

b. Less Probable Conditions; these take the present or perfect subjunctive :

sī hoc faciat (fecerit), laudētur, if he should do this, he would be praised

III. PAST CONDITIONS :

a. Non-Committal Conditions; these take the past descriptive (imperfect) or perfect indicative :

sī hoc faciēbat, laudābātur, if he was doing this, he was praised

sī hoc fecit, laudātus est, if he did this, he was praised

b. Conditions Contrary to Fact; these take the past perfect (pluperfect) subjunctive:

*sī hoc fēcisset, laudātus esset, if he had done this (but he did not), he
 . would have been praised*

NOTE. The conditional clause, not the conclusion, determines the class to which a conditional sentence belongs. Although both parts are usually in the same mood and tense, yet the conclusion may be in any form of the verb that the sense requires; for example:

sī hoc facit, eum laudāte, if he is doing this, praise him

Because of the form of the conditional clause this conditional sentence must be classed as present non-committal.

200. Clauses of Comparison with *velut*, *velut sī*. A conditional clause of comparison introduced by *velut*, *velut sī*, *as if*, takes the subjunctive, the tense being determined by the rule for sequence of tenses (§ 162):

*absentis Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut sī cōram adsit, horrent, they stand
 in fear of the cruelty of Ariovistus in his absence (absentis) just
 as (they would) if he were (should be) present, B. G. I. 32*

NOTE. Such a condition has the future less probable form in the Latin, though in English it has the form of a condition contrary to fact. The sentence above, thrown back into past time, reads *velut sī adesset, horrēbant*.

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

201. Indirect questions are substantive interrogative clauses used, generally as object, after verbs of *inquiring, asking, knowing, telling*, etc. They are in the subjunctive mood:

*quae in eō reprehendat ostendit, he points out what he censures in him,
 B. G. I. 20*

*intellegō quantō id cum periculō fēcērim, I know with how great
 danger I did that, B. G. I. 17*

NOTE. The same interrogative words that introduce direct questions (§ 170) are used with indirect; but questions answered by "yes" or "no" are introduced without distinction by *num* or *-ne*, translated *whether*.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

202. A direct quotation is a statement made in the exact words of the original speaker or writer. Such a statement is said to be in the *direct discourse*:

his Caesar respondit, "Minus mihi dubitātiōnis datur," to these Caesar answered, "I entertain less (of) doubt," B. G. I. 14

"dēsillite," inquit, "commilitōnēs," "leap down, comrades," he said, B. G. IV. 25

203. An indirect quotation is a reported statement, not made in the exact words of the original speaker or writer, but adapted to the form of the sentence used by the person quoting them. Such a statement is said to be in *indirect discourse*, and is used after verbs of *saying* and *thinking*:

his Caesar respondit sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari, to these Caesar answered that he entertained less (of) doubt, B. G. I. 14

a. Sometimes the verb of *saying* is not expressed, but is understood from the context:

eōs incūsāvit: Ariovistum populū Rōmānī amicitiam adpetisse, he upbraided them (saying) that Ariovistus had sought to gain the friendship of the Roman people, B. G. I. 40

b. The subjunctive may be used in a subordinate clause merely to *imply* that the quotation is indirect. This is called *implied indirect discourse* (§ 208 and *b*):

Caesar frumentum quod essent polliciti flāgitāre, Caesar demanded the grain which (as he said) they had promised, B. G. I. 16

Independent Sentences in Indirect Discourse

204. Declarative Sentences. In declarative sentences the six tenses of the indicative, on becoming indirect, pass into the three corresponding tenses of the infinitive with subject accusative, as shown by the following table:

INDICATIVE	INFINITIVE
Present	Present
Past descriptive	Perfect
Future	
Perfect	
Past perfect	Future
Future perfect	

a. The subject accusative (§ 92) of the infinitive is regularly expressed in indirect discourse, even if it was not used in the direct. Pronouns of the first and second person are changed to those of the third (if the verb of saying is in the third person), the reflexive forms (§ 132) being used to refer to the subject of the verb of *saying*:

DIRECT: (ego) *trānsiī nōn meā sponte, I did not cross of my own free will*

INDIRECT: *Ariovistus respondit trānsisse sēsē nōn suā sponte, Ariovistus replied that he had not crossed of his own free will, B.G. I. 44*

205. Imperative Sentences. An imperative in the direct discourse is changed in the indirect to the subjunctive; the present being used after a primary tense, the past after a secondary tense:

respondit sī quid vellent, reverterentur, he answered that if they wanted anything, they should return, B.G. I. 7

This sentence in the direct form would be

sī quid vultis, revertimini, if you want anything, return

206. Prohibitions. In a prohibition having *nōli*, *nōlite*, and the infinitive in the direct discourse (§ 173. note), the infinitive is changed to the present or past subjunctive with *nē* in the indirect according to the sequence of tenses, and *nōli* disappears:

nōli committere, do not bring it to pass, B.G. I. 13

This prohibition when changed to indirect discourse becomes

nē committeret, (Divico said) that he should not bring it to pass

207. Questions. I. *Real Questions* (§ 170) on becoming indirect change their verbs from the indicative to the subjunctive, the tenses conforming to the rule for the sequence of tenses:

DIRECT: *cūr in meās possessionēs venīs?* *why do you come into my possessions?* B.G. I. 44

INDIRECT: *Ariovistus respondit . . . cūr in suās possessionēs veniret,* *Ariovistus answered (asking) why he came into his possessions*

II. *a. Rhetorical Questions* (§ 171) that have the indicative in the direct discourse, change the indicative to the infinitive in the indirect:

DIRECT: *num recentium iniuriarum memoriam depōnere possum?* *can I put aside the recollection of the recent wrongs?* B.G. I. 14

INDIRECT: *Caesar respondit . . . num recentium iniuriarum memoriam depōnere posse,* *Caesar answered (asking) whether he could put aside the recollection etc.*

b. Rhetorical Questions that have the deliberative subjunctive (§ 172. *d*) in the direct, retain the subjunctive in the indirect; the tense follows the rule for the sequence of tenses:

DIRECT: *cūr de vestrā virtute desperētis?* *why should you be diffident of your own courage?* B.G. I. 40

INDIRECT: *(quaesivit) cūr de suā virtute desperarent,* *(he inquired) why they should be diffident of their own courage*

Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse

208. General Rule; Mood. Verbs in the subordinate clauses of complex sentences are changed to or remain in the subjunctive:

DIRECT: *hī sunt idem Germānī quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitui nōn potuerunt,* *these are the same Germans who nevertheless could not equal our army,* B.G. I. 40

INDIRECT: *(Caesar dicit) hōs esse eōdem Germānōs quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitui nōn potuerint,* *(Caesar says) that these are the same Germans who nevertheless could not equal our army*

a. If the statement made in the subordinate clause is true independently of the words of the speaker or writer, the indicative mood may be retained:

certior factus est, ex eā parte vici quam Gallis concesserat, omnēs noctū discessisse, he was informed that all had departed by night from that part of the village which he had assigned to the Gauls, B.G. III. 2

b. IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE. The subjunctive may be used in a subordinate clause merely to *imply* that the quotation is indirect. This is called implied indirect discourse (§ 203. *b*):

Caesar frumentum quod essent polliciti flāgitāre, Cæsar demanded the grain which (as he said) they had promised, B.G. I. 16

209. Tense. The tense of verbs in subordinate clauses in indirect discourse is determined by the tense of the verb of *saying*, according to the rule for the sequence of tenses; for example, *dicit, he says*, will be followed by the present or perfect subjunctive; *dixit, he said*, by the past or past perfect subjunctive:

DIRECT: *id quod in Nervii fēci, faciam, I will do that which I did in (the case of) the Nervii, B.G. II. 32*

INDIRECT: *dicit sē id quod in Nervii fēcerit, factūrum esse, he says that he will do that which he did in (the case of) the Nervii*
dixit sē id quod in Nervii fēcisset, factūrum esse, he said that he would do that which he had done in (the case of) the Nervii

DIRECT: *verēmur angustias itineris quae intercēdunt, we fear the difficulties of the way which intervene, cf. B.G. I. 39*

INDIRECT: *dicunt sē verēri angustias itineris quae intercēdant, they say that they fear the difficulties of the way which intervene*
dixerunt sē verēri angustias itineris quae intercēderent, they said that they feared the difficulties of the way which intervened

NOTE. As a rule the same verb stem will be used in the subjunctive as was used in the indicative; for example, a present or future indicative will become a present or past subjunctive; a perfect or future perfect indicative will become a perfect or past perfect subjunctive.

EXCEPTION: Sometimes for the sake of vividness a primary tense is used in the subjunctive after a secondary tense of a verb of *saying*:

respondit ita Helvētiōs institūtōs esse uti obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōsuērunt, he replied that the Helvetii had been so trained that they were accustomed to receive hostages, not to give (them), B.G. I. 14

Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse

210. All conditional sentences with verbs in the indicative (§ 199. I. *a*, II. *a*, III. *a*) are treated in indirect discourse as ordinary complex sentences, the verb in the main clause (conclusion) being changed to the infinitive, and the verb in the subordinate clause (condition) to the subjunctive:

DIRECT: *hostēs sī bellum gerunt, vincunt, if the enemy are waging war, they are conquering*

INDIRECT: *dicit hostēs, sī bellum gerant, vincere, he says that if the enemy are waging war, they are conquering*

211. In future less probable conditions (§ 199. II. *b*) the verb in the conclusion (which, of course, is the main verb) is changed to the *future infinitive*; the verb in the condition, being in a subordinate clause, remains in the subjunctive, though the tense may have to be changed to accord with the rule for the sequence of tenses:

DIRECT: *hostēs sī bellum gerant, vincant, if the enemy should wage war, they would conquer*

INDIRECT: *dicit hostēs, sī bellum gerant, victūrōs esse, he says that if the enemy should wage war, they would conquer*

dixit hostēs, sī bellum gererent, victūrōs esse, he said that if the enemy should wage war, they would conquer

212. In future conditions, either more or less probable (§ 199. II. *a*, *b*), a passive verb in the conclusion of the direct discourse is expressed by *fore (futūrum esse) ut* with the present subjunctive after a primary tense, past subjunctive after a secondary tense:

DIRECT: *sī bellum gerent, vincantur, if they shall wage war, they will be conquered* (more probable)

sī bellum gerant, vincantur, if they should wage war, they would be conquered (less probable)

INDIRECT (both more probable and less probable): *dicit sī bellum gerant fore ut vincantur, he says that if they shall (should) wage war, they will (would) be conquered*

dixit sī bellum gererent fore ut vincerentur, he said that if they should wage war, they would be conquered

213. In conditions contrary to fact (§ 199. I. *b*, III. *b*) the verb in the *condition* (past or past perfect subjunctive) remains unchanged. The verb in the *conclusion* (past or past perfect subjunctive) undergoes the following changes:

a. If it is in the active voice, it is changed to the proper form of the future participle in *-ūrus* with *fuisse*:

DIRECT: *hostēs sī bellum gererent, vincerent*, *if the enemy were waging war (now), they would be conquering*

INDIRECT: *dicit (or dixit) hostēs, sī bellum gererent, victūrōs fuisse*, *he says (or said) that if the enemy were waging war, they would be conquering*

DIRECT: *hostēs sī bellum gessissent, vīcissent*, *if the enemy had waged war, they would have conquered*

INDIRECT: *dicit (or dixit) hostēs, sī bellum gessissent, victūrōs fuisse*, *he says (or said) that if the enemy had waged war, they would have conquered*

b. If the verb in the conclusion is in the passive voice, the form *futūrum fuisse ut* is used, followed by the past subjunctive of the verb to be changed:

DIRECT: *hostēs sī bellum gessissent, victi essent*, *if the enemy had waged war, they would have been conquered*

INDIRECT: *dicit (or dixit) futūrum fuisse ut hostēs, sī bellum gessissent, vincerentur*, *he says (or said) that if the enemy had waged war, they would have been conquered.*

SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

214. A subordinate verb that would regularly be in the indicative is sometimes attracted to the subjunctive by another subjunctive (or equivalent infinitive), on which it depends:

monuit, ut maritimae rēs postulārent, omnēs rēs administrārentur, *he directed that all things should be executed as naval tactics demanded*, B. G. IV. 23

dat negotium Senonibus uti ea quae apud eos gerantur cognōscant, *he employs the Senones to find out those things which are going on among them*, B. G. II. 2

THE INFINITIVE

215. The infinitive is a verbal noun. As a verb it has tense and voice, and may be transitive or intransitive, but expresses neither person nor number. As a noun it has certain *cāse* constructions.

216. The Infinitive as Subject. The infinitive, either with or without a subject accusative, may be used as subject :

a. With *esse* :

perfacile est cōnāta perficere, it is easy to accomplish the undertakings, B. G. I. 3.

b. With impersonal verbs :

nōn oportet mē impediri, it is not proper that I should be hindered, B. G. I. 36

217. The Infinitive as Object. The infinitive, either with or without a subject accusative, may be used as object :

a. With subject accusative ; after verbs of *wishing, ordering, permitting, allowing*, and the like :

liberos obsidēs ad sē addūci iussit, he ordered the children to be brought to him (as) hostages, B. G. II. 5

b. With subject accusative ; after verbs of *saying, thinking, perceiving*, and the like. This is the regular construction of principal clauses in indirect discourse (§§ 203, 204) :

Caesar certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās coniūrāre, Cæsar was informed that all the Belgæ were conspiring, B. G. II. 1

c. Without subject accusative ; to complete the predicate of verbs meaning *to be able, be accustomed, decide, begin, dare, try*, and the like, which require another action of the same subject. Such verbs are called verbs of incomplete predication, and the accompanying infinitive is called the *complementary infinitive* :

cōpias parāre coepērunt, they began to prepare forces, B. G. III. 23

cōstituērunt ea comparāre, they decided to prepare those things,

B. G. I. 3

218. Historical Infinitive. In vivid narration the infinitive with subject *nominative* may be used for the past descriptive indicative:

Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum flāgītāre, Caesar demanded grain of the Haedui, B.G. I. 16

PARTICIPLES

219. Participles are verbal adjectives; as adjectives they agree with nouns in gender, number, and case; as verbs they have tense and voice, and may take an object. For tense distinctions see § 167.

220. The present and past participles are often used predicatively where in English a phrase or a subordinate clause would be employed:

a. Time:

patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omni Galliā vexatā, within the memory of our fathers, when all Gaul was ravaged (lit. all Gaul having been ravaged), B.G. II. 4

b. Cause:

quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi existimāvit, because he was greatly disturbed by these facts, Caesar thought that he ought to hasten, B.G. I. 37

c. Condition:

damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat, punishment was to follow, if he was condemned (lit. having been condemned), B.G. I. 4

d. Concession:

beneficiō adfectus hanc grātiā refert, though he has been treated with kindness, he makes this return (lit. having been treated), cf. B.G. I. 35

e. Simple Relative Clause:

submōtis restitērunt, they resisted those who had been routed, cf. B.G. I. 25

221. Participles used as Nouns. The present and past participles are often used as nouns:

opiniōnem pugnantium praebēbant, they gave the impression of (men) fighting, cf. B.G. III. 25

222. The Periphrastic Conjugations. I. The future participle in *-ūrus* is used with the verb *sum* to form what is called the *active periphrastic conjugation*. This denotes future, or intended, action:

praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, except what they were going to carry with them, B.G. I. 5

II. The future passive participle, or gerundive in *-ndus* (§ 224), is used with the verb *sum* to form what is called the *passive periphrastic conjugation*. This is used to denote *what must be, or ought to be, done*.

The word representing the person upon whom the duty or obligation rests is put in the dative of apparent agent (§ 87):

omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendī, all (kinds of) cruelties have to be endured, cf. B.G. I. 32

Caesarī omnia unō tempore erant agenda, Caesar had to do all things at one time (lit. all things had to be done by Caesar etc.), B.G. II. 20

NOTE. Intransitive verbs in the passive periphrastic conjugation are regularly used impersonally:

concedendum esse nōn putābat, he did not think that he ought to comply (lit. that it ought to be complied)

GERUND

223. The gerund is an active verbal noun with stem like that of the gerundive. It is found only in the neuter gender, and in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular of the second declension. It is governed in general as a noun, and may have the modifiers of a verb:

a. Genitive:

hominēs bellandī cupidī, men eager for warfare (lit. desirous of warring), B.G. I. 2

b. Dative; the dative of the gerund is rare except with a few adjectives.

c. Accusative; the accusative of the gerund is used only with prepositions and does not take an object:

Caesar respondit diem sē ad deliberandum sūptūrum (esse), Caesar answered that he would take time for deliberating, B.G. I. 7

d. Ablative:

reperiēbat in quaerendō Caesar, Caesar found on inquiry (lit. *in inquiring*), B. G. I. 18

NOTE. The gerund with a direct object is found as a rule only in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition.

GERUNDIVE

224. The gerundive (ending in *-ndus*) is a passive verbal adjective, declined like an adjective of the first and second declensions. It is used as follows:

a. The gerundive as a predicate adjective in the *passive periphrastic conjugation* (§ 222. II) denotes *what must be*, or *ought to be*, *done*.

Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda, Caesar had to do all things at one time (lit. *all things had to be done by Caesar etc.*), B. G. II. 20

b. The gerundive is generally used instead of the gerund with a direct object (§ 223, note). The gerundive agrees with its noun, which takes the case that the gerund would have:

praedae faciendae facultās dabātur, an opportunity for securing (lit. *of securing*) *plunder was afforded*, cf. B. G. IV. 34

The equivalent gerund construction would be *praedam faciendī facultās*, with *praedam* as object of the gerund *faciendī*. The translation in both constructions is the same.

ab his fit initium retinendī Siliī, these take the initiative in detaining Silius, B. G. III. 8

in petendā pāce culpam in multitudinem contulērunt, in seeking peace they attributed the fault to the multitude, B. G. IV. 27

ad eas rēs cōficiendās, for accomplishing these measures, B. G. I. 3

c. With the personal and reflexive forms *meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī*, a form in *-ndī* is commonly used without change in gender or number:

neque suī conligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt, neither do they leave to the enemy an opportunity of recovering themselves, B. G. III. 6

As *suī* is plural, we might here expect *conligendōrum* to agree with it.

d. The gerundive may be used as an attributive adjective. In this use it often expresses purpose after verbs like *cūrō*, *to care for*, *see to*, etc.:

pontem faciendum cūrat, *he causes a bridge to be built* (lit. *he sees to a bridge to be built*), B.G. I. 13

Gerund and Gerundive expressing Purpose

225. Both gerund and gerundive are used to express purpose:

a. In the accusative with *ad*:

respondit diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum (esse), *he replied that he would take time to deliberate*, B.G. I. 7

ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur, *Orgetorix is chosen to accomplish these measures*, B.G. I. 3

b. In the genitive with *causā* or *grātiā*:

venisne speculandī causā? *do you come for the sake of spying?*
cf. B.G. I. 47

id nōn Galliae oppugnandae causā faciō, *I am not doing that for the sake of attacking Gaul*, B.G. I. 44

SUPINE

226. The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, found only in the accusative (*-um*) and ablative (*-ū*):

a. The supine in *-um* is used after verbs of motion to express purpose:

venī auxilium postulātum, *I came to ask aid*, B.G. I. 31

b. The supine in *-ū* is used with adjectives like an ablative of respect (§ 115):

optimum factū esse dūxērunt, *they considered it the best thing to do*
(lit. *best with respect to doing*), B.G. IV. 30

NOTE. The supine in *-um* may take an object; the supine in *-ū* never does:

lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium, *they send envoys to ask aid*, B.G. I. 11.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR

227. Dates were reckoned by the Romans as follows :

a. By the Roman calendar, as reformed by Julius and Augustus Cæsar, the year had 365 days, divided into months as at present, February having 29 days every fourth year.

b. The names of the months, used as adjectives, were as follows :

Iānuārius , -a, -um	Māius , -a, -um	September , -bris, -bre
Februārius , -a, -um	Iūnius , -a, -um	Octōber , -bris, -bre
Mārtius , -a, -um	Quintilis , -e	November , -bris, -bre
Aprīlis , -e	Sextilis , -e	December , -bris, -bre

NOTE. The seventh month (**Quintilis**) was later called **Iūlius** in honor of Julius Cæsar, and the eighth (**Sextilis**), **Augustus**, in honor of that emperor.

c. The year was formerly regarded as beginning with March, which made July the *fifth* (**quintilis**) month, August the *sixth* (**sextilis**), September the *seventh* (**september**), etc.

d. Dates were reckoned from three points in the month, namely, the *Calends* (**Kalendæ**, -ārum), the first day of the month; the *Nones* (**Nōnæ**, -ārum), the fifth day; and the *Ides* (**Īdūs**, **Īduum**), the thirteenth.

However, in March, May, July, and October the Nones fell on the seventh day, and the Ides on the fifteenth.

Kalendæ	Nōnæ		Īdūs		Kalendæ
I	2 3 4 5 6 7	8 9 10 11 12	13 14 15	16 . . . 27 28 29 30 31	I

e. An event occurring at any one of these points was said to occur *on the Calends*, *on the Nones*, *on the Ides*, and the date was expressed by the simple ablative of time. The noun denoting the date was modified by the adjective representing the month in question :

Kalendīs Februāriis, on the first of February

Nōnīs Aprīlibus, on the fifth of April

Nōnīs Octōbribus, on the seventh of October

Īdibus Iānuāriis, on the thirteenth of January

Īdibus Mārtiis, on the fifteenth of March

f. From the Calends, Nones, and Ides the dates in the month were reckoned *backwards*. The date immediately preceding any one of them was expressed by the word **prīdiē**, used as a preposition followed by the accusatives **Kalendās**, **Nōnās**, **Īdūs**, modified by the adjective form of the word denoting the month :

prīdiē Kalendās Februāriās, *the thirty-first of January*

prīdiē Nōnās Iānuāriās, *the fourth of January*

prīdiē Īdūs Mārtiās, *the fourteenth of March*

prīdiē Īdūs Septembrēs, *the twelfth of September*

g. The dates intervening between any two points were counted as so many days *before* the second point. The Romans, however, in reckoning a series, counted both extremes; for example, the eleventh day of April was counted as the *third* day before the Ides (that is, the thirteenth), the tenth of April as the *fourth* day before the Ides.

h. In expressing dates the phrase **ante diem** (translated *the day before*) was used with the accusatives **Kalendās**, **Nōnās**, **Īdūs**, the word **diem** being modified by the proper ordinal numeral :

ante diem tertium Kalendās Octōbrēs, *the third day before the Calends of October (September 29)*

ante diem quārtum Kalendās Octōbrēs, *the fourth day before the Calends of October (September 28)*

ante diem sextum Īdūs Mārtiās, *the sixth day before the Ides of March (March 10)*

ante diem quintum Nōnās Māiās, *the fifth day before the Nones of May (May 3)*

NOTE. These expressions were generally abbreviated as follows :

(a. d.) III. Kal. Oct., (a. d.) VI. Īd. Mārt., etc.

i. To find the equivalent in English for a date given in Latin, observe the following rule :

If the given Latin date is counted from the Calends, add *two* to the number of days in the preceding month and subtract the given date; if from the Nones or the Ides, add *one* to the day on which they fall, and from the number thus obtained subtract the given date.

j. The whole expression denoting a date was sometimes treated as a single substantive governed by a preposition; compare the following:

in a.d. V. Kal. Nov., *to the fifth day before the Calends of November*
(October 28)

opus contulit in ante diem III. Id. Oct., *he postponed the work to the*
13th of October

NOTE. Before Julius Cæsar reformed the calendar (46 B.C.), the Roman year consisted of 355 days. All the months had 29 days except March, May, July, and October, which had 31 days, and February, which had 28. As this calendar year was too short for the solar year, a month of varying length (*mēnsis intercalāris*) was inserted after February 23 every other year.

228. The Roman year was designated either by the names of the consuls (as, **M. Messālā M. Pisōne cōsulibus**, B.G. I. 2) or by the number of the year reckoned from the founding of the city (**ab urbe conditā** abbreviated to **A. U. C.**). The founding of the city is assigned to the year 753 B.C. In order, therefore, to find the year of the Christian era corresponding to a given Roman date A.U.C., the number of the Roman year must be subtracted from 754, 1 being added to 753 to allow for the Roman custom of including both extremes when reckoning the difference between two numbers. For example, Caesar was killed in 710 A.U.C., or 44 (754-710) B.C.

LATIN COMPOSITION

LESSON I

1. **Order of Words.** In English the words of a sentence stand in a more or less fixed order. Emphasis is indicated *when speaking* by stress of voice, and in a *written* sentence by the use of italics or by underscoring the emphatic words. In Latin, on the other hand, emphasis and the relative importance of words are shown by their position in the sentence.

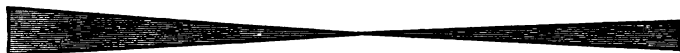
2. The most emphatic place is the *first*; next in importance is the *last*; the weakest point is the middle.

3. As the most important word in the sentence is normally the *subject*, and the second in importance is normally the *verb*, the tendency is to place these respectively *first* and *last*. Their respective modifiers stand next these according to their relative emphasis. This may be represented as follows:

Strong

Weak

Strong



Subject followed by its modifiers

Modifiers followed by Verb

4. For convenience this is called the *normal order*. Departure from the normal order is frequent, however, from the fact that in Latin, just as in English, other words or groups of words may be regarded as of more importance than the subject or the verb. This importance may be indicated:

- a. By placing words to be emphasized *first*, more rarely *last* :

Gallōs Garumna flūmen dīvidit, the Gauls are separated by the Garonne river (lit. *the Gauls the Garonne river separates*)
magna dīs immortalibus habenda est grātia, great gratitude is due the immortal gods

b. By reversing the normal order, especially of nouns with attributive adjectives (§ 61) and nouns with modifying genitives. The normal position of demonstrative pronouns, cardinal numerals, and adjectives of quantity and place (for example, *ulterior*, *citerior*, *inferior*, etc.) is *before* the nouns they modify; the normal position of other adjectives, ordinal numerals, possessives, indefinites, and genitives is *after* their nouns :

ille imperātor, that general (normal order)

imperātor ille, that famous general (normal order reversed)

mors frātris tui, the death of your brother (normal order)

tui frātris mors, your brother's death (normal order reversed)

- c. The appositive (§ 54) normally follows its noun; when emphatic it precedes :

Caesar imperātor, Caesar, the general
imperātor Caesar, the general, Caesar

- d. The subject may stand last, or the verb first, to indicate unusual emphasis :

dēlectat mē ōrātiō, the speech delights me

- e. The copula *sum* (§48. II. b) ordinarily stands last, or between the subject and predicate; but when it emphasizes *existence* (there *was*, there *is*, etc.), it stands first, or at any rate before the subject :

erat nūllum aliud iter, there was no other way

EXERCISE

5. Translate the following sentences, so arranging the words as to show the importance of those italicized :

1. Orgetorix, who was the *richest* of the Helvetii, made a *conspiracy*.
2. *The Helvetii were hemmed in* on all sides.
3. The Helvetii excel ¹ *the rest of the Gauls*.

4. There is a river, the Rhone by name,³ which separates *our* province.
5. The territories *of the Belgæ* are farthest away.
6. They keep the Germans away from *their* territories *by almost daily battles*.⁴
7. Many of the Helvetii were *noble*, but *Orgetorix excelled*¹ the rest.
8. *A very high* mountain hems them in ⁶on one side.
9. Orgetorix persuaded *certain ones*⁶ of the Helvetii⁷ who were desirous of power.
10. *The Sequani* are *nearest* to the province, *the Belgæ* are *farthest away*.

NOTE. A superior figure standing *after* a word (for example, so¹) refers to that word only; placed before a word (for example, ¹so) it refers to two or more following words.

¹ Followed by the dative, § 84. ² *reliqui*, agreeing with its noun in gender, number, and case, means *the rest of*. ³ Ablative of respect, § 115. ⁴ Ablative of means, § 106. ⁵ *unā ex parte*. ⁶ Dative, § 83. ⁷ Ablative with *ex*, § 76. Exc.

LESSON II

6. General Rules for Agreement.

- a. Agreement of Adjectives, § 59.
- b. Agreement of Relatives, § 64. a.
- c. Agreement of Appositives, § 58.
- d. Agreement of Verbs, § 65.

EXERCISE

1. The Helvetii, a Gallic tribe, made a conspiracy.
2. The river Rhone divides our province from the Helvetii.
3. They chose Orgetorix, who was the noblest of all.
4. They chose Dumnorix, who held the leadership of the state.
5. His retainers, the number of whom was large, rescued him.
6. The leadership was held by Dumnorix, the brother of Casticus.
7. The territories of the Helvetii, who are very near ¹to our province, are narrow.

8. They persuaded Dumnorix, whose brother was Diviciacus.
9. They were influenced ² by the authority of Orgetorix, which was great.
10. The Helvetii, the Sequani, (and) the Hædui, three very powerful peoples, were influenced by this speech.

¹ Dative, § 90. ² Ablative, § 106.

LESSON III

7. Predicate and Attributive Adjectives defined, §§ 60, 61.
8. Agreement of Adjectives with Two or More Nouns, §§ 62, 63 and note.

EXAMPLES

multi pueri et puellae or pueri et puellae multae, *many boys and girls*
 bonus puer et puella, *the good boy and girl*
 pueri et puellae erant boni, *the boys and girls were good*
 rex et regina capti sunt, *the king and queen were captured*
 virtus et studium militum erant magna, *the valor and zeal of the soldiers were great*
 naves captivique restituti sunt or naves captivique restituta sunt, *the ships and the captives were restored*

EXERCISE

1. Orgetorix's authority and ambition for power were very great.
2. All the towns and villages and the rest of the private buildings were burned.
3. The old men, the women, (and) the children were prepared ¹ for all things.
4. Not all the towns and soldiers were captured.
5. The Helvetii were hemmed in by great rivers, lakes, (and) mountains.
6. Geneva, a large town, is ² very near ³ to the province.
7. Many carts and beasts of burden were purchased.

8. He attempted to send ambassadors ⁴ to the small towns and villages.

9. Both the lake and the river are very deep.

10. Both Noreia and other towns have been besieged.

¹ ad omnia. ² § 123. ³ § 90. ⁴ ad with accusative, § 97.

LESSON IV

9. Special Rules for the Agreement of Relative Pronouns, § 64. a. note.

EXAMPLES

puerī et puellae quī erant bonī, *the boys and girls who were good*
 rēx et rēgina quī captī sunt, *the king and queen who were captured*
 virtūs et studium militum, quae erant magna, *the valor and zeal of*
the soldiers, which were great
 nāvēs captivique quae restitūta sunt, *the ships and the captives*
which were restored
 Corinthus, quod erat clārum oppidum, *Corinth, which was a famous*
city

NOTE. When the antecedents represent both persons and things the relative pronoun (like the predicate adjective, cf. § 63 and note) may be masculine:

nāvēs captivique quī restitūti sunt

EXERCISE

1. The third legion, which he had ¹ with him, dug a ditch.
2. The Jura is a mountain which divides the Sequani from the Helvetii.
3. All the women and old men who were captured were transported across the river.
4. He held in mind the custom and precedent which the Roman people had established.
5. Both the hostages and baggage wagons which they had were surrendered.
6. The Helvetii, who are a Gallic state, sent ambassadors ² to Cæsar.

7. I see the great wall and ditch which Cæsar made.
8. The Rhone, which is the largest river of Gaul, has many fords.
9. Dumnorix bound by his personal influence the peoples and states which were nearest.
10. In the meantime the towns and villages which he had burned, (and) whose inhabitants he had driven out, were restored.
11. The Sequani inhabit this field, which is the best part of Gaul.

¹ *secum*, § 150. *a.* ² *ad* with accusative, § 97.

LESSON V

10. Agreement of Verba, §§ 65 and *a*, 67, 68, 69.

EXAMPLES

nūntius mittitur, a messenger is sent

nūntiī mittuntur, messengers are sent

cōsul et lēgātus veniunt, the consul and the envoy are coming

neque cōsul neque lēgātus venit, neither the consul nor the envoy is coming

senātus haec intellegit, the senate knows this

senātus haec intellegunt, the senate know this

NOTE. When subjects are of different *persons* the verb is in the *first* person rather than in the *second*, and in the *second* rather than in the *third*:

ego et tū scribimus, you and I are writing

tū et Mārcus audiēbātis, you and Marcus heard

EXERCISE

1. The Sequani and Hædui are not far from our province.
2. Many Gallic tribes, warlike men and foes of the Roman people, occupied the higher places.
3. Neither the centurion nor the envoy halted.
4. Neither the Sequani nor the Helvetii rejected the commands of Cæsar.
5. ¹ For these reasons you and Cæsar will hasten into Farther Gaul.

6. ² "You and I, Labienus," ³ ⁴ said Cæsar, "will drive out the enemy."

7. The cohort was brave, but after it was cut off it was easily thrown into confusion.

8. Either the consul or the general will delay in the vicinity of Geneva.

9. You and Cæsar easily captured the enemy who held the heights.

10. Cæsar led his army against the Suebi, a warlike tribe who dwelt across the Rhine.

11. The senate, which was unfriendly to Cæsar, did not approve this.

12. Thence the Saône, which is a Gallic river, arises.

¹ ob eās causās. ² Latin, *I and you*. ³ Vocative, § 100. ⁴ *inquit Cæsar*; *inquit*, followed by its subject, is regularly used when a speech is directly quoted.

LESSON VI

11. Tenses of the Indicative.

a. The Present Indicative, § 153.

b. The Past Descriptive Indicative, § 154. a, b, c.

c. The Future Indicative, § 155.

d. The Perfect Indicative, § 156. a, b.

e. The Past Perfect Indicative, § 157.

f. The Future Perfect Indicative, § 158.

EXERCISE

1. The Helvetii are crossing the river Saône with rafts.

2. The Belgæ, who are the bravest of all, inhabit one part of Gaul.

3. Cæsar kept attacking the enemy, who had not yet crossed the river.

4. This canton, in the memory of our fathers, had brought great calamity on the Roman people.

5. The army of Crassus, the consul, has been repulsed and sent under the yoke.

6. The shouts of the horsemen, who were following closely, had been heard.

7. He attacked those who were delaying; for they were not armed.

8. The Helvetii were accustomed to receive hostages, not to give them.

9. You and I will receive the grain, if our friends (shall) have sent it.

10. The Helvetii were going into that part where Cæsar did not wish them to be.

11. If the enemy ¹turn away from the river, Cæsar will not follow them.

12. Neither you nor Crassus was received within their boundaries.

¹ Latin, *turn their march away*. The verb *turn*, which is present in English, really refers to future perfect time and should be so rendered in the Latin.

LESSON VII

12. The Subjunctive in Independent Uses.

a. Volitive, § 172. a, b, c, and notes 1 and 2.

b. Optative, § 172. c. 1, 2, 3.

EXAMPLES

eāmus, *let us go*; *audiat*, *let him hear*; *exeant*, *let them go forth*;

nē scribant, *let them not write*

nē hoc fēceris, or *nōlī hoc facere*, *do not do this*

(*utinam*) *veniat*, *O that he may come, may he come, I wish that he may come, I hope that etc.*

(*utinam*) *nē veniat*, *O that he may not come, I hope that he won't come, etc.*

utinam veniret, *O that he were coming (now), would that etc.*

utinam vēnisset, *O that he had come (then), would that etc.*

NOTE. The negative word with the volitive and optative subjunctive is regularly *nē*; with the potential subjunctive (§ 172. f) it is *nōn*.

EXERCISE

1. Let us demand the grain which they have promised.
2. Let Liscus declare that which he has before kept secret.
3. Do not announce our interview to the enemy.
4. ¹ Do not, my friends, announce to the multitude the plans which you have heard.
5. Would that we were finding these things to be true.
6. I hope that nothing may happen to Cæsar.
7. O that you and Cæsar and the Romans had not restored my brother to his former place of influence.
8. Let us not ² begin to flee.
9. ¹ Do not give your sister in marriage to Dumnorix.
10. I hope you may not find that Dumnorix is in command of the cavalry.³
11. Let them neither take the oath nor surrender their arms.
12. Ariovistus had settled in their territories and was demanding hostages.

¹ *nōli* with infinitive, § 172. c. note 1. ² Latin, *make a beginning of flight*.
³ Dative, § 84.

LESSON VIII

13. The Subjunctive in Independent Uses (*continued*). The Imperative.

- a. The Potential Subjunctive, § 172. f and note.

EXAMPLES

aliquis dicat, some one may say.

quis hoc ferat? who can endure this?

tum hoc vidērēs, then you (that is, any one) might have seen this.

hoc nōn crēdat, he would not believe this.

NOTE. Independent subjunctives translated with *may, might, can*, as in the first three examples, are not used except with the words *quis, aliquis, vix, facile, forsitan*, with the indefinite second person (for example, *vidērēs* above), or with questions expecting negative answers. Those that are

translated with *would*, as in the last example, usually depend upon some condition expressed or implied: *hoc nōn crēdat*, *he would not believe this* (that is, if you should tell him).

b. The Imperative Mood, § 173.

EXAMPLES

instrue cōpiās, draw up the forces

ēducite milītēs, lead forth the soldiers

NOTE. Prohibitions, or negative commands, are most frequently expressed by *nōlī* or *nōlīte* (the imperative of the verb *nōlō*) followed by the infinitive; the perfect subjunctive with *nē* is likewise so used:

<i>nōlī nōs dēspicere, Caesar</i>	}	<i>do not despise us, Caesar</i>
<i>nē nōs dēspexeris, Caesar</i>		
<i>nōlīte nōs dēspicere, amīcī</i>	}	<i>do not despise us, friends</i>
<i>nē nōs dēspexeritis, amīcī</i>		

EXERCISE

1. Some one may say, "Let us send forward scouts."
2. It would be easy to collect the grain.
3. In the third watch you might have seen Labienus.
4. The Romans because of their bravery ¹can conquer the Germans.
5. Who ²can hesitate to follow such a general?
6. O that our general would say, "Let us advance."
7. Lead your forces to the nearest hill and attack the enemy.
8. Do not follow the enemy, but encamp in this place.
9. Would that you had led your forces into camp; no one ³would have attacked you there.
10. Do not say, "I hope that we may conquer the enemy," but advance and conquer them.
11. They never would lead their forces across into the territories of the Sequani.
12. I would that he had remained in hiding; for ⁴he would now be free.

¹ Use *possum* with infinitive. The potential subjunctive cannot be used here; see § 13. *a.* note, above. ² Do not use *possum* here; cf. § 13. *a.* note, above. ³ Past perfect subjunctive. ⁴ Past subjunctive.

LESSON IX

14. Sequence of Tenses, §§ 160; 161. I, II; 162.

15. Clauses of Pure Purpose,* § 174.

16. Relative Clauses of Purpose, §§ 175, 176.

EXAMPLES

explōrātōrēs praemittit ut (or quī) locum dēligant, *he sends forward scouts to choose a place*

explōrātōrēs praemisit ut (or quī) locum dēligerent, *he sent forward scouts to choose a place*

pontem facit quō facilius trāseat, *he builds a bridge that (by which) he may cross the more easily*

EXERCISE

1. They were hurling javelins ¹ to wound our men.
2. Let us remove the horses to make the danger of all equal.
3. They had drawn their swords that they might make an attack on us.
4. The Helvetii will send envoys to him ² to beg for peace.
5. They met him on the way ³ to talk the sooner about a surrender.
6. Six thousand men hastened to the Rhine that they might not surrender their arms.
7. They went in the ⁴ first part of the night, the better to conceal their flight.
8. Let them restore the towns lest the Germans cross over.
9. I hope that he may choose another ambassador ⁵ to send.
10. No one would urge his troops to withstand such an army.
11. Cæsar sent letters that they might know these things to be true.
12. Let us receive the king's son within our territories.

¹ Express by an *ut* clause, § 174. An infinitive often expresses purpose in English, but it must not be so used in Latin. ² Use a relative clause of purpose.

³ *quō mātūrius*, lit. *by which the sooner*, § 176. ⁴ *primā nocte*. ⁵ Latin, *whom he may send*.

* The terms "*pure purpose*" and "*pure result*" are used to distinguish *adverbial* clauses of purpose or result from *relative* or *substantive* clauses of this character.

LESSON X

17. Relative Clauses of Description (Characteristic), § 177 and *a*.
18. Clauses of Pure Result, § 179 and note.
19. Relative Clauses of Result, § 180.

EXAMPLES

a. Relative Clauses of Description :

mīles quī fugiat est timidus, a soldier who runs away is cowardly

In this sentence the clause *quī fugiat* describes, or tells *what kind* of soldier it is, and hence takes the subjunctive. Compare it with the following :

ille mīles, quī fugit, est timidus, that soldier, who is running away, is cowardly

Here the clause *quī fugit* does not describe the soldier, but simply states a fact about him, and the fact is expressed by the indicative.

Notice also the following forms of descriptive clauses :

sunt quī maledicant, there are some who slander

nēmō est quī hoc nōn crēdat, there is no one who does not believe this

b. Clauses of Pure Result :

Affirmative clauses of purpose and result are alike in form ; but *negative* clauses of purpose are introduced by *nē* (§ 174), *negative* clauses of result by *ut nōn* :

iter fēcit ut oppidū caperet, he marched to take the town (purpose)

iter tam celeriter fēcit ut oppidū caperet, he marched so quickly that he took the town (result)

fūgit nē interficerētur, he fled that he might not be killed (negative purpose)

tam celeriter fūgit ut nōn caperētur, he fled so swiftly that he was not captured (negative result)

c. Relative Clauses of Result :

nēmō est tam timidus quī fugiat, no one is so cowardly that he (lit. who) runs away

This sentence is equivalent to *nēmō est tam timīdus ut fugiat*. The word *tam* in the antecedent clause shows that the relative clause expresses result rather than description, but the constructions are closely related. (See § 179. note.)

EXERCISE

1. Ariovistus will hasten to take Vesontio.
2. The town was so fortified that the Romans were not able to take it.
3. There were some who did not try to follow.
4. Who is there that can contend with you?
5. Cæsar hastened by such long marches that he seized the town before the arrival of Ariovistus.
6. There is no one so bold that he dares to do these things.
7. ¹ I am not such a man that I hold in mind the wrongs of the Hædui.
8. There was no way by which they could go forth.
9. He would not incite his friends to make the march.
10. A law which injures the people ² is a punishment.
11. There are very few traders who dare to come into these islands.
12. He sent messengers that an army might be collected more quickly.

¹ *Nōn sum quī.* ² Dative, § 83.

LESSON XI

20. Substantive Clauses, § 181.
21. Substantive Clauses of Purpose, § 183 and note.
22. Substantive Clauses after Verbs of Fearing, § 184.

EXAMPLES

hortor ut veniat, I urge him to come (lit. that he come)
imperat nē eant, he commands them not to go
Galli Rōmānōs expellere cōnāti sunt, the Gauls tried to drive out the Romans

vereor nē Germānī flūmen trāseant, I fear that the Germans will cross the river

metuō ut auxilium ferās, I fear that you will not bring aid

NOTE 1. Among the common verbs that regularly take the subjunctive in a substantive clause of purpose are the following :

hortor, cohortor, urge, exhort
imperō, order, command
moneō, advise

ōrō, petō, rogō, ask
persuādeō, persuade
postulō, demand

NOTE 2. The following verbs take the infinitive :

cōnor, attempt
iubeō, command

patior, allow
vetō, forbid

NOTE 3. Observe that, in substantive clauses after verbs of *fearing*, **nē** is translated *that*, or *lest*, and **ut** *that not*.

EXERCISE

1. They fear that their plans will be reported.
2. We ask that we may make the journey ¹ with you.
3. Do not try ² to do things which you are not able to do.
4. The Hædui were afraid that Ariovistus would remain in Gaul.
5. They tried to persuade Cæsar ³ to drive out the Germans.
6. They feared that Cæsar would not send his legions to drive out the enemy.
7. Let us exhort our friends not to fear that they will be conquered.
8. Would that we had persuaded our allies ⁴ not to retreat.
9. Do not give hostages, but demand that hostages be given.
10. Let us ask for soldiers ⁵ to guard the camp.
11. The band was so large that it was perceived by the enemy.
12. There was no one ⁶ who did not fear that the army would not endure the toil.

¹ § 150. a. ² § 183. note. ³ Not accusative. ⁴ § 175. ⁵ Relative clause of description, § 177. a.

LESSON XII

23. Substantive Clauses (*continued*), § 181.

24. Substantive Clauses of Result, § 187. I, II.

25. Substantive Clauses introduced by *quā* or *quō minus*, §§ 185, 186.

EXAMPLES

efficit, he brings it about
fit, it happens
accidit, it happens
additur, it is added

} *ut obsidēs dent, that they give hostages*

eōs impedīvit quōminus (nē) flūmen trānsirent, he hindered them from crossing the river
eōs nōn impedīvit quā flūmen trānsirent, he did not hinder them from crossing the river
nōn dubitō quā Helvētīī exeant, I do not doubt that the Helvetii are going forth

EXERCISE

1. Rage and madness ¹ caused him to make war on them.
2. An added fact was (it was added) that within the memory of our fathers Marius conquered these same Germans.
3. Thus it happened that he moved the camp the ² next night.
4. There is no doubt that he has favored this legion.³
5. There were some who were not prevented from laying waste the fields.
6. He commanded that the captives be led forth in sight of our army.
7. It happened that Cæsar had the ⁴ greatest confidence in him.
8. I do not doubt that the scouts ⁵ will inform Cæsar.
9. I fear that Ariovistus will not seek the friendship of Cæsar.
10. ⁶ Ariovistus is a man who conquers by stratagem.
11. I fear that he will prevent them from marching.
12. They will be prevented from waging war.

¹ brought it about that he made.

² Ablative, § 119.

³ Dative, § 83.

⁴ *maximē cōfideret*, with the dative.

⁵ Use the active periphrastic, § 222.

⁶ *Ariovistus est qui*.

LESSON XIII

26. Causal Clauses introduced by *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, or *quando*, § 188. *a*, *b*.

27. Causal Clauses introduced by *cum*, § 189.

EXAMPLES

queritur quod dēstitūtus est } *he is complaining because he has been*
 queritur quod dēstitūtus sit } *abandoned*

Observe that these two sentences are translated in exactly the same way; but the Latin makes it clear that in the first the speaker is giving his *own* reason, and that in the second he is giving the reason alleged by the person who is complaining.

cum mōns intercēderet, prōcēdere nōn poterant, since a mountain intervened, they were not able to proceed

cum hostēs fūgissent, castra mōvērunt, since the enemy had fled, they moved the camp

EXERCISE

1. I crossed the Rhine because the Gauls invited me.
2. The Germans left home because (as they said) they had dwelling places in Gaul.
3. Ariovistus will make war on the Romans because (as he says) they have made war on him.¹
4. Since the horsemen were drawing nearer, Cæsar ²ceased speaking.
5. These tribes were conquered because they could not keep the Romans from going through their territories.
6. Let us attack Ariovistus because he has tried to drive out the Romans.
7. Since you render this return, I shall prevent the multitude from crossing over into Gaul.
8. There was no one so cowardly that he was not willing to follow.
9. Ariovistus, however, had crossed the Rhine because (as he claimed) he had been invited by the Gauls.³

10. There is no doubt that a large number of Germans were led into Gaul ⁴ to lay waste the fields.

11. He could not fight very advantageously because he had no shield.

12. It happened that very many were hard pressed because the enemy attacked them one at a time.

¹ Use the reflexive. ² Latin, *made an end of speaking* (loquendi, § 223).

³ § 104. ⁴ Not infinitive.

LESSON XIV

28. Temporal Clauses introduced by *cum*, § 194. *a, b.*

29. Temporal Clauses introduced by *antequam* or *priusquam*, § 197. *a, b.*

30. Temporal Clauses introduced by *dum*, *dōnec*, or *quoad*, § 198. III. *a, b.*

EXAMPLES

multōs amīcōs habuit eō tempore cum ex urbe profectus est, he had many friends at the time when he set out from the city

hostēs eōs adgressi sunt cum inermēs essent, the enemy attacked them (at a time) when they were defenseless

incolae oppida combussērunt priusquam hostēs pervēnērunt, the inhabitants burned their towns before the enemy arrived

incolae oppida combussērunt priusquam hostēs pervenīrent, the inhabitants burned their towns before the enemy should arrive

The clause *priusquam . . . pervēnērunt* in the third sentence shows by the indicative that the enemy did in fact arrive; in the fourth sentence nothing shows certainly whether the enemy arrived or not. It is only known that the towns were burned in *anticipation* of their possible arrival.

The same difference between *fact* and *anticipation* is shown by the mood in the following sentences:

imperātor in urbe manēbat dum legiōnēs pervēnērunt, the general remained in the city until the legions arrived

imperātor in urbe manēbat dum legiōnēs pervenīrent, the general remained in the city until the legions should arrive

EXERCISE

1. When I inquired from the matrons, they spoke as follows.
2. At the time when Cæsar led back his forces into camp, Ariovistus attacked him.
3. Cæsar did not learn the reason before the captives arrived.
4. Since these regions extended to the ocean, they could wander about more widely.
5. The Germans were waiting until they should see the new moon.
6. Cæsar drew up his line of battle before he knew this custom.
7. The enemy were not prevented from making sallies before their camp was taken.
8. They feared that the army would cross the river before reinforcements should arrive.
9. When the women who were in the wagons saw our army, they feared that they should be given into slavery.
10. The Germans had been so trained that they would die before they would endure servitude.
11. When they had sent back a part of their forces, the rest advanced to the banks of the river.
12. Since the command of the whole war has been conferred upon Galba,¹ he will collect many armed men.

¹ Dative, § 82.

LESSON XV

31. Direct Questions, §§ 168, 170 and *a.* 1, 2, 3; *b.* 1, 2.
32. Indirect Questions, § 201 and note. For examples, see grammar.

EXERCISE

1. Did Cæsar dismiss Diviciacus or not?
2. Did he send forward scouts or did he hasten to lead the army through the fields of the enemy?
3. Who is this tribune? He is n't armed, is he?
4. I asked who that tribune was, and whether he was armed.

5. Did he call a conference or not? I asked whether he called a conference or not.

6. I feared that he would ask me whether the general was going to call a council.

7. Was he so cowardly that he led his army back?

8. What is the nature of the place? Are there forests and mountains there?

9. I asked what the nature of the place was, and whether there were forests and lakes there.

10. Did he not ask whether Cæsar refrained from battle¹ or not?

11. Is there² any one who does not wonder why he advanced?

12. He will not be prevented from asking why the cavalry has been sent into these fields.

¹ proeliū, § 101. ² quisquam.

LESSON XVI

33. Conditional Sentences.

a. Present Conditions, § 199. I. a, b.

b. Future Conditions, § 199. II. a, b.

c. Past Conditions, § 199. III. a, b.

EXAMPLES

a. PRESENT { *sī hoc facit, fortis est, if he is doing this, he is brave*
 sī hoc faceret, fortis esset, if he were doing this, he
 would be brave

b. FUTURE { *sī hoc faciet, fortis erit, if he does (shall do) this, he will*
 be brave
 sī hoc faciat (fēcerit), fortis sit, if he should do this, he
 would be brave

c. PAST { *sī hoc faciēbat, fortis erat, if he was doing this, he was brave*
 sī hoc fēcit, fortis fuit, if he did this, he was brave
 sī hoc fēcisset, fortis fuisset, if he had done this, he would
 have been brave

EXERCISE

1. A multitude of horsemen arrived before the mound was thrown up.

2. If you ¹ set up towers, the Gauls will send ambassadors.

3. If the Remi should ask that the Gauls be preserved, they would gain their request.

4. I shall receive the enemy in surrender if they (shall) give up their arms.

5. If they are being reduced to servitude, they are enduring all (manner of) insults.

6. If they had perceived how great a calamity they had brought upon the state, they would have fled into Britain.

7. If ambassadors had been sent, they would not have accepted any conditions of peace.

8. If the state was large, he demanded very many hostages.

9. If he should return to Cæsar, would Cæsar dismiss his forces?

10. If they were allowing wine to be imported, would not their courage be weakened?

11. If there had been any hope of safety, ² they would not have detained the ambassadors, would they?

12. They would not have entered these regions if they had been acquainted with the mountains and forests.

¹ Not present, § 199. II. a. ² § 170. a. 3.

LESSON XVII

34. Concessive Clauses introduced by *quamquam*, § 191.

35. Concessive Clauses introduced by *cum*, § 192 and note.

EXAMPLES

quamquam flūmen est altum, tamen trānsire possumus, although (the fact is that) the river is deep, nevertheless we can cross
iter nōn āvertit, cum hostēs sequerentur, he did not turn aside,
although the enemy were following

cum urgērentur, tamen nōn fūgērunt, *although they were hard pressed, nevertheless they did not flee*

NOTE. Observe that **cum** may mean *when* (temporal), *since* (causal), and *although* (concessive). When it is *temporal*, the mood used may be indicative or subjunctive (§ 194); but when it is *causal* or *concessive*, **cum** is always followed by the subjunctive. Its concessive use is often indicated by the presence of **tamen**, *nevertheless*, in the main clause.

EXERCISE

1. Although the Nervii are (really) brave, nevertheless they cannot conquer the Romans.
2. Though the legions were hard pressed, they nevertheless resisted the enemy¹ bravely.
3. Since the inequality of fortune was so great, different results followed.
4. The inequality of fortune was so great that different results followed.
5. Though the Gauls were breathless with running,² they nevertheless attempted to cross the river.
6. The Gauls were repulsed when they attempted to cross the river.
7. Furthermore (it was added that), though they had advanced into an unfavorable place, yet they put the enemy to flight.
8. The standard would not have been lost if the standard bearer had not been killed.
9. The courage of the soldiers will be renewed if Cæsar advances³ to the front rank.
10. They were waiting until Labienus should send forward the tenth legion.
11. He did not see clearly for what reason Labienus was sending forward the tenth legion.
12. If the enemy should attack our van, we should halt.

¹ Dative, § 83. ² Ablative, § 109. ³ Not present.

LESSON XVIII

36. Indirect Discourse defined, §§ 202, 203 and a.

37. Declarative Sentences in Indirect Discourse, § 204.

a. Simple Sentences, § 204.

b. Complex Sentences, §§ 208, 209 and note.

38. Commands in Indirect Discourse, §§ 205, 206.

39. Interrogative Sentences (Questions) in Indirect Discourse, § 207. I.

EXAMPLES

(1) SIMPLE SENTENCES

The tense of the infinitive in indirect discourse is determined by the tense of the verb *as it would have been used in the direct discourse, and not by the tense of the verb of saying*. The rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 162) does not affect the infinitive.

DIRECT: Rōmānī fortiter pugnant, the Romans fight bravely

INDIRECT	{	dicit	} Rōmānōs fortiter pugnāre, he says, said, will say, etc., that the Romans fight (fought, if the verb of saying refers to past time) bravely
		dicēbat	
		dicet	
		dixit	
		dixerat	
		dixerit	

(2) COMPLEX SENTENCES

When translating complex sentences into indirect discourse treat the main clause as a simple sentence, considering first what the form would be in the direct discourse. For the subordinate clauses, put the verbs in the subjunctive if they are not already in that mood, observing the rule for the sequence of tenses. It is the tense of the verb of *saying*, *dicit*, *dixit*, etc., which determines the sequence.

DIRECT DISCOURSE

Rōmānī, quī in oppidō sunt, fortiter pugnāt (pugnāvērunt, pugnābunt),
the Romans, who are in the town, fight (fought, will fight) bravely

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

dīcit Rōmānōs, quī in oppidō sint, fortiter pugnāre (pugnāvisse, pugnātūrōs esse),
he says that the Romans, who are in the town, fight (fought, will fight) bravely

dixit Rōmānōs, quī in oppidō essent, fortiter pugnāre (pugnāvisse, pugnātūrōs esse),
he said that the Romans, who were in the town, fought (had fought, would fight) bravely

DIRECT DISCOURSE

Rōmānī, quī in oppidō fuērunt, fortiter pugnāt (pugnāvērunt, pugnābunt),
the Romans, who have been in the town, fight (fought, will fight) bravely

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

dīcit Rōmānōs, quī in oppidō fuerint, fortiter pugnāre (pugnāvisse, pugnātūrōs esse),
he says that the Romans, who have been in the town, fight (fought, will fight) bravely

dixit Rōmānōs, quī in oppidō fuissent, fortiter pugnāre (pugnāvisse, pugnātūrōs esse),
he said that the Romans, who had been in the town, fought (had fought, would fight) bravely

(3) COMMANDS

DIRECT DISCOURSE

hostēs vince, conquer the enemy

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

dīcit (dixit) hostēs vincat (vinceret),
he directs (directed) him to conquer the enemy

(4) QUESTIONS

DIRECT DISCOURSE

cūr nōn exit? why does he not go forth?

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

(dīcit, dixit) cūr nōn exeat (exiret),
(he says, said) why does (did) he not go forth?

EXERCISE

1. The legions which are hard pressed fear that they will be surrounded.

2. He knows that the legions which are hard pressed fear that they will be surrounded.

3. He said that the legions which were hard pressed feared that they would be surrounded.

4. He said that the battle had been announced to the soldiers who were guarding the baggage.

5. The Romans will not take the territories which the Gauls hold.

6. He says that the Romans will not take the territories which the Gauls hold.

7. He announced that the Romans would not take the territories which the Gauls held.

8. Throw back the javelins that you have intercepted.

9. He directed them to throw back the javelins that they had intercepted.

10. He said that the territories were his.¹ Why had the Germans crossed the Rhine?

11. Lead out the legions that are around you. Why do you remain here?

12. He directed him to lead out the legions that were around him; (and asked) why he remained there.

13. ² Don't lay waste our fields.

14. He told ³ us ⁴ not to lay waste their fields.

¹ Possessive reflexive, § 133; see also §§ 48. II, 59, 60, and note that the predicate with *esse* agrees with the subject accusative. ² § 173. note. ³ Use a form of *dicō*. ⁴ § 206.

LESSON XIX

(Before beginning this lesson review Lesson XVI)

40. Indirect Discourse (*continued*): Conditional Sentences.

- a.* Conditions with the Indicative in Indirect Discourse, § 210.
- b.* Less Probable Future Conditions in Indirect Discourse, §§ 211, 212.
- c.* Conditions Contrary to Fact in Indirect Discourse, § 213. *a, b.* For all these cases, study carefully the examples in the grammar.

EXERCISE

Change each of the following sentences into indirect discourse, first after *dicit*, and then after *dixit*:

- 1. If they should seek peace, they would give up all their possessions.
- 2. If the Romans preserve (shall preserve) the Aduatuci, they will deprive them of all their arms.¹
- 3. If you have neighbors who are hostile, they envy your valor.²
- 4. The general would have defended them if they had surrendered their arms.
- 5. If the cavalry were (now) attacking the Germans, they would be hard pressed.
- 6. If all the arms were thrown into the ditch, the heap equaled the height of the wall.
- 7. If the gates should be closed, the soldiers would go forth.
- 8. If the tribes which dwell across the Rhine should send envoys, Cæsar would make peace with them.
- 9. If the road over the Alps had not been dangerous,³ Cæsar would not have sent a legion there.⁴
- 10. If the enemy had fought successful battles, hostages would not have been given.

¹ Ablative, § 101. ² Dative, § 83. ³ *periculōsum*. ⁴ Not *ibi*, because *there* in this sentence means *thither*.

LESSON XX

41. The Infinitive as Subject, § 216. a, b.

42. The Infinitive as Object, § 217. a, b.

43. The Complementary Infinitive, § 217. c.

EXAMPLES

INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT	fās est, it is right	īre, to go, or eum īre, (for) him to go
	turpe est, it is disgraceful	
	necesse est, it is necessary	
	opus est, it is necessary	
	licet, it is permitted	agrōs vāstārī, that the fields are laid waste
	apertum est, it is plain	
	mīrum est, it is wonderful	
	vērū est, it is true	
INFINITIVE AS OBJECT	fāma est, it is rumored	
	vetō eum scribere, I forbid him to write	
COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE	iubeō sociōs venīre, I order the allies to come	
	dēbeō, I ought	īre, to go
	possum, I can (am able)	
	soleō, I am accustomed	

EXERCISE

1. It is plain that the difficulties were great.
2. All men ought to praise him because he is brave.
3. He said that all men ought to praise the soldier because he was brave.
4. It was necessary for Cæsar to distribute his army.
5. It is rumored that the Germans crossed the river before the scouts announced that they were coming.
6. He thinks that the Germans would not have crossed the river if the scouts had announced that they were coming.
7. It would be disgraceful to surrender our arms if there should be hope of victory.

8. He said that it would be disgraceful to surrender their arms if there should be hope of victory.

9. He will not order them to remain in this place unless he thinks that it is right.

10. It is not proper that the villages of those who have defended us be burned.

11. They were accustomed to make the prows high ¹ in order to receive the waves more easily.

12. When the ships had arrived, it was not clear what plan of battle he would adopt.

13. It is true that the Romans had prepared hooks by which ² to seize the ropes of the ships.

14. He says that if the storm had not been so great, the ships would not have been detained.

¹ Not ut. Why? ² See § 175, and cf. Lesson IX, note 5.

LESSON XXI

44. The Participle, § 219.

a. Tenses, § 167.

b. Adjective and Predicate Uses, §§ 220. a-c, 221.

c. The Ablative Absolute, §§ 117, 118.

45. Certain tenses and uses of the English participle are wanting in Latin, as is seen in the following comparison:

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
Pres. cōgēs	<i>collecting</i>	—	<i>being collected</i>
Past —	<i>having collected</i>	coāctus	<i>having been collected</i>
Fut. coāctūrus	<i>about to collect</i>	—	<i>about to be collected</i>

Hence, in such a sentence as *they killed him* (as he was) *collecting the ships*, the present participle, *collecting*, since it exists also in Latin, cōgēs, may be translated literally, and we have (eum) cōgentem nāvēs occidērunt.

But, in the absence of the present *passive* participle, we cannot translate literally *the ships* (while) *being collected were seized*, but must express the idea in some other way, as, for example, by a clause, *while they were being collected*, **dum cōguntur**.

Similarly we cannot translate literally, by means of a past active participle, *the Romans, having collected their ships, set sail*; but must express the idea by a clause, **cum nāvēs cōgissent**, *when they had collected their ships*, or by an ablative absolute, **nāvibus cōactis**, *their ships having been collected*, or by some other form of statement.

46. The place of the missing participles in Latin is most frequently supplied by the ablative absolute, but it is to be noted that this construction can be used only when its substantive refers to a person or thing not elsewhere mentioned in the same sentence. For example, do not translate *Cæsar, having captured the town, burned it*, by **Caesar, oppidō captō, id incendit**, where **id** and **oppidō** refer to the same thing, but rather by **Caesar oppidum captum incendit**.

On the other hand, in the sentence *Cæsar, having captured the town, burned the temple*, the ablative absolute may be used, as, **Caesar, oppidō captō, templum incendit**.

47. In translating English sentences into Latin, clauses of *time*, *cause*, *condition*, *concession*, etc. are often best rendered by a participial construction; see § 220. *a-e*.

EXERCISE

Before beginning the translation of the following sentences study carefully all the examples in the grammar, § 220. *a-e*. In translating use a participle wherever possible.

1. After the yards had been torn off, the ships could not move from the spot.
2. The soldiers hastened ¹ while climbing into the ships of the enemy.
3. We saw the enemy seeking safety in flight.
4. ² After the business was finished, very few of the ships reached land.

5. It is true that the Romans ¹took the ships by surrounding them.
6. The Veneti, having lost all their ships, surrendered to Cæsar.
7. Since they had gathered all their ships into one place, it was clear that they would be victorious.
8. He sold into slavery (those) ²who inhabited the coast.

¹ Present participle. ² Do not use a clause. ³ Latin, *took the surrounded ships*. Why not ablative absolute?

II. Cæsar, having judged that it was necessary to send aid to those who were fighting around the gates, advanced to the front line. Then, after exhorting his (men) to be brave, he gave the signal. The Romans, having quickly driven out the enemy, took the town. Although the town had been captured, Cæsar forbade that the inhabitants should be killed.

LESSON XXII

48. The Gerundive, § 224.

49. The Passive Periphrastic Conjugation, § 224. *a*.

50. The Dative of Agent, § 87.

51. The passive periphrastic conjugation denotes what *must be*, or what *ought to be*, and is always passive. Therefore, to use this construction, sentences not already passive must first be cast in the passive form; for example, to translate *Cæsar must give the signal*, the sentence must be recast to *the signal must be given by Cæsar*, *Caesarī signum dandum est*.

52. Since the passive of an intransitive verb is always impersonal (§ 66), the passive periphrastic of such a verb must be used impersonally; hence the gerundive of an intransitive is always neuter singular in form. The case that the verb governs in the active is retained in the passive; for example, *they must be persuaded* is rendered *eis persuādendum est* (lit. *it must be persuaded to them*).

EXERCISE

- I. 1. The soldiers could see the enemy approaching the rampart.¹
2. They all exclaimed that Sabinus ought to set out for the camp of Cæsar.
3. We ought not to criticize the general because he does not lead out his legions.
4. We must not hinder the lieutenant from keeping himself in camp.²
5. We ought to persuade the man ³ to cross over to the enemy and learn what is going on.
6. Cæsar noticed that, although the Germans had been driven out, the Belgæ were still unfriendly.
7. He replied that the allies would have to collect ships.
8. Our kinsmen must leave their fields, since the enemy are making inroads.

¹ Dative. ² *castris*, ablative of means, § 106. ³ Not infinitive.

II. Sabinus, after receiving his troops, hastened into the territory of the enemy. Among the enemy there was great fear when they heard that Sabinus was approaching. They knew that they must collect large forces ¹ to wage war with him successfully. When the scouts informed Sabinus that the enemy were not far distant, he thought that he ought not to advance until Cæsar should arrive. He did not dare to attack so great a multitude ² while Cæsar was absent.

¹ Not infinitive. ² Ablative absolute, § 117. c.

LESSON XXIII

53. The Gerundive (*continued*), § 224. *b*.

54. The Gerund, § 223. *a-d* and note.

a. The Gerundive and the Gerund expressing Purpose, § 225. *a, b*.

NOTE. In the genitive and the ablative without a preposition the gerund may take a direct object, as, *cupidus epistulam scribendi*, *desirous of writing a letter*. In other cases the gerundive construction is preferred, and may be used even here, as, *cupidus epistulae scribendae*. The translation is exactly the same as for the gerund.

EXERCISE

I. 1. We ¹ought not to lose this favorable opportunity of going to the camp.

2. On account of the greatness ² of the forests and swamps war ought not to be waged.

3. After the council was dismissed, they collected fagots suitable ³ for filling the Roman ditches.

4. When his arrival was known, the enemy were desirous of engaging in a cavalry battle.

5. Our men are desirous of showing ⁴ what they can do without the general.

6. They sent ambassadors to Crassus to beg for peace.

7. He said that a favorable opportunity of detaining the ambassadors was given.

8. When he had set forth the reasons for coming, he ceased speaking.

9. The Gauls attempt to conquer by fighting long and bravely.

¹ Passive periphrastic. ² Ablative, § 109. ³ *aptus* with *ad* and the accusative of the gerundive. ⁴ Indirect question.

II. Although the enemy daily gave opportunities ¹ for fighting, Sabinus kept himself in camp ² to confirm the impression of fear. Then he chose a crafty man well fitted to carry out the matter successfully and secretly sent him to the enemy ³ to set forth the fear of the Romans. This man told the Gauls that Sabinus was desirous of secretly leading out his army the next night, and that there was no doubt ⁴ that they could easily overcome the unsuspecting Romans.

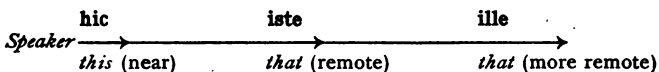
¹ Genitive of the gerund. ² Genitive of the gerund with *causā*. ³ Genitive of the gerundive with *causā*. ⁴ A subjunctive clause with *quā*, following a negative expression of doubt, § 186.

LESSON XXIV

55. Relative Pronouns, § 137.

56. Demonstrative Pronouns and Adjectives, §§ 134. a, 135.

a. **Hic, iste, and ille** point out a person or thing definitely in place or time. Their relation to the speaker may be represented graphically thus:



The pronoun **is** is used of persons or things either far or near and makes no definite reference to place or time. As a substantive it is commonly used as a pronoun of the third person (*he, she, it*).

57. Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives, § 144. a-d.

58. Reflexive Pronouns and Adjectives, §§ 132, 133 and note.

a. The Intensive Pronoun **ipse**, § 136.

EXERCISE

1. 1. Concerning¹ this man whom you have named I say nothing.
2. Although the deserters are keeping themselves in hiding, it is certain that they are in the city.
3. It is rumored that a certain man, whom it is not necessary to name, has collected a large army² for storming the town.
4. Neither were there any³ supplies at home, nor was any one⁴ prepared for waging war.
5. Crassus sent certain horsemen⁵ to go around the camp.
6. If any one desires to drive away the defenders of the gate, he must not hesitate.
7. Unless some one shall hinder us from going forth, we shall pursue (those) who seek safety in flight.
8. We shall follow them into the swamps,⁶ that no one may escape.

¹ *dē* with ablative. ² Genitive of gerundive with *causā*. ³ *ullus*, § 144. c.
⁴ *quisquam*, § 144. c. ⁵ Relative clause of purpose. ⁶ *nē quis*, § 144. a.

II. When certain scouts who had been sent forward to select a place suitable for a camp returned, they reported ¹as follows: "There are in all two places which we can choose, the one protected by a swamp, the other more suitable for a camp but less easy ²to defend." ³On hearing this the general set out with two cohorts to see the places himself. On the way they met ⁴some horsemen of the enemy. Some of these they killed (as they were) fleeing; others they surrounded and captured.

¹ *haec*. ² Express by *ad* with the gerund. ³ *his auditis*, ablative absolute.
⁴ *occurrō* with the dative.

LESSON XXV.

59. Expressions of Time.

- a. Time When or Within Which, § 119.
- b. Time How Long or During Which, § 96.
- c. Time Before or After an Event, § 114.

To denote the *time before* or *time after* an event the Latin uses the word *ante* or *post*, either as an adverb with the ablative of measure of difference (§ 114) or as a preposition governing the accusative:

decem ante diēbus (lit. *before by ten days*) or *ante decem diēs*, *ten days before*

decem post diēbus (lit. *afterward by ten days*) or *post decem diēs*, *ten days after*

NOTE. As prepositions *ante* and *post* either precede the numeral or stand between it and its noun; as adverbs they either precede or follow the noun.

EXERCISE

For Latin numerals see page 323.

- I. 1. Pompey was consul in the fifty-fifth year before Christ.
2. The Gauls were subdued by Cæsar in eight years. In the fourth year he made his first inroad into the territory of the Germans.
3. A few months after, ¹when he had subdued many tribes of Gauls, he hastened to Britain.

4. Those tribes, since they neither had ships nor were able to repulse the guards, were prevented from crossing.

5. Before those who were on this side of the river saw ² what these (men) were doing, the ships were seized.

6. ³ After they had seized the ships, they supported themselves for the rest ⁴ of the winter on the captured supplies.⁵

7. Three months afterward these same tribes would have returned into Gaul if they had not been prevented from crossing.

8. If the Gauls had decided that they ought to make a beginning of fighting, they would have driven out the enemy in three days.

¹ Ablative absolute. ² Indirect question. ³ Ablative absolute. ⁴ *religiam partem*, § 96. ⁵ Ablative, § 106.

II. Certain tribes which I have mentioned, having been driven from their territories, wandered about for three years and reached the regions nearest to the Rhine, where dwelt the Menapii. The latter,¹ terrified by the approach of this great multitude, crossed the river, ² leaving guards ³ to prevent the enemy from crossing. The enemy, having tried in vain for many days to cross, pretended that they were returning to their own settlements, and the Menapii so believed. But suddenly they attacked the unsuspecting Menapii, ² having made a march of three days in a single night.

¹ *hi*. ² Ablative absolute. ³ A relative clause of purpose.

LESSON XXVI

60. Expressions of Place.

a. Place from Which, § 101. *a.*

b. Place Whither, § 97.

c. Place toward Which, § 97. note.

d. Place at or in Which, § 120.

e. The Locative Case, § 120. *a.*

NOTE. Apply as a general principle the rule that the relations of place are expressed by prepositions with their proper cases, but that names of towns and *domus* omit the preposition.

EXERCISE

I. 1. He replied that there were no supplies at home by which they could support themselves.

2. During the winter before the war against the Germans Cæsar had been in Italy.

3. From Italy to Germany is a long journey; (and) likewise the road from Rome to Geneva is difficult.

4. In the towns the Gauls surround travelers ¹to ask what each one of them has heard about each thing.

5. Cæsar set out for his army early because he feared that the Gauls were sending embassies to the Germans.

6. The army had remained in winter quarters for three months not far from the sea.

7. If the tribes wander ²too widely from their boundaries, they will never return home.

8. He wishes to go from this place to Vesontio; or, if that town is too far away, to Geneva.

¹ Not infinitive. ² *lātius*, § 145.

II. Cæsar waged war for many years in Gaul and other lands, for he did not wish to make an end¹ of fighting until he had overcome all his enemies. After the wars were finished he returned home. But he did not live many years. Many envied him² and ³there were some who believed that he was seeking royal power. Accordingly a conspiracy was made against him, and he was killed at Rome by those who a few years before had been his friends.

¹ *finis*. ² Dative, § 83. ³ *erant qui*, with the subjunctive of description, § 177. a.

LESSON XXVII

61. The Genitive, § 72.

- a.* The Possessive Genitive, § 73.
- b.* The Genitive of Material, § 79.
- c.* The Genitive of Description, § 77.
- d.* The Partitive Genitive, § 76. *a.*
- e.* The Subjective Genitive, § 75. *a.*
- f.* The Objective Genitive, § 75. *b.*

NOTE. With cardinal numbers and **quidam** the ablative with **ē** or **ex** is used instead of the partitive genitive :

quattuor ex Helvētiis, *four of the Helvetii*

EXERCISE

I. 1. He made a march of a few days into the territory of the Germans.

2. Many of their ambassadors came from their own country into Gaul.

3. This tribe of the Germans had gone forth from home many years before, terrified by fear of the Suebi.

4. In five days they reached the banks of the Rhine, which is the largest river of Germany.

5. Those who live near the river seek the friendship of their neighbors.

6. When they could no longer withstand the attack of the Romans, they fled into the forests.

7. The heap of arms was so great that it equaled the height of the wall.

8. They must collect a large supply of grain that they may the more easily support themselves during the winter.

II. The Germans were (men) of the greatest valor and so fierce that even¹ the Romans feared them. When Cæsar was in Gaul, the most conspicuous of the Germans was their king, Ariovistus. He had

crossed the Rhine with a great multitude and come into the territory of the Sequani, and had seized a third part of their land, the best ² of all Gaul. When certain of the Sequani had come to Cæsar to complain concerning the wrongs of Ariovistus, their terror of the king was so great that they wept.³

¹ ipsi. ² Agrees with *part.* ³ *fleō.*

LESSON XXVIII

62. The Dative.

- a. The Indirect Object, § 82.
- b. The Dative with Special Verbs, § 83 and note.
- c. The Dative with Compounds, § 84.

NOTE 1. The so-called special verbs that govern the dative do so because they have a special meaning requiring an indirect object; for example, the exact meaning of *imperat militibus* is *he gives a command to the soldiers*; of *persuādet amicis*, *he offers persuasion to his friends*.

These verbs often take a direct object along with the dative, usually a neuter pronoun or an object clause; for example, *amicis persuādet ut exeant*, *he persuades (to) his friends to go forth*. Here the clause *ut exeant* is the direct object and *amicis* the indirect object of *persuādet*.

NOTE 2. Likewise verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, etc. do not take the dative *because of the preposition*, but rather because their meaning requires an indirect object.

Many verbs compounded with these prepositions are transitive and take the accusative. Just what verbs are used with the dative must be learned by observing the usage of the best writers as recorded in the Latin dictionary. Some compound verbs take the accusative (direct object) along with the dative (indirect); for example, *Cæsar Gallis bellum infert*, *Cæsar makes war on the Gauls*.

EXERCISE

- I. 1. He commanded his legions to give the enemy time neither for defending the camp nor for seeking safety in flight.
2. Certain tribes spare neither the women nor the children of their enemies.
3. ¹ All had been persuaded to leave their homes within ten days.

4. If they had harmed any of the Romans, Cæsar would not have pardoned them.

5. So great was the multitude of ² those who were coming that they stood on the dead bodies.

6. He enjoined upon them that they should not spare any one.

7. The barbarians were hindered from injuring the envoys.

8. He put Labienus, a leader of great valor, in charge of the fortifications because he himself had to hasten into Hither Gaul.

9. Cæsar favored the tenth legion because they had remained courageous.

10. They themselves were cowardly and envied the courage of the Romans.

¹ Latin, *it had been persuaded to all* (§ 83. note and *a*). The clause which would have been the object of the active is used as subject of the passive.

² Use the genitive plural of the present participle, and omit the word *those*.

II. When the Romans were approaching the territory of the Germans, some of them were so cowardly that they were unwilling to advance farther and said that they did not wish to expose themselves to death. Cæsar, however, said that if the rest were unwilling to go, he himself would set out with the tenth legion alone. This legion was so brave that Cæsar favored it and all envied its valor.

LESSON XXIX

63. The Dative (*continued*).

a. The Dative of Purpose or End, § 89.

b. The Dative of Reference, § 85.

c. The Dative with Adjectives, § 90.

EXERCISE

I. 1. The bridge was ¹ a great terror to the barbarians, who had been accustomed to cross the river by means of boats.

2. Although they had been defeated, they began again to defend themselves and to resist those who were coming.

3. Cæsar knew that his friendship would be ² of the greatest service to the Gauls.

4. He wished to remain in Germany until the tribes who dwell there should see how large a force he had.

5. Although the Romans had few legions, nevertheless they inspired fear in the Gauls.

6. He sent two legions as a support to those who were laboring under difficulties.

7. Terrified they threw themselves at Cæsar's ³ feet and asked that he would spare them.

8. They selected a place which they thought was suitable for pitching the camp.

¹ Latin, *for a great terror*. ² Latin, *for the greatest service*. ³ Dative, § 85.

II. ¹ As you set out from Gaul, Britain is not far away. Cæsar thought that for many reasons ² it would be of great advantage ³ to him if he should visit the island. To the Gauls themselves the land was unknown,⁴ and not even from the traders was he able to find out what tribes lived there or how large the island was. Even if those tribes were similar to the Gauls, he did not fear that they would be a match ⁵ for the Romans. Accordingly in the third watch he set sail.

¹ Latin, *to one setting out*. Omit *one*. ² Ablative of cause. ³ Dative.
⁴ *incognitus, -a, -um*. ⁵ *pār*.

LESSON XXX

64. The Accusative.

a. The Direct Object, § 91.

b. The Accusative of Duration and Extent, § 96.

c. Two Accusatives — Direct Object and Adjunct Accusative, § 94 and note.

d. Two Accusatives — Direct Object and Secondary Object, § 93. note and *a.*

EXAMPLES

Ariovistum amicum appellant, *they call Ariovistus friend*

Ariovistus ab eis amicus appellatur, *Ariovistus is called friend by them*

cōsulem sententiam rogāverunt, *they asked the consul his opinion*

cōsul sententiam ab eis rogātus est, *the consul was asked his opinion by them*

NOTE. The verbs **petō**, **postulō**, and **quaerō** do not take two accusatives, but the accusative of the thing and the ablative with **ab** (rarely **ex**) of the person.

EXERCISE

- I. 1. Cæsar demanded many hostages from some tribes.
2. The tribes were asked for many hostages by Cæsar.
3. Although Ariovistus had been called king and friend by the Romans, nevertheless he was hostile to them.
4. There were in all two ways, nor was it clear which (one) they had chosen.
5. He lay at anchor five hours until the rest of the ships arrived.
6. The envoys asked Cæsar what he had learned from Volusenus.
7. Cæsar says that the ships of war were of great service to the Romans.
8. He asked that it be permitted¹ to them to remain there during the whole winter.

¹ Use *licet* with the infinitive, § 216.

II. Though there is danger for one¹ going into places which have not been explored, nevertheless Cæsar decided² that he must go to Britain³ to find out how large the island was and what harbors were nearest to Gaul. He therefore began to equip his ships in a suitable place about ten miles from camp. He made not only ships of war, but also transport ships to carry across his troops. The latter⁴ were eighty feet long and twenty feet wide.

¹ Omit. ² Infinitive of an impersonal passive periphrastic. ³ Not infinitive. ⁴ A form of *hic*.

LESSON XXXI

65. The Ablative.

- a.* The Ablative of Separation, § 101.
- b.* The Ablative of Origin, § 102.
- c.* The Ablative of Cause, § 109.
- d.* The Ablative of Accordance, § 111.

NOTE. The ablative of separation regularly takes a preposition if the ablative denotes persons.

EXERCISE

I. 1. Since no voice had been heard for many hours, they were terrified at the silence.

2. Cæsar in accordance with his custom tried to keep the enemy from supplies.

3. The wind carried some back to the same place from which they had set out.

4. ¹Since their march was interrupted during no part of the night, they reached their villages in ten hours.

5. The ships of the cavalry set sail from the upper harbor by Cæsar's order.²

6. Piso, who was born of a most distinguished family, was called friend by our senate.

7. Having been deprived of their homes they had nothing except their arms.

8. Since they are very near to the province, the traders are able to import those things that tend ³to weaken the courage.

¹ Ablative absolute, § 117. *c.* ² *iussu*. ³ *ad* with accusative of the gerundive.

II. While Cæsar was in Britain with his army, such a storm arose that he was deprived at one time both of his ships of war and of his transports. Because of this calamity there was great excitement throughout the whole army; but there is no doubt that the enemy

rejoiced at the occurrence.¹ ² A council was called together by order of their chiefs and they decided ³ to keep the Romans from grain and other supplies.

¹ Ablative of cause. ² Express by the ablative absolute. ³ A complementary infinitive.

LESSON XXXII

66. The Ablative (*continued*).

- a. The Ablative of Manner, § 110.
- b. The Ablative of Agent, § 104.
- c. The Ablative of Means, § 106.
- d. The Ablative with *ŭtor*, *fruor*, etc., § 107. a.
- e. The Ablative with *opus est*, § 107. c.

NOTE 1. The ablative of means is used without a preposition, while the ablative of agent requires *ā* or *ab*:

Galli virtūte Rōmānōrum superābantur, the Gauls were overcome by the valor of the Romans

Galli ā Rōmānis superābantur, the Gauls were overcome by the Romans

NOTE 2. The ablative of manner is rare without *cum* or an attributive adjective.

EXERCISE

I. 1. Although Cæsar was born of a noble family, he often differed from the senate.

2. Hostages were demanded by Cæsar in accordance with the right of war.

3. While Cæsar was carrying on war in Britain he did not enjoy any leisure.

4. Because of these things he drew up his line of battle on the following day in the middle of the hill.¹

5. He suspected on account of the dust that the legion was being hard pressed by the enemy.

6. There was need of a guard lest the enemy should ² get possession of the camp.

7. When he had hastened thither by long marches, all surrendered their arms of their own will.³

8. Although they had fought fiercely, they were overcome by the violence of our attack.

¹ See § 125, first example. ² *potior* with either genitive or ablative, §§ 81. *d*, 107. *a* and note. ³ Ablative.

II. Since many ships had been damaged by the violence of the storm, Cæsar used the timber and ropes of those that were most seriously damaged ¹ to repair the rest. Other things of which there was need had to be brought over from the continent. There was no doubt that the Britons perceived his danger and their own favorable opportunity. Cæsar accordingly began to prepare all his resources for ² every emergency with the greatest speed.

¹ Not infinitive. ² *ad*.

LESSON XXXIII

67. The Ablative (*continued*).

- a.* The Ablative of Comparison, § 105.
- b.* The Ablative of Accompaniment, § 113.
- c.* The Ablative of Measure of Difference, § 114.
- d.* The Ablative of Respect, § 115.

EXERCISE

I. 1. ¹ A few hours later on the same day ambassadors were sent by the enemy concerning peace.

2. By common agreement they hastened against our men with great speed and attacked them on ² the exposed side.

3. Though the cavalry did not arrive with the rest of the soldiers, yet Commius had brought over some foot soldiers ³ with him.

4. The barbarians were not more courageous than the Romans, but their army was larger by half.

5. That he might the more easily learn what they were doing, he remained one day longer.

6. Cæsar surpassed all other generals in the number of thanksgivings.

7. Although they were not equal in number, nevertheless influenced by the hope of plunder they made inroads into their fields.

8. He thought that the ⁴top of the mountain was held by Labienus, but a few days later he found out that it was held by the enemy.

¹ Latin, *later by a few hours*. ² *ā* or *ab*. ³ § 150. *a*. ⁴ § 125, second example.

II. After Cæsar's ships had been damaged by the waves and tide, he began to repair them with the greatest speed; for he feared that he should not reach the continent if he (should) set sail with weak ships. While Cæsar was in these difficulties, the Britons, to whom liberty was dearer than life, took counsel among themselves that Cæsar might not escape. They had confidence especially in their war chariots, which, because of their strange appearance, were more terrible than the horsemen and infantry.

LESSON XXXIV

68. The Roman Calendar, §§ 227. *a-i*, 228.

EXERCISE

For Latin numerals see page 323.

I. 1. On account of the wrongs, both public and private, which they had inflicted, there was need of the severest punishment.

2. Although they are few in numbers, they excel in courage.

3. The king with his allies brought aid to the captives on the third of October.

4. The Helvetii announced that they would try to enter the territories of the Allobroges on the twenty-eighth day of March.

5. Even if they set out on the seventeenth of March, they will arrive many days later.

6. When the envoys of the Helvetii had come to Cæsar on the thirteenth of April, they were prevented from going through the province.

7. The greatest battle of the Civil War was fought at Pharsalus on the ninth of August.

8. Accordingly on the seventeenth of April, when they had prepared (support) against all accidents, they led down their forces from the hill.

II. Many omens were seen a few days before Cæsar was killed. Among others, on the fourteenth of March several birds pursued a smaller (one) into the senate house. On the fifteenth of March, after Cæsar entered the senate house, he was pierced with twenty-three wounds by the conspirators. After Cæsar's death Augustus became emperor. He was born on the twenty-third of September¹ in the consulship of Cicero and Antonius.

¹ Ablative absolute.

LESSON XXXV

69.

MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISE

I. 1. Cæsar called a council of his soldiers and exhorted them. He showed that Ariovistus would not reject his terms; he showed furthermore that the Romans were equal to the Germans.

2. ¹ When a signal had been given by fires, they assembled; at the same time messengers were sent to stir up the other states to war.

3. He commanded the soldiers to make a bridge, according to the plan² already established, ³ a little above that place where they had crossed two years before.

4. Since time had not been given⁴ for collecting and arming themselves, and many severe wounds had been received, all withdrew from the fight.

5. Fearing that they might be influenced to seek aid from their neighbors, he persuaded them by large rewards to go forth from their boundaries.

6. He pointed out to them that, ⁵ on account of their fidelity, he would not deprive them of their abodes if they should return.

7. He performed all these things with great courage and so quickly that they were finished before the enemy knew what was going on.

8. When all the soldiers had assembled, they began to hurl their weapons into the rampart; and then, when our men had been dislodged, they pursued them from the higher places to the banks of the river.

¹ *significatiōne factā.* ² § 111. ³ Latin, *above by a little* (*paulō*). ⁴ *ad* with the gerundive. ⁵ *propter* with the accusative.

II. The Helvetii decided to go forth from their boundaries for two reasons: first, because they were hemmed in on all sides by the character of their country, on ¹ one side by a river, on another ² by a mountain, (and) on a third by a lake; in the next place they were desirous ³ of wandering about more widely to make war on their neighbors. In accordance with these plans they called a council and bound themselves by pledge and oath that they would attempt ⁴ to get possession of the supreme power ⁵ of the whole of Gaul.

¹ *ex.* ² *alter.* ³ Use the genitive of the gerund. ⁴ Infinitive. ⁵ Ablative.

ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NAMES

KEY TO DIACRITICAL MARKS

ă as in fâte	ą as in what	ı as in Ice	ő as in nőt	û as in fûr
â as in senâte	î as in mête	ï as in idea	ô as in côrک	ŋ as in rŋle
ă as in făt	ê as in ěvent	ı as in ıt	ũ as in ũse	ų as in pŋł
ă as in ärm	ë as in mët	ö as in öld	û as in ũnite	ȳ as in bȳ
ą as in ął	ê as in hër	ô as in ôbey	ű as in űp	ÿ as in babÿ
ă as in ăsk				
c as in call	g as in go	qu as in quit		
ç as in çity	ğ as in cage	ş as in hiş		
eh as in school	ŋ as in inķ			

All other unmarked consonants have their usual English sounds. Silent letters are italicized. Primary accents are heavy, secondary accents light.

Ăc'cô	Ăm bı'ô rıx	Ăr vër'ni
Ă ehă'ia	Ăm'bi văr'ı tı	Ă'sı á
(y)	Ăm phıp'ô lıs	(sh)
Ă ehıl'lăs	Ăm'pı ũs	Ă'trê bă'têş
Ă cŭ'tı ũs	Ă năr'têş	Ă'trı ũs
(sh)	Ăn cäl'ı têş	Ău lër'çı
Ă'dı ä tün'nŭs	Ăn'dê brö'ğı ũs	Ău'lŭs
Ăd'û ät'û cä	Ăn'dêş	Ău rŭn'cŭ lë'iŭs
Ăd'û ät'û çı	Ăn'dı	Ău'scı (y)
Ăê gÿp'tŭs	Ăn tő'nı ũs	Ă văr'ı cŭm
Ăê ml'ı ũs	Ă pöl'lô	Ăx'ô ná
Ă frä'nı ũs	Ăq'ui lë'ia	
Ăf'rı cŭs	(y)	Băç'ê nıs
Ăl'öx ăn'drı ä	Ăq'ui tă'nı ä	Băc'û lŭs
Ăl löb'rô gëş	Ă'răr	Băl vën'tı ũs
Ăm bär'ri	Ă'rı ô vıs'tŭs	(sh)
Ăm'bi ä'ni	Ă'r pı nē'iŭs	Băt'ă vı
Ăm'bıl ı ä'tı	(y)	Böl'gäş

Bəl'gī ūm	Çen'ı mäg'ni	Ē'lis
Bəl löv'ä çī	Çeu'trö nēg	Ē'l'ä sä'tēg
Bi bräc'tē	Çhé rūs'ci	Ēph'ē sūs
Bi'bräx	Çİç'ē rö	Ēr'ä töse'thē nēg
Bİb'rö çī	Çİ İc'ı ä	Ē sü'vıı
Bİb'h'ü lūs	(sh)	
Bi gēr'ri ö'nēg	Çım bē'rı ūs	Fa'bi ūs
Bit'ü ri'gēg	Çım'brı	Fläc'cūs
Böd'ü ög nā'tūs	Çın gēt'ö rix	Fü'fi ūs
Bö'ia	Çİ'tä	
(y)	Çıu'dı ūs	Gä bın'ı ūs
Bö'ii	Clē'ö pä'trä	Gä'ıūs
(y)	Clö'dı ūs	(y)
Brät'ü spän'tı ūm	Cöc'ö sä'tēg	Gäl'bä
(sh)	Cöm'mı ūs	Gäl'h
Bri tän'ni	Cön cön'nē tö düm'nūs	Gäl'ı ä
Bri tän'ni ä	Cön drı'sı	Gäl'ūs
Brün dİs'ı ūm	Cön sıd'ı ūs	Gä rüm'nä
(sh)	Cö'rı ö sö'l'ı tēg	Gä rüm'ni
Brı'tūs	Cö'rūs	Gä'tēg
Cäb'h'ü rūs	Cöt'tä	Gē nā'vä
Cä dūr'çī	Cöt'ü ä'tūs	Gēr gö'vı ä
Çaē mā'ni	Cräs'sūs	Gēr mā'ni ä
Çaē rö'sı	Cräs'tı nūs	Gnaē'ūs
Çaē'gar	Çy'prüs	Gö'bän nİt'ı ö
Cäl'ē ti		(sh)
Cän'tä bri	Dä'çī	Gör göb'ı nā
Cän'tı ūm	Dä nū'vı ūs	Grä iöç'ē İı
(sh)	Dı'ä blın'tēg	(y)
Cär'nü tēg	Dı ä'nä	Haēd'h İ
Cär vİl'ı ūs	Dı'ös cör'ı dēg	Hä rı'dēg
Cäs'sı	Dıv'ı cı ä'cūs	Häl vē'tı İ
Cäs'sı ūs	(sh)	(sh)
(sh)	Dıv'ı cö	Häl'vıı
Cäs'sı vēl İau'nūs	Dö mİt'ı ūs	Hİ bēr'ni ä
Cäs'tı cūs	(sh)	Hİr'rūs
Cät'ä măn'tä löē'dēg	Dü'bİs	Hİs pä'ni ä
Cät'ü ri'gēg	Düm'nö rix	
Cät'ü völ'cūs	Dü'rūs	
Çel'taē	Dyr'rä'ehı ūm	İc'cı ūs
Çel tİl'ūs		(sh)
Çen'ä bēn'sēg	Ēb'ü rö'nēg	İı İyr'ı cüm
Çen'ä büm	Ēb'ü rö vı'çēg	İn dü'tı ö mē'rūs
		(sh)

Ī t̃s'li á	Mēr cū'rī ūs	Pti á'nī I
Īt'ī ūs (sh)	Mēs s̃ā'lá	Ptōl'ē mae'ūs
Iū'nī ūs (j)	Mē'tī ūs (sh)	Ptōl'ē mā'ls
Iup'pī tēr (j)	Mī nēr'vā	Pūb'li ūs
Iu'rá (j)	Mō'ná	Rau'rā ċi
Lā bē'rī ūs	Mōr'ī nī	Rēd'ō nēs
Lā'bi ē'nūs	Mō'sá	Rē'mī
Lā rī'sá	Mýt'ī lē'nē	Rē'mūs
Lā tōb'rī ġi	Nām mē'iūs (y)	Rhē'nūs
Lē mán'nūs	Nām'nē tēs	Rhōd'ā nūs
Lēm'ō vī'ċēs	Nān'tū ā'tēs	Rhō'dōs
Lēn'tū lūs	Nār'bō	Ru'fūs
Lē pōn'tī I (sh)	Nās'ū á (sh)	Ru' tē'nī
Leū'ċi	Nēm'ē tēs	Sā bī'nūs
Lēx ō'vī I	Nēr'vī I	Sā'bis
Li'ġēr	Nō rē'ia (y)	Sān'tō nēs
Līn'gō nēs	Nō'vī ō dū'nūm	Sān'tō nī
Līs'cūs	Ōċ'ē lūm	Scīp'ī ō
Lū cā'nī ūs	Ōc'tō dū'rūs	Scī bō'nī ūs
Lū cī'lī ūs	Ōr ċyn'ī á	Sē dū'nī
Lū'cī ūs (sh)	Ōr ġēt'ō rīx	Sē dū'sī I (sh)
Lūc tē'rī ūs	Ōr'ī cūm	Sēġ'ō nāx
Lū ġōt'ō rīx	Ō sīs'mī	Sē ġōn'tī ā'ċi (sh)
Māġ'ē dō'nī á	Pā rīs'ī I (sh)	Sē ġū'sī ā'vī (sh)
Māġ'ē tōb'rī ġā	Pār'thī	Sēn'ō nēs
Mān'dū brā'cī ūs (sh)	Pē'dī ūs	Sēp tīm'ī ūs
Mān'li ūs	Pē lū'sī ūm (sh)	Sēq'uā nā
Mār'cō mán'nī	Pēr'ġā mūm	Sēq'uā nī
Mār'cūs	Pēt'rō sīd'ī ūs	Sē rā'pī ōn
Mā'rī ūs	Phā'rūs	Sēr tō'rī ūs
Mārġ	Pīc'tō nēs	Sēr'vī ūs
Māt'rō nā	Pī'sō	Sēx'tī ūs
Māx'ī mūs	Pōm pē'iūs (y)	Sīb'ū sā'tēs
Mē'dī ō māt'rī ċi	Praē'cō nī'nūs	Sīl'ī ūs
Mēl'dī	Prō ċīl'lūs	Sō'tī ā'tēs (sh)
Mē nā'pī I		Spīn'thēr
		Suē'bi (w)

Suēs'si ò'nēs

(w)

Sù gãm'brì

Sùl'là

Sùl'pì'ì ùs

(sh)

Sÿr'ì á

Tãm'è sís

Tär bël'ì

Tär'tù sã'tēs

Täs gè'tì ùs

(sh)

Täx'ì mäg'tù lūs

Tēc tōs'á gēs

Tēnc'tē rì

Tēr'rá sld'ì ùs

Teü'tò nēs

Thēs sã'ì á

Thräx

Tÿg'tù rì'nì

Tì tũ'rì ùs

Tl'tūs

Tò lō'sá

Töl ò sã'tēs

Träl'lēs

Träs'rhē nã'nì

Trē'bì ùs

Trē bö'nì ùs

Trēv'ē rì

Trì ä'rì ùs

Trìb'ò çēs

Trìn'ò vãn'tēs

Tù lìn'gì

Tül'lì ùs

Tül'lūs

Tũ'rò nì

Ū'bì Ì

Ū síp'ē tēs

Väc'á lūs

Vä lē'rì ùs

Vän g'ì'ò nēs

Vä tìn'ì ùs

Vē lã'nì ùs

Vē'lì ò cãs'sēs

Vēl lã'u'nò dü'nüm

Vē nē'l'ì

Vēn'ē tì

Vē nē'tì á

(sh)

Vēr'á grì

Vēr bīg'ē nūs

Vēr'çln gēt'ò rix

Vēr'tù cloē'tì ùs

(sh)

Vē sön'tì ò

(sh)

Vl rld'ò vlx

Vlr'ò mãn'dü Ì

Vò cã'tēs

Vóc'cì ò

(sh)

Vò cön'tì Ì

(sh)

Völ'çasē

Völ cã'nūs

Völ'tù sē'nūs

Vös'ē gūs

VOCABULARIES

ABBREVIATIONS

<i>abbr.</i> = abbreviation	<i>lit.</i> = literal or literally
<i>abs.</i> = absolute or absolutely	<i>loc.</i> = locative
<i>act.</i> = active	<i>m. or masc.</i> = masculine
<i>adj.</i> = adjective	<i>n.</i> = neuter or noun
<i>adv.</i> = adverb or adverbial	<i>neut.</i> = neuter
<i>c.</i> = common, <i>i. e.</i> either <i>masc.</i> or <i>fem.</i>	<i>neg.</i> = negative or negatively
<i>cf.</i> = confer, <i>i. e.</i> compare	<i>num.</i> = numeral
<i>comp.</i> = comparative	<i>opp.</i> = opposed
<i>conj.</i> = conjunction	<i>orig.</i> = originally
<i>decl.</i> = declined	<i>p.</i> = participle
<i>dem.</i> = demonstrative	<i>pass.</i> = passive
<i>dep.</i> = deponent	<i>perf.</i> = perfect
<i>distrib.</i> = distributive	<i>plur.</i> = plural
<i>emph.</i> = emphatic	<i>p. p.</i> = perfect participle
<i>esp.</i> = especially	<i>prep.</i> = preposition
<i>f. or fem.</i> = feminine	<i>pres.</i> = present
<i>fig.</i> = figurative or figuratively	<i>pron.</i> = pronoun
<i>freq.</i> = frequentative	<i>reflex.</i> = reflexive or reflexively
<i>impers.</i> = impersonal	<i>rel.</i> = relative
<i>indecl.</i> = indeclinable	<i>sc.</i> = scilicet, namely
<i>indef.</i> = indefinite	<i>sing.</i> = singular
<i>intens.</i> = intensive	<i>subjv.</i> = subjunctive
<i>interrog.</i> = interrogative	<i>superl.</i> = superlative
<i>intrans.</i> = intransitive	<i>trans.</i> = transitive
<i>irr.</i> = irregular	<i>v.</i> = verb

†, a dagger denotes an assumed form.

1, 2, 3, 4, refer to the regular conjugations of verbs.

Heavy-faced type in parentheses denotes other spellings or forms.

Other common abbreviations will be readily understood.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

For numerals see Grammar, § 19. References preceded by G. are to the Grammar; those with Roman numerals are to the Composition Lesson in which the word occurs

able — arise

able (be), possum, *irr.*
about, *adv.*, circiter
about, *prep.*, (*around*) circum, *with acc.*; (*concerning*) dē, *with abl.*
above, *adv.*, suprā
above, *prep.*, suprā, *with the acc.*
absent (be), absum, *irr.*
accept, accipiō, 3
accident, cāsus, -ūs, *m.*
accordingly, itaque
account, on account of, ob, propter (XXIII), *with the acc.*
accustomed (be), soleō, 2; cōnsuēscō, 3, *in perf. tenses*
acquainted with (be), cognōscō, 3, *in perf. tenses*
across, trāns, *with the acc.*
added (it is), accēdit, 3
adopt, īnsistō, 3; īstituō, 3
advance, prōcēdō, 3; prōgredior, 3
advantage, ūsus, -ūs, *m.*
advantageous, commodus, -a, -um
advantageously, commodē
afraid (be), timeō, 2; vereor, 2
after, afterwards, *adv.*, postea, post
after, *conj.*, postquam
after, *prep.*, post, *with the acc.*
again, iterum

against, in, contrā, *with the acc.*
agreement, cōnsēnsus, -ūs, *m.*
aid, auxilium, auxili, *n.*
all, omnis, omne; tōtus, -a, -um (XXVII); **in all**, *adv.*, omnīnō
allow, patior, 3
ally, socius, soci, *m.*
almost, paene, ferē
Alps, Alpēs, -ium, *f. plur.*
already, iam
also, etiam
although, cum, quamquam
altogether, omnīnō
am, sum, *irr.*
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
ambition for power, cupiditās rēgnī
among, inter, *with the acc.*
anchor (lie at), in ancoris expectō, 1
and, ac, atque, et, -que
announce, nūntiō, 1
another, alius, alia, aliud
any, *adj.*, ūllus, -a, -um (G. § 144. c)
any one, quis, quisquam (G. § 144. c)
appearance, speciēs, -ēī, *f.*
approach, *n.*, aditus, -ūs, *m.*
approach, *v.*, adpropinquō, 1 (*with the dat.*)
approve, adprobō, 1

arm — canton

- arise, orior, 4
 arm, *v.*, armō, 1; armed, *p.*, armātus, -a, -um
 arms, (*offensive*) tēla, -ōrum, *n. plur.*;
 (*defensive*) arma, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
 army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
 around, circum, *with the acc.*
 arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
 arrive, perveniō, 4
 ask, ask for, rogō, 1 (XI, XXX); petō,
 3 (XVI); flāgitō, 1; (*inquire*)
 quaerō, 3; rogō, 1
 assemble, conveniō, 4
 attack, *n.*, impetus, -ūs, *m.*
 attack, *v.*, adgredior, 3
 attempt, cōnor, 1
 authority, auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*
 auxiliaries, auxilia, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
 away (be), absum, *irr.*
- baggage, impedimenta, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
 baggage wagon, carrus, -ī, *m.*
 band, manus, -ūs, *f.*
 bank, rīpa, -ae, *f.*
 barbarian, barbarus, -ī, *m.*
 barbarous, barbarus, -a, -um
 battle, proelium, proelī, *n.*; fight
 battles, proelia faciō, 3; plan of
 battle, ratiō pugnae; line of battle,
 aciēs, -ēī, *f.*
 beast of burden, iumentum, -ī, *n.*
 because, quod
 become, fiō, *irr.*
 before, *adv.*, antea, ante; *conj.*, pri-
 usquam; *prep.*, ante, *with the acc.*
 beg for, petō, 3
 begin, incipiō, 3; began, coepī, *de-*
fective
- beginning, initium, initī, *n.*
 believe, crēdō, 3
 besiege, oppugnō, 1
 best, optimus, -a, -um
 better, *adj.*, melior, melius; *adv.*,
 melius
 bind, obstringō, 3
 bird, avis, -is, *f.*
 boat, nāvis, -is, *f.*
 body (dead), cadāver, -eris, *n.*
 bold, audāx, -ācis
 born (be), nāscor, 3; orior, 4
 both (*each of two*), uterque, utraque,
 utrumque
 both . . . and, et . . . et
 boundary, finis, -is, *m.*
 brave, fortis, forte
 bravely, fortiter
 bravery, fortitūdō, -inis, *f.*
 breathless, exanimātus, -a, -um
 bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
 bring, ferō, *irr.* (XXXIV); bring
 about, efficiō, 3; bring over, trāns-
 portō, 1; bring upon, inferō, *irr.*
 Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*
 Britons, Britanni, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
 brother, frāter, frātris, *m.*
 building, aedificium, aedificī, *n.*
 burn, incendō, 3
 business, negōtium, negōtī, *n.*
 but, at, sed
- calamity, calamitās, -ātis, *f.*
 call (*name*), appellō, 1; call together
 (*summon*), convocō, 1
 camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
 can, possum, *irr.*
 canton, pāgus, -ī, *m.*

captive — cut off

- captive**, captivus, -ī, *m.*
capture, capiō, 3
carry across, transportō, 1; **carry back**, referō, *irr.*; **carry on**, gerō, 3; **carry out the matter**, negotium gerō, 3
cart, carrus, -ī, *m.*
cause, efficiō, 3 (XII)
cavalry, *adj.*, equester, equestris, equestre
cavalry, *n.*, equitēs, -um, *m. plur.*; equitātus, -ūs, *m.*
cease, finem faciō, 3
Celts, Celtæ, -ārum, *m. plur.*
centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*
certain, *pron.*, quīdam, quaedam, quoddam
certain (it is), cōstat, 1
chain, catēna, -ae, *f.*; **throw into chains**, in catēnās coniciō, 3
change, convertō, 3
charge, put in charge of, praeficiō, 3
chief, princeps, -cipis, *m.*
children, liberī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*; puerī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
choose, dēligō, 3
Christ, Christūs, -ī, *m.*
Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*
city, urbs, -is, *f.*
civil, cīvilis, cīvile
clear (it is), apertum est, *irr.*
climb, trāscendō, 3
close, claudō, 3
coast, ōra maritima, ōrae maritimae, *f.*
cohort, cohors, -tis, *f.*
collect, cōgō, 3 (XXII); comportō, 1 (XXVII); cōferō, *irr.* (VIII); conligō, 3 (XXIII, XXXV)
come, veniō, 4
command, *n.*, (control) imperium, imperī, *n.*; (order) imperātum, -ī, *n.*; **am in command**, praesum, *irr.*
command, give command, v., iubeō, 2; imperō, 1 (XXVIII)
common, commūnis, commūne
complain, queror, 3
conceal, cēlō, 1
concerning, dē, *with the abl.*
condition, condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*
confer on, dēferō, *irr.*
conference, concilium, concilī, *n.*
confidence, have confidence in, cōnfidō, 3 (*with the dat.*)
confirm, cōnfirmō, 1
confusion (throw into), perturbō, 1
conquer, superō, 1; vincō, 3
conspicuous, amplius, -a, -um
conspiracy, coniūratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
conspirator, coniūrātus, -ī, *m.*
consul, cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*
contend, contendō, 3
continent, continēns, -entis, *f.*
council, concilium, concilī, *n.*
counsel (take), cōnsulō, 3
courage, animus, -ī, *m.* (XVI); virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
courageous, fortis, forte
cowardly, *adj.*, timidus, -a, -um; *adv.*, timide
crafty, callidus, -a, -um
criticize, reprehendō, 3
cross (over), trānseō, *irr.*
custom, mōs, mōris, *m.*; (*usage*) cōnsuetūdō, -inis, *f.* (XXXI)
cut off, abscidō, 3

daily — envoy

- daily**, *adj.*, cotidiānus, -a, -um; *adv.*, cotidie
damage, adfligō, 3
danger, periculum, -ī, *n.*
dangerous, periculōsus, -a, -um; it is dangerous, est cum periculō
dare, audeō, 2
day, diēs, -ēī, *m.*; space of three days, trīdium, -ī, *n.*
dead body, cadāver, -eris, *n.*
dear, cārus, -a, -um
death, mors, mortis, *f.*
decide, statuō, 3 (XXV, XXX)
declare, prōpōnō, 3
deep, altus, -a, -um
defeat, superō, 1
defend, dēfendō, 3
defender, dēfēnsor, -ōris, *m.*
delay, moror, 1
demand, flāgitō, 1; poscō, 3 (XVI); postulō, 1
deprive, dēspoliō, 1 (XIX); prīvō, 1 (XXXI)
deserter, perfuga, -ae, *m.*
desire, volō, *irr.*
desirous, cupidus, -a, -um
detain, dētineō, 2; retineō, 2 (XVI)
die, morior, 3
differ from, dissentiō, 4 (*with ā or ab*)
different, varius, -a, -um
difficult, difficilis, difficile
difficulty, difficultās, -ātis, *f.*
dig a ditch, fossam faciō, 3
direct, dicō, 3
dislodge, dēciō, 3
dismiss, dīmittō, 3
distant (be), absum, *irr.*
distinguished, amplus, -a, -um
distribute, distribuō, 3
ditch, fossa, -ae, *f.*
divide, dividō, 3
do, faciō, 3; efficiō, 3 (XXIII); agō, 3 (XXV)
doubt, dubitō, 1; there is no doubt, nōn est dubium
draw, dēstringō, 3; draw near, prope accēdō, 3; draw up, instruō, 3
drive away, dēpellō, 3; drive out, expellō, 3 (XXV)
dust, pulvis, -eris, *m.*
dwell, incolō, 3
dwelling place, sēdēs, -is, *f.*
each one, (*of several*) quisque, quaeque, quidque; (*of two*) uterque, utraque, utrumque
early, *adj.*, mātūrus, -a, -um; *adv.*, mātūrē
easily, facile
easy, facilis, facile
either . . . or, aut . . . aut, vel . . . vel
embassy, lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
emergency, cāsus, -ūs, *m.*
emperor, princeps, -cipis, *m.*; imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
encamp, cōnsidō, 3
endure, perferō, *irr.*
enemy, hostis, -is, *c.*
engage in, committō, 3, *trans.*
enjoin upon, mandō, 1
enjoy, ūtor, 3 (*lit. use*)
enter, ingredior, 3 (*with in or intrā*); intrō, 1 (XXXIV)
entreat, ōrō, 1
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*

envy — friendship

envy, invidēō, 2 (*with the dat.*)
 equal, *adj.*, pār, paris; **make equal**,
 aequō, 1
 equal, *v.*, adaequō, 1
 equip, parō, 1
 escape, evādō, 3
 especially, maximē
 establish, cōstituō, 3; īstituō, 3
 even if, etsī
 every, omnis, omne
 evident (it is), cōstat, 1
 excel, praestō, 1
 except, praeter, *with the acc.*
 excitement, perturbātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
 exclaim, conclāmō, 1
 exhort, cohortor, 1; hortor, 1
 explore, explōrō, 1
 expose myself, mē offerō, *irr.*
 exposed, apertius, -a, -um
 extend, pateō, 2

fact (it is an added), accēdit, 3
 fagots, sarmenta, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
 family, genus, -eris, *n.*
 far, longē
 farther, *adj.*, ulterior, ulterius;
 adv., longius; farthest, longis-
 simē
 father, pater, patris, *m.*
 favor, indulgeō, 2
 favorable, secundus, -a, -um
 fear, *n.*, metus, -ūs, *m.* (XXIX); timor,
 -ōris, *m.*
 fear, *v.*, metuō, 3; timeō, 2; vereor, 2
 few, pauci, -ōrum, *m. plur.*; very
 few, perpauci, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
 fidelity, fidēs, -eī, *f.*
 field, ager, agrī, *m.*

fierce, ācer, ācris, ācre
 fiercely, ācriter
 fight, *n.*, pugna, -ae, *f.*; proelium,
 proeli, *n.*
 fight, *v.*, pugnō, 1; **fight battles**,
 proelia faciō, 3
 fill, compleō, 2
 find, find out, reperīō, 4
 finish, cōficiō, 3
 fire, ignis, -is, *m.*
 first, prīmus, -a, -um; **in the first**
 place, *adv.*, prīmum
 fitted (well), idōneus, -a, -um
 flee, fugiō, 3
 flight, fuga, -ae, *f.*; **put to flight**, in
 fugam coniciō, 3
 foe, hostis, -is, *c.*
 follow, sequor, 3; **follow close after**,
 subsequor, 3; **follow up**, cōse-
 quor, 3; īnsequor, 3
 following, posterus, -a, -um
 follows (as), haec, *n. plur.*
 foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*
 foot soldier, pedes, -itis, *m.*
 for, *conj.*, enim, nam
 forbid, vetō, 1, *irr.*
 force (*violence*), vis, vīs, *f.*
 forces, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*
 ford, vadum, -ī, *n.*
 forest, silva, -ae, *f.*
 former, antīquus, -a, -um; prīstinus,
 -a, -um
 fortification, mūnitiō, -ōnis, *f.*
 fortify, mūniō, 4
 fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*
 free, liber, -era, -erum
 friend, amīcus, -ī, *m.*
 friendship, amicitia, -ae, *f.*

from — hostage

- from**, ā, ab, ē, ex, *with the abl.*; *after verbs of hindering etc.*, quā
front, primus, -a, -um
full, plēnus, -a, -um
furthermore, etiam

gain a request, impetrō, 1
Gallic, Gallicus, -a, -um
gate, porta, -ae, *f.*
gather, cōgō, 3
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, *f.*
general, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
Geneva, Genāva, -ae, *f.*
Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
Germany, Germānia, -ae, *f.*
give, dō, *irr.*; **give in marriage**, in mātrimōnium dō; nūptum conlocō, 1; **give up**, tradō, 3
go, eō, *irr.*; **go round**, circumeō, *irr.*; **go forth**, ēgredior, 3; **go**, exeō, *irr.*; **go forward**, prōcēdō, 3; **go**, prōgredior, 3; **go into** (*approach*), adeō, *irr.*; **go on** (*in sense of being done*), *passive of* agō, 3, *or of* gerō, 3
good, bonus, -a, -um
grain, frūmentum, -i, *n.*; **grain supply**, rēs frūmentāria, rei frūmentāriae, *f.*
gratitude, grātia, -ae, *f.*
great, magnus, -a, -um; **greater**, maior, maius; **greatest**, maximus, -a, -um; summus, -a, -um (XXXII); **how great**, quantus, -a, -um; **so great**, tantus, -a, -um
greatness, magnitūdō, -inis, *f.*
guard, *n.*, custōdia, -ae, *f.* (xxv); praesidium, praesidiī, *n.* (XXXII)
guard, *v.*, custōdiō, 4

half, dīmidium, dīmidī, *n.*
halt, cōsistō, 3
happen, accidō, 3; *fiō*, *irr.*
harbor, portus, -ūs, *m.*
harm, *do harm to*, noceō, 2 (*with the dat.*)
hasten, contendō, 3; *properō*, 1; mātūrō, 1
he, is, eius
heap, acervus, -ī, *m.*
hear, audiō, 4
height, altitūdō, -inis, *f.*; **heights**, loca superiōra, locōrum superiōrum, *n. plur.*
hem in, contineō, 2
here, hīc
hesitate, dubitō, 1
hiding (*in*), in occultō; **keep in hiding**, mē in occultō contineō, 2
high, altus, -a, -um; ērēctus, -a, -um (xx); **very high**, altissimus, -a, -um; **higher**, superior, superius
hill, collis, -is, *m.*
himself, ipse, ipsius
hinder, impediō, 4
his, (*reflexive*) suus, -a, -um; (*not reflexive*) eius
hither, *adj.*, citerior, citerius
hold, teneō, 2; obtineō, 2; **hold in mind**, memoriā teneō, 2; **hold out**, sustentō, 1
home, domus, -ūs, *f.*; **at home**, domī;
leave home, domum relinquō, 3
hook, falx, falcis, *f.*
hope, spēs, speī, *f.*
horse, equus, equī, *m.*
horseman, eques, -itis, *m.*
hostage, obses, -idis, *c.*

hostile — leave

hostile, inimicus, -a, -um
hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
how, quō modō; **how large**, quantus, -a, -um
however, autem
hurl, coniciō, 3 (xxxv); mittō, 3

I, ego, mei
if, sī; **if not**, sī non, nisi
illustrious, clārus, -a, -um
import, importō, 1
impression, opīniō, -ōnis, *f.*
in, in, *with the abl.*
incite (*urge on*), sollicitō, 1
indeed, quidem
inequality, inīquitās, -ātis, *f.*
infantry, peditātus, -ūs, *m.*
inflict, inferō, *irr.* (xxxiv)
influence (*personal*), *n.*, grātia, -ae, *f.*
influence, *v.*, addūcō, 3; permovereō, 2
inform some one, aliquem certiorem faciō, 3
inhabit, incolō, 3
inhabitant, incola, -ae, *c.*
injure, noceō, 2 (*with the dat.*)
inquire, quaerō, 3
inroad, incursiō, -ōnis, *f.*
inspire, iniciō, 3
insult, iniūria, -ae, *f.*; contumēlia, -ae, *f.*
intercept, intercipiō, 3
interrupt, intermittō, 3
interview, conloquium, conloquī, *n.*
into, in, intrā, *with the acc.*
invite, arcessō, 3
island, īnsula, -ae, *f.*
Italy, Italia, -ae, *f.*

javelin, pīlum, -ī, *n.*
journey, iter, itineris, *n.*; **make a journey**, iter faciō, 3
judge, dūcō, 3; iūdicō, 1

keep, teneō, 2; **keep from**, prohibeō, 2 (xxx1); dēterreō, 2; **keep off**, prohibeō, 2; **keep in hiding**, mē in occultō contineō, 2; **keep secret**, taceō, 2
kill, interficiō, 3; occidō, 3
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
kinsman, necessārius, necessārī, *m.*
know, cognōscō, 3 (*in perf. tenses*); intellegō, 3; nōscō, 3 (*in perf. tenses*); sciō, 4 (ix)

labor under difficulties, labōrō, 1
lack, be lacking, dēsum, *irr.*
lake, lacus, -ūs, *m.*
land, terra, -ae, *f.*; ager, agrī, *m.*
language, lingua, -ae, *f.*
large, magnus, -a, -um; **how large**, quantus, -a, -um
last, *adv.*, proximē
later, *adv.*, post
latter, hic, haec, hoc (xxv)
law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*
lay waste, vāstō, 1
lead, dūcō, 3; **lead across**, trādūcō, 3; **lead back**, redūcō, 3; **lead down**, dēdūcō, 3 (xxxiv); **lead out or forth**, ēdūcō, 3
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
leadership, principātus, -ūs, *m.*
learn, intellegō, 3; cognōscō, 3 (*in perf. tenses, know*) (xiv)
leave, *trans.*, relinquō, 3

legate — nevertheless

legate, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
 legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*
 leisure, ōtium, ōtī, *n.*
 less, minus
 letter, litterae, -ārum, *f. plur.*
 liberty, libertās, -ātis, *f.*
 lie at anchor, in ancoris expectō, *1*
 life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
 light, lūx, lūcis, *f.*
 likewise, item
 line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, *f.*; line of
 march, agmen, -inis, *n.*
 little, *adj.*, parvus, -a, -um; *adv.*,
 paulum (*sometimes used as a*
noun)
 live, vīvō, 3; (*dwelt*) incolō, 3
 long, *adj.*, longus, -a, -um; long
 march, iter magnum, *n.*; *adv.*,
 diū
 lose, āmittō, 3

madness, āmentia, -ae, *f.*
 make, faciō, 3 (*passive* fiō; *see*
G. § 45); make war upon, bellum
 inferō, *irr.* (*with the dat.*)
 man, homō, -inis, *c.*; vir, virī, *m.*
 manner, modus, -ī, *m.*; in what
 manner, quō modō
 many, multī, -ae, -a; complūrēs, -ium;
 very many, plērīque, plēraque,
 plēraque
 march, *n.*, iter, itineris, *n.*
 march, *v.*, iter faciō, 3
 marriage (*give in*), *see give*
 matron, māter familiās, mātis fa-
 miliās, *f.*
 matter, negōtium, negōtī, *n.*
 meanwhile, in the meantime, interim

Mediterranean Sea, Mare Internum,
 Maris Internī, *n.*
 meet (*assemble*), conveniō, 4
 memory, memoria, -ae, *f.*; in the
 memory of our fathers, memoriā
 patrum
 mention, dicō, 3 (XXV); comme-
 morō, *1*
 messenger, nūntius, nūntī, *m.*
 middle, medius, -a, -um
 mile, mille passūs; miles, milia
 passuum
 mind, animus, -ī, *m.*; hold in mind,
 memoriā teneō, 2
 mistaken (be), errō, *1*
 month, mēnsis, -is, *m.*
 moon, lūna, -ae, *f.*
 mound, agger, -eris, *m.*
 mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
 move, moveō, 2
 multitude, multitūdō, -inis, *f.*
 must, *express by the passive peri-*
phrastic (*G. §§ 38. II, 222. II*)

name, *n.*, nōmen, -inis, *n.*
 name, *v.*, dicō, 3; nōminō, *1* (XXIV);
 mentiōnem faciō, 3
 narrow, angustus, -a, -um
 nature, nātūra, -ae, *f.*
 near, *adv.*, prope; *prep.*, prope,
with the acc.
 nearest, proximus, -a, -um
 necessary (*it is*), opus est, *irr.*
 need, opus, *n.*, *indecl.*
 neighbor, finitimus, -ī, *m.*
 neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque
 never, numquam
 nevertheless, tamen

new — possession

new, novus, -a, -um
next, proximus, -a, -um
night, nox, noctis, *f.*
no (*not any*), nūllus, -a, -um
no one, nēmō, *dat.* nēminī; nūllus, nūllius
noble, nōbilis, nōbile
not, nōn, nē; **not even**, nē . . . quidem; **not only** . . . **but also**, nōn solum . . . sed etiam; **not yet**, nōndum
nothing, nihil, *n., indecl.*
notice, animadvertō, 3
now, nunc
number, numerus, -ī, *m.*

oath, iūs iurandum, iūris iurandī, *n.*; **give oath**, iūrō, 1
occupy, occupō, 1
occurrence, rēs, rei, *f.*
ocean, *adj.*, maritimus, -a, -um
ocean, *n.*, ōceanus, -ī, *m.*
often, saepe
old man, senex, senis, *m.*
omen, ōmen, -inis, *n.*
on, in, *with the acc. or abl.*; **on this side**, citrā, *with the acc.*
one, ūnus, -a, -um; **one at a time**, singulī, -ae, -a
only, ūnus, -a, -um; sōlus, -a, -um
opportunity (*power, capability*), facultās, -ātis, *f.*; **favorable opportunity**, occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.*
or, an; **either** . . . **or**, *see either*
order, at the order of, iussū, *abl. sing. m.*
order, *v.*, imperō, 1; iubeō, 2
other, alius, alia, aliud; **other** (*of*

two), alter, -era, -erum; **the one** . . . **the other**, alter . . . alter
ought, dēbeō, 2
our, noster, -tra, -trum; **our men**, nostrī
over (*through*), per, *with the acc.*
overcome, superō, 1
owe, dēbeō, 2

pardon, ignōscō, 3 (*with the dat.*)
part, pars, partis, *f.*
pass the winter, hiemō, 1
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
people, populus, -ī, *m.*
perceive, intellegō, 3; sentiō, 4
perform, administrō, 1
permit, concēdō, 3 (*with the dat.*); **it is permitted**, licet, 2
personal influence, grātia, -ae, *f.*
persuade, persuādeō, 2 (*with the dat.*)
pertain, pertineō, 2
Pharsalus, Pharsālus, -ī, *f.*
pierce, cōnfodiō, 3
pitch camp, castra pōnō, 3
place (*in the next*), *adv.*, deinde
place, *n.*, locus, -ī, *m.*; *plur.*, loca, -ōrum, *n.*
place, *v.*, pōnō, 3
plain (*it is*), apertum est, *irr.*
plan, cōnsilium, cōnsili, *n.*; **plan of battle**, ratiō pugnae
pledge, fidēs, -ei, *f.*
plunder, praeda, -ae, *f.*
point out, dēmōnstrō, 1
Pompey, Pompēius, Pompēi, *m.*
port, portus, -ūs, *m.*
possession, get possession of, potior, 4 (*with the abl. or gen.*)

possessions — Rhone

possessions, possessiōnēs, -um, *f.*
plur.

power, potestās, -ātis, *f.*; royal
power, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*

powerful, potēns, -entis

praise, laudō, *i*

precedent, exemplum, -ī, *n.*

prepare, comparō, *i* (XXXII, XXXIV);

praeparō, *i* (XX)

prepared, parātus, -a, -um

preserve, servō, *i*; cōservō, *i*
(XVI, XIX)

press (hard), premō, *3*; urgeō, *2*

pretend, simulō, *i*

prevent, dēterreō, *2*; prohibeō, *2*;
impediō, *4*

private, privātus, -a, -um

promise, polliceor, *2*

proper (it is), oportet, *2*

protect, tueor, *2*

province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*

prow, prōra, -ae, *f.*

public, pūblicus, -a, -um

punishment, poena, -ae, *f.* (X); sup-
plicium, supplicī, *n.* (XXXIV)

purchase, coēmō, *3*

pursue, cōsequor, *3*

put in charge of, praeficiō, *3*; put
to flight, in fugam coniciō, *3* (or
dō, *irr.*); fugō, *i*

quickly, celeriter

raft, ratis, -is, *f.*

rage, furor, -ōris, *m.*

rampart, vāllum, -ī, *n.*

rank, aciēs, -ēī, *f.*; ōrdō, -īnis, *m.*

reach, perveniō, *4*, with ad and acc.

ready (make), comparō, *i*

reason, causa, -ae, *f.*; for this reason,
propterea; for what reason, quam
ob rem

receive, accipiō, *3*; excipiō, *3* (XX)

reduce, redigō, *3*

reēnforcements, auxilia, -ōrum, *n.*
plur.

refrain (from), supersedeō, *2*; tem-
perō, *i*

region, locus, -ī, *m.*; *plur.*, loca,
-ōrum, *n.*; regiō, -ōnis, *f.*

reject, repudiō, *i*

rejoice, laetor, *i*

remain, maneō, *2*; remaneō, *2*

remove, removeō, *2*

render, referō, *irr.*; render return,
grātiā referō

renew, redintegrō, *i*

repair, reficiō, *3*

reply, respondeō, *2*

report, renūntiō, *i*

repulse, pellō, *3*; repellō, *3*

request (gain a), impetrō, *i*

rescue, ēripiō, *3*

resist, resistō, *3*

resources, subsidia, -ōrum, *n. plur.*

rest, rest of, reliquī, -ōrum, *m.*
plur.

restore, restituiō, *3*

result, ēventus, -ūs, *m.*

retainer, cliēns, -entis, *m.*

retard, tardō, *i*

retreat, mē recipiō, *3*

return, redeō, *irr.*; revertor, *3*

reward, praemium, praemī, *n.*

Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*

Rhone, Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*

rich — soon

rich, dives, -itis; **richer**, dītor, dītius; **richest**, dītissimus, -a, -um
right, iūs, iūris, *n.*
river, flūmen, -inis, *n.*
road, iter, itineris, *n.*; **via**, -ae, *f.*
Roman, *adj.*, Rōmānus, -a, -um;
the Romans, Rōmānī, -ōrum, *m.*
Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*
rope, fūnis, -is, *m.*
route, via, -ae, *f.*; **iter**, itineris, *n.*
rumor, fāma, -ae, *f.*; rūmor, -ōris, *m.*
running, cursus, -ūs, *m.*

safe, tūtus, -a, -um
safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
sail, **set sail**, solvō, 3
sally, excursiō, -ōnis, *f.*
same, idem, eadem, idem; **to the same place**, *adv.*, eōdem
Saône, Arar, -aris, *m.*
say, dicō, 3; **inquam**, *irr.*
scarcity, inopia, -ae, *f.*
scout, explorātor, -ōris, *m.*
sea, mare, -is, *n.*
secret (keep), taceō, 2
secretly, clam
see, videō, 2; **see clearly**, perspicio, 3; **see to**, provideō, 2
seek, petō, 3; **adpetō**, 3
seize, capiō, 3; **comprehendō**, 3 - (xx); occupō, 1 (x, xxv)
select, dēligō, 3
sell, vëndō, 3
senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*
senate house, cūrja, -ae, *f.*
send, mittō, 3; **send back**, remittō, 3; **send forward**, praemittō, 3
separate, dīvidō, 3

seriously, graviter
service, ūsus, -ūs, *m.* (xxx); ūtilitās, -ātis, *f.* (xxix)
servitude, servitūs, -ūtis, *f.*
set forth, *trans.*, prōpōnō, 3; **set out**, proficīscor, 3; **set sail**, solvō, 3; **set up**, cōstituō, 3
settle, cōsīdō, 3
settlement, sēdēs, -is, *f.*
several, complūrēs, -ium
severe, gravis, grave
shield, scūtum, -ī, *n.*
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*; **ship of war**, nāvis longa
shout, clāmor, -ōris, *m.*
show, doceō, 2; ostendō, 3
side, latus, -eris, *n.*; pars, partis, *f.*;
this side of, citrā, *with the acc.*;
on all sides, undique
sight, cōspectus, -ūs, *m.*
sign (signal), significātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
signal (standard), signum, -ī, *n.*
silence, silentium, silentī, *n.*
similar, similis, simile
since, cum
single, ūnus, -a, -um
sister, soror, -ōris, *f.*
slavery, servitūs, -ūtis, *f.*
small, parvus, -a, -um
so, sic, ita (*generally with verbs*), tam (*with adjectives*)
soldier, mīles, -itis, *m.*
some, aliquī, -quae, -qua; nōn nullī, -ae, -a; **some . . . others**, alii . . . alii
some one, aliquis, -cuius
son, filius, fili, *m.*
soon, mox; **as soon as**, simul atque;
sooner, mātūrius

Spain — this

Spain, Hispānia, -ae, *f.*
 spare, parcō, 3 (*with the dat.*)
 speak, dicō, 3; loquor, 3
 speech, orātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
 speed, celeritās, -ātis, *f.* (XXXII);
 (*running*) cursus, -ūs, *m.* (XXXIII)
 spot, locus, -ī, *m.*; *plur.*, loca, -ōrum, *n.*
 stand upon, insistō, 3
 standard, signum, -ī, *n.*
 standard bearer, signifer, -ferī, *m.*
 state, civitās, -ātis, *f.*; rēs pūblica,
 rei pūblīcae, *f.*
 still, tamen
 stir up, incitō, 1
 storm, *n.*, tempestās, -ātis, *f.*
 storm, *v.*, oppugnō, 1
 strange, inūsītātus, -a, -um
 stratagem, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
 strive, contendō, 3
 subdue, superō, 1
 successful, secundus, -a, -um
 successfully, bene
 such a, tālis, tāle
 suddenly, subitō
 sufficiently, satis [-um
 suitable, aptus, -a, -um; idōneus, -a,
 supply, cōpia, -ae, *f.*; supplies,
 commeātus, -ūs, *m.* (XXXI); cōpiaē,
 -ārum, *f. plur.* (XXV); grain sup-
 ply, rēs frūmentāria, rei frūmen-
 tāriae, *f.*
 support, subsidium, subsidī, *n.*
 support myself, mē alō, 3
 supreme power, imperium, imperī, *n.*
 surpass, praecēdō, 3; praestō, 1
 surrender, *n.*, dēditō, -ōnis, *f.*
 surrender, *v.*, *trans.*, trādō, 3; *in-*
 trans., mē dēdō, 3

surround, cingō, 3; circumveniō, 4
 (XVIII, XXI); circumsistō, 3 (XXVI)
 suspect, suspicor, 1
 swamp, palūs, -ūdis, *f.*
 swift, celer, -eris, -ere
 swiftly, celeriter
 sword, gladius, gladi, *m.*
 take, capiō, 3; take across, trāns-
 portō, 1; take oath, iūrō, 1
 talk, loquor, 3
 tear off, disiciō, 3
 tempest, tempestās, -ātis, *f.*
 tend, pertineō, 2
 terms, condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*
 terrible, horribilis, horrible
 terrified, perterritus, -a, -um
 territory, territories, finēs, -ium,
 m. plur.
 terror, terror, -ōris, *m.*
 than, quam
 thanksgiving, supplicātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
 that, in order that, so that, *conj.*,
 ut, (*with comparatives*) quō;
 that not, (*purpose*) nē, (*result*) ut
 nōn
 that, *pron.*, ille, illa, illud
 themselves, (*intensive*) ipsī, ipsae,
 ipsa; (*reflexive*) suī, sibi
 then, tum
 thence, inde
 there, ibi
 thereafter, postea
 therefore, itaque
 thing, rēs, rei, *f.*
 think, arbitror, 1; putō, 1; ex-
 istimō, 1; sentio, 4
 this, hic, haec, hoc

thither — war

thither, eō
though, cum
through, throughout, per, *with the acc.*

throw, coniciō, 3; iaciō, 3; throw back, reiciō, 3; throw forward, prōiciō, 3; throw into confusion, perturbō, 1; throw up (*heap up*), iaciō, 3 (XVI)

thus (*accordingly*), itaque

tide, aestus, -ūs, *m.*

timber, māteria, -ae, *f.*

time, tempus, -oris, *n.*; space of time, spatium, spatī, *n.*; at the same time, simul

to, ad, in, *with the acc.*

toil, labor, -ōris, *m.*

top of, summus, -a, -um

tower, turris, -is, *f.*

town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*

trader, mercātor, -ōris, *m.*

train, exerceō, 2; instituō, 3

transport, trānsportō, 1

transport ship, nāvis onerāria, nāvis onerāriae, *f.*

traveler, viātor, -ōris, *m.*

treachery, perfidia, -ae, *f.*

tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*; nātiō, -ōnis, *f.* (v)

tribune, tribūnus, -ī, *m.*

troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*

true, vērus, -a, -um

try, cōnor, 1; exterior, 4

turn away, āvertō, 3

under, sub, *with the acc. (motion toward) or abl. (place where)*

unfavorable, inīquus, -a, -um

unfriendly, inimicus, -a, -um

unite, *trans.*, coniungō, 3; *intrans.*, mē coniungō

unless, nisi

unsuspecting, inopināns, -antis

until, dum, dōnec, quoad

unwilling (be), nōlō, *irr.*

upon, in, *with the acc. (motion toward) or abl. (place where)*

upper, superior, superius

urge, hortor, 1

use, ūtor, 3

vainly, in vain, frūstrā

valor, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

van, primum agmen, primī agminis, *n.*

vicinity, in the vicinity of, apud, *with the acc.*

victorious over (be), superō, 1

victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*

village, vicus, -ī, *m.*

violence, vīs, vīs, *f.*

visit, adeō, *irr.*; commeō, 1 (*with ad and the acc.*)

voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

wage war, bellum gerō, 3

wagon, carrus, -ī, *m.*

wait, exspectō, 1

wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.*; make a wall, mūrum perdūcō, 3

wander, wander about, vagor, 1

war, bellum, -ī, *n.*; carry on war, bellum gerō, 3; make war on, bellum inferō, *irr. (with the dat.)*; ship of war, nāvis longa, nāvis longae, *f.*

war chariot — zeal

- war chariot**, *essedum*, -ī, *n.*
warlike, *bellicōsus*, -a, -um
waste (lay), *populor*, 1; *vāstō*, 1
watch, *vigilia*, -ae, *f.*
wave, *fluctus*, -ūs, *m.*
way, *iter*, *itineris*, *n.*; *via*, -ae, *f.*;
 on the way, *in itinere*
weak, *infirmus*, -a, -um
weaken, *effēminō*, 1; **weakened (be)**,
 relanguēscō, 3
weapons, (*of defense*) *arma*, -ōrum,
 n. plur.; (*of offense*) *tēla*, -ōrum,
 n. plur.
what, *interrog.*, *quid*; **in what**
 manner, *quō modō*
when, *cum*, *ubi*
whence, *unde*
where, *ubi*
whether, *num*, -ne, *sī*; **whether . . .**
 or, -ne . . . *an*, *utrum* . . . *an*
which (of two), *uter*, -tra, -trum
while, *dum*
who, *rel.*, *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; *interrog.*,
 quis, *quid*
whoever, *quicumque*, *cuiuscumque*
whole, *as a whole*, *omnis*, *omne*;
 tōtus, -a, -um
why, *cūr*, *quā dē causā*
wide, *adj.*, *lātus*, -a, -um; *adv.*, *lātē*
widely, *lātē*
will, *voluntās*, -ātis, *f.*
willing (be), *volō*, *irr.*
wind, *ventus*, -ī, *m.*
wine, *vīnum*, -ī, *n.*
winter, *adj.*, *hībernus*, -a, -um;
 winter quarters, *hīberna*, -ōrum,
 n. plur.
winter, *n.*, *hiēms*, -emis, *f.*
winter, *pass the winter*, *v.*, *hiemō*,
 1
wish, *volō*, *irr.*
with, *cum*, *with the abl.*
withdraw, *discēdō*, 3 (*with ab or*
 ex); *excēdō*, 3 (*with the abl.*
 alone)
within, *intrā*, *with the acc.*
without, *sine*, *with the abl.*; **be**
 without, *careō*, 2 (*with the abl.*)
withstand, *sustineō*, 2
woman, *mulier*, -eris, *f.*
wonder, *mīror*, 1
wound, *n.*, *volnus*, -eris, *n.*
wound, *v.*, *volnerō*, 1
wrong, *iniūria*, -ae, *f.*
yards, *antemnae*, -ārum, *f. plur.*
year, *annus*, -ī, *m.*
yet (nevertheless), *tamen*; **not yet**,
 nōndum
yoke, *iugum*, -ī, *n.*
you, *tū*, *tui*
zeal, *studium*, *studi*, *n.*

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A. — acceptus

A., *abbr. for Aulus (which see)*

a., *abbr. for ante*

ā, *see ab*

ab (**ā**, **abs**), *prep. with abl.*, away from, from. — *With expressions of measure*, off, away: **a milibus passuum** **ducibus**, two miles off. — *With different notion in English*: **ortum est ab**, sprang from, began with; **vacuum ab**, destitute of; **capit initium a**, begins at; **ab tanto spatio**, so far off. — *Esp. with passives*, by. — *Esp. also*, **a fronte**, in front; **a tergo**, from or on the rear; **ab infimo**, at the foot; **a dextro cornu**, on the right wing; **a re frumentaria**, in respect to the grain supply. — *In composition*, off, away, apart, without, not

abditus, *p.p. of abdo*

abdō, **-dere**, **-didi**, **-ditus** [**ab-do** (put)], *trans.*, hide. — *With in and acc.*, withdraw to (take refuge among). — **abditus**, **-a**, **-um**, *p.p.*, hidden, remote, removed

abdūcō, **-ducere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductus**, *trans.*, lead away, take away

abiciō, **-icere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectus** [**ab-iacio**], *trans.*, throw away, throw down

abiectus, *p.p. of abicio*

abiēs, **-ietis**, *f.*, fir or spruce (*tree or wood*)

abripīō, **-ripere**, **-ripuī**, **-reptus** [**ab-rapio**], *trans.*, snatch away, carry away

abs, *see ab*

abscidō, **-cidere**, **-cidi**, **-cismus** [**abs-caedo**], *trans.*, cut off, tear off, tear away

abscisus, *p.p. of abscido*

absēns, **-entis**, *see absum*

absimilis, **-e**, *adj.*, unlike

absistō, **-sistere**, **-stiti**, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, stand off, stand away, withdraw; keep aloof

abstineō, **-tinēre**, **-tinuī**, **-tentus** [**absteneo**], *intrans.*, refrain: **proelio** (refrain from giving)

abstrāctus, *p.p. of abstraho*

abstrahō, **-trahere**, **-trāxī**, **-trāctus** [**abs-traho**], *trans.*, drag away

absum, **-esse**, **āfui**, **āfutūrus**, *irr.*, *intrans.*, be away, be absent: **suspicio** (be wanting). — **absēns**, *pres. p. as adj.*, absent, in one's absence

abundō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātūrus**, *intrans.*, be strong in

ac, *see atque*

accēdō, **-cēdere**, **-cessī**, **-cessūrus** [**ad-cedo**], *intrans.*, move toward, draw near, approach; be added: **huc accedebat ut**, there was also this (disadvantage) that

acceptus, *p.p. of accipio*

accessus — adficiō

accessus, *p.p.* of **accedo**

accidō, -cidere, -cidī, *no p.p.* [**ad-cado**], *intrans.*, fall to, fall on; happen, occur

accidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsus [**ad-caedo**], *trans.*, cut into

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [**ad-capio**], *trans.*, take, receive; suffer; learn, hear. — **acceptus**, -a, -um, *p.p.* as *adj.*, acceptable

acclivis, -e [**ad-clivus**, slope], *adj.*, sloping, ascending

acclivitās, -ātis [**acclivis**], *f.*, ascent, acclivity

Accō, -ōnis, *m.*, one of the Senones, who stirred up his people against the Romans

accommodō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**ad-commodo** (fit)], *trans.*, adjust. — **accommodātus**, -a, -um, *p.p.*, fitted, adapted

accūrātē, *adv.*, carefully

accurrō, -currere, -curri, *no p.p.* [**ad-curro**], *intrans.*, run to, ride up

accūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, accuse, blame, find fault with

acerbē, *adv.*, bitterly: **ferre inopiam** (suffer severely from *etc.*)

acerbitās, -ātis [**acerbus**], *f.*, suffering

acerbus, -a, -um [**acer**, sharp], *adj.*, bitter, hard to bear

ācerimē, *superl.* of **acriter**

acervus, -i [**acer**, pointed], *m.*, heap, pile

aciēs, -ēi, *f.*, point, sharp edge, edge: **oculorum** (keen glance, glare). —

Esp., line, line of battle, array, army

ācriter, *adv.*, sharply; fiercely, violently, hotly: **acriter pugnatum est**, a fierce battle was fought

āctus, *p.p.* of **ago**

acuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, *trans.*, sharpen. — **acūtus**, -a, -um, *p.p.* as *adj.*, sharpened, sharp

ad, *prep.* with *acc.* With idea of motion toward, to, toward, against.

— *Of time*, till, at, on: **ad diem**, on the day. — *With numerals*, about

adāctus, *p.p.* of **adigo**

adaequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, make equal to: **moles moenibus** (make as high as); **altitudinem muri** (reach up to); **cursum** (keep up with)

adamō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, covet, become attached to

addō, -dere, -didi, -ditus [**ad-do** (put)], *trans.*, add

adducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, *trans.*, lead to, draw to; induce, drive

adēptus, *p.p.* of **adimo**

adeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *irr.*, *trans.* and *intrans.*, go to, visit; attack, approach

adeō, *adv.*, to that point

adequitō, -āre, -āvi, *no p.p.* [**cf. eques**], *intrans.*, ride up

adfectus, *p.p.* of **adfacio**

adferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *irr.*, *trans.*, bring to, bring; cause, bring forward, allege, report, announce

adficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [**ad-facio**], *trans.*, do to, affect. — *With acc.* and *abl.*, affect with, inflict on. —

adfigō — adpetō

In passive, suffer, receive: **magno dolore adfici**, be greatly distressed
adfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus, *trans.*,
 fasten to

adfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fictus, *trans.*, make up in addition

adfinitās, -ātis [*adfinis*, related], *f.*, relationship: **adfinitatibus coniuncti** (marriages)

adfixus, *p. p.* of **adfigō**

adflctō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, dash against, shatter

adflctō, -fligere, -flīxi, -flictus, *trans.*, dash at; overthrow, damage: **naves** (shatter, damage)

adfore, *see* **adsum**

adgredior, -gredi, -gressus [*adgradior*, step, go], *dep.*, *trans.*, go toward, march against, attack

adgregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, gather: **se** (gather round, flock to); **se ad amicitiam** (attach one's self to)

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [*ad-habeo*], *trans.*, call in, admit; employ, use

adhortor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *trans.*, encourage, urge

adhūc, *adv.*, up to this time

Adiatunnus, -ī, *m.*, chief of the Sotiates

adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*ad-iacio*], *trans.*, throw to, hurl: **aggerem** (throw up); join to, add: **adiecta planities** (with the addition of)

adictus, *p. p.* of **adicio**

adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus [*ad-ago*], *trans.*, drive to, drive up (*of cattle*,

etc.); drive in, drive home (*of piles*), move up (*of towers*), shoot (*of weapons*); force, bind (*by oath*)

adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptus [*ad-emo*, take] *trans.*, take away

aditus, -ūs [*adeo*], *m.*, approach, access; means of approach

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūctus, *trans.*, join to, attach, add

adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtus, *trans.*, assist, help, be of advantage

adlātus, *p. p.* of **adfero**

administer, -trī, *m.*, servant: **ad sacrificia** (priest, celebrant)

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, carry into execution, perform

admiror, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *trans.*, be surprised at, wonder at

admittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, *trans.*, let go: **admisso equo**, at full speed; allow: **in se facinus** (commit a crime); **dedecus** (permit to be incurred, incur)

admodum, *adv.*, to a degree; very, very much

adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvī, -ultus, *intrans.*, grow up

adorior, -oriri, -ortus, *dep.*, *trans.*, attack, assail

adparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.* and *intrans.*, prepare, get ready, make preparations

adpellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus, *trans.* and *intrans.*, land (*ships*), bring to land

adpetō, -petere, -petivī, -petitus, *trans.* and *intrans.*, seek to gain, desire; approach

adplicō — aequō

- adplicō**, -āre, -āvi (-uī), -ātus (-itus), *trans.*, lean against
- adprobō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, approve of
- adpropinquō**, -āre, -āvi, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, approach, come near
- adpulsus**, *p.p.* of **adpello**
- adripiō**, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus [**ad-rapio**], *trans.*, snatch up, seize
- adroganter**, *adv.*, with presumption, with insolence
- adrogantia**, -ae, *f.*, insolence, presumption
- adsciscō**, -sciscere, -scivī, -scītus, *trans.*, attach (*by formal decree*)
- adsiduus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, constant, continued
- ad sistō**, -sistere, -stiti, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, stand by: in **conspectu patris** (appear)
- aspectus**, -ūs, *m.*, appearance
- adsuēfatiō**, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, *trans.*, accustom, train
- adsuēscō**, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus, *trans. and intrans.*, accustom; become accustomed
- adsum**, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, be near, be present, be at hand, appear
- Aduatuci**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of the Belgæ, living on the west bank of the Meuse
- adulēscēns**, -entis, *adj.*, young. — *As noun*, a youth, young man. — *With proper names*, the younger (Jr., *to distinguish a son from his father*)
- adulēscēntia**, -ae, *f.*, youth
- adulēscēntulus**, -ī, *m.* (*often as adj.*), a mere boy, very young
- adventus**, -ūs [**advenio**, arrive], *m.*, arrival, approach
- adversārius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, opposed. — *As noun*, opponent, enemy
- adversus**, *prep. with acc.*, see **adverto**
- advertō**, -vertere, -verti, -versus, *trans.*, turn towards: **animum** (turn the attention, notice). — **adversus**, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, in front, opposed, opposite, unfavorable: **hostibus adversus occurrebant** (right against, in their front); in **adversum os**, right in the face; **flumine** (up, *cf. secundum*); **res adversae**, adversity, want of success. — **adversus**, *prep. with acc.*, against
- advolō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, fly to, fly at
- aedificium**, -ī [**aedifico**], *n.*, building. — *Esp.*, buildings standing singly, farm buildings
- aedificō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**aedes**, house, **facio**], *trans.*, build
- aegerrimē**, *superl.* of **aegre**
- aegrē**, *adv.*, feebly; with difficulty
- Aemilius**, -ī, *m.* (Lucius), a Gaul, a subaltern in Cæsar's Gallic cavalry
- aequāliter**, *adv.*, evenly, uniformly
- aequinoctium**, -ī [**aequus-nox**], *n.*, the time of the equinox, the equinox
- aequitās**, -ātis [**aequus**], *f.*, fairness, justice. — *Esp.*, **aequitas animi**, contentment
- aequō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, make equal, equalize

aequus — aliquis

aequus, -a, -um, *adj.*, even, level, equal; fair, just, equitable. — *Esp.*, **aequus animus**, equanimity, contentment; **aequo Marte**, on equal terms

aerāria, -ae [*aes*], *f.*, mine

aes, **aeris**, *n.*, copper (*as metal for ships or as money*). Hence, money. — *Esp.*, **alienum**, debt (*another man's money*)

aestās, -ātis, *f.*, summer

aestimātiō, -ōnis [*aestimo*], *f.*, valuation

aestimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, value, estimate; regard

aestuārium, -ī [*aestus*, tide], *n.*, estuary, marsh

aestus, -ūs, *m.*, heat; tide

aetās, -ātis, *f.*, age

Africus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Africa. — *Esp.*, *sc.* **ventus**, the southwest wind (*blowing from Africa to Italy*)

āfuisse, **āfutūrus**, *see* **absum**

ager, **agrī**, *m.*, land, field, country, territory

agger, -eris [*ad-gero*], *m.* (that which is carried to a place), earth (*for a wall*), mound of earth, wall, rampart

agitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, propose, discuss

agmen, -inis [*ago*], *n.*, a body in motion, army, line (*of troops on the march*): **primum** (the van); **novissimum** (the rear); **claudere** (bring up the rear)

agō, **agere**, **ēgī**, **āctus**, *trans.*, drive:

sublicas (drive down); **vineas**, **turres**, *etc.* (set in motion, move on, advance); act, treat, discuss, plead: **conventum** (hold); **gratias** (render, give, express); **quid agit?** what is one about? **quid agitur?** what is going on?

agricultūra, *see* **cultura**

alacer, -cris, -cre, *adj.*, active, eager, spirited

alacritās, -ātis [*alacer*], *f.*, eagerness, readiness

ālārius, -a, -um [*ala*, wing], *adj.* (belonging to the wings). — *Masc. plur. as noun*, allies, auxiliaries

albus, -a, -um, *adj.*, white: **plumbum album**, tin

alcēs, -is, *f.*, elk

aliās, *adv.*, elsewhere. — *Of time*, at another time: **alias . . . alias**, now . . . now

aliēnus, -a, -um [*cf. alius*], *adj.*, another's, of others, other people's: **fines** (others'). Hence, strange, foreign, unfavorable, foreign to the purpose. — *Superl. m. plur. as noun*, perfect strangers

aliō, *adv.*, elsewhere

aliquamdiū, *adv.*, for some time

aliquandō, *adv.*, at some time

aliquantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, considerable. — *Neut. as noun*, a good deal, a considerable part. — **aliquantō** (*as abl. of measure*), by considerable, considerably, a good deal

aliquis (-quī), -qua, -quid (-quod), *indef. adj. or pron.*, some, any;

aliquot — amplius

- some one, any one, something, anything
- aliquot**, *indecl. adj.*, several, some
- aliter**, *adv.*, otherwise, differently.
- **aliter** . . . **ac**, otherwise . . . than
- alius**, **-a**, **-ud**, *adj.*, another, other.
- *Repeated (either in separate clauses or in the same clause), one . . . another; one one (thing), another another: alius alia causa inlata, one giving one reason, another another, or alleging different reasons*
- Allobrogēs**, **-um**, *m. plur.*, a Gallic people, living between the Rhone, the Isère, the Lake of Geneva, and the Alps
- alō**, **alere**, **alui**, **altus**, *trans.*, feed, support
- Alpēs**, **-ium**, *f. plur.*, the Alps
- alter**, **-era**, **-erum**, *adj.*, the other (of two). — *In plur.*, the other party. — *Repeated*, one . . . the other; *in plur.*, one party . . . the other. — *Also*, the second (of more than two), another (the second of three): **dies** (the second)
- alternus**, **-a**, **-um** [**alter**], *adj.*, alternate, alternating
- altitudō**, **-inis** [**altus**], *f.*, height, depth, thickness (of a timber)
- altus**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, high. — *From opposite point of view*, deep. — *Neut. as noun*, the sea, the deep
- alūta**, **-ae**, *f.*, leather
- ambactus**, **-ī**, *m.*, vassal
- Ambarri**, **-ōrum**, *m. plur. of adj.*, a tribe of Gaul, on the Saône. They seem to have been clients of the Hædui, and are called Hædui Ambarri
- Ambiāni**, **-ōrum**, *m. plur. of adj.*, a Belgian tribe, whose chief town, Samarobriua, is now called, from their name, Amiens
- Ambiliāti**, **-ōrum**, *m. plur. of adj.*, a tribe on the Somme
- Ambiorix**, **-īgis**, *m.*, an able prince of the Eburones
- Ambivariti**, **-ōrum**, *m. plur. of adj.*, a Belgic tribe west of the Meuse
- āmentia**, **-ae** [**a-mens**], *f.*, madness, frenzy, insanity
- amicitia**, **-ae** [**amicus**], *f.*, friendship
- amicus**, **-a**, **-um** [**amo**, love], *adj.*, friendly, well-disposed. — *Masc. as noun*, friend, ally
- āmittō**, **-mittere**, **-misi**, **-missus**, *trans.*, let go, let pass; lose, dismiss
- amor**, **-ōris** [**amo**, love], *m.*, love, affection
- amplē**, *adv.*, widely, largely. — **amplius**, *comp.*, farther, more, longer
- amplificō**, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātus** [**amplus-facio**], *trans.*, increase, enlarge, extend
- amplitūdō**, **-inis** [**amplus**], *f.*, size, extent, greatness: **cornuum** (spread)
- amplus**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, large, wide, great: **dimissis amplioribus copiis** (the greater part of); prominent, splendid, noble, distinguished. — **amplius**, *neut. comp. as noun (cf. plus)*, more, a greater number: **amplius obsidum**

an — Apollō

an, *conj.*, introducing the second member of a double question, or, or rather.— *Often with the first member only implied*, or: *quid venirent, an speculandi causa* ((or) was it)

Anartēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, a people in Dacia

Ancalitēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a nation of Britain

anceps, -cipitis, *adj.*, double-headed; double: *proelium* (on both fronts, of an army facing in two ways)

ancora, -ae, *f.*, anchor: in *ancoris*, at anchor

Andebrogius, -i, *m.*, a chief of the Remi

Andēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Gaul, north of the Loire

Andī, -ōrum, the same as the *Andes*

angulus, -i, *m.*, corner

angustē, *adv.*, narrowly, in narrow quarters

angustiae, -arum [*angustus*], *f. plur.*, narrowness: *propter angustias* (narrowness of the passage)

angustus, -a, -um, *adj.*, narrow, confined: in *angusto res est*, the position is critical

anima, -ae, *f.*, breath.— *Plur.*, soul

animadvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versus [*animus-adverto*], *trans.*, turn the mind to, attend to: *animadvertere in*, punish; observe

animal, -ālis [*anima*], *n.*, animal

animus, -i, *m.*, soul, mind, feelings, intellect, spirit.— *Esp.*, constancy, courage, resolution; disposition:

bono animo esse, be well-disposed; *animi causa*, for pleasure

annōtinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, last year's

annus, -i, *m.*, year

annuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, yearly: *magistratus creatur* (annually)

anser, -eris, *m.*, goose

ante, *adv.*, before (of place or time), in front: *paucis ante diebus*, a few days before.— *Prep.* with *acc.*, before (of place or time).—

In dates, *ante diem* (a. d.) *quintum*, on the fifth day before

antēa, *adv.*, before, previously, once

antecōdō, -cōdere, -cessi, -cessus, *trans. and intrans.*, go forward, advance, surpass (*in size etc.*)

antecursor, -ōris, *m.*, courier

anteferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, *irr.*, *trans.*, place in advance, prefer

antemna, -ae, *f.*, yard (*for sails*), spar

antepōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, *trans.*, think of more importance

antequam, *conj.*, before

antiquitas, *adv.*, from ancient times, from early times, long ago

antiquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, old, ancient

aperiō, -perire, -perui, -pertus, *trans.*, uncover, open.— **apertus**, -a, -um, *p. p. as adj.*, open, exposed, unprotected: *latus* (the right side, not covered by the shield); *impetus maris* (unbroken)

apertus, *adv.*, openly

Apollō, -inis, *m.*, the son of Jupiter and Latona and twin brother of Diana; god of the sun, of

appellō — artus

divination, of poetry and music, and leader of the Muses. He is identified by Cæsar with some Celtic divinity

1. appellō, *see* adpello

2. appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, call, name, address

Apr., *abbr. for* Aprilis

Aprilis, -e, *adj.*, of April

aptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, suited, adapted

apud, *prep. with acc.*, at, among, with, before; in one's house (company, possession)

aqua, -ae, *f.*, water

aquātīō, -ōnis [*aqua*], *f.*, getting water

aquila, -ae, *f.*, eagle. — *Esp.*, the standard of the Romans, consisting of an eagle on a staff

Aquilēia, -ae, *f.*, a city of Cisalpine Gaul

aquilifer, -erī [*aquila-fero*], *m.*, standard bearer

Aquitānia, -ae, *f.*, the part of Gaul between the Province, the Pyrenees, the Garonne, and the ocean

Aquitānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Aquitania. — *Mast. plur. as noun*, the people of Aquitania

Arar, -aris, *m.*, the Saône, a river of Gaul flowing into the Rhone

arbitr, -trī, *m.*, witness, arbitrator
arbitrium, -ī [*arbitr*, judge], *n.*, judgment, will, opinion

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus [*arbitr*, judge], *dep.*, *trans.*, think, suppose

arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree

arcessō, -ere, -īvi, -itus, *trans.*, summon, invite, send for

ārdeō, ārdēre, ārai, ārsūrus, *intrans.*, be hot, be on fire; be excited

arduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, steep, difficult

argentum, -ī, *n.*, silver; silverware

āridus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dry. — *Neut. as noun*, dry land

ariēs, -ietis, *m.*, ram; battering-ram (a long timber armed at the end with metal for demolishing walls); buttress (piles driven down in a stream to brace a bridge)

Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Germans

arma, -ōrum, *n. plur.*, arms, equipment: armis ius exsequi, to maintain authority by force of arms

armāmenta, -ōrum [*armo*], *n. plur.*, implements. — *Esp.*, tackle, rigging

armātūra, -ae [*armo*], *f.*, equipment: levis armorum Numidae (light-armed)

armō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, equip, arm. — *Pass.*, arm (one's self). —

armātus, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, armed, in arms, equipped

Arpinēsius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

ars, artis, *f.*, skill, art. — *Plur.*, the useful arts

artē, *adv.*, closely, tightly

articulus, -ī [*artus*, joint], *m.*, joint

artificium, -ī [*artifex*, artist], *n.*, a trade (*opp. to ars*, a higher art)

artus, -a, -um, *adj.*, close: silva (thick)

Arvernus — Avaricum

Arvernus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Arverni (a tribe in southeastern Gaul).— *Masc. plur.*, the Arverni
arx, arcis [arceo, shut in], *f.*, stronghold, fortress, citadel

ascendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēsus [ad-scando, climb], *trans. and intrans.*, climb up, climb, ascend

ascēsus, -ūs, *m.*, ascent, going up; means of ascent

at, *conj.*, but, but yet, at least

atque (ac), *conj.*, and, and especially: simul atque, as soon as

Atrebās, -ātis, *adj.*, Atrebatian, of the Atrebates (a people of Belgic Gaul).— *Plur.*, the Atrebates

Ātrius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name
attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus [ad-tango], *trans.*, touch upon, touch, border on

attribuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, *trans.*, allot to, assign

attulī, *see* adfero

auctor, -ōris [augeo], *m.*, voucher, authority: auctore hoste, on the authority of the enemy

auctōritās, -ātis [auctor], *f.*, influence, prestige

auctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* augeo.— *Comp.*, auctior, richer, greater
audācia, -ae [audax, bold], *f.*, daring, boldness

audācter [audax, bold], *adv.*, with daring, boldly, fearlessly; audacissime, with the greatest daring

audeō, audēre, ausus, *semi-def.*, *trans.*, dare, venture.— ausus, -a, -um, *p.p. in pres. sense*, daring

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *trans.*, hear, hear of.— audiēns, -entis, *pres. p. as adj.*, obedient (with dicto)

audītīō, -ōnis [audio], *f.*, hearing, hearsay, report

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus, *trans.*, increase, magnify, add to (something).— *Pass.*, increase

Aulercus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Aulerci (a widespread people of several tribes in the interior of Gaul).— *Masc. plur.*, the Aulerci

Aulus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen

aureus, -a, -um [aurum, gold], *adj.*, golden

aurīga, -ae, *m.*, charioteer, driver

auris, -is, *f.*, ear

Aurunculēius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

Auscī, -ōrum, *m. plur. of adj.*, a tribe of Aquitania

ausus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* audeo

aut, *conj.*, or.— *Repeated*, either . . . or

autem, *conj.*, but (the weakest degree of opposition, cf. sed), on the other hand

auxiliāris, -e [auxilium], *adj.*, auxiliary.— *Masc. plur. as noun*, auxiliaries, auxiliary troops

auxilior, -ārī, -ātus [auxilium], *dep., intrans.*, give assistance

auxilium, -ī, *n.*, assistance, aid, relief.— *Plur.*, auxiliaries; reinforcements

Avaricum, -ī, *n.*, a town of the Bituriges in central Gaul

avāritia — Bōii

- avāritia**, -ae [*avarus*, greedy], *f.*,
covetousness, greed, avarice
- āvertō**, -vertere, -verti, -versus,
trans., turn aside, turn away. —
āversus, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*,
turned away; in the rear
- avis**, -is, *f.*, bird
- avus**, -ī, *m.*, grandfather
- Axona**, -ae, *f.*, a river of Belgic
Gaul, now the Aisne
- Bācenis**, -is, *f.*, with *silva*, a forest
in Germany
- Baculus**, -ī, *m.*, Publius Sextius
Baculus, a centurion in Cæsar's
army
- Baleāris**, -e, *adj.*, Balearic (belong-
ing to the Balearic Islands in the
Mediterranean)
- Balventius**, -ī, *m.*, Titus Balventius,
a centurion in Cæsar's army
- barbarus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign (*not*
Greek or Roman), uncivilized. —
Masc. plur., barbarians, savages
- Batavī**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Batavi
or Batavians, a nation living about
the mouths of the Rhine
- Belgæ**, -ārum, *m. plur.*, the Belgæ
or Belgians, a nation occupying
the northern part of Gaul
- Belgium**, -ī, *n.*, the country of the
Belgæ
- bellicōsus**, -a, -um [*bellum*], *adj.*,
warlike
- bellicus**, -a, -um [*bellum*], *adj.*, of
war, in war
- bellō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*bellum*], *in-*
trans., fight, make war
- Bellovacī**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Belgic
tribe between the Seine, Somme,
and Oise
- bellum**, -ī, *n.*, war: bellum gerere,
wage war
- bene** [*bonus*], *adv.*, well
- beneficium**, -ī [*bene-facio*], *n.*, well-
doing, service, favor, *often ren-*
dered by English plur.
- benevolentia**, -ae [*bene-volo*], *f.*, good
will, kindness
- Bibracte**, -is, *n.*, the chief town of
the Hædui
- Bibrax**, Bibractis, *f.*, a town of the
Remi
- Bibroci**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of
southeastern Britain
- bīdium**, -ī [*bis-dies*], *n.*, two days'
time, two days
- biennium**, -ī [*bis-annus*], *n.*, two
years' time
- Bigerriōnēs**, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe
of the Pyrenees
- bīnī**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*,
plur., two each; two sets of,
two (*of things in pairs or*
sets)
- bipartītō**, *adv.*, in two divisions
- bipedālīs**, -e [*bis-pes*], *adj.*, two feet
(*long, wide, etc.*)
- bis**, *num. adv.*, twice
- Biturigēs**, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe of
Celtic Gaul
- Boduōgnātus**, -ī, *m.*, a leader of the
Nervii
- Bōia**, -ae, *f.*, a town of the Boii
- Bōii**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Celtic
tribe

bonitās — Cantaber

bonitās, -ātis [*bonus*], *f.*, goodness :
agrorum (fertility)

bonus, -a, -um, adj., good: *bono animo esse*, to be well-disposed.
— *Neut. as noun*, good, advantage; *plur.*, goods, property

bōs, bovis, c., bull, cow, ox. — *Plur.*, cattle

bracchium, -ī, n., arm

Bratuspantium, -ī, n., a fortified town of the Bellovaci

brevis, -e, adj., short (*of space or time*): *brevis*, in a short space

brevitās, -ātis [*brevis*], *f.*, shortness, short stature: *brevitas temporis*, want of time

Britanni, -ōrum, m. plur., the Britons
Britannia, -ae, f., Britain

brūma, -ae, f., the winter solstice

Brūtus, -ī, m., a family name at Rome. — *Esp.*, Decimus Junius Brutus Albinus, a legatus of Cæsar. He distinguished himself in command of Cæsar's fleet off the coast of Gaul, and afterwards in the Civil War on the side of Cæsar. But he joined the conspiracy against Cæsar with Marcus Brutus, and was one of Cæsar's assassins

C, for centum, hundred

C., abbr. for Gaius, Caius

Caburus, -ī, m., Caius Valerius Caburus, a Gaul, made a Roman citizen by C. Valerius Flaccus, and father of C. Valerius Proculus and C. Valerius Donnotaurus

cadāver, -eris [*cf. cado*], *n.*, corpse
cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, intrans., fall, be killed

Cadūrcus, -a, -um, adj., of the Cadurci. — *Masc. plur.*, the Cadurci

caedēs, -is [*caedo*], *f.*, murder, massacre, slaughter

caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesus, trans., cut, slay, kill

caelestis, -e, adj., heavenly. — *Masc. plur.*, the gods

Caemāni, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of Belgic Gaul

caerimōnia, -ae, f., sacred rite

Caerōsī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of Belgic Gaul

caeruleus, -a, -um [*caelum*, sky], *adj.*, dark blue

Caesar, -aris, m., a family name in the gens Iulia. — *Esp.*, C. Julius Cæsar, the conqueror of Gaul and author of the "Commentaries"

caespes, -itis, m., sod

caesus, -a, -um, p. p. of caedo

calamitās, -ātis, f., disaster, defeat, misfortune

Caletī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of northern Gaul

callidus, -a, -um, adj., shrewd, cunning, skillful

cālō, -ōnis, m., servant, camp follower

campester, -tris, -tre [*campus*], *adj.*, of the plain: *loca* (level plains)

campus, -ī, m., plain

Cantaber, -bra, -brum, adj., of the Cantabri (a warlike people in the north of Spain). — *Masc. plur.*, the Cantabri or Cantabrians

Cantium — cēdō

- Cantium**, -ī, *n.*, Kent (the southeast corner of Britain)
- capillus**, -ī, *m.*, the hair
- capīō**, **capere**, **cēpī**, **captus**, *trans.*, take, capture, take possession of, get, acquire, seize; choose, select: **locum**; **portum** (arrive at, make); **fugam** (take to flight)
- capra**, -ae, *f.*, goat
- captīvus**, -a, -um [**capio**], *adj.*, captive. — *Masc. as noun*, captive, prisoner
- captus**, -a, -um, *p. p. of capio*
- captus**, -ūs [**capio**], *m.*, capacity, nature, idea
- caput**, -itis, *n.*, head; person; mouth (*of a river*); life: **poenam capitis** (*of death*); **capitis periculo** (*of life*)
- carēō**, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *intrans.*, be without, go without
- carīna**, -ae, *f.*, keel
- Carnutēs**, -um, *m. plur.*, a Gallic people
- carō**, **carnis**, *f.*, flesh, meat
- carpō**, -pere, -psī, -ptus, *trans.*, pluck; find fault with
- carrus**, -ī, *m.*, cart
- cārus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, dear, precious, valuable
- Carvilius**, -ī, *m.*, a king of part of Kent
- cāseus**, -ī, *m.*, cheese
- Cassī**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a British tribe
- Cassiānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Cassius: **bellum** (the war in 107 B.C., in which L. Cassius Longinus was defeated by the Tigurini, near the Lake of Geneva, and killed)
- Cassius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name. — *Esp.*, L. Cassius Longinus, consul 107 B.C. (*see Cassianus*)
- Cassivellaunus**, -ī, *m.*, a British chief
- castellum**, -ī [**castrum**], *n.*, fortress, fort, outwork, redoubt
- Casticus**, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Sequani
- castrum**, -ī, *n.*, fortress. — *Plur.*, camp: **castra ponere**, pitch camp; **castra movere**, break camp, move
- cāsus**, -ūs [**cado**], *m.*, accident, chance (*good or bad*): **casu**, by accident, by chance
- Catamantāloēdēs**, -is, *m.*, a chief of the Sequani
- catēna**, -ae, *f.*, chain (*for prisoners*), cable: **in catenas coniecit** (into prison)
- Caturigēs**, -um, *m. plur.*, a people in Roman Gaul
- Catuvolcus**, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Eburones
- causa**, -ae, *f.*, reason, excuse, grounds, motive (*for an act*): **satis causae**, sufficient reason. *Abl. after a gen.*, for the sake of, for the purpose of. *Also*, case (*in law*): **causam dicere**, plead one's cause, stand trial, be tried
- cautus**, *p. p. of caveo*
- caveō**, **cavēre**, **cāvī**, **cautus**, *trans. and intrans.*, be on one's guard: **obsidibus cavere**, give hostages as security
- cēdō**, **cēdere**, **cessī**, **cessūrus**, *intrans.*, give way, retreat, retire

celer — circiter

celer, -eris, -ere, *adj.*, swift, quick, fast

celeritās, -ātis [*celer*], *f.*, swiftness, activity, speed

celeriter, *adv.*, quickly, speedily

cēlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, conceal, hide. — *Pass.*, pass unnoticed

Celtae, -ārum, *m. plur.*, a race in Gaul and Britain. — *More particularly*, the Celts occupying the interior of Gaul

Celtillus, -ī, *m.*, one of the Arverni, father of Vercingetorix

Cēnabēnsēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, the people of Cenabum

Cēnabum, -ī, *n.*, the chief city of the Carnutes, north of central Gaul

Cēnimagnī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a British tribe

cēnsēō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus, *trans.*, reckon, estimate; think, advise, decree (*of the senate*), determine

cēnsus, -ūs [*censeo*], *m.*, numbering, count, census

centum (C), *indecl. num. adj.*, hundred

centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*, centurion (*an officer commanding a century, originally a hundred men*)

cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus, *trans.*, distinguish, see

certāmen, -inis [*certo*, contend], *n.*, struggle, contest, rivalry

certē, *adv.*, certainly, surely, at least

certus, -a, -um (*for crētus*), *p.p. of cerno as adj.*, determined, fixed,

certain: certiore facere, inform, order; dies certa, appointed day

cervus, -ī, *m.*, stag

(cēterus), -a, -um, *adj.*, the rest of.

Usually plur., the rest, the remaining, the others

Centronēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe in the Alps

Chēruscī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of the Germans

cibārius, -a, -um [*cibus*], *adj.*, pertaining to food. — *Neut. plur. as noun*, provisions: molita (ground corn)

cibus, -ī, *m.*, food

Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*, a name of a Roman family from Arpinum. — Quintus (Tullius), brother of Marcus the orator, in Cæsar's service in Gaul as legatus

Cimberius, -ī, *m.*, a prince of the Suebi

Cimbri, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a German tribe living in Jutland, who overran Gaul and made a successful inroad into the Roman dominions in the second century B.C. They were conquered by Marius and Catulus, 101 B.C.

Cingetorix, -īgis, *m.*, a British prince in Kent

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cinctus, *trans.*, surround, encircle; man (*occupy in a circuit, of walls*)

circinus, -ī [*cf. circum*], *m.*, a pair of compasses

circiter, *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.*, about, near, not far from

circuitus — clēmentia

circuitus, -ūs [*circumeo*], *m.*, circuit, circuitous route, circumference: in circuitu, all around
circum, *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.*, about, around
circumclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [*circum-claudo*], *trans.*, inclose, encircle
circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus, *irr.*, *trans.*, put around: murus circumdatus (encircling, thrown around); surround, encircle
circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *trans.*, lead around; draw around
circumeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, go around. — *As trans.*, visit, make a tour of
circumfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus, *trans.*, surround. — *Pass. or reflex.*, crowd around, surround
circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*circum-iacio*], *trans.*, throw around
circumitus, *p.p. of circumeo*
circummittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *trans.*, send around
circummūniō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *trans.*, throw fortifications around, fortify
circumsistō, -sistere, -steti (-stiti), *no p.p.*, *trans.*, stand around, surround, hem in, beset
circumspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, *trans.*, look about for, examine
circumvallō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, surround with walls, blockade
circumveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventus, *trans.*, surround; impose upon, defraud
cis, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of

Cita, -ae, *m.*, C. Fufius, a Roman knight
citātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of cito*
citer, -tra, -trum, *adj.* Usually *citerior* (*comp.*), nearer, hither (*as adj.*): provincia, Gallia (Gaul on the Italian side of the Alps)
citō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, urge on, hurry. — **citātus**, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, in haste: **citatus fertur**, runs very rapidly
citō, *adv.*, quickly: **citissimō**, very rapidly
citrā, *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.*, this side, within
citrō, *adv.*, to this side: **ultra citroque**, back and forth
civis, -is, *c.*, citizen
civitas, -ātis [*civis*], *f.*, citizenship, the citizens (*as a body*), a state (*composed of citizens*)
clam, *adv.*, and *prep. with abl.*, secretly; unknown to
clāmitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*clamo*], cry out], *trans.*, keep crying out
clāmor, -ōris, *m.*, shout, outcry
clandestinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, secret
clārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, famous; loud, distinct
classis, -is, *f.*, fleet
claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus, *trans.*, close, shut, fasten: **claudere agmen**, close the line of march, bring up the rear
clāvus, -ī, *m.*, nail, spike
clēmentia, -ae [*clemens*, kind], *f.*, kindness, gentleness, mercy

cliēns — commilitō

cliēns, -entis, *c.*, dependent, vassal, retainer

clientēla, -ae [cliēns], *f.*, vassalage: magnae clientelae, many vassals; Remis in clientelam se dicaverunt (surrendered themselves as vassals to *etc.*)

Clōdīus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

Cn., *abbr.* for Gnaeus

coacervō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [coacervus], *trans.*, heap together, heap on top (*of others*)

coāctus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of cogo

coāctus, -ūs [cogo], *m.*, compulsion

coagmentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, fasten together

Cocosātēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a people of Aquitania

coēmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēemptus [conemo], *trans.*, buy up

coēō, -īre, -iī, *no p.p., irr., intrans.*, come together, unite, meet

coepī, -isse, coeptus, *defective, trans.*, began, undertook, started. — coeptus, -a, -um, *p.p.* used in same sense as the active with *pass. infinitives*

coērcēō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitus [conarceo, shut up], *trans.*, confine, keep in check

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-agito], *trans.*, consider, think over

cognātīō, -ōnis, *f.*, connection by birth, family, clan

cognitūa, -a, -um, *p.p.* of cognosco

cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitus [con-(g)nosco, learn], *trans.*, learn,

find out, investigate, inquire into.

— *In perf. tenses*, know

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus [con-ago], *trans.*, bring together, collect, assemble. Hence, force, compel, oblige: coactus, by compulsion

cohors, -hortis, *f.*, body of troops, cohort (*the tenth part of a legion*)

cohortātiō, -ōnis [cohortor], *f.*, an encouraging, encouragement

cohortor, -āri, -ātus, *dep., trans.*, encourage, cheer up

collis, -is, *m.*, hill

colō, colere, coluī, cultus, *trans.*, cultivate: colendi causa, to till the soil; worship (*divinities*)

colōnia, -ae, *f.*, colony

color, -ōris, *m.*, color

com- (con-, co-), *adv.* in composition, with, together, up. Often intensifying the meaning without definite translation

combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus [con-uro, burn], *trans.*, burn up, consume

comes, -itis, *c.*, companion

commeātus, -ūs [commeo], *m.*, trip; supplies (*of an army*), provisions

commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, remind one of. Hence, speak of, mention, state (*in a narrative*)

commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-mando, commit], *trans.*, intrust, commend, surrender

commeō, -āre, -āvī, -āturus, *intrans.*, go back and forth. — *With ad.*, visit, resort to

commilitō, -ōnis [con-miles], *m.*, fellow soldier

comminus — concessus

comminus [*con-manus*], *adv.*, hand to hand, in close combat

committō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, *trans.*, join: *proelium* (engage in, begin the engagement). — *Also*, trust: *se barbaris committere* (put one's self in the hands of *etc.*). — *Also*, admit, allow (*to happen*), commit (*suffer to be done*)

Commius, -ī, m., a leader of the Atrebates

commodē, adv., conveniently, fitly, readily: *satis commode*, to much advantage; *non satis commode*, not very easily

commodus, -a, -um, adj., fitting, suitable, convenient, advantageous. — *Neut. as noun*, convenience, comfort, advantage, interest: *commodo rei publicae*, without prejudice to the public interests

commonefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus [*con-moneo-facio*], *trans.*, remind

commoror, -ārī, -ātus, dep., intrans., delay

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *trans.*, move, stir, agitate; disturb, alarm

communiciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*communis*], *trans.*, share, communicate

communiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, trans., strongly fortify

communis, -e, adj., common, general, in common: *res* (the common interest)

commūtātiō, -ōnis, f., change: *aestus* (turn)

commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.,

change, exchange: *studium belli agri culturā* (exchange the pursuits of war for agriculture)

1. **comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.**, get ready, prepare, procure, gain, get together

2. **comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.**, compare

compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, trans., drive together, drive in, force, drive

comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -pertus, trans., find out, ascertain, discover. — **compertus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj.**, certain

complector, -plectī, -plexus, dep., trans., embrace, include, inclose

compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, trans., fill up, fill; cover, man (*of walls*)

complūrēs, -plūra, adj., plur., very many, a great many

comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., bring together, collect

comprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus, trans., seize, catch, arrest, capture

compulsus, -a, -um, p.p. of compello *con-*, *see com-*

cōnātum, -ī [conor], n., attempt, undertaking

cōnātus, -a, -um, p.p. of conor

cōnātus, -ūs [conor], m., attempt, effort

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, trans. and intrans., allow, grant, permit, yield, make a concession

concessus, -ūs, m., concession, permission

concidō — cōnfisus

concidō, -cidere, -cidi, *no p.p.* [*con-cado*], *intrans.*, fall down, fall

concidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīus [*con-caedo*], *trans.*, cut to pieces, cut down (*kill*), cut up (*land by estuaries*)

conciliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, bring together; win over, gain
concilium, -ī, *n.*, meeting; assembly, council, conference

concisus, -a, -um, *p.p. of concido*

concitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, arouse, stir up

conclāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *intrans.*, cry out, shout

conclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [*con-claudo*], *trans.*, shut up, inclose: mare conclusum (inclosed, inland)

Conconnetodumnus, -ī, *m.*, a leader of the Carnutes

concrepō, -crepāre, -crepui, -crepītūrus, *intrans.*, clash

concurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursūrus, *intrans.*, run together, rush up: concursum est, there was a rushing together

concurso, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, rush to and fro

concursum, -ūs, *m.*, a running together, a dashing together (*collision*); onset

condemnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*condamno*], *trans.*, condemn, find guilty

condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*, terms, condition, terms of agreement

condōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, give up, pardon

Condrūsī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Belgic tribe on the Meuse

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus, *trans.*, bring together, bring up (*soldiers*), hire

cōnferciō, -fercire, -fersi, -fertus, *trans.*, crowd together. — cōnfer-tus, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, close, crowded, dense

cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *irr., trans.*, bring together, get together, collect; charge; hold (*a conversation*). — *With reflexive*, betake one's self, remove, take refuge

cōnfer-tus, -a, -um, *p.p. of confercio*
cōnfestim, *adv.*, in haste, immediately, at once

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*con-facio*], *trans.*, accomplish, complete, finish, perform, dress (*of skins*); exhaust, wear out

cōnfidō, -fidere, -fīsus sum, *semi-dep., intrans.*, trust, trust to, have confidence in, rely on. — cōnfisus, -a, -um, *p.p. in act. sense*, trusting in

cōnfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, *trans.*, fasten together, fasten

cōnfinium, -ī [*con-finis*], *n.*, neighborhood, common boundaries

cōnfirmātiō, -ōnis [*confirmo*], *f.*, assurance, confirmation

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, strengthen, establish (*pacem*), reassure, encourage, confirm, assure

cōnfisus, -a, -um, *p.p. of confido*

cōnfiteor — cōnscribō

- cōnfiteor, -fiteri, -fessus [*con-fateor*, confess], *dep.*, *trans.*, confess, acknowledge, admit
- cōnfixus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *configo*
- cōnfectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*configo*], *trans.*, assail, harass
- cōnfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fictus, *trans. and intrans.*, dash against, contend, fight
- cōnfluēs, -entis, *m.*, meeting of two rivers, confluence
- congregior, -gredi, -gressus [*con-gradior*, step], *dep.*, *intrans.*, come together. — *In peace*, unite with. — *Esp. in war*, engage, fight
- congressus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *congregior*
- congressus, -ūs [*congregior*], *m.*, engagement, encounter
- coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*con-iacio*], *trans.*, throw together, hurl, cast: *se conicere*, throw one's self, rush. — *Less exactly (esp. in a military sense)*, throw (into prison), put (to flight), place, station (*cf. military throw troops into etc.*), force. — *Fig.*, put together (*of ideas*)
- coniectus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *conicio*
- coniunctim [*coniungo*], *adv.*, in common
- coniunctus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *coniungo*
- coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūctus, *trans.*, unite, connect, fasten together
- coniūnx, -iugis [*coniungo*], *f.*, wife
- coniuratiō, -ōnis, *f.*, conspiracy, confederacy
- coniūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, take an oath (*together*); conspire, plot
- conlātus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *confero*
- conlaudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, praise (*in set terms*)
- conlētus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *conligo*
- conligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, bind together, fasten together
- conligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [*con-lego*, gather], *trans.*, gather together, collect, acquire. — *With reflexive*, collect one's self, recover
- conlocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, place, set, station. — *Esp. (with or without nuptum)*, give in marriage
- conloquium, -ī [*conloquor*], *n.*, conference, interview
- conloquor, -loqui, -locūtus, *dep.*, *intrans.*, confer, hold an interview
- cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *trans. and intrans.*, attempt, try, endeavor
- conquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitus [*con-quaero*], *trans.*, search for, seek for, hunt up
- cōnsanguineus, -a, -um [*con-sanguis*], *adj.*, akin (*by blood*). — *As noun*, kinsman
- cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus [*con-scādo*, climb], *trans.*, climb, climb upon: *naves (in naves)* (go on board)
- cōnsciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scītus [*con-scisco*, decree], *trans.*, resolve: *sibi mortem* (commit suicide)
- cōnscius, -a, -um [*con-scio*], *adj.*, conscious, aware of
- cōnscribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptus, *trans.*, enroll, levy, enlist

cōnsector — cōnsuēscō

cōnsector, -ārī, -ātus [*freq. of consequor*], *dep., trans.*, overtake, follow up

cōnsecūtus, -a, -um, *p.p. of consequor*

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, *m.*, agreement, consent

cōnsentiō, -sentire, -sēnsī, -sēnsūrus, *intrans.*, agree, conspire, make common cause

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, *dep., trans.*, overtake; obtain, secure, attain, succeed in

cōnservō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, save, preserve, spare, guard

Cōnsidius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name

cōnsidō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessūrus, *intrans.*, sit down; take a position, halt, encamp, settle

cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*, deliberation, a council (*of war, more commonly concilium*).—*Esp.*, wise counsel, prudence, discretion. *Hence*, a plan, design, purpose.—*Phrases*: *ipsorum esse consilium* (a matter for them to decide); *quasi consilli sit res*, as if it were a matter for consultation; *commune consilium*, concerted action; *publicum consilium*, action of the state, official action

cōnsimilis, -e, *adj.*, very like, just like

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, *no p.p., intrans.*, take a stand, take a position, stand, keep one's position, form (*of troops*).—*In perf. tenses*, have a position, stand.

Hence, stop, halt, make a stand, hold one's ground, run aground (*of ships*), remain, stay.—*With in*, occupy, rest on; depend on, consist of

cōnsōlor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep., trans.*, console, cheer.—*cōnsōlātus*, -a, -um, *p.p. as pres.*, consoling

cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.*, sight.—*in conspectu*, in one's presence

cōnspicātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of conspicio*

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus [*con-specio*, look at], *trans.*, catch sight of, see

cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus [*conspicio*], *dep., trans.*, catch sight of, see

cōnspirō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, conspire, league together

cōnstanter, *adv.*, steadily, firmly, consistently

cōnstantia, -ae [*constans*, firm], *f.*, firmness, constancy, courage

cōnsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātus, *trans.*, strew over

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stitūī, -stitūtus [*con-statuo*], *trans. and intrans.*, set up, raise, put together, make up; establish, station, arrange, draw up (*aciem*); determine, appoint, agree upon

cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, *intrans.*, agree; be established, appear, be evident: *esp.*, *constat*, it appears; cost

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus, *intrans.*, become accustomed.—*In perf. tenses*, be accustomed,

cōnsuetūdō — contrā

- be wont. — cōnsuetus, -a, -um, *p.p.*, accustomed, wont, used
- cōnsuetūdō, -inis, *f.*, habit, custom, manners, practice: *itineris* (usual order of march)
- cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*, consul (*the title of the chief magistrate of Rome*): M. Messala et M. Pisone consuli-bus, in the consulship of *etc.* (*the usual Roman method of giving a date*)
- cōsulātus, -ūs [cōsul], *m.*, consul-ship
- cōsulō, -ulere, -sului, -sultus, *trans. and intrans.*, deliberate, consult. — *With dat.*, take counsel for, look out for. — *sortibus consultum* (est), lots were drawn to decide
- cōsulō, *adv.*, purposely, designedly
- cōsultum, -i [cōsulo], *n.*, decision, decree. — *Esp.*, senatus consul-tum, an order of the senate
- cōsumō, -sūmere, -sūmpsi, -sūmp-tus, *trans.*, waste, destroy, spend, exhaust
- cōnsurgō, -surgere, -surrēxi, -surrēc-tūrus, *intrans.*, rise, rise up. — *Esp. of a session*, break up
- contabulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, build up (*generally, as of a wall with towers*)
- contāgiō, -ōnis [con-tango], *f.*, con-tact
- contemptiō, -ōnis [contemno, despise], *f.*, contempt, scorn
- contemptus, -ūs [contemno, despise], *m.*, contempt, scorn: contemptui est, is a matter of ridicule
- contendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentūrus, *intrans.*, strive, try, endeavor; press on, hasten; fight, contend, wage war
- contentiō, -ōnis [contendo], *f.*, strug-gle, efforts. — *Esp.*, contest, fight-ing, dispute
- contentus, -a, -um, *p.p. of contendo and contineo*
- contexō, -texere, -texui, -textus, *trans.*, interweave, weave to-gether
- contigisse, *see contingo*
- continēns, -entis, *see contineo*
- continenter, *adv.*, continually, in-cessantly
- contineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [con-teneo], *trans.*, hold together; re-strain, hold in check, hem in. — *Pass. or with reflex.*, keep within, remain. — continēns, -entis, *pres. p. as adj.*, continual, continuous. — *As noun*, the continent. — contentus, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, satisfied
- contingō, -tingere, -tigi, -tactus [con-tango], *trans. and intrans.*, touch, reach, join. — *With dat.*, happen
- continuātiō, -ōnis [continuo, unite], *f.*, continuation: continuatio im-brium, incessant rains
- continuus, -a, -um [contineo], *adj.*, continuous, successive: dies (suc-cessive)
- contrā, *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.*, opposite, contrary to, against: con-trā atque, contrary to what *etc.*

contrahō — Crassus

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *trans.*, draw together, gather together, contract, make smaller

contrārius, -a, -um [*contra*], *adj.*, opposite, contrary: *ex contrario*, on the contrary; *in contrariam partem*, in the opposite direction

contrōversia, -ae, *f.*, dispute, quarrel. — *Plur.*, grounds of quarrel

contumēlia, -ae, *f.*, outrage, insult, affront. — *Fig.*, violence (*of waves*)

convallis, -is, *f.*, valley (*inclosed on all sides*)

conveniō, -venīre, -vēmī, -ventus, *trans. and intrans.*, come together, meet, assemble; agree upon. — *With acc.*, meet, come to. — *Also, of things*, be agreed on, be fitting, be necessary

conventus, -ūs [*convenio*], *m.*, assembly

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, *trans.*, turn about, turn, change: *signa* (change front, wheel); *conversa signa bipartito intulerunt*, wheeled and charged the enemy in two directions; *conversa signa in hostes inferre*, face about and charge the enemy

convincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus, *trans.*, prove, make good (*a charge etc.*): *avaritia convicta*, found guilty of avarice

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, call together, summon, call

coōrior, -orīrī, -ortus, *dep., intrans.*, arise, spring up, break out (*of a war*)

cōpia, -ae, *f.*, abundance, plenty, supply. — *Plur.*, resources, supplies, forces

cōpiōsus, -a, -um [*copia*], *adj.*, well supplied, wealthy

cōpula, -ae, *f.*, grappling hook
cor, **cordis**, *n.*, heart: *cordi esse*, be dear

cōram, *adv. and prep. with abl.*, face to face, present, in person, in the presence of

Coriosolitēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a people of Aremoric Gaul

corium, -ī, *n.*, hide, skin

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn. — *Fig.*, wing (*of an army*)

corōna, -ae, *f.*, garland: *sub corona*, at auction (*the garland being the symbol of a captive for sale at auction*)

corpus, -oris, *n.*, the body, the person. — *Also*, a body (*dead*)

cortex, -icis, *m. (also f.)*, bark

Cōrus, -ī, *m.*, northwest wind

cōtēs, -is, *f.*, rock, reef

cotidiānus, -a, -um [*cotidie*], *adj.*, daily

cotidiē, *adv.*, daily, every day

Cotta, -ae, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*, Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, a legatus of Cæsar

Cotuātus, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Carnutes

crassitūdō, -inis [*crassus*, thick], *f.*, thickness

Crassus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*: 1. Marcus (Licinius) Crassus, consul with Pompey,

crātēs — cupiō

55 B.C.; one (with Cæsar and Pompey) of the combination called the First Triumvirate. — 2. Publius Crassus (called *adulescens*, the Younger, only as distinguished from his father), son of the triumvir, serving with Cæsar in Gaul as commander of cavalry. — 3. Marcus Crassus, another son of the triumvir, quæstor, 54 B.C., in Cæsar's army

crātēs, -is, *f.*, wickerwork, fascine (*a bundle of sticks used to strengthen earthworks in fortification*)

creātus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *creo*

crēber, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, thick, close, numerous, frequent

crēdō, *crēdere*, *crēdīdī*, *crēditus*, *trans. and intrans.*, trust, in-trust, believe, suppose

cremō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, burn, consume: *igni cremari*, be burned to death

creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, create.

— *Esp.*, elect, choose, appoint

Crēs, *Crētis*, *m.*, a Cretan. — *As adj.*, Cretan

crēscō, *crēscere*, *crēvī*, *crētus*, *intrans.*, grow, increase, swell (*of a river*), increase in influence (*of a man*), grow powerful

crēvisset, *see* *cresco*

cruciātus, -ūs [*crucio*, crucify], *m.*, crucifying. Hence, torture

crūdēlitās, -ātis [*crudelis*, cruel], *f.*, cruelty

crūdēliter [*crudelis*, cruel], *adv.*, cruelly, with cruelty

crūs, *crūris*, *n.*, leg

cubīle, -is [*cubo*, lie down], *n.*, resting place, bed, lair

culmen, -inis, *n.*, height, top, summit, roof

culpa, -ae, *f.*, fault, blame, guilt

cultūra, -ae, *f.*, cultivation: *agri cultura*, agriculture

cultus, -ūs [*colo*], *m.*, cultivation; civilization, manner of life

cum, *prep.* with *abl.*, with

cum, *conj.*, usually with *subjv.* when, whenever, while, since, in

asmuch as, though, although:

cum . . . tum, while . . . so also, not only . . . but also; *cum pri-mum*, as soon as

cumulus, -i, *m.*, pile, heap

cunctātiō, -ōnis [*cunctor*], *f.*, hesitation, reluctance, indisposition to fight

cunctor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep., intrans.*, hesitate: *non cunctari quin*, have no hesitation in *etc.*

cūctus, -a, -um [*coniunctus*], *adj.*, all, all together

cuneātim [*cuneus*, wedge], *adv.*, in the shape of a wedge

cuniculus, -i, *m.*, burrow; mine

cupidē [*cupīdus*], *adv.*, eagerly, zealously, earnestly

cupīditās, -ātis [*cupīdus*], *f.*, desire, eagerness, greed

cupīdus, -a, -um [*cupio*], *adj.*, eager, desirous, fond of, ambitious (for)

cupiō, -ere, -ivī, -ītus, *trans. and intrans.*, be eager (for), be anxious, desire (*stronger than volo*).

cūr — dēcrētum

— *With dat.*, wish well to, be zealous for

cūr, *adv.*, why (*interrog. and rel.*)

cūra, -ae, *f.*, care, anxiety, attention

cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, take care, provide for. —

With gerundive, cause (to be done), have (done)

currus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot (= *essedum*)

cursus, -ūs [*curro*], *m.*, running, speed, a run, a course (*space or direction run*): cursum adae-

quare, keep up with; cursu incitato or magno, at full speed

custōdia, -ae [*custos*], *f.*, custody, guard (*state of being guarded*).

— *Plur.* (*concretely*), guards, keepers

custōs, -ōdis, *c.*, guard, watchman, keeper, spy

D [*half of CIO*, thousand], *Roman numeral for five hundred*

D., *abbr. for Decimus*

d., *abbr. for diem*

Dācus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Dacian. — *Masc. plur.*, the Dacians, a people living north of the lower Danube

damnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, find guilty, condemn

Dānuvius, -i, *m.*, the Danube, flowing from the mountains of Germany eastward to the Black Sea

datus, -a, -um, *p.p. of do*

dē, *prep. with abl.*, from, down from, off from. Hence, *qua de causa*,

for which reason. — *Esp. in partitive sense*, out of, of: pauci de

nostris. — *Also*, about, of (*about*), in regard to, concerning, for. —

In expressions of time, just after, about: de tertia vigilia. — *In composition*, away, off, down, through

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [*de-habeo*], *trans.*, owe, be bound, ought, must. — *Pass.*, be due, be owing

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessurus, *intrans.*, retire, withdraw, withdraw from. — *Esp.* (*from life*), die

decem, *indecl. num. adj.*, ten

dēceptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of decipio*

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētus, *trans. and intrans.*, decide, determine, decree, order

dēcertō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, contend (*so as to close the contest*), decide the issue, carry on war, fight (*a general engagement*)

dēcessus, -ūs, *m.*, withdrawal, departure: aestus (ebb, fall)

dēcidō, -cidere, -cidī, *no p.p.* [*decado*], *intrans.*, fall (*from a horse*)

decimus, -a, -um [*decem*], *adj.*, tenth

Decimus, -ī [*decimus*], *m.*, a Roman praenomen

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [*decapio*], *trans.*, beguile, deceive

dēclārō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, make plain, declare

dēclivis, -e [*de-clivus*, slope], *adj.*, sloping down, inclined. — *Neut. plur. as noun*, slopes

dēcrētum, -ī, *n.*, decree, decision

dēcrētus — dēlectō

dēcrētus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *decerno*
 decumānus, -a, -um [*decimus*], *adj.*,
 belonging to the tenth: *porta*
 (the rear gate of a camp, where
 the tenth cohort was posted)

decuriō, -ōnis, *m.*, commander (of
 a decuria of cavalry, a small
 squadron)

dēcurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursurus,
intrans., run down, run away,
 hurry off

dēdecus, -oris, *n.*, disgrace, dishonor

dēditicius, -a, -um [*dedo*], *adj.*, sur-
 rendered. — *Plur.* as noun, pris-
 oners (taken by surrender)

dēditiō, -ōnis [*dedo*], *f.*, surrender

dēditus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *dedo*

dēdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, *trans.*, give
 over, surrender, give up, devote.

— *In pass. or with reflex.*, sur-
 render one's self, submit

dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus, *trans.*,
 lead down or off, lead away, take
 away (of men). — *Esp.*, launch
 (of ships); marry (of women)

dēfatigātiō, -ōnis [*defatigo*], *f.*, ex-
 haustion

dēfatigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*,
 wear out, exhaust

dēfectiō, -ōnis [*deficio*], *f.*, falling
 away, revolt

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnsus,
trans., ward off, defend one's
 self against; defend, protect

dēfēsiō, -ōnis [*defendo*], *f.*, defense

dēfēnsor, -ōris [*defendo*], *m.*, de-
 fender; means of defense, defense

dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, *irr.*,

trans., carry down, carry away,
 bring, land (of ships). — *Pass.*, be
 borne down or on, drift (of ships),
 turn aside. — *Fig.*, report, lay
 before

dēfessus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *defetiscor*
 dēfetiscor, -fetisci, -fessus, *dep.*, *in-*
trans., crack open. — dēfessus, -a,
 -um, *p.p.* as *adj.*, exhausted

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectus [*de-*
facio], *trans.* and *intrans.*, fail,
 revolt, abandon (with *ab*): *animo*
 (despond)

dēfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus, *trans.*,
 drive down, plant, set, fasten

dēfixus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *defigo*

dēfluō, -fluere, -fluxi, -fluxurus, *in-*
trans., flow apart, divide (of a
 river)

dēfore, *see* *desum*

dēfōrmis, -e [*de-forma*], *adj.*, un-
 comely, unshapely, ugly

dēfugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, *no p.p.*,
trans. and *intrans.*, fly from,
 avoid, run away

dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*de-iacio*],
trans., cast down, drive out, dis-
 lodge, kill (*pass.*, fall), deprive:
ea spe delecti, disappointed in
 this hope

dēiectus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *deicio*

dēiectus, -ūs [*deicio*], *m.*, declivity,
 slope

dēinceps, *adv.*, in succession

dēinde, *adv.*, then, next

dēlātus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *defero*

dēlectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, de-
 light. — *Pass.*, take delight, delight

dēlēctus — dēprecor

dēlēctus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of deligo (-ligere)

dēlēctus, -ūs [deligo], *m.*, levy, conscription

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus, *trans.*, blot out, wipe out; annihilate, destroy

dēlētus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of deleo

dēliberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.* and *intrans.*, discuss, consult, deliberate

dēlictum, -ī [delinquo, fail], *n.*, failure, offense

dēligātus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of deligo (-āre)

dēligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-ligo, bind], *trans.*, tie down, moor, tie

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [de-lego, choose], *trans.*, choose out, select.
— dēlēctus, -a, -um, *p.p.* as *adj.*, chosen, picked

dēlitēscō, -litēscere, -litui, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, hide away, hide

dēmentia, -ae [demens, crazy], *f.*, madness, folly

dēmessus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of demeto

dēmetō, -metere, -messui, -messus, *trans.*, reap, cut down

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus, *intrans.*, move away, emigrate

dēminuō, -uere, -ui, -ūtus, *trans.*, diminish, lessen, detract

dēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, *trans.*, let down. — *In pass.* or *with reflex.*, let one's self down, descend. — *Fig.*, despond (*se animo*), be discouraged. — dēmissus, -a, -um, *p.p.* as *adj.*, bowed, low

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, point out, show, state, speak of, make known

dēmoror, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *trans.*, delay, retard

dēmum, *adv.*, at last, at length

dēnegō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.* and *intrans.*, refuse

dēni, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, *plur.*, ten each, ten (*on each side*, or *in sets of ten*)

dēnique, *adv.*, at last; finally: multo denique die, not till late

dēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, thick, crowded, dense

dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, declare, warn

dēpellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus, *trans.*, drive off, drive away

dēperdō, -ere, -idi, -itus, *trans.*, lose, be deprived of

dēpereō, -perire, -perii, -peritūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, be lost

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, *trans.*, lay down, lay aside; lose, abandon

dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *trans.*, ravage, lay waste

dēportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, carry off, carry away, remove

dēposcō, -poscere, -poposci, *no p.p.*, *trans.*, demand, call for

dēpositus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of depono

dēprecātor, -ōris, *m.*, mediator: eo deprecatore, by his mediation

dēprecor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *trans.* and *intrans.*, beg off, pray for pardon, ask for quarter

dēpugnō — dētrahō

dēpugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, fight it out, fight decisively
 dēpulsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of depello*
 dērēctē, *adv.*, straight: *ad perpendiculum* (perpendicularly)
 dērēctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of dērigō*
 dērigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctus [*derego*], *trans.*, straighten out: *opera* (set in order, arrange). — dērēctus, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, straight, perpendicular
 dērogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, take away, withdraw
 dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsūrus [*de-scando*, climb], *intrans.*, descend, have recourse to, adopt (*with ad*)
 dēsecō, -secāre, -secuī, -sectus, *trans.*, cut off
 dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus, *trans.*, abandon, forsake. — dēsertus, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, deserted, solitary
 dēsertor, -ōris, *m.*, deserter
 dēsiderō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, feel the want of, desire, miss, lose. — *Pass.*, be missing (lost)
 dēsidia, -ae [*deses*, idle], *f.*, idleness, sloth
 dēsignō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, mark out, indicate, mean
 dēsiliō, -silire, -siluī, -sultūrus [*de-salio*, leap], *intrans.*, leap down, jump overboard, dismount
 dēsistō, -sistere, -stiti, -stitūrus, *intrans.*, cease, stop, desist from, abandon
 dēspectus, -a, -um, *p.p. of despicio*
 dēspectus, -ūs [*despicio*], *m.*, a view

down, view (*from a height*): *oppidum haberet despectus* (sheer precipices)
 dēsperātiō, -ōnis [*despero*], *f.*, despair, desperation
 dēsperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, cease to hope, despair. — dēsperātus, -a, -um, *as pass.*, despaired of. — *Also as adj.*, desperate
 dēspicīō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus [*de-specio*, look], *trans. and intrans.*, look down, look down on; despise
 dēspoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, strip, deprive
 dēstinō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, fasten, make fast, make firm
 dēstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtus [*de-statuo*], *trans.*, set down, abandon, desert
 dēstrictus, -a, -um, *p.p. of destringo*
 dēstringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictus, *trans.*, draw, unsheathe
 dēsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *irr., intrans.*, be wanting, fail; lack, be without
 dēsuper, *adv.*, from above
 dēterior, -ius, *adj.*, inferior, worse: *deteriora vectigalia facere* (impair)
 dēterreō, -terrere, -terrui, -territus, *trans.*, frighten off, deter, prevent
 dētineō, -tinere, -tinui, -tentus [*de-teneo*], *trans.*, delay, stop
 dētrāctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of detraho*
 dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus, *trans.*, drag off, snatch (*away*), take away, take off, withdraw

dētrectō — dīmētior

- dētrectō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, avoid, shun
- dētrimentum**, -ī, *n.*, loss, injury; defeat, disaster
- deūrō**, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus, *trans.*, burn off, burn up
- deus**, -ī, *m.*, a god
- deūstus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of deuro*
- dēvehō**, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, *trans.*, carry away, bring along
- dēveniō**, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *intrans.*, come
- dēvōtus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of devoveo*
- devoveō**, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtus, *trans.*, vow. — **dēvōtus**, -ī, *m.*, *p.p. as noun*, a sworn follower
- dexter**, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, right (*on the right hand*). — **dextra**, -ae (*sc. manus*), *f.*, the right hand
- Diablintēs**, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe in northwestern Gaul
- diciō**, -ōnis, *f.*, dominion, sway
- dicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, adjudge, assign: **se in clientelam** (bind); **se in servitutem** (surrender)
- dicō**, dicere, dixī, dictus, *trans. and intrans.*, say, speak, name; appoint, fix; **ius** (administer); **sententiam** (give)
- dictiō**, -ōnis [**dico**], *f.*, a speaking, a pleading: **causae** (pleading one's cause, trial)
- dictum**, -ī [*n. p.p. of dico*], *n.*, statement, command: **dicto audiens esse alicui** (be obedient, obey)
- didūcō**, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus [**dis-duco**], *trans.*, draw apart, separate, divide
- diēs**, -ēī, *m.* (*rarely f. in some uses*), day: **in diēs**, from day to day; **diem ex die ducere**, put off a thing day after day; **ad diem**, on the day
- differō**, differre, distulī, dilātus [**dis-fero**], *irr., trans. and intrans.*, postpone, defer; differ
- difficilis**, -e [**dis-facilis**], *adj.*, not easy, difficult: **iter** (hard to pass over)
- difficultās**, -ātis [**difficilis**], *f.*, difficulty, trouble
- difficulter** [**difficilis**], *adv.*, with difficulty
- diffundō**, -fundere, -fūdī, -fusus [**dis-fundo**], *trans.*, spread out
- digitus**, -ī, *m.*, finger: **pollex** (thumb); finger's breadth
- dignitās**, -ātis [**dignus**], *f.*, worth, dignity, prestige, rank
- dignus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, worthy
- dilēctus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of diligo*
- diligenter**, *adv.*, carefully, with care, with exactness: **parum diligenter**, too carelessly
- diligentia**, -ae [**diligens**, careful], *f.*, care, pains, diligence
- diligō**, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctus [**dis-lego**, choose], *trans.*, love, be fond of
- dīmēnsus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of dimetior*
- dīmētior**, -mētīrī, -mēnsus [**dis-metior**], *dep., trans.*, measure out (*esp. of a camp*). — **dīmēnsus**, -a, -um, measured

dimicō — distō

dimicō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus [*dis-mico*, move to and fro], *intrans.*, fight; risk an engagement

dimidius, -a, -um [*dis-medius*], *adj.*, half. — *Neut. as noun*, a half

dimittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [*dis-mitto*], *trans.*, let slip, let pass, let go, give up, relinquish, abandon; dispatch, disband, dismiss

direptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of diripio*

dirimō, -imere, -ēmi, -ēptus [*dis-emo*, take], *trans.*, break up (*a conference*)

diripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptus [*dis-rapio*, seize], *trans.*, plunder, pillage, ravage

dis, **dī** (**dir**-, **dif**-), *adv. in compounds*, apart, asunder, in different directions, not, un-

Dīs, **Dītis**, *m.*, Pluto (the god of the underworld, and so of death)

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessurus, *intrans.*, withdraw, depart, retire, leave (*with ab*), go away: *ab officio* (fail in one's duty); *spes hostibus* (forsake, fail)

discessus, -ūs, *m.*, departure, withdrawal

disciplīna, -ae [*disco*], *f.*, instruction, a system (*of doctrine etc.*), a course of instruction

disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsus [*dis-claudio*], *trans.*, keep apart, separate, divide

discō, *discere*, *didici*, *no p.p.*, *trans. and intrans.*, learn

disiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*dis-iacio*], *trans.*, disperse, tear off (*yards*).

— *disiectus*, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, scattered, broken, in disorder

disiectus, -a, -um, *p.p. of disicio*

dispār, -paris, *adj.*, unequal, ill-matched

dispergō, -spargere, -spersi, -spersus [*dis-spargo*, scatter], *trans.*, scatter, disperse

dispersus, -a, -um, *p.p. of dispergo*

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, *trans.*, station (*variously*), array (*at several posts*)

dispositus, -a, -um, *p.p. of dispono*

disputātiō, -ōnis [*disputo*], *f.*, discussion, dispute

disputō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, discuss, investigate

dissēnsiō, -ōnis [*dissentio*], *f.*, disagreement, dissension

dissentiō, -sentire, -eēsi, -eēsurus, *intrans.*, disagree (*ab, with*)

dissimulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*dis-simulo*, make like], *trans. and intrans.*, conceal, disguise; dissemble

dissipō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, scatter, disperse: *dissipati*, straggling troops

dissuādēō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsus [*dis-suadeo*, advise], *trans.*, advise to the contrary

distineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [*disteneo*], *trans.*, keep apart, cut off (*in military sense*), isolate

distō, -etāre [*dis-sto*], *intrans.*, stand apart, be distant: *quantum iunctura distabat*, as far as the distance between *etc.*

distrahō — Druidēs

distrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *trans.*, drag asunder, separate
distribuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, *trans.*, assign, distribute, divide
ditissimus, -a, -um, *superl. of dives*
diū, *adv.*, for some time, long: **tam diu**, so long; **quam diu**, as long as; **diutius**, any longer; **diutissimē**, for the longest time
diurnus, -a, -um [*dies*], *adj.*, of the day, daily: **nocturnis diurnisque itineribus** (by night and day)
diūtius, **diūtissimē**, *comp. and superl. of diu*
diuturnitās, -ātis [*diuturnus*], *f.*, length of time, long continuance
diuturnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long-continued, long (*in time*)
diversus, *p.p. of divertō*
divertō, -vertere, -verti, -versus [*diverto*], *intrans.*, separate. — **diversus**, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, separate, distant, diverse, different
dives, -itis, *adj.*, rich
Diviciācus, -ī, *m.*: 1. A leader of the Hædui, brother of Dumnorix.
 — 2. A leader of the Suessiones
Diviciō, -ōnis, *m.*, a leader of the Helvetii
dividō, -videre, -visi, -visus, *trans.*, divide, separate. — **divisus**, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, divided: **Gallia divisa est**
divinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the gods, divine: **res divinae**, matters of religion, religion
divisus, -a, -um, *p.p. of dividō*
dō, dare, dedi, datus, *irr., trans.*,

give, concede, assign, grant: **mihi minus dubitationis datur**, I have less hesitation; **se vento** (run before the wind); **hostes in fugam** (put to flight); **negotium uti** (employ one to *etc.*, engage one to *etc.*)
doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus, *trans.*, teach, show, inform
documentum, -ī [*doceo*], *n.*, warning, example
doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus, *intrans.*, feel pain, suffer; be pained, grieve
dolor, -ōris [*doleo*], *m.*, pain, distress, indignation: **magno dolore ferre**, be very indignant; **magno esse dolori**, be a great annoyance or sorrow; *almost concrete*, grievance
dolus, -ī, *m.*, deceit, tricks, stratagem
domesticus, -a, -um [*domus*], *adj.*, one's own, at home: **bellum** (internal)
domicilium, -ī [*domus*], *n.*, house, dwelling place, home
dominor, -ārī, -ātus [*dominus*], *dep., intrans.*, rule, be master
dominus, -ī, *m.*, master, owner
domus, -ī (-ūs), *f.*, house, home: **domī**, at home; **domum**, home, to one's home
dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*donum*, gift], *trans.*, present, give: **civitate aliquem donare**, give a person the rights of citizenship
dōs, dōtis [*dō*], *f.*, marriage gift, dowry
Druidēs, -um, *m. plur.*, the Druids, the priests of the Gallic religion

Dubis — effeminō

Dubis, -is, *m.*, the Doubs, a river of eastern Gaul, flowing from the Jura Mountains

dubitātiō, -ōnis [*dubito*], *f.*, doubt, hesitation: **minus dubitationis datur**, feel less doubt *or* hesitation
dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [*dubius*], *trans.*, doubt, have doubt, feel doubtful; hesitate

dubius, -a, -um, *adj.*, doubtful: **est dubium**, there is doubt

ducenti, -ae, -a, *num. adj., plur.*, two hundred

dūcō, **dūcere**, **dūxī**, **ductus**, *trans.*, lead, draw, bring; consider. — *With or without in matrimonium*, marry (of the man)

dum, *conj.*, while, so long as; till, until
Dumnorix, -igis, *m.*, Dumnorix, a leader of the Hædui, brother of Diviciacus

duo, -ae, -o, *num. adj., plur.*, two
duodecim, *indecl. num. adj.*, twelve
duodecimus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, twelfth

duodēni, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj., plur.*, twelve each

duodēviginti [*duo de viginti*], *indecl. num. adj.*, eighteen

duplex, -plices, *adj.*, twofold, double: **acies** (in two divisions)
duplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*duplex*], *trans.*, double

dūritia, -ae [*durus*], *f.*, hardness, hardship

dūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*durus*], *trans.*, make hardy

dūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hard, severe,

difficult: **si quid erat durius** (any severe contest)

Dūrus, -i, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*, Quintus Laberius Durus, a military tribune in Cæsar's army, killed in Britain

dux, **ducis** [*duco*], *c.*, leader, guide, commander

ē, shortened form of **ex**, *prep. with abl.*

eā, *adv.*, that way, in that direction
Eburōnēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a Belgian tribe, living between the Meuse and the Rhine

Eburovicēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a division of the Aulerci

ēdiscō, -discere, -didici, *no p.p.* [*ex-discō*], *trans.*, learn by heart, commit to memory

ēditus, -a, -um, *p.p. of edō*

ēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [*ex-do* (put)], *trans.*, put forth: **exempla cruciatūque** (make an example by inflicting severe torture). — **ēditus**, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, elevated, raised, high

ēdoceō, -docēre, -docuī, -doctus [*ex-doceo*], *trans.*, explain, inform, instruct

ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [*ex-duco*], *trans.*, lead out, draw (*a sword*)

effarciō, -farcīre, -farsī, -fertus, *trans.*, stuff out, fill in (*solid*)

effeminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ex-femina*], *trans.*, enervate, weaken: **animos** (enfeeble)

efferō — eōdem

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus [*ex-fero*], *irr., trans.*, carry out, bring out, carry away; spread abroad, make known, puff up, elate

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*ex-facio*], *trans.*, make, enable, cause, produce: *ut praeberent* (make them afford); *ut sint laboris* (make capable of); *ut posset* (make possible); *classem* (get together, construct)

effodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus [*ex-fodio*], *trans.*, dig out, gouge out

effossus, -a, -um, p.p. of effodio

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus [*ex-fugio*], *trans.*, escape, fly from

egēns, -entis, see egeo

egeō, egēre, eguī, no p.p., intrans., need, be in want. — *egēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj.*, needy, destitute

egestās, -ātis [*egens*], *f.*, poverty, destitution

ego, meī, pron., 1st person, I, me. — *Plur., nōs*, we, us

egredior, -gredi, -gressus [*ex-gradior*, step], *dep., intrans.*, march out, go out, move beyond: *nave* (land, disembark)

egregiē [*egregius*], *adv.*, remarkably, finely, extremely well

ēgregius, -a, -um [*ex-grex*, herd], *adj.*, remarkable, superior, excellent

ēgressus, -a, -um, p.p. of egredior

ēgressus, -ūs [*cf. egredior*], *m.*, landing

ēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*ex-iacio*], *trans.*, cast out, drive out, cast up.

— *With reflex.*, rush out, rush

eiusmodi, as adj. phrase, of this kind, of such a kind, such

ēlābor, -lābī, -lāpsus [*ex-labor*, slip], *dep., intrans.*, slip out, escape

ēlātus, -a, -um, p.p. of efferō

ēlēctus, -a, -um, p.p. of eligo

elephantus, -ī, m., elephant

ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [*ex-lego*, choose], *trans.*, pick out, select. —

ēlēctus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., picked (*troops*)

Elusātēs, -ium, m. plur., a people of Aquitania

ēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [*ex-migro*, depart], *intrans.*, remove (*permanently*), emigrate

ēminus [*ex-manus*], *adv.*, at a distance, at long range

ēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [*ex-mitto*], *trans.*, let go, drop, send out, throw, hurl. — *Pass., or with reflex.*, rush out

emō, emere, ēmī, ēemptus, trans., buy, purchase

ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus [*ex-nascor*], *dep., intrans.*, spring out, grow out

ēnātus, -a, -um, p.p. of enascor

enim, conj., for, but, now, for in fact

ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ex-nuntio*], *trans.*, report, disclose, reveal

eō, ire, iī, itūrus, irr., intrans., go, pass, march, advance, proceed

eō, n. abl., see is

eō [*old dat. of is*], *adv.*, thither, there, to that place

eōdem, adv., to the same place, in the same place

ephippiātus — exāctus

ephippiātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, saddled, caparisoned: **equites** (riding on saddles, as a less manly form of horsemanship)

ephippium, -ī, *n.*, a horsecloth, saddle

eques, -itis [*equus*], *m.*, horseman, rider. — *Plur.*, cavalry. — *Esp.* (as orig. serving on horseback), a knight (one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate). So also, a knight (of Gaul, of a corresponding class)

equester, -tris, -tre [*eques*], *adj.*, of knights, of cavalry

equitātus, -ūs [*eques*], *m.*, cavalry

equus, -ī, *m.*, horse

Eratosthenēs, -is, *m.*, Eratosthenes, a Greek philosopher and geographer of Alexandria, born 276 B.C.

erēctus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of **erigo**

ēreptus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of **eripio**

erīgō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus [*ex-rego*], *trans.*, set up straight, raise up. — **ērēctus**, -a, -um, *p.p.* as *adj.*, high, high and straight

eripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus [*ex-rapio*, seize], *trans.*, snatch away, deprive, take from, rescue: **se eripere ne**, save one's self from doing a thing

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [*ex-rumpo*, burst], *trans. and intrans.*, cause to burst out; burst out, make a sally

ērūptiō, -ōnis [*erumpo*], *f.*, a breaking out, sortie, rush

essedārius, -ī [*essedum*], *m.*, chariot-fighter (a warrior fighting from an *essedum*)

essedum, -ī, *n.*, war chariot (of the Gauls)

Esuvii, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe in northwestern Gaul

et, *conj.*, and: **et . . . et**, both . . . and

etiam, *adv.*, also, even, even now, yet: **quin etiam**, nay more

etsi, *conj.*, even if, although, though
ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsūrus [*ex-vado*, go], *intrans.*, escape

ēvello, -vellere, -velli, -vulsus [*ex-vello*, pluck], *trans.*, pull out, pluck out

ēveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus [*ex-venio*], *intrans.*, come out, turn out, happen

ēventus, -ūs [*evenio*], *m.*, result, issue, fate, success

ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ex-voco*], *trans.*, call out, call forth, summon. — **ēvocātus**, -a, -um, *p.p.* as *adj. and noun*, reenlisted veteran

ēvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [*ex-volo*, fly], *intrans.*, fly out, rush out

ex (ē), *prep.* with *abl.*, out of, out; from: **una ex parte**, on one side; **ex itinere**, on the march (starting from it); **ex vinculis**, in chains (doing something from them); so, **ex equis**, on horseback. — *In composition*, out, from, off, completely, up, after, un-

exāctus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of **exigo**

exagitō — expediō

exagitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*ex-agito*, *freq. of ago*, drive], *trans.*, harass, persecute

exāminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*examen*, tongue of a balance], *trans.*, weigh

exanimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*ex-animus*], *trans.*, deprive of breath, kill. — **exanimātus**, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, out of breath, exhausted

exaudiō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, *trans.*, hear distinctly

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessurus, *intrans.*, go out, withdraw, retire

excellō, -cellere, -cellui, -celsus, *trans. and intrans.*, surpass, excel

excidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisus [*ex-caedo*], *trans.*, cut out, cut off, break down (*gates*)

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [*ex-capio*], *trans.*, take up, receive, catch (*of animals*); follow, come after; *vada* (meet, be exposed to, *of ships*)

excitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, rouse, stimulate; raise (*towers*), kindle (*fire*)

exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [*ex-claudio*], *trans.*, shut out, cut off

excōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, think out, invent

excruciō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, torture, torment

excubō, -cubāre, -cubui, -cubiturus, *intrans.*, lie outside; stand guard

excursiō, -ōnis [*ex-curro*, run], *f.*, sally, sortie, rush

excūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, excuse, exculpate

exemplum, -ī, *n.*, precedent, example

exeō, -īre, -iī, -iturus, *irr., intrans.*, go forth, go out, emigrate

exerceō, -ercēre, -ercui, -ercitus [*ex-arceo*, drive off], *trans.*, train, practice, exercise; enforce (*a law*)

exercitātiō, -ōnis [*exerceo*], *f.*, practice, exercise

exercitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*exerceo*], *trans.*, train, practice. — **exercitātus**, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, trained

exercitus, -ūs [*exerceo*], *m.*, army

exigō, -igere, -ēgi, -actus [*ex-ago*], *trans.*, pass, finish: *aestas exacta erat* (was ended)

exiguitās, -ātis [*exiguus*], *f.*, scantiness, meagerness

exiguus, -a, -um, *adj.*, narrow, scanty, small, meager

eximius, -a, -um [*ex-emo*, take], *adj.*, exceptional, remarkable; very high (*opinio*)

existimātiō, -ōnis [*existimo*], *f.*, estimate, opinion

existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*ex-aestimo*], *trans. and intrans.*, estimate, believe, think, suppose, imagine

exitus, -ūs [*cf. exeo*], *m.*, end, last part; result, turn (*of fortune*), outcome

expediō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus [*ex-pes*], *trans.*, set free; arrange, station (*of troops*). — **expeditus**, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, quick, active, light-armed (*of troops*), in light marching order

expeditiō — faber

- expeditiō**, -ōnis [*expedio*], *f.*, expedition: misit in expeditionem (detached)
- expellō**, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, *trans.*, drive out; dispel
- experior**, -periri, -pertus, *dep., trans.*, experience, try: fortunam (risk, try)
- expleō**, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētus, *trans.*, fill out, fill up, complete
- explōrator**, -ōris, *m.*, scout
- explorō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, investigate, search, examine. — **explōrātus**, -a, -um, *p.p.*, assured, certain: explorata victoria, being assured of victory; habere omnia explorata, know certainly
- expōnō**, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, *trans.*, place out, set forth: exercitum (disembark, also draw up, array)
- exportō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, carry out, carry away
- exposcō**, -poscere, -poposci, *no p.p.*, *trans.*, demand
- exprimō**, -primere, -pressi, -pressus [*ex-premo*], *trans.*, force out; raise up
- expugnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, take (by storm), capture
- expulsus**, -a, -um, *p.p.* of expello
- exquirō**, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitus [*ex-quaero*], *trans.*, search out, ask for
- exquisitus**, -a, -um, *p.p.* of exquiro
- exsequor**, -sequi, -secutus, *dep., trans.*, follow out, follow up: ius (enforce)
- existō**, -sistere, -stiti, -stiturus, *intrans.*, stand out, rise up, come out: malacia (ensue)
- expectō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, look out for, wait to see, expect, anticipate; wait
- extinctus**, -a, -um, *p.p.* of exstinguo
- extinguō**, -stinguere, -stinxi, -stinctus, *trans.*, extinguish, destroy
- extō**, -stāre, -stiti, -stāturus, *intrans.*, stand out
- extructus**, -a, -um, *p.p.* of exstruo
- exstruō**, -struere, -struxi, -structus, *trans.*, heap up, build up
- exter**, -era, -erum, *adj.*, outer, outside. — **extrēmus**, -a, -um, *superl.*, farthest, extreme, last: extremi, as noun, the rear; ad extremum, till the last, at last
- extimēscō**, -timēscere, -timui, *no p.p.*, *trans. and intrans.*, fear greatly, dread
- extrā**, *adv.*, and *prep.* with *acc.*, outside, out of
- extractus**, -a, -um, *p.p.* of extraho
- extrahō**, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractus, *trans.*, drag out, draw out
- extrēmus**, *see* exter
- extrūdō**, -trūdere, -trūsi, -trūsus, *trans.*, shut out (by dikes)
- exuō**, -uere, -ui, -ūtus, *trans.*, strip off: armis exutis, deprived of arms
- exūrō**, -ūrere, -ussi, -ūstus, *trans.*, burn up
- faber**, -bri [*facio*] (*m.* of faber, skillful), mechanic, engineer (*in an army*)

Fabius — ferē

Fabius, -i, *m.*, a Roman gentile name.

— *Esp.*: 1. Quintus Fabius Maximus (Allobrogicus), who conquered the Allobroges and Arverni in 121 B.C. on the Rhone. — 2. Caius Fabius, a legatus of Cæsar in Gaul. — 3. Lucius Fabius, a centurion

facilis, -e [*facio*], *adj.*, easy, convenient. — **facile**, *n.* as *adv.*, easily, conveniently

facinus, -oris [*facio*], *n.*, deed; misdeed, crime

faciō, **facere**, **fēci**, **factus**, *trans.* and *intrans.*, make, do, act. — *Used in a great variety of senses as in English*: **coniurationem** (form); **sementes** (do planting); **iter** (march, travel, proceed). — *So in pass.*, happen, result, occur: **non sine causa fit**, it is not without reason; **fit ut**, the result is that. — **factum**, -i, *n.* of *p.p.*, half noun and half participle, and to be translated by either, act, thing done, etc.

— **fiō**, **fieri**, as *pass.* in all senses

factiō, -ōnis [*facio*], *f.*, party, faction

factum, -i, see *facio*

facultās, -ātis [*facilis*], *f.*, ease, facility; chance, opportunity; means, resources, supply

fāgus, -i, *f.*, a beech, beech (of the timber)

fallō, **fallere**, **fefellī**, **falsus**, *trans.* and *intrans.*, deceive: **spes aliquem** (disappoint). — **falsus**, -a, -um, *p.p.*, deceived; false, unfounded

falx, **falcis**, *f.*, sickle, pruning hook.

— *Also*, hook (of similar form for demolishing walls)

fāma, -ae, *f.*, speech, common talk, reputation; rumor, story

famēs, -is, *f.*, hunger, starvation: **famem tolerare**, keep from starving, appease hunger

familia, -ae, *f.*, collection of attendants, household. — *Applied to Gaul*, clan, retainers

familiāris, -e [*familia*], *adj.*, of the household: **res** (estate, property). — *Esp.* as noun, friend

fās, *n.*, indecl., right (in conscience, or by divine law): **non est fas** (permitted, allowed)

fastigātē, *adv.*, sloping

fastigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, bring to a point. — *Esp.*, **fastigātus**, -a, -um, *p.p.* as *adj.*, inclined, sloping

fātum, -i [*fari*, speak], *n.*, fate, lot, destiny

faveō, **favēre**, **fāvī**, **fautūrus**, *intrans.*, favor, be favorable to

fax, **facis**, *f.*, torch, firebrand, fire

fefellisse, see *fallo*

fēlicitās, -ātis [*felix*, lucky], *f.*, good fortune, good luck

fēliciter [*felix*, lucky], *adv.*, luckily, successfully

fēmina, -ae, *f.*, woman, female

femur, -oris, *n.*, thigh

ferāx, -ācis [*fero*], *adj.*, fertile

ferē, *adv.*, almost, about; usually, for the most part. — *With negatives*, hardly

ferō — fōrma

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, irr., trans.
and *intrans.*, bear, carry, endure,
tolerate: **magno cum dolore ferre**,
be much pained or indignant at;
moleste (graviter) ferre, be an-
noyed at, take hard, be indignant
at

ferrāria, -ae [ferrum], f., iron mine
ferreus, -a, -um [ferrum], adj., of
iron, iron (*made of iron*)

ferrum, -i, n., iron, steel, sword

fertilis, -e [fero], adj., fertile, fruitful
fertilitās, -ātis [fertilis], f., fertility,
productiveness

ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild, ferocious.

— *Fem. as noun*, wild beast, game
ferrefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus,
trans., heat, heat red-hot

fibula, -ae [figo, fasten], f., clasp,
buckle

fictus, -a, -um, p.p. of fingō

fidēlis, -e [fides], adj., faithful

fidēs, -ei, f., promise, pledge:

fidem facere, give assurance. —

Also, good faith, fidelity; belief;

Caesaris fidem sequi (come under,

surrender one's self to); in **fidem**

se permittere (venire), place them-

selves under the protection of *etc.*

fidūcia, -ae [fidus, trusty], f., con-
fidence, reliance

figūra, -ae, f., shape, form

filia, -ae, f., daughter

filius, -i, m., son

fingō, fingere, finxi, fictus, trans.,

mold; invent, contrive. — **fictus,**

-a, -um, p.p. as adj.; n. plur.

as noun, fictions

finiō, -ire, -ivī, -itus [finis], trans.,
set bounds to, limit, measure

finis, -is, m., limit, end: quem
ad finem, as far as. — *Plur.*, ter-
ritories, country

finitimus, -a, -um [finis], adj., neigh-
boring, adjacent. — *Masc. plur.*
as noun, neighbors

fiō, pass. of facio

firmiter [firmus], adv., firmly,
steadily

firmitūdō, -inis [firmus], f., solidity,
strength (*of resistance*)

firmus, -a, -um, adj., strong, firm,
steady

fistūca, -ae, f., pile driver

Flaccus, -i, m., a Roman family
name

flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., de-
mand earnestly

flamma, -ae, f., flame, fire

flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus, trans.,
bend, turn

fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus, trans. and
intrans., weep; weep for

flētus, -ūs [fleo], m., weeping, lamen-
tation

flō, flāre, flāvī, flātus, intrans., blow

flōrēns, -entis [pres. p. of floreō,
bloom], *adj.*, blooming. — *Fig.*,

flourishing, prosperous, influential

fluctus, -ūs [fluo], m., wave

flūmen, -inis [fluo], n., river

fluō, fluere, fluxī, fluxus, intrans.,
flow

fore, for futūrum esse; see sum

forem, for essem; see sum

fōrma, -ae, f., shape, form

fors — fungor

fors, **fortis**, *f.*, chance. — **forte**, *abl.*

as adv., by chance, as it happened

forte, *see* **fors**

fortis, *-e, adj.*, strong, brave, courageous

fortiter [*fortis*], *adv.*, bravely, stoutly, undauntedly

fortitūdō, *-inis* [*fortis*], *f.*, bravery, prowess

fortuitō, *adv.*, by chance, accidentally

fortūna, *-ae, f.*, fortune, chance, fate, lot (*one's* fortune), chances (*belli*), success (*good or bad*)

forum, *i, n.*, market place

fossa, *-ae* [*fodio*, dig], *f.*, ditch, trench

fovea, *-ae, f.*, pitfall

fractus, *-a, -um, p.p. of frango*

frangō, **frangere**, **frēgi**, **fractus**, *trans.*, break, wreck; break down, crush

frāter, *-tris, m.*, brother

frāternus, *-a, -um* [*frater*], *adj.*, of a brother, fraternal

fremitus, *-ūs* [*fremo*, roar], *m.*, murmur, confused noise, roar

frequēns, *-entis, adj.*, crowded, numerous, in great numbers

frētus, *-a, -um, adj.*, relying on

frigidus, *-a, -um* [*frigeo*, be cold], *adj.*, cold

frīgus, *-oris* [*frigeo*, be cold], *n.*, cold. — *Plur.*, cold seasons

frōns, **frontis**, *f.*, front, brow: a **fronte**, in front

fructuōsus, *-a, -um* [*fructus*], *adj.*, fruitful

fructus, *-ūs, m.*, crops, interest (*from money*): **victoriae** (advantages of victory)

frūmentārius, *-a, -um* [*frumentum*], *adj.*, of grain: **loca** (fruitful in grain); **res** (grain supply, provisions)

frūmentātiō, *-ōnis* [*frumentor*], *f.*, foraging expedition

frūmentor, *-ārī, -ātus* [*frumentum*], *dep., intrans.*, forage, gather grain

frūmentum, *-ī* [*fruo*], *n.*, grain. — *Plur.*, crops

fruo, **frui**, **fructus**, *dep., intrans.*, enjoy (*abl.*)

frūstrā, *adv.*, to no purpose, without effect, in vain

frūx, **frūgis**, *f.*, fruit. — *Plur.*, crops
Fūsius, *-ī, m.*, a Roman gentile name. *See* **Cita**

fuga, *-ae, f.*, flight: **eo fugae mandare**, take to flight; **in fugam dare**, put to flight

fugiō, **fugere**, **fūgi**, **fugitūrus** [*fuga*], *trans. and intrans.*, fly from, run away. — *Fig.*, shun, avoid

fugitīvus, *-a, -um* [*fugio*], *adj.*, runaway. — *Masc. plur. as noun*, runaway slaves

fūmō, *-āre, -āvī, -ātus, intrans.*, smoke

fūmus, *-ī, m.*, smoke

funda, *-ae, f.*, sling

funditor, *-ōris* [*funda*], *m.*, slinger

fundō, **fundere**, **fūdi**, **fūsus**, *trans.*, pour; scatter; rout

fūnebris, *-e* [*funus*], *adj.*, of a funeral. — *Neut. plur. as noun*, funeral rites

fungor, **fungi**, **fūctus**, *dep., intrans.*, perform, discharge (*abl.*)

fūnis — Gorgobina

fūnis, -is, *m.*, rope
 fūnus, -eris, *n.*, death, funeral
 furor, -ōris, *m.*, madness, frenzy, fury
 fūrtum, -ī [*fur*, thief], *n.*, theft, a theft
 fūsus, *p.p. of fundo*
 futūrus, *see sum*

Gabīnius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

gaesum, -ī, *n.*, javelin

Gāius, -ī, *m.*, Caius, a Roman prænomen

Galba, -ae, *m.*, a Gallic and Roman family name

galea, -ae, *f.*, helmet (*usually of leather*)

Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gaul, including all the country bounded by the Rubicon, the Alps, the Rhine, the ocean, the Pyrenees, and the Mediterranean, thus occupying all northern Italy, France, and Belgium

Gallicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Gauls, Gallic

gallīna, -ae, *f.*, hen

Gallus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Gaul, Gallic.
 — *Masc. as noun*, a Gaul, the Gauls. — *Also*, a Roman family name

Garumna, -ae, *m.*, a river of southwestern Gaul, now the Garonne

Garumnī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Gallic tribe in the Pyrenees

Gatēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, a Gallic people of Aquitania

gaudeō, gaudere, gāvīsus, *semi-dep., intrans.*, be delighted, rejoice

gāvīsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of gaudeo*

Genāva, -ae, *f.*, a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva

generātim [*genus*], *adv.*, by tribes

gēns, gentis, *f.*, tribe, clan, people

genus, -eris, *n.*, race, family (stock); kind, sort, class. — *Also, abstractly*, kind, character, nature, method (*pugnae*)

Gergovia, -ae, *f.*, a city in the land of the Arverni, in southeastern Gaul

Germānia, -ae, *f.*, Germany, the whole country between the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the sea

Germānicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Germans, German

Germānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, German.
 — *Plur. as noun*, the Germans

gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus, *trans.*, carry on, manage, wage (*war*), hold (*a magistracy*), do (*any business*). — *Pass.*, be done, go on (*of operations*): res gestae, exploits, operations, campaign

gestus, -a, -um, *p.p. of gero*

gladius, -ī, *m.*, sword

glēba, -ae, *f.*, clod (*of earth*), lump

glōria, -ae, *f.*, fame, glory

glōrior, -āri, -ātus [*gloria*], *dep., intrans.*, glory in, boast of (*abl.*)

Gnaeus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman prænomen

Gobannitiō, -ōnis, *m.*, one of the Arverni, uncle of Vercingetorix

Gorgobina, -ae, *f.*, a city in the territory of the Hædui

Graecus — Hibernia

Graecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Greeks, Greek. — *Masc. as noun*, a Greek, the Greeks

Grāiocelī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a people of the Alps

grandis, -e, *adj.*, large, of great size
grātia, -ae, *f.*, gratitude, good will, favor. *Hence*, influence, friendship. — *Esp.*: **gratias agere**, thank; **gratias habere**, be grateful; **gratias (gratiam) referre**, pay off an obligation; **gratiam inire**, secure the gratitude of any one. — *With gen.*, for the sake of, on account of
grātulātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, congratulation, rejoicing

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus [*gratus*], *dep.*, *intrans.*, congratulate
grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasing, grateful

gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy. — *Fig.*, serious, severe, hard: **gravioris aetatis**, of more advanced years; **si gravior quid acciderit**, if anything serious should occur; **ne quid gravior statueret**, that he would not pass any very severe judgment

gravitās, -ātis [*gravis*], *f.*, weight. — *Fig.*, importance, power

graviter [*gravis*], *adv.*, heavily, with great weight, with force. — *Fig.*, severely, seriously: **graviter ferre**, take to heart

gravō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*gravis*], *trans.*, make heavy. — *Pass. as dep.*, be unwilling, object

gubernātor, -ōris [*gubernō*, steer], *m.*, pilot, helmsman
gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, taste, eat

habēō, habēre, habuī, habitus, *trans. and intrans.*, have, hold, keep, occupy, possess: **castra** (occupy); **se habere**, be; **orationem** (deliver). — *With p.p.*, have, hold, keep: **redempta habere**, buy up and hold. — *Also*, consider: **rationem habere**, have regard for

Haedui, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Hædui, a powerful Gallic tribe between the Loire and the Saône. — *Masc. as noun*, a Hæduan, the Hædui
haesitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [*freq. of haereo*, stick], *intrans.*, get caught, stick, struggle (caught in a marsh)

Harūdēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a German tribe originally from Jutland

Helvēticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Helvetian (*see Helvetius*)

Helvētius, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Helvetii (a tribe between Lake Geneva, the Rhone, and the Rhine). — *Masc. plur. as noun*, the Helvetii

Helviī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Gallic tribe in the Roman province

Hercynius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Hercynian (the great forest embracing all the mountain country of Germany)

hērēditās, -ātis [*heres*, heir], *f.*, inheritance

Hibernia, -ae, *f.*, Ireland

hibernus — iactō

hibernus, -a, -um [*hiems*], *adj.*, of winter, winter (*as adj.*). — *Neut. plur. (sc. castra)*, winter quarters

hic, *haec*, *hoc*, *dem. adj. and pron.*, this, these, he, they, this man (woman or thing). — *Referring to things mentioned before (but with more emphasis than is)*: **hic pagus unus**, this one canton. — **hōc**, *n. abl.*, used adverbially, in this respect, on this account, by so much. — *Often hic . . . ille*, the one . . . the other, this (*near by*) . . . the other (*farther off*)

hīc, *adv.*, here, in this place, there (*of a place just mentioned*)

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [*hiems*], *intrans.*, pass the winter

hiems, -emis, *f.*, winter

hinc, *adv.*, from here, hence

Hispānia, -ae, *f.*, Spain

Hispānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Spanish

homō, -inis, *c.*, human being, man (*including woman*)

honestus, -a, -um [*honor*], *adj.*, respected, honorable

honor (*honōs*), -ōris, *m.*, honor, respect: *honoris causā*, out of respect. — *Also*, honorable position

honorificus, -a, -um [*honor-facio*], *adj.*, honorable

hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour (*of the day*). —

The Romans divided their day into twelve hours from sunrise to sunset, which were not of equal length at all times of the year, but were always one twelfth of the solar day

horreō, *horrēre*, *horruī*, *no p. p., trans. and intrans.*, bristle; shudder at, dread

horridus, -a, -um [*horreo*], *adj.*, bristling, horrible, dreadful, frightful

hortor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep., trans.*, encourage, urge on, address

hospes, -itis, *m.*, host. — *Also*, guest, stranger. Hence, guest-friend

hospitium, -ī [*hospes*], *n.*, the relation of host (*or guest*). Hence, friendship

hostis, -is, *c.*, stranger, enemy (*of the state*)

hūc, *adv.*, hither, here (*in sense of hither*), to this (place *etc.*; cf. *eo*, *adv.*): *huc accedebant*, to these were added

huiusmodī, *see hic and modus*

hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.*, civilization, cultivation, refinement

hūmānus, -a, -um [*homo*], *adj.*, civilized, cultivated, refined

humilis, -e [*humus*, ground], *adj.*, low, shallow. — *Fig.*, humble, poor

humilitās, -ātis [*humilis*], *f.*, lowness, shallowness. — *Fig.*, humble position, insignificance

I, *Roman numeral for one*

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *intrans.*, lie, lie dead: *iacentes*, the slain

iaciō, *iacere*, *iēcī*, *iactus*, *trans.*, throw, hurl, cast: *aggerem* (throw up)

iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*freq. of iacio*], *trans.*, toss, bandy about (*of talk*), discuss, boast

iactūra — impellō

iactūra, -ae [*iacio*], *f.*, loss, sacrifice
(*of men in war*)

iactus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *iacio*

iam, *adv.*, now, by this time, at last,
already, at length

ibi, *adv.*, there

Iccius, -ī, *m.*, a nobleman of the
Remi

ictus, -ūs [*ico*, strike], *m.*, stroke

Id., *abbr.* for *Idus*

idem, *eadem*, *idem* [*is-dem*], *dem.*
adj. and *pron.*, the same; the
same thing (things), the same

identidem, *adv.*, repeatedly, again
and again

idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, suitable,
adapted

Idūs, -uum, *f. plur.*, the Ides (a day
of the lunar month falling at the
full moon, conventionally on the
15th of March, May, July, and
October, and on the 13th of the
other months)

ignis, -is, *m.*, fire. — *Plur.*, camp fires
ignōbilis, -e [*in*, not, (*g*)*nobilis*,
known], *adj.*, not famous, obscure

ignōminia, -ae [*in*, not, (*g*)*nomen*,
name], *f.*, disgrace

ignōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*ignarus*, *igno-*
rant], *trans.*, not know, beignorant
of. — *Pass.*, be unobserved

ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvi, -nōtus [*in*,
not, (*g*)*nosco*, know], *intrans.*,
overlook, pardon

ignōtus, -a, -um [*in*, not, (*g*)*notus*,
known], *adj.*, unknown, strange

ille, -a, -ud, *dem. adj.* and *pron.*,
that (*of something remote*; cf.

hic); *as pronoun* (*opposed to some
other emphatic word*), he, she,
it, they: *hic* . . . *ille*, this . . .
that, the other; the latter . . . the
former

illic, *adv.*, there (*more remote*;
opposed to hic, near by), in that
place

illō, *adv.*, thither, there (*in sense
of thither*), that way

Illyricum, -ī, *n.*, Illyria (the country
east of Venetia and the Adriatic,
and west of Macedonia and Thrace)

imber, *imbris*, *m.*, rain storm, rain
imitor, -āri, -ātus, *dep.*, *trans.*,
imitate, copy

immānis, -e, *adj.*, monstrous, huge,
enormous

immittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus,
trans., let in, let down (*into*), in-
sert, throw (*upon*), send against
immolō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*in-mola*,
meal], *trans.*, sacrifice

immortālis, -e, *adj.*, immortal

immūnitās, -ātis [*immunis*, free], *f.*,
freedom (*from public burdens*)

impedimentum, -ī [*impedio*], *n.*, hin-
drance: *esse impedimento*, to
hinder. — *Esp. in plur.*, baggage,
baggage train (*including the
beasts of burden*)

impediō, -ire, -ivi, -itus [*in-pes*],
trans., entangle, hamper, inter-
fere with, hinder, embarrass,
impede

impellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus,
trans., drive on. — *Fig.*, insti-
gate, incite, impel

impendeō — in

impendeō, -ēre, *intrans.*, overhang
impēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, expensive,
 very high (*of price*)

imperātor, -ōris [*impero*], *m.*, com-
 mander (*in chief*), general

imperātum, -i [*n. p.p. of impero*],
n., an order, a command

imperitus, -a, -um [*in-peritus*], *adj.*,
 unacquainted with, ignorant, un-
 versed in

imperium, -i [*impero*], *n.*, command,
 control, supremacy, power (*mili-
 tary*), rule (*both sing. and plur.*);
 order, command

imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.
 and intrans.*, demand; order
(in military sense), rule, com-
 mand

impetrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, ac-
 complish (*anything by a request*),
 succeed (*in obtaining*), obtain (*a
 request*)

impetus, -ūs, *m.*, rush, attack, vio-
 lence, fury

impius, -a, -um, *adj.*, impious (*offend-
 ing divine law*)

implōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*,
 implore, beseech

impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus,
trans., place on, mount (*men
 on horses*)

importō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*,
 import

impositus, -a, -um, *p.p. of impono*
imprimis or **in primis**, *adv.*, among
 the first, especially, particularly
improbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bad, wicked

imprōvisus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unfore-
 seen: **improvisio** (*de improviso*),
 on a sudden, unexpectedly

imprūdēns, -entis [*in-prudens*, fore-
 seeing], *adj.*, not expecting, in-
 cautious, off one's guard

imprudentia, -ae [*imprudens*], *f.*,
 ignorance, want of forethought

impūbēs, -eris, *adj.*, beardless;
 chaste, unmarried

impugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.
 and intrans.*, attack, invade,
 charge

impulsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of impello*
impūne [*impunis*, unpunished], *adv.*,
 with impunity

impūnitās, -ātis [*impunis*, unpun-
 ished], *f.*, freedom from punish-
 ment, impunity

imus, *see inferus*

in-, *prefix, with the force of a
 negative; cf. English un-*

in, *prep.* (a) *With acc.*, of motion,
having its terminus within or
on, into, on, within, to, against,
 among. — *Of time*, for, to, till.
 — *Often where English has a
 different conception*, in, on: **ab-
 dere in silvas**, hide in the woods;
in eos exempla edere (visit on). —
*In adverbial expressions where
 no motion appears*, in, according
 to, with, to: **in eam sententiam**, to
 this purport. — *Esp.*: **in Caesa-
 rem incidit**, happened to meet
 Cæsar; **in fugam conicere**, put
 to flight

inānis — indūcō

(b) *With abl., of rest*, in, on, among, within. — *Often*, in the case of, in respect to: in eo, in his case, in regard to him. — *Esp.*: in ancoris, at anchor; in primis, among the first, especially

(c) *In composition, as adv.*, in, on, toward, against

inānis, -e, *adj.*, empty, vain, idle
incautē, *adv.*, incautiously, carelessly
incendium, -i [*incendo*], *n.*, a burning, fire

incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēsus, *trans.*, set fire to, burn. — *Fig.*, rouse, excite

incēsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of incendo*
inceptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of incipio*
incertus, -a, -um, *adj.*, uncertain, dubious, untrustworthy

incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsūrus [*incado*], *intrans.*, fall upon, fall into; fall in with, meet, occur, happen
incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisus [*in-caedo*], *trans.*, cut into

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [*incipio*], *trans. and intrans.*, begin, undertake

incisus, -a, -um, *p.p. of incido*
incitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, set in motion, urge on, drive, impel, excite. — incitātus, -a, -um, *p.p.*, angered, spurred on: incitato equo, at full gallop; incitato cursu, at full speed. — *Esp.*, se aestus incitare (rush in)

incognitus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unknown
incolō, -colere, -colui, *no p.p.*, *trans.*

and intrans., inhabit, live, dwell
incolumis, -e, *adj.*, unharmed, unhurt, safe

incommodē, *adv.*, inconveniently, unfortunately

incommodus, -a, -um, *adj.*, inconvenient, unfortunate. — incommodum, -i, *n. as noun*, disadvantage, misfortune, defeat, disaster, loss

incrēdibilis, -e [*in-*, not, *credo*], *adj.*, incredible, marvelous, extraordinary

increpitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, upbraid, taunt, revile

incursiō, -ōnis [*incurro*, run at], *f.*, attack, invasion

incūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, upbraid, rebuke, chide

inde, *adv.*, from there, thence, from the place (*which etc.*); then

indiciū, -i, *n.*, information; indication, sign: per indicium, through an informer

indico, -dicere, -dixi, -dictus, *trans.*, order, proclaim, appoint

indignitās, -ātis [*indignus*], *f.*, unworthiness, disgrace, outrage

indignor, -āri, -ātus [*indignus*], *dep., intrans.*, be indignant

indignus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unworthy
indiligenter, *adv.*, carelessly, negligently

indiligentia, -ae [*indiligens*, careless], *f.*, carelessness

indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus, *trans.*, draw on. Hence, cover: scuta

indulgeō — iniquitās

pellibus. — *Also, lead on. Hence, induce, impel*
indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsī, no p.p., intrans., favor, treat with indulgence
induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtus, trans., put on
indūtiae, -ārum, f. plur., truce
Indūtiomārus, -ī, m., a chief of the Treveri
inēō, -īre, -īi, -itus, irr., trans., enter on, go into, adopt, make, begin, gain, secure. — *Esp.:* **inita aestate,** at the beginning of summer; **inire rationem,** make a calculation; **inire consilium,** form a plan; **inire numerum,** enumerate
inermis, -e [in-, not, arma], adj., unarmed, defenseless
iners, -ertis [in-, not, ars], adj., cowardly, sluggish, unmanly
infāmia, -ae [infamis, infamous], f., dishonor, disgrace
infāns, -antis [in-, not, fans, pres. p. of for, speak], c., child, infant
infectus, -a, -um [in-, not, factus], adj., not done. — *Esp., re infecta,* without success
inferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, irr., trans., bring in, import, put on: **in equum** (mount one on horseback); **bellum** (make, of offensive war); **signa** (make a charge, advance). — *Fig.,* cause, inflict, commit
inferus, -a, -um, adj., low: **inferior pars,** the lower end; **ab inferiore parte,** down below, of a river. — **infirmus (imus), -a, -um, superl.,**

lowest, the bottom of, at the bottom: **infirmus collis,** the foot of the hill; **ad infimum,** at the bottom. — *Neut. as noun,* the bottom
iniciō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [in-facio], trans., (work into), dye, stain
infirmus, see inferus
infinītus, -a, -um, adj., unbounded, countless, endless
infirmītās, -ātis [infirmus], f., feebleness, inconstancy, fickleness
infirmus, -a, -um, adj., weak, feeble: **naves** (unseaworthy)
inflectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexus, trans., bend down. — *Pass. or with reflex.,* become bent
inflexus, -a, -um, p.p. of inflecto
inflūō, -fluere, -flūxī, -fluxūrus, intrans., flow into, empty into
infrā, adv., and prep. with acc., below, farther down, less than
ingēns, -entis, adj., huge, enormous
ingredior, -gredi, -gressus [in-gradior, step], dep., trans. and intrans., march into, enter, march in
iniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [in-iacio], trans., throw into, throw upon; place in, put on, embark; inspire
iniectus, -a, -um, p.p. of inicio
inimicitia, -ae [inimicus], f., enmity, hostility
inimicus, -a, -um [in-, not, amicus], adj., unfriendly, hostile. — *Masc. as noun,* enemy (*personal, or not in war*)
iniquitās, -ātis [iniquus], f., inequality; unfairness, unfavorableness

iniquus — insolenter

iniquus, -a, -um [*in-*, not, *aequus*], *adj.*, uneven; unjust, unfavorable, unfair. — *Comp.*, **iniquior locus**, less favorable position

initium, -ī [*ineo*], *n.*, a beginning, the first of: **initium capere** or **facere**, begin, start

initus, *p.p.* of *ineo*

iniūria, -ae [*in-*, not, *ius*], *f.*, injustice, outrage, wrong

iniussū, *adv.*, without orders

inlātus, *p.p.* of *infero*

inligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, bind on, attach, fasten to

inlūstris, -e, *adj.*, distinguished, famous: **inlustriore loco natus**, of distinguished ancestry

innāscor, -nāsci, -nātus, *dep.*, *intrans.*, be inspired, be excited

innitor, -niti, -nixus or -nisus, *dep.*, *intrans.*, lean upon. — **innixus**, -a, -um, *p.p.* in present sense, leaning on

innocēns, -entis [*in-*, not, *nocens*, *pres. p.* of *noceo*], *adj.*, harmless, guiltless, innocent

innocentia, -ae [*innocens*], *f.*, blamelessness

inopia, -ae [*inops*, needy], *f.*, scarcity, privation, want of supplies

inopināns, -antis, *adj.*, unsuspecting, not suspecting

in primis, see **imprimis**

inquam, defective, *intrans.*, say

inrideō, -ridēre, -risi, -risus, *trans.* and *intrans.*, ridicule, laugh at

inridiculē, *adv.*, without humor

inrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus,

trans. and *intrans.*, break in, break into, storm

inruptiō, -ōnis [*inrumpo*], *f.*, attack, raid, incursion

insciēns, -entis, *adj.*, not knowing, unaware

inscientia, -ae [*insciens*], *f.*, ignorance, lack of acquaintance with

inscius, -a, -um, *adj.*, not knowing, unaware

insecūtus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *insequor*

insequor, -sequi, -secūtus, *dep.*, *trans.*, follow up, pursue

inserō, -serere, -serui, -sertus, *trans.*, insert, stick in

insidiae, -ārum [*insideo*, sit in], *f. plur.*, ambush, treachery, plot: **per insidias**, with deception, treacherously

insidior, -āri, -ātus [*insidiae*], *dep.*, *intrans.*, lie in wait, make treacherous attacks

insignis, -e [*in-signum*], *adj.*, marked, memorable. — **insigne**, -is, *n.* as noun, signal, sign, decoration (of soldiers)

insiliō, -silire, -silui, -sultus [*in-salio*, leap], *trans.*, leap on

insimulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, charge, accuse

insinuō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.* and *intrans.*, slip in

insistō, -sistere, -stiti, *no p.p.*, *trans.* and *intrans.*, stand on, stand, keep one's footing. — *Fig.*, adopt (*rationem pugnae*)

insolenter, *adv.*, insultingly, insolently, arrogantly

inspectō — interdicō

inspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*
and *intrans.*, look on: **inspec-**
tantibus nobis, before our eyes
instabilis, -e, *adj.*, unsteady
instar, *n.*, *indecl.*, in the likeness of
(with *gen.*)

institūō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [*in-statuo*],
trans., set up, set in order: **opus**
(finish). — *Also*, provide, procure,
get ready. — *Also*, set about,
undertake, adopt (a plan etc.),
begin, set on foot. — *So*, teach,
train, habituate

institūtum, -ī [*n. p.p. of instituo*],
n., habit, practice, custom

instō, -stāre, -stiti, -stāturus, *in-*
trans., be at hand, press on;
threaten, impend, menace

instrūctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of instruo*
instrūmentum, -ī [*instruo*], *n.*, furni-
ture, equipment, tools and stores

instruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus,
trans., build, fit up, fit out, set in
order, arrange; draw up (*of troops*)

insuēfactus, -a, -um, *adj.*, trained

insuētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unaccus-
tomed, unused

insula, -ae, *f.*, island

insuper, *adv.*, on the top, from
above

integer, -gra, -grum [*in-*, not, *tango*,
touch], *adj.*, untouched, un-
worn, fresh; as *noun*, fresh
troops. — *Esp.*, not entered upon
(*of business*); **re integra**, before
anything was done

integō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus, *trans.*,
cover over (*turres coriis*)

intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctus [*inter-*
lego, gather], *trans.*, learn, know,
find out, discover

intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus,
trans., stretch, strain. — *Esp. of*
the mind or eyes, be intent, be
absorbed: **animis intentis in ea**
re, with their minds absorbed in
this business

inter, *prep. with acc.*, between,
among: **arbitros inter civitates**
dat (to decide between); **inter**
aciem, in the line. — *Of time*,
within, for. — *Often in a recip-*
rocal sense: **inter se**, with (to,
from, etc.) each other or one an-
other; **cohortati inter se**, encour-
aging each other or one another;
obsides inter eos dandos curavit,
caused them to exchange hos-
tages

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessurus,
intrans., come between, go be-
tween, lie between, pass (*of time*):
ipsis cum Haeduis intercedere,
exist between them and the
Hædui

interceptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of inter-*
cipio

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus
[*inter-capio*], *trans.*, intercept, cut
off

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus
[*inter-claudio*], *trans.*, cut off, shut
off, block (*roads*): **fugam** (stop,
cut off)

interdicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictus,
trans., forbid, prohibit: **Gallia**

interdiū — intrōsus

Romanis interdicere, exclude the Romans from Gaul

interdiū, *adv.*, in the daytime

interdum, *adv.*, for a time, sometimes

interea, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime

intereō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, perish, die, be killed

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*interfacio*], *trans.*, kill, put to death

intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*interiacio*], *trans.*, throw in (*between*).

— *Pass.*, lie between, intervene:

spatio interiecto, intervening, *i.e.* leaving a short interval

interim, *adv.*, meanwhile

interior, -ius, *adj.*, inner, interior. —

Masc. plur. as noun, interiores, men in the interior, men in the town

intermittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, *trans. and intrans.*, leave off, discontinue, stop: **neque diem neque noctem** (not cease day or night);

spatiis intermissis, leaving intervals; **nocte intermissa**, a night intervening

interneciō, ōnis [*cf. neco*], *f.*, extermination, annihilation

interpellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, interrupt, interfere with

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, *trans.*, put in between, interpose, allege: **nulla suspicione belli interposita**, no suspicion of war appearing to hinder

interpre, -pretis, *c.*, mediator, interpreter

interpretor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *trans.*, interpret, explain

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, question, ask

interrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *trans.*, break down (*of bridges*), destroy

intereindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scisus, *trans.*, tear down

intersum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, be between, be in, be engaged in: **non amplius intersit**, there is an interval of not more than *etc.* — *Esp.*, *impers.*, it is of importance, it concerns

intervallum, -ī, *n.*, distance apart, interval

intervenīō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *intrans.*, come up, arrive

interventus, -ūs [*intervenio*], *m.*, intervention, help

intexō, -texere, -texui, -textus, *trans.*, weave in, weave together

intrā, *prep. with acc.*, into, within, inside

intritus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unwearied

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, enter, go in

intrōducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, *trans.*, lead in, bring in, march in (*troops*)

introitus, -ūs [*intro*, within, *eo*, go], *m.*, entrance, approach

intrōmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, *trans.*, send in; **intromissus**, rushing in

intrōsus [*intro*, within, *versus*, *p.p. of verto*], *adv.*, inside, within

intueor — iugum

intueor, -tuēri, -tuitus, *dep., trans.*, look at

intuli, *see infero*

inūsitātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unaccus-tomed

inūtilis, -e, *adj.*, of no use, un-serviceable

inveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventus, *trans.*, find, learn

inventor, -ōris, *m.*, discoverer

inveterāscō, -āscere, -āvi, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, become established in

invictus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unconquer-able, invincible

invidēō, -vidēre, -vidī, -visus, *intrans.*, envy

inviolātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, inviolate; sacred

invisus, -a, -um, *p.p. of invideo*

invitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, in-vite, request, attract

invitus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unwilling. — *Often rendered as adv.*, against one's will

ipse, -a, -um, *intens. pron.*, self, himself, *etc.* (as *opp.* to some one else; *cf.* *sui*, *reflex.*, referring to the subject), he, *etc.* (*emph.*), he himself, *etc.*: *ipsi inter se* (*recip-rocally*), each other

irācundus, -a, -um [*ira*, anger], *adj.*, of a violent temper

is, *ea*, **id**, *dem. adj. and pron.*, this (*less emph. than hic*), that (*unem-phatic*), he, she, it: *quae pars ea etc.*, the part which *etc.* — **eo**, *n. abl.*, so much; **eo magis**,

all the more; **eo gravius**, so much the more severely

ita, *adv.*, so, in this way, thus, as follows: **ut . . . ita**, as . . . so, though . . . yet, both . . . and; **ita . . . ut**, in proportion as, as; **non ita**, not so very, not very

Italia, -ae, *f.*, Italy

itaque, *adv.*, and so, accordingly, therefore

item, *adv.*, in like manner, so also, in the same way

iter, **itineris** [**eo**, go], *n.*, road, march, journey: **in itinere**, on the road; **iter facere**, march, travel; **magnis itineribus**, by forced marches

iterum, *adv.*, a second time, again: **semel atque iterum**, again and again

Itius, *adj.* (*with portus*), the Gallic port where Cæsar embarked for Britain the second time

iuba, -ae, *f.*, mane

iubeō, **iubēre**, **iussī**, **iussus**, *trans.*, order, command, bid

iūdicium, -ī [**iudex**, judge], *n.*, judg-ment (*judicial*), trial, opinion; **iudicio**, by design; *often trans-lated by court*

iūdicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**iudex**, judge], *trans.*, decide, judge, think, con-sider: **nihil gravius de civitate** (think nothing harsh about *etc.*)

iugum, -ī [**iungo**], *n.*, yoke: **sub iugum mittere** (*an insult inflicted on a conquered army*). Also, ridge

iūmentum — languor

iūmentum, -i [*iugum*], *n.*, beast of burden

iūnctūra, -ae [*iungo*], *f.*, a joining, joint: **quantum iunctura distabat**, as far as the distance apart (*of two things joined*)

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctus, *trans.*, join, unite, attach together

iūnior, *comp. of iuvenis*

iūnius, -i, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.*, the god of the heavens, who was regarded as the supreme divinity of the Romans

Iūra, -ae, *m.*, a chain of mountains in Gaul, running northeast from the Rhone to the Rhine

iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intrans.*, swear, take an oath

iūs, iūris, *n.*, justice, right, law

iūs iurandum, iūris iurandī, *n.*, oath
iussū, *abl. used as adv.*, by order, by command

iūstitia, -ae [*iustus*], *f.*, justice

iūstus, -a, -um, *adj.*, just, lawful. —

Also, complete, perfect, regular: **populi Romani iustissimum est imperium**, the Romans are best entitled to dominion

iuvenis, -e, *adj.*, young. — *As noun*, a young man (*not over forty-five*), a youth: **iuniores**, the younger soldiers

iuventūs, -ūtis [*iuvenis*], *f.*, the youth, the young men

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, *trans.*, help, aid, assist

iūxtā, *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.*, next, near, close by

Kal., *abbr. for Kalendae and its cases*

Kalendae, -ārum, *f. plur.*, the Calends, the first day of the Roman month

L, Roman numeral for fifty

L., *abbr. for Lucius*

Laberius, -i, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

Labienus, -i, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*, Titus Atius Labienus, a violent partisan of Cæsar, a legatus under him in Gaul, but afterwards in the Civil War on the side of Pompey

labor, -ōris, *m.*, toil, exertion; trouble, hardship

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*labor*], *intrans.*, toil, exert one's self; be hard pressed, labor

labrum, -i, *n.*, lip; edge, rim

lac, lactis, *n.*, milk

laccessō, -cessere, -cessivī, -cessitus, *trans.*, attack, harass, assail, skirmish with

lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear

lacus, -ūs, *m.*, reservoir, lake

laedō, laedere, laesi, laesus, *trans.*, wound. — *Fig.*, break (*fidem*)

laetus, -a, -um, *adj.*, glad

languidē, *adv.*, feebly

languidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, spiritless:

languidior, with less spirit

languor, -ōris, *m.*, weariness

lapis — liberē

- lapis**, -idis, *m.*, stone
- laqueus**, -i, *m.*, slip noose
- largior**, -iri, -itus [*largus*, abundant], *dep., trans. and intrans.*, give lavishly; give bribes, give presents
- largiter**, *adv.*, lavishly: **largiter posse**, possess powerful influence
- largitiō**, -ōnis [*largior*], *f.*, lavish giving, bribery
- lassitudō**, -inis [*lassus*, weary], *f.*, weariness, exhaustion
- lātē**, *adv.*, widely: **latius**, too far; **longe lateque**, far and wide
- lateō**, **latēre**, **latui**, *no p.p., intrans.*, be concealed, pass unnoticed
- lātitudō**, -inis [*latus*, broad], *f.*, breadth, width
- Latobrigi**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a German tribe, neighbors of the Helvetii
- latrō**, -ōnis, *m.*, robber
- latrōcinium**, -i [*latro*], *n.*, robbery, brigandage
- latus**, **lateris**, *n.*, side (*of the body*). — *Also, generally, side, flank, end (of a hill)*
- lātus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of fero*
- lātus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, broad, wide, extensive
- laudō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*laus*], *trans.*, praise, commend
- laus**, **laudis**, *f.*, praise, credit, glory
- lavō**, -āre (-ere), -āvi (**lāvī**), -ātus (**lautus**, **lōtus**), *trans.*, wash. — *In pass. used reflexively, bathe*
- laxō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, loosen, open out, extend
- lēgātiō**, -ōnis [*lēgo*, dispatch], *f.*, embassy
- lēgātus**, -i [*lēgo*, dispatch], *m.*, ambassador, envoy. — *Also, lieutenant, legatus*
- legiō**, -ōnis [*lego*, gather], *f.*, legion
- legiōnārius**, -a, -um [*legio*], *adj.*, of a legion, legionary
- Lemannus**, -i, *m.* (*with lacus either expressed or implied*), the Lake of Geneva, Lake Leman
- Lemovicēs**, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe in central Gaul west of the Arverni
- lēnis**, -e, *adj.*, gentle, smooth
- lēnitās**, -ātis [*lenis*], *f.*, gentleness
- lēniter**, *adv.*, gently
- Lepontii**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of the Alps
- lepus**, -oris, *m.*, hare
- Leuci**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of eastern Gaul
- levis**, -e, *adj.*, light, unimportant; inconstant, fickle
- levitās**, -ātis [*levis*], *f.*, lightness, fickleness
- levō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, lighten; relieve
- lēx**, **lēgis**, *f.*, statute, law
- Lexovii**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of northwestern Gaul
- libenter**, *adv.*, willingly, with pleasure
- liber**, -era, -erum, *adj.*, free, unrestricted
- liberalitās**, -ātis [*liberalis*, generous], *f.*, generosity, liberality
- liberaliter**, *adv.*, generously, kindly (**respondit**): oratione prosecutus (*addressing in generous language*)
- liberē**, *adv.*, freely, boldly, without restraint

liberī — magis

- liberī, -ōrum** [*liber*, free], *m. plur.*, children
- liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus** [*liber*], free, set free, relieve (*from some bond*): liberare se, secure one's freedom
- libertās, -ātis** [*liber*], *f.*, liberty, freedom, independence
- liceor, licēri, licitus, dep., intrans.**, bid (*at an auction*)
- licet, licēre, licuit** (*licitum est*), *intrans., impers.*, be allowed: id sibi *etc.* (that they be allowed); per te licet, you allow, you do not hinder; petere ut liceat, to ask permission
- Liger, -eris, m.**, a river of western Gaul, now the Loire
- lignātor, -ōris** [*lignum*, wood], *m.*, wood forager, woodcutter
- linea, -ae, f.**, line
- Lingonēs, -um, m. plur.**, a tribe of eastern Gaul
- lingua, -ae, f.**, tongue. Hence, language
- lingula, -ae** [*lingua*], *f.*, tongue of land
- linter, -tris, f.**, skiff, boat
- linum, -i, n.**, flax
- Liscus, -i, m.**, a Hæduan magistrate, brother of Diviciacus
- littera, -ae, f.**, letter (*of the alphabet*).—*Plur.*, writing, alphabet, letter (*an epistle*), records
- litus, -oris, n.**, shore, beach
- locus, -i, m. (sing.), n. (generally plur.)**, place, spot, region (*esp. in plur.*), point, ground (*in military language*); rank; position, character; opportunity; situation, condition: obsidum loco, as hostages
- locūtus, -a, -um, p.p. of loquor**
- longē, adv.**, far, absent, distant: non longius mille (not more than); longe nobilissimus (far, altogether)
- longinquus, -a, -um** [*longus*], *adj.*, long (*of time and space*), distant, long-continued
- longitūdō, -inis** [*longus*], *f.*, length
- longurius, -i, m.**, long pole
- longus, -a, -um, adj.**, long (*of space and time*): in longiorem diem, to a more distant day
- loquor, loquī, locūtus, dep., trans. and intrans.**, speak, talk, converse
- Lūcānius, -i, m.**, a Roman gentile name
- Lūcius, -i, m.**, a Roman prænomen
- Lucterius, -i, m.**, a Gallic name
- Lugotorix, -igis, m.**, a British prince
- lūna, -ae, f.**, moon. Also *personified*, Luna, the Moon
- lūx, lūcis** [*cf. luceo*, shine], *f.*, light, daylight: prima luce, orta luce, or luce, at daybreak
- lūxuria, -ae, f.**, luxury, riotous living
- M, Roman numeral for thousand**
- M., abbr. for Mārcus**
- māchinātiō, -ōnis** [*machina*, machine], *f.*, contrivance, engine, derrick
- Magetobriga, -ae, f.**, a town in Gaul where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls
- magis, adv.**, more, rather: eo magis, so much the more, all the more. — *maxime, superl.*

magistrātus — maritimus

magistrātus, -ūs [*magister*, master], *m.*, magistracy (*office of a magistrate*). — *Concretely*, magistrate

magnificus, -a, -um [*magnus-facio*], *adj.*, splendid, grand, magnificent

magnitūdō, -inis [*magnus*], *f.*, greatness, size, stature, force (*venti*), severity (*supplici*)

magnopere, *see opus*

magnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, great (*in any sense, of size, quantity, or degree*), large, extensive, important, serious (*motus*), heavy (*portoria*), high (*aestus*), loud (*vox*): *magni habere*, to value highly, make much account of; *magni interest*, it is of great importance. — *maior*, *comp. in usual sense*. — *Also*, *maior* (*with or without natu*), elder, older. — *In plur. as noun*, elders, ancestors. — **maximus**, *superl.*, largest, very large, greatest, very great, *etc.*: *maximis itineribus*, by forced marches

maiestās, -ātis [*maior*], *f.*, majesty, dignity

maior, *see magnus*

malacia, -ae, *f.*, a calm

male, *adv.*, badly, ill, unsuccessfully. — **peius**, *comp.* — **pessime**, *superl.*

maleficium, -ī [*male-facio*], *n.*, harm, mischief

mālō, *mälle*, *māluī*, *no p.p.* [*mage* (*for magis*), *volo*], *irr., trans. and intrans.*, wish more, wish rather, prefer

malus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bad. — **peior**, *comp.* — **pessimus**, *superl.*

mālus, -ī, *m.*, mast, beam (*upright*)

mandātum, -ī [*n. p.p. of mando*], *n.*, command, instructions; message

mandō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, intrust, instruct, commit: *se fugae* (take to)

Mandubracius, -ī, *m.*, a Briton

māne, *adv.*, in the morning

manēō, *manēre*, *mānsī*, *mānsūrus*, *intrans.*, stay, remain, stay at home. — *Fig.*, continue, stand by (*in eo quod*)

manipulus, -ī [*manus*], *m.*, handful; *maniple* (*two centuries, a third of a cohort*)

Mānlius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

mānsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, *trans.*, tame. — *Pass.*, *mānsuēfiō*, be tamed

mānsuētūdō, -inis [*mansuetus*, tame], *f.*, gentle disposition, kindness

manus, -ūs, *f.*, the hand: *in manibus nostris*, just at hand, within reach; *dat manus*, give in. — *Also*, company, band, troop

Marcomanni, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a supposed German tribe in the army of Ariovistus

Mārcus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen
mare, -is, *n.*, the sea: *mare Oceanum*, the ocean; *nostrum* (*i.e.* the Mediterranean)

maritimus, -a, -um [*mare*], *adj.*, of the sea, maritime, naval, on the

Marius — mēns

- sea: *aestus* (in the sea); *ora* (the seashore)
- Marius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman gentile name. — *Esp.*, Caius Marius, the opponent of Sulla and the champion of the popular against the aristocratic party. He conquered the Cimbri and Teutones (101 B.C.) and freed Rome from the fear of a northern invasion
- Mārs, Mārtis**, *m.*, Mars, originally probably a god of husbandry defending the sheep, but afterwards worshiped as the god of war. — *See aequus*
- mās, maris**, *adj.*, male. — *Noun*, a male
- matara**, -ae, *f.*, javelin (*used by the Gauls*)
- māter**, -tris, *f.*, mother, matron: **māter familiās** (*old gen. of familia*), matron
- māteria**, -ae, *f.*, wood, timber
- mātrimōnium**, -i, [*mater*], *n.*, marriage, matrimony: **in matrimōnium ducere**, marry
- Matrona**, -ae, *m.*, a river of Gaul, joining the Seine near Paris, now the Marne
- mātūrē**, *adv.*, early, speedily
- mātūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*maturus*], *trans. and intrans.*, hasten, make haste
- mātūrus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, early. — *Also*, ripe, mature
- maximē**, *adv.*, most, very, in the highest degree, especially: **ea maxime ratione**, in that way more than any other; **maxime confidebat**, had the greatest confidence
- Maximus**, -i, *m.*, a Roman family name
- mediocris**, -cre [*medius*], *adj.*, middling, moderate: **spatium** (a little, no great); **non mediocris**, no little, no small degree of
- mediocriter**, *adv.*, moderately: **non mediocriter**, in no small degree
- Mediomatrici**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of northeastern Gaul
- mediterrāneus**, -a, -um [*medius-terra*], *adj.*, inland
- medius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, the middle of (*as noun in English*), mid-: **in colle medio** (halfway up); **locus medius utriusque** (halfway between); **de media nocte**, about midnight
- Meldi**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Gaul between the Seine and the Marne
- melior**, *comp. of bonus*
- membrum**, -i, *n.*, a part of the body
- memini**, -isse, *defective, trans. and intrans.*, remember
- memoria**, -ae [*memor*, mindful], *f.*, memory, recollection: **memoria tenere**, remember; **nostrā memoriā**, within our memory, in our own time
- Menapii**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Belgian tribe near the mouth of the Rhine
- mēns, mentis**, *f.*, intellect, mind, state of mind: **mentes animosque**, minds and hearts

mēnsis — mīror

- mēnsis**, -is, *m.*, month
- mēnsūra**, -ae [*metior*], *f.*, measure:
ex aqua mensurae, measures by the water clock
- mercātor**, -ōris [*mercor*, trade], *m.*, trader
- mercātūra**, -ae [*mercor*, trade], *f.*, traffic, trade
- mercēs**, -ēdis [*merx*, merchandise], *f.*, hire, pay, wages
- Mercurius**, -i, *m.*, Mercury, the Roman god of gain, traffic, etc. Afterwards, identified with the Greek Hermes, he was considered also the god of eloquence as well as of trade, the messenger of the gods, and the god of roads, etc.
- mereor**, -ēri, -itus (*also mereo*, active), *dep.*, *trans.* and *intrans.*, win, deserve, gain. — *Also* (*from earning pay*), serve: **mereri de**, serve the interests of, render service to
- meridiānus**, -a, -um [*meridies*], *adj.*, of midday
- meridiēs**, -ē [*medius-dies*], *m.*, midday, noon. — *Also*, the south
- meritum**, -i [*n. p.p. of mereor*], *n.*, service. — **meritō**, *abl. as adv.*, deservedly: **quo minus merito**, (the) less by the fault
- meritus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of mereor*
- Messāla**, -ae, *m.*, a Roman family name
- mētior**, mētiri, mēnsus, *dep.*, *trans.*, measure out, deal out, distribute
- Mētius**, -i, *m.*, a Gaul, in relations of hospitality with Ariovistus
- metō**, metere, messui, messus, *trans.*, cut, reap, gather
- metus**, -ūs, *m.*, fear
- meus**, -a, -um, *possessive pronominal adj.*, my, mine
- mihi**, *see ego*
- miles**, -itis, *m.*, soldier, legionary soldier (heavy infantry, *as opposed to other arms of the service*)
- militāris**, -e [*miles*], *adj.*, of the soldiers, military
- militia**, -ae [*miles*], *f.*, military service
- mille**, *indecl. adj. (rarely noun) in sing.; plur., milia, -ium, neuter noun*, thousand: **mille passus** or **mille passuum** (*cf. G. § 20. note*), thousand paces, mile
- Minerva**, -ae, *f.*, Minerva, the goddess of intellectual activity, and so of skill and the arts
- minimē**, *adv.*, least, very little, not at all
- minimus**, -a, -um, *adj., superl. of parvus*, smallest, least. — *Neut. as noun and adv.*, the least, least, very little
- minor**, -us, *adj., comp. of parvus*, smaller, less: **dimidio minor**, half as large. — *Neut. as noun and adv.*, less, not much, not so: **quo minus**, that . . . not
- minuō**, -uere, -ui, -ūtus [*minus*], *trans. and intrans.*, lessen, weaken, diminish: **aestus** (ebb)
- mīror**, -āri, -ātus [*mirus*], *dep., trans. and intrans.*, wonder, wonder at. — **mīrātus**, -a, -um, *p.p. in pres. sense*, surprised

mīrus — multitudō

mīrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, surprising, marvelous, wonderful

miser, -era, -erum, *adj.*, wretched, pitiable, miserable, poor

miser cordia, -ae [*misericors*, merciful], *f.*, mercy, pity, clemency

miseror, -āri, -ātus [*miser*], *dep.*, *trans.*, bewail, complain of

missus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *mitto*

missus, -ūs, *m.*, a sending: *missu* Caesaris, under Cæsar's orders

mittō, *mittere*, *misī*, *missus*, *trans.*, send, dispatch, discharge, shoot: *sub iugum mittere*, send under the yoke

mōbilis, -e [*moveo*], *adj.*, easily moved, movable, fickle, hasty

mōbilitās, -ātis [*mobilis*], *f.*, mobility, inconstancy, fickleness

mōbiliter, *adv.*, easily, readily

mōderor, -āri, -ātus [*modus*], *dep.*, *trans.* and *intrans.*, control, regulate, restrain

modo, *adv.*, only, merely, just, even, just now, lately: *non . . . modo*, not only

modus, -ī, *m.*, measure, quantity. Hence, manner, fashion, style, method

moenia, -ium [*munio*], *n. plur.*, fortifications, walls of a city

mōlēs, -is, *f.*, mass; dike, dam

molestē, *adv.*, heavily, severely: *moleste ferre*, take it ill, be vexed at

mōlimentum, -ī [*molior*, strive], *n.*, trouble, difficulty, exertion

molitus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *molo*

mollis, -e, *adj.*, soft; weak, feeble

mollitiēs, -ēi [*mollis*], *f.*, weakness

molō, -ere, -uī, -itus, *trans.*, grind

Mona, -ae, *f.*, the Isle of Man, off the coast of Britain

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *trans.*, remind, warn, advise, urge

mōns, *montis*, *m.*, mountain, height

mora, -ae, *f.*, delay, grounds of delay

morātus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *moror*

morbus, -ī, *m.*, sickness, illness

mōribus, *see* *mōs*

Morini, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of the Belgæ

morior, *morī*, *mortuus* [*mors*], *dep.*, *intrans.*, die

moror, -āri, -ātus [*mora*], *dep.*, *trans.* and *intrans.*, retard, check, delay

mors, *mortis*, *f.*, death: *sibi mortem consciscere*, commit suicide

mortuus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *morior*

mōs, *mōris*, *m.*, custom, usage. —

Plur., customs, habits, character
Mosa, -ae, *m.*, a river in Belgic Gaul, now the Meuse

mōtus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *moveo*

mōtus, -ūs [*moveo*], *m.*, movement, disturbance, uprising: *celer atque instabilis* (changes, of the passage of events in maritime warfare)

moveō, *movēre*, *mōvī*, *mōtus*, *trans.*, set in motion, move, remove: *castra* (move from a place to another; also, absolutely, break camp)

mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman

multitudō, -inis [*multus*], *f.*, great number; the multitude, the common people

multō — nāvigātiō

multō, *see* multusmultum, *see* multus

multus, -a, -um, *adj.*, much, many:
multo die, late in the day; *ad*
multam noctem, till late at night.
— multum, *neut. as noun and adv.*,
much. — *Also, plur., multa*, many
things, much, a great deal. — *Abl.*,
multō, much, far: multo facilius.

— *As comp.*, plūs, plūris, *n. noun*
and adv.: plur. *as adj.*, more,
much, very; *as noun*, several,
many. — *As superl.*, plūrimus, -a,
-um, most, very many, very much:
quam plurimi, as many as possible;
plurimum posse, have most power,
be very strong or influential; pluri-
mum valere, have very great weight

mundus, -ī, *m.*, universe, world

mūnimentum, -ī [munio], *n.*, a forti-
fication. — *Plur.*, a defense
mūniō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, *trans. and*
intrans., fortify; defend

mūnitiō, -ōnis [munio], *f.*, a fortifica-
tion, works, defenses

mūnus, -eris, *n.*, duty: munus mili-
tiae, military service. — *Also*, gift,
present

mūrālis, -e [murus], *adj.*, of a wall,
wall: pila (*heavy javelins for*
service in siege operations)

mūrus, -ī, *m.*, wall

mutilus, -a, -um, *adj.*, mutilated:
cornibus (with short broken horns,
of the elk)

nactus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* nanciscor
nam, *conj.*, for

Nammēius, -ī, *m.*, a Helvetian am-
bassador to Caesar

Namnetēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe of
western Gaul

namque, *conj.*, for (*a little more*
emphatic than nam)

nanciscor, -iscī, nactus, *dep., trans.*,
find, get, obtain

Nantuātēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe of
Gaul, near the Lake of Geneva

Narbō, -ōnis, *m.*, a city of the Roman
province of Gaul, now Narbonne
nāscor, nāscī, nātus, *dep., intrans.*,
be born, arise, spring up, be raised
(*of beasts*), be found (*plumbum*).

— nātus, -a, -um, *p.p.*, sprung,
born

Nasua, -ae, *m.*, a leader of the Suebi
nātālis, -e [natus], *adj.*, of birth:
dies natalis, birthday

nātiō, -ōnis [*cf. nascor*], *f.*, race,
tribe, clan

nātivus, -a, -um [*cf. nascor*], *adj.*,
native, natural

nātūra, -ae [*cf. nascor*], *f.*, nature,
character

nātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* nascor

nātus, -ūs [*cf. nascor*], *m.*, birth:
maiores natu, elders

nauta, -ae, *m.*, sailor, boatman

nauticus, -a, -um [nauta], *adj.*, of a
sailor (*or* sailors), naval

nāvālis, -e [navis], *adj.*, of ships,
naval

nāvicula, -ae [navis], *f.*, small vessel,
skiff

nāvigātiō, -ōnis [navigo], *f.*, voyage,
traveling by sea

nāvigium — nihilum

nāvigium, -i [navis], *n.*, vessel (*a general term*), boat

nāvigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [navis], *intrans.*, sail

nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship, vessel, boat: oneraria (transport); longa (war galley)

nāvō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, do zealously: operam (do one's best) -ne (*enclitic*), *adv. and conj.*, not? (*as a question, cf. nonne*), whether, did (*as a question in English*), do, etc.—*See also necne*

nē, *conj.*, lest, that . . . not, not to (*do anything*), from (*doing anything*), in order that . . . not, for fear that.—*After verbs of fearing*, that.—*Also adv.*, ne . . . quidem, not . . . even

nec, *see neque*

necessārius, -a, -um [necesse], *adj.*, necessary: tempus (critical).—*Also, as noun*, kinsman, close friend.—*Abl. as adv.*, necessāriō, necessarily, unavoidably

necease, *indecl. adj.*, necessary.—*With est*, one must

necessitās, -ātis [necesse], *f.*, necessity, constraint, compulsion

necessitūdō, -inis [necesse], *f.*, intimacy, close relations

necne [nec-ne], *conj.*, or not (*in double questions*)

necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, put to death, kill, murder

neglegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctus [neclego, gather], *trans.*, disregard, neglect

negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, say no, say . . . not, refuse

negōtior, -āri, -ātus [negotium], *dep., intrans.*, do business

negōtium, -i [nec-otium, ease], *n.*, business, occupation, undertaking: quid negoti, what business? dare negotium alicui, employ one, give in charge to.—*Less definitely*, matter, thing.—*Also*, difficulty, trouble

Nemetēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a German tribe on the Rhine

nēmō [ne-homo], *c.*, no one, nobody: non nemo, many a one

nēquāquam, *adv.*, in no way, by no means

neque (nec), *conj.*, and not, and yet . . . not, nor: neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor

nēquīquam, *adv.*, to no purpose, in vain

Nervicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Nervii, Nervian

Nervius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Nervian.—*Masc. plur.*, the Nervii, a powerful tribe of Belgic Gaul

nervus, -i, *m.*, sinew.—*Fig., in plur.*, strength, vigor

neu, *see neve*

neuter, -tra, -trum [ne-uter], *adj. and pron.*, neither.—*Plur.*, neither party, neither side

nēve (neu), *conj.*, or not, and not, nor

nex, necis, *f.*, violent death, execution

nihil, *see nihilum*

nihilum, -i [ne-hilum, trifle] (*also indecl., nihil*), *n.*, nothing: nihil

nisi — noxia

- reliqui, nothing left; **nihil respondere**, make no answer. — **nihilō**, *abl. as adv.*, none, no; **nihilō minus**, none the less. — **nihil**, *acc. as adv.*, not at all: **non nihil**, somewhat
- nisi**, *conj.*, unless, except
- nitor**, **niti**, **nixus** or **nisus**, *dep.*, *intrans.*, struggle: **niti insidiis** (rely upon)
- nobilis**, **-e** [*cf. nosco*], *adj.*, famous, noble, well-born. — *Plur. as noun*, the nobles
- nobilitās**, **-ātis** [*nobilis*], *f.*, the nobility, the nobles
- nocēns**, *see* **noceo**
- noceō**, **nocēre**, **nocuī**, *no p.p.*; *intrans.*, injure, harm, harass. — **nocēns**, **-entis**, *pres. p. as adj.*, guilty
- noctū**, *adv.*, by night
- nocturnus**, **-a**, **-um** [*nox*], *adj.*, nightly, nocturnal, by night
- nōdus**, **-ī**, *m.*, joint: **nodi et articuli**, protuberant joints
- nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, *no p.p.* [*ne-volo*], *irr.*, *intrans.*, be unwilling, wish not: **noli**, **nolite**, do not (*with infin.*)
- nōmen**, **-inis** [*cf. nosco*], *n.*, name; account: **nomine dotis** (on account of, as); **suo nomine**, on his own account; **nomine obsidum**, under pretense of hostages
- nōminātim** [*nomen*], *adv.*, by name (*individually*)
- nōminō**, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātus**, *trans.*, name, mention, call by name
- nōn**, *adv.*, not: **non est dubium**, there is no doubt
- nōnāgintā**, *indecl. num. adj.*, ninety
- nōndum**, *adv.*, not yet
- nōnne** [*non-ne*], *interrog. adv.*, suggesting an affirmative answer, not?
- nōn nullus**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, some
- nōn numquam**, *adv.*, sometimes
- nōnus**, **-a**, **-um**, *num. adj.*, ninth
- Nōrēia**, **-ae**, *f.*, a city of the Norici
- Nōricus**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, of the Norici, Norican
- nōs**, *see* **ego**
- nōscō**, **nōscere**, **nōvī**, **nōtus**, *trans.*, learn, become acquainted with. — *In perf. tenses*, know
- noster**, **-tra**, **-trum**, *possessive pronominal adj.*, our, ours. — *In plur.*, our men (*the Romans*), our forces
- nōtitia**, **-ae** [*notus*], *f.*, acquaintance with, knowledge
- nōtus**, *p.p. of* **nosco**
- novem**, *indecl. num. adj.*, nine
- Noviodūnum**, **-ī**, *n.*: 1. A town of the Bituriges, on the Loire. — 2. A town of the Suessiones
- novitās**, **-ātis** [*novus*], *f.*, novelty, strangeness
- novus**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, new, fresh: **res novae**, a change of government, revolution. — **novissimus**, **-a**, **-um**, *superl.*, latest, last: **agmen** (the rear)
- nox**, **noctis**, *f.*, night: **prima nocte**, in the early part of the night; **multa nocte**, late at night
- noxia**, **-ae** [*cf. noceo*], *f.*, crime, guilt

nūbō — obsidiō

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsi, nūptus, intrans.,
marry (*of the woman*)

nūdō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [nudus], trans.,
lay bare, expose, strip

nūdus, -a, -um, adj., naked, bare,
unprotected, exposed

nūllus, -a, -um, adj., not any, no. —
As noun, no one. — **nōn nūllus**,
some. — *Plur. as noun*, some,
some persons

num, interrog. adv., suggesting a
neg. answer; *no corresponding*
word in English

nūmen, -inis, n., will, power; divinity

numerus, -i, m., number: in hostium
numero habuit (*in the place of, as,*
etc., euphemism for slaughtered)

Numida, -ae, m., a Numidian (Nu-
midians were employed in the
Roman army as cavalry)

nummus, -i, m., coin

numquam, adv., never

nunc, adv., now

nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [nuntius],
trans., send news, report, make
known: **nūntiatum est ei . . . ne**,
he was ordered not to *etc.*

nūntius, -i, m., messenger. Hence,
news: **nuntium mittere**, send
word; **per eorum nuntios** (*agents*)

nūper, adv., lately, recently, not
long ago

nūptum, see nūbō

nūtus, -ūs [nuo, nod], m., a nod:
ad nutum, at one's command

ob, prep. with acc., against; on ac-
count of, for: **ob eam rem**, for this

reason, on this account. — *In com-*
position, towards, to, against, over
obaerātus, -a, -um [ob-aes], adj.,
bound in debt. — *As noun*, debtor,
servant for debt

obdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus,
trans., lead towards, lead against:
fossam (*throw out, in a military*
sense, carry along)

obeō, -ire, -ii, itus, irr., trans., go
to, go about, attend to

obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [ob-iacio],
trans., throw against, throw in
the way, present, set up, expose.

— **obiectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj.**,
lying opposite, lying in the way

obiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of obicio

obitus, -ūs [obeo], m., destruction,
annihilation

oblātus, -a, -um, p. p. of offero

obliquē, adv., obliquely, slanting

obliviscor, -livisci, -litus, dep., trans.
and intrans., forget

obsecrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ob-sacrum],
sacred thing], trans., entreat, im-
plore, beg

observō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans.,
pay attention to: **iudicium** (fol-
low, comply with); **diem natalem**
(keep, celebrate)

obses, -idis [cf. obsideo], c., hostage

obsessus, -a, -um, p. p. of obsideo

obsideō, -sidere, -sēdi, -sessus [ob-
sedeo, sit], trans., blockade, beset,
guard

obsidiō, -ōnis [cf. obsideo], f., siege,
blockade: **obsidione liberare** (*from*
besetting enemies)

obsignō — offerō

obsignō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans.,
 seal up, seal
obstinātē, adv., persistently
obstrictus, -a, -um, p.p. of obstringo
obstringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -stric-
tus, trans., bind: *habere obstrictas*
 (under obligation)
obtemperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, in-
trans., comply with, submit to
obtestor, -ārī, -ātus, dep., trans.,
 implore, call to witness
obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [ob-
teneo], trans., retain, maintain,
 occupy, possess
obtuli, perf. of offero
obveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus,
intrans., meet
obviam, adv., in the way of, to meet
 (any one): *obviam venire*, come
 to meet
occāsiō, -ōnis [occido], f., opportunity
occāsus, -ūs [occido], m., a falling,
 a setting (of the sun): *solis* (the
 sunset, the west)
occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus [ob-
cado], intrans., fall, be slain, set:
sol occidens, the west
occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsus [ob-caedo],
trans., kill, massacre: *occisi*, the
 slain
occultātiō, -ōnis [occulto], f., con-
 cealment
occultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [occultus],
trans., conceal, hide
occultus, -a, -um [p.p. of occulo,
 hide], *adj.,* concealed: *in occulto*,
 in secret; *ex occulto*, from an am-
 bush, in ambush

occupātiō, -ōnis [occupo], f., occupa-
 tion, business affairs: *occupationes*
tantularum rerum, engagement in
 such trifling matters
occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans.,
 seize, take possession of: *regna*
 (usurp); *in opere occupati* (en-
 gaged, employed)
occurō, -currere, -curri, -cursūrus [ob-
curro, run], intrans., meet, come
 on, find: *eo* (run, to meet an enemy)
Ōceanus, -ī, m., ocean
Ocelum, -ī, n., a town in Cisalpine
 Gaul
octāvus, -a, -um [octo], num. adj.,
 eighth
octingenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., plur.,
 eight hundred
octō, indecl. num. adj., eight
Octodūrus, -ī, m., a town of the
 Veragri
octōgintā, indecl. num. adj., eighty
oculus, -ī, m., the eye
ōdī, ōdisse, defective, trans., hate,
 detest
odium, -ī [cf. odi], n., hatred
offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus
[ob-fendo, strike], trans. and in-
trans., dash against, hurt: *ani-*
imum (hurt the feelings)
offēnsiō, -ōnis [offendo], f., offense:
sine offensione animi, without
 wounding one's feelings
offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātus [ob-
fero], irr., trans., throw in one's
 way, offer: *se morti* (expose one's
 self to); *quos sibi oblatos* (placed
 in his power).

officium — opus

- officium**, -i, *n.*, service, performance of a duty; duty, allegiance, obligation: *discedere ab officio*, fail in one's duty
- omittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missus [*ob-mitto*], *trans.*, let go by: *consilium* (leave untried, neglect); *omnibus omissis rebus*, leaving everything else
- omniñō** [*omnis*], *adv.*, altogether, entirely, in general, on the whole, only, utterly, in all, at all, whatever (*with negatives*)
- omnis**, -e, *adj.*, all, the whole of. — *In sing.*, every: *omni tempore*, on all occasions, always. — *In plur.*, a short expression for all others
- onerārius**, -a, -um [*onus*], *adj.*, for burdens: *naves* (transports)
- onus**, -eris, *n.*, burden, weight. — *Esp.*, *tanta onera navium*, ships of such weight
- opera**, -ae [*opus*], *f.*, work, pains, attention: *operam navare*, do one's best; *operam dare*, devote one's self, exert one's self, take pains
- opiniō**, -ōnis [*opinor*, think], *f.*, notion, expectation: *celerius omni opinione*, quicker than any one would suppose; *idea*, reputation
- oportet**, -ēre, -uit, *intrans.*, *impers.*, it ought, it is best: *poenam sequi* (the punishment was to follow); *frumentum metiri* (he ought *etc.*)
- oppidānus**, -a, -um [*oppidum*], *adj.*, of a town. — *Plur. as noun*, townspeople
- oppidum**, -i, *n.*, stronghold, town
- oppōnō**, -pōnere, -posui, -positus [*ob-pono*], *trans.*, oppose
- opportūnē**, *adv.*, opportunely, seasonably
- opportunitās**, -ātis [*opportunus*], *f.*, timeliness, fitness, good luck, favorable chance
- opportūnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, opportune, advantageous, lucky
- oppositus**, -a, -um [*p.p. of oppono*], *adj.*, opposed, opposite
- oppressus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of opprimo*
- opprimō**, -primere, -pressi, -pressus [*ob-premo*], *trans.*, overwhelm, crush, overpower, overtake, surprise
- oppugnātiō**, -ōnis [*oppugno*], *f.*, siege, attack
- oppugnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ob-pugno*], *trans.*, attack, lay siege to
- ops**, opis, *f.*, help, aid. — *Plur.*, resources, means, strength, wealth
- optātus**, -a, -um [*p.p. of opto*, wish], *adj.*, desired
- optimē**, *superl. of bene*
- optimus**, -a, -um, *superl. of bonus*
- opus**, *n.*, *indecl.*, need, necessity: *si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset*, if he needed anything of Caesar; *si quid opus facto*, if anything needs to be done
- opus**, operis, *n.*, work, labor. — *In a military sense*, a work, works, fortifications: *natura et opere munitus* (by nature and art). — *In abl.*, *magno opere*, very much, very, greatly; *quanto opere*, how

ōra — pār

- much; *tanto opere*, so much, so, so earnestly; *often as one word*, *magnopere*, *tantopere*
- ōra**, -ae, *f.*, shore, coast
- ōrātiō**, -ōnis [*oro*], *f.*, speech, address, discourse, argument
- ōrātor**, -ōris [*oro*], *m.*, speaker, ambassador, envoy
- orbis**, -is, *m.*, circle: *orbis terrarum*, the circle of lands, the whole world
- Orcynia**, -ae, *f.*, see *Hercynius*
- ōrdō**, -inis, *m.*, series, row, tier, rank (*of soldiers*), grade (*of centurions*, as *commanding special ordines of soldiers*, also the *centurions themselves*), arrangement, order
- Orgetorix**, -igis, *m.*, a nobleman of the Helvetii
- orior**, **orīrī**, **ortus**, *dep.*, *intrans.*, arise, spring up: *orta luce*, at daybreak. — *Fig.*, begin, start, arise, have its source. — **oriēns**, -entis, *pres. p. as adj.*, rising: *sol* (sunrise, the east)
- ōrnāmentum**, -ī [*orno*], *n.*, an adornment; an honor
- ōrnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, adorn, equip, furnish. — *Fig.*, honor. — **ōrnātus**, -a, -um, *p. p. as adj.*, furnished, well-equipped, honored
- ōrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, speak; pray, entreat
- ortus**, -a, -um, *p. p. of orior*
- ōs**, **ōris**, *n.*, the mouth, the face
- Osismī**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a coast tribe of northwestern Gaul
- ostendō**, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus [*obs-* (= *ob*), *tendo*], *trans.*, present, show, point out, make known, state, declare
- ostentō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, display, exhibit
- ōtium**, -ī, *n.*, repose, inactivity, quiet
- ōvum**, -ī, *n.*, egg
- P.**, *abbr. for Publius*
- pābulātiō**, -ōnis [*pabulor*], *f.*, a foraging, getting fodder
- pābulātor**, -ōris [*pabulor*], *m.*, forager
- pābulor**, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *intrans.*, forage, gather fodder
- pābulum**, -ī [*cf. pasco*, feed], *n.*, fodder
- pācō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*pac*], *trans.*, pacify, subdue. — **pācātus**, -a, -um, *p. p. as adj.*, peaceable, quiet
- paene**, *adv.*, almost, nearly
- paenitet**, -ēre, -uit, *trans.*, *impers.*, it repents (*one*), one repents, one regrets
- pāgus**, -ī, *m.*, district, canton
- palam**, *adv.*, openly, publicly
- palma**, -ae, *f.*, the palm (*of the hand*); palm tree
- palūs**, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh
- palūster**, -tris, -tre [*palus*], *adj.*, marshy, swampy
- pandō**, **pandere**, **pandī**, **passus** or **pānsus**, *trans.*, spread out: **passis manibus**, with outstretched hands; **passis capillis**, with disheveled hair
- pār**, **paris**, *adj.*, equal, alike, like

parcō — paulisper

parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus, in-
trans., spare. — *Esp.*, save alive:

parcendo, by economy, by frugality
parēns, -entis [*pario*, bear], *c.*, parent
**parentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.,
avenge**

pārēō, pārēre, pārui, no p.p., in-
trans., appear; obey, submit to

Parisiī, -ōrum, m. plur., a Gallic
tribe in the district where Paris
is now

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., pro-
cure, provide, prepare, arrange.
— **parātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj.**,
ready, prepared

pars, partis, f., portion, part, share.
— *Often of position or direction*
merely, side, direction, region:
una ex parte, on one side; **ex**
utroque parte, on both sides. —
Fig., **qua ex parte**, in which re-
spect; **omnibus partibus**, in all
respects. — *Esp.*, **tres partes**, three
quarters (*three parts out of four*);
ex parte, in part. — **partim, old**
acc. as adv., in part, partly, some
... others

partim, see pars

partior, -iri, -itus, dep., trans., divide
parum, adv., not much, not suffi-
ciently: **parum diligenter**, too
carelessly

parvulus, -a, -um [*parvus*], *adj.*,
small, slight, insignificant

parvus, -a, -um, adj., small, slight,
little

passim, adv., in all directions, all
about

passus, -a, -um, p.p. of pando; also
p.p. of patior

passus, -ūs, m., step, pace (*the*
distance from the point where
the heel leaves the ground to the
point where the same heel again
touches the ground; really a
double step, about five Roman
feet): **mille passūs** or **mille pas-**
uum, a Roman mile, five thou-
sand feet

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus
[*pateo-facio*], *trans.*, lay open,
open

patefiō, -fieri, pass. of patefacio

pateō, -ēre, -uī, no p.p., intrans.,
be extended, lie open, spread, ex-
tend. — **patēns, -entis, pres. p. as**
adj., open, exposed

pater, -tris, m., father. — *Plur.*, an-
cestors

patientia, -ae [*patiens*, suffering], *f.*,
patience, endurance

patior, pati, passus, dep., trans.,
suffer, endure, allow, permit

patrius, -a, -um [*pater*], *adj.*, ances-
tral, of one's fathers

patruus, -ī [*pater*], *m.*, uncle (*on the*
father's side)

paucitās, -ātis [*paucus*], *f.*, small
number

paucus, -a, -um, adj., almost always
in plur., few, some few: **paucis**
(*pauca*) **respondit** (*in a few words,*
briefly)

paulātim, adv., little by little, a
little at a time, gradually

paulisper, adv., a little while

paulō — perequītō

paulō [*abl. of paulus*, little], *adv.*, a little, slightly

paululum [*paulum*], *adv.*, a very little

paulum [*acc. of paulus*, little], *adv.*, a little, a short distance, somewhat

pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace, favor

peccō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, go wrong, commit a fault

pecūnia, -ae [*pecus*], *f.*, money, wealth

pecus, -oris, *n.*, cattle (*esp. sheep and goats*): pecore vivere (*flesh of cattle*). — *Plur.*, cattle, flocks and herds

pedālis, -e [*pes*], *adj.*, a foot thick

pedes, -itis [*pes*], *m.*, footman, foot soldier. — *Collectively*, the infantry

pedester, -tris, -tre [*pedes*], *adj.*, of infantry, of persons on foot: copiae (*the foot, the infantry*)

peditātus, -ūs [*pedes*], *m.*, foot, infantry

Pedius, -i, *m.*, a Roman gentile name. — *Esp.*, Quintus Pedius, a nephew of Cæsar and a legatus under him in Gaul

peior, *see* malus

peius, *see* male

pellis, -is, *f.*, hide, skin (*either on or off the body of an animal*): sub pellibus, in tents, *i. e.* in the field

pellō, pellere, pepuli, pulsus, *trans.*, beat, drive, defeat, repulse

pēdō, pendere, pependi, pēnsus, *trans.*, weigh, weigh out; pay, pay out. — *Also*, pay (*a penalty*), suffer (*punishment*)

penitus, *adv.*, far within: penitus ad extremos fines (*clear to, all the way to*)

per, *prep. with acc.*, through, along, over, among, by means of. — *In composition, as adv.*, very, exceedingly, completely

perāctus, -a, -um, *p. p. of* perago

peragō, -agere, -ēgi, -āctus, *trans.*, finish, accomplish

perangustus, -a, -um, *adj.*, very narrow

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [*percapio*], *trans.*, learn, acquire, hear; reap: fructus victoriae

percontātiō, -ōnis [*percontor*, inquire], *f.*, inquiry

percurrō, -currere, -cucurri, -cursus, *trans. and intrans.*, run along

perdiscō, -discere, -didici, *no p. p.*, *trans.*, learn thoroughly, get by heart

perditus, -a, -um, *p. p. of* perdo

perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus, *trans.*, destroy, ruin. — *perditus*, -a, -um, *p. p. as adj.*, ruined, desperate, abandoned

perducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, *trans.*, lead through, lead along, bring over, make (*fossam*). — *Fig.*, prolong, win over, bring

perendinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of day after to-morrow: perendino die, day after to-morrow, in two days

pereō, -ire, -ii, -itūrus, *irr., intrans.*, perish, be killed

perequītō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, ride through (*or around*)

perexiguus — perstō

perexiguus, -a, -um, *adj.*, very small
perfacilis, -e, *adj.*, very easy

perferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, *irr.*,

trans., carry through (or over):

opinionem (spread among); con-

silium (carry over); famam (bring).

— Also, bear through (to the end),

endure, suffer, submit to

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*per-*

facio], *trans.*, accomplish, com-

plete, finish; cause to

perfidia, -ae [*perfidus*, treacherous],

f., treachery, faithlessness

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -fractus

[*per-frango*], *trans.*, break through

perfuga, -ae [*cf. perfugio*], *m.*, fugi-

tive, deserter

perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, *no p.p.*, *in-*

trans., run away, escape to, desert

perfugium, -ī [*perfugio*], *n.*, place of

refuge, refuge

pergō, pergere, **perrēxi**, **perrēctus** [*per-*

rego], *intrans.*, keep on, advance

periclitōr, -ārī, -ātus [*periculum*], *dep.*,

trans. and intrans., try, make a

trial, be put in peril

periculōsus, -a, -um [*periculum*], *adj.*,

dangerous

periculum, -ī, *n.*, trial, attempt.

Hence, peril, danger, risk

perītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, experienced,

skilled, skillful

perlātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of perfero*

perluō, -luere, -luī, -lūtus, *trans.*, wash

all over. — *Pass. (as reflex.)*, bathe

permaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsū-

rus, *intrans.*, remain (to the end),

continue, hold out, persist

permittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus,

trans., grant, allow, give up, in-

trust

permovēō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtus,

trans., influence, affect. — **permō-**

tus, -a, -um, *p.p.*, much affected,

much influenced, overcome

permulcēō, -mulcēre, -mulsī, -mul-

sus, *trans.*, soothe, pacify

perniciēs, -ēi, *f.*, destruction, ruin

perpaucus, -a, -um, *adj.*, always in

the plur., very few, precious few

perpendicularum, -ī, *n.*, plumb line:

ad perpendicularum, perpendicularly

perpetuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, continuous,

without interruption, lasting, per-

manent: in perpetuum, forever,

permanently. — **perpetuō**, *abl. as*

adv., forever, constantly, con-

tinually

perquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitus

[*per-quaero*], *trans.*, search for,

inquire about

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus,

trans. and intrans., break through,

force one's way through

perruptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of perrumpo*

persequor, -sequi, -secūtus, *dep.*,

trans., follow up, pursue, attack

perseverō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, *in-*

trans., persist

persolvō, -solvere, -solvi, -solūtus,

trans., pay, suffer (*punishment*)

perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus,

trans., see through; understand,

learn, observe, discover

perstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, *in-*

trans., stand firm, persist

persuādēō — plērusque

persuādēō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, trans. and intrans., induce, persuade. — *Pass. (impers.),* be persuaded (*dat. of person*), be satisfied, believe

perterreō, -terrēre, -terrui, -territus, trans., terrify, alarm

pertinācia, -ae [pertinax, obstinate], f., obstinacy, stubbornness

pertineō, -tinēre, -tinui, no p.p. [per-teneo], intrans., tend, extend; have to do with: *eodem illo ut etc.* (have the same purpose)

pertuli, see *perfero*

perturbātiō, -ōnis [perturbo], f., disturbance, alarm, panic

perturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., disturb, throw into confusion, alarm, terrify

pervenio, -venire, -veni, -venturus, intrans., arrive at, reach, come, arrive: *ad hunc locum* (come to this point); *pars* (*of property*, come, fall)

pēs, pedis, m., the foot. — *Also, as a measure,* a foot. — *Esp.,* *pedem referre*, draw back, give way

petō, petere, petivī, petitus, trans., attack, make for, try to get, seek, go to. *Hence,* ask, request: *petentibus Haeduis* (at the request of *etc.*); *fugam* (take to)

Petrosidius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name. — *Esp.,* Lucius Petrosidius, a standard bearer in Caesar's army

phalanx, -angis, f., phalanx

Pictonēs, -um, m. plur., a Gallic tribe south of the Loire

pietās, -ātis [pius, loyal], f., patriotism

pilum, -i, n., javelin

pilus, -i, m., century (*of soldiers*). — *Also,* centurion (*of a particular rank*): *primi pili centurio* (of the first century or rank)

piscis, -is, m., a fish. — *Collectively,* fish

Piso, -ōnis, m., a Roman family name. — *Esp.:* 1. Lucius Calpurnius Piso, a legatus in the army of Cassius which was defeated by the Helvetii in 107 B. C., and grandfather of No. 2. — 2. Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus, father of Calpurnia, Caesar's wife. — 3. Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus, consul with M. Messala in 61 B. C. — 4. Piso, an Aquitanian.

pix, picis, f., pitch

placeō, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus, intrans., please. — *Esp. in third person,* it pleases (*one*), one likes, one determines

placō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., pacify, appease

plānē, adv., flatly, clearly, entirely

plānitiēs, -ei [planus], f., plain

plānus, -a, -um, adj., flat, level, even: *carinae planiores* (less deep, less rounding)

plēbs, -is (or plēbēs, -ei), f., the common people

plēnē, adv., fully, entirely, completely

plēnus, -a, -um, adj., full

plērusque, -aque, -umque, adj., only in plur., most of, very many. —

plumbum — possum

- plērumque**, *acc. sing. as adv.*, generally, usually, for the most part, very often
- plumbum**, -ī, *n.*, lead. — **plumbum album**, tin
- plūrimus**, *see multus*
- plūs**, *see multus*
- pluteus**, -ī, *m.*, screen, cover (*movable, for defense*), bulwark, defense, breastwork
- pōcūlum**, -ī [*cf. potus*, drink], *n.*, drinking cup
- poena**, -ae, *f.*, penalty; punishment
- pollex**, -icis, *m.*, the thumb
- polliceor**, -licēri, -licitus, *dep., trans.*, offer, promise: *liberaliter* (make liberal offers)
- pollicitātiō**, -ōnis [*polliceor*], *f.*, offer, promise
- pollicitus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of polliceor*
- Pompēius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or family name. — *Esp.*: 1. Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, the great rival of Cæsar, consul with Marcus Crassus in 55 B.C. — 2. Gnaeus Pompeius, an interpreter of Quintus Titurius Sabinus
- pondus**, -eris, *n.*, weight
- pōnō**, **pōnere**, **posuī**, **positus**, *trans.*, lay down, place, put: **castra** (pitch); **praesidium** (station, *but see below*). — *Fig.*, place, lay, make depend on: **in fuga praesidium and spem salutis in virtute** (find, found, seek). — **positus**, -a, -um, *p.p.*, situated, lying, depending on
- pōns**, **pontis**, *m.*, bridge
- populātiō**, -ōnis [*populor*], *f.*, a plundering, raid
- populor**, -ārī, -ātus, *dep., trans.*, ravage, devastate
- populus**, -ī, *m.*, people, nation, tribe: **populus Romanus** (*the official designation of the Roman state*)
- porrigō**, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctus, *trans.*, stretch forth: **porrecta loca pertinent** (stretch out in extent)
- porrō**, *adv.*, furthermore, further, then
- porta**, -ae, *f.*, gate
- portō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, carry, bring, convey
- portōrium**, -ī, *n.*, duty, toll
- portus**, -ūs, *m.*, harbor, haven, port
- poscō**, **poscere**, **poposci**, *no p.p.*, *trans.*, demand, require, claim
- positus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of pono*
- possessiō**, -ōnis [*possideo*], *f.*, possession, occupation; possessions, lands
- possideō**, -sidēre, -sēdi, -sessus [*por* (= *pro*), *sedeo*, sit], *trans.*, occupy (*in a military sense*), possess, hold
- possum**, **posse**, **potuī**, *no p.p., irr., intrans.*, be able, can, *etc.*: **plurimum posse**, be most powerful, have very great influence; **tantum potest**, has so much weight, power, influence; **largiter posse**, have great influence; **multitudine posse**, be strong in numbers; **equitatu nihil posse**, have no strength in cavalry; **quicquid possunt**, whatever power they have; **quid virtute possent**, what they could do

post — praecipio

by valor; *feri posse*, be possible;
ut spatium intercedere posset
 (might intervene); *quam maxi-*
mum potest, the greatest possible
post, *adv.*, and *prep.* with *acc.*,
 behind, after: *post se*, in their
 rear

postea, *adv.*, afterwards

posteaquam, *conj.*, after

posterus, -a, -um, *adj.*, the next,
 later: *postero die*, the next day;
 in *posterum*, the next day. *Plur.*
as noun, posterity. — *postrēmus*,
 -a, -um, *superl.*, last. — *postrēmō*,
abl. as *adv.*, lastly, finally

postponō, -ponere, -posui, -positus,
trans., place behind, postpone:
omnibus rebus postpositis, disre-
 garding everything else

postquam, *conj.*, after

postrēmō, *see posterus*

postrēmus, *see posterus*

postridiē [*posterus-dies*], *adv.*, the
 next day: *postridie eius diei*, the
 next day after that

postulātum, -ī [*n. p.p. of postulo*],
n., demand, request, claim

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*,
 claim, ask, request, require: *tem-*
pus anni (make necessary)

potēns, -entis [*pres. p. of possum*],
adj., powerful, influential

potentātus, -ūs [*potens*], *m.*, the
 chief power, supremacy

potentia, -ae [*potens*], *f.*, power,
 authority (*not official or legal*)

potestās, -ātis [*potis*, able], *f.*,
 power (*official, cf. potentia, and*

civil, not military, cf. imperium),
 control, ability, opportunity,
 chance: *sui potestatem facere*,
 give a chance at them, give an
 opportunity to fight them

potior, *potiri*, *potitus*, *dep., intrans.*,
 become master of, get the control
 of (*abl. or gen.*)

potior, -us, -ōris, *adj.*, preferable. —
potius, *acc. as adv.*, rather, prefer-
 ably

potitus, -a, -um, *p.p. of potior*

prae, *prep.* with *abl.*, before, in com-
 parison with. — *Esp. with words*
implying hindrance, for, on ac-
 count of (*some obstacle*). — *In*
composition, before others, very,
 before, at the head of

praeacūtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sharpened
 to a point, pointed

praebēō, *praebēre*, *praebui*, *praebitus*
 [*prae-habeo*], *trans.*, offer, present,
 furnish

praecaveō, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautus,
intrans., take care beforehand,

take precaution, be on one's guard
praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus,
trans., go before; excel, surpass

praeceps, -cipitis [*prae-caput*], *adj.*,
 headlong, in haste: *locus prae-*
ceps, a steep incline, a precipitous
 place

praecceptum, -ī [*p.p. of praecipio*],
n., an instruction, an order

praecipio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus
 [*prae-capio*], *trans.*, take before-
 hand, anticipate; order, give in-
 structions

praecipitō — praesum

praecipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*praiceps*], *trans.*, throw headlong: *se* (plunge headlong)

praecipuē [*praecipuus*, special], *adv.*, especially

praefūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [*prae-claudō*], *trans.*, shut off, barricade

Praeconinus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name

praeda, -ae, *f.*, booty, prey, plunder

praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, proclaim, assert, describe, boast

praedor, -ārī, -ātus [*praeda*], *dep.*, *intrans.*, plunder, take booty

praefectus, -a, -um, *p.p. of praeficio*.

— *As noun, see praeficio*

praeferrō, -ferre, -tullī, -lātus, *irr.*, *trans.*, place before, esteem above, prefer to (*with quam*): *se alicui* (show one's self better than)

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*prae-facio*], *trans.*, put before, place in command of, set over. — **praefectus**, -ī, *m. of p.p. as noun*, captain (*esp. of cavalry*), commander, officer

praefigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, *trans.*, fix in front

praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *trans.*, send forward, send on, send ahead

praemium, -ī, *n.*, reward, prize, distinction

praeeoccupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, take beforehand

praeeoptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, choose rather, prefer

praeparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, prepare beforehand

praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *trans.*, put in command, set over

praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *trans.*, break off. — **praeruptus**,

-a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, precipitous

praescribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptus, *trans.*, order, direct, give directions

praescriptum, -ī [*n. p.p. of praescribo*], *n.*, an order, orders

praesēns, -entia, *see praesum*

praesentia, -ae [*praesens*], *f.*, presence, the present moment: *in praesentia*, for the moment, at the moment

praesertim, *adv.*, especially, particularly

praesidium, -ī [*praesideo*, sit before], *n.*, a guard, garrison, a force; protection, safety: *in fuga praesidium ponere*, seek safety in flight

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātus, *trans. and intrans.*, stand before, excel, be superior: **praestat**, it is better. — *Also, causatively*, furnish, display: **officium** (discharge, perform)

praestō, *adv.*, on hand, ready: **praesto esse**, be waiting for, meet

praesum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, be in front, be at the head of, be in command: **magistratui** (hold). — **praesēns**, -entis,

pres. p., present, immediate: **pluribus praesentibus**, in the presence of many

praeter — prō

praeter, *adv.*, and *prep.* with *acc.*, along by, past, beyond. — *Fig.*, except, beside, contrary to
praeterea, *adv.*, furthermore, besides
praetereō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *irr.*, *trans.* and *intrans.*, go by, pass by, pass over. — **praeteritus**, -a, -um, *p.p.* as *adj.*, past. — *Esp.*, **praeterita**, *n. plur.*, the past
praetermittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, *trans.*, let slip, omit, neglect
praetor, -ōris [*praeco*, go before], *m.*, commander. — *Esp.*, praetor, *one of a class of magistrates at Rome: legatus pro praetore* (lieutenant in command, acting as a praetor)
praetōrius, -a, -um [*praetor*], *adj.*, of a praetor (*in all its senses*): **praetoria cohors**, the bodyguard of a commander
praefūrō, -fūrere, -ussī, -ūstus, *trans.*, burn at the end
premō, premere, pressi, pressus, *trans.*, press hard, attack fiercely, harass, oppress: *se ipsi* (crowd, impede)
prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsus, *trans.*, seize, take, grasp
pretium, -i, *n.*, price, cost, value
† **prex**, *precis* (*sing. in dat.*, *acc.*, and *abl. only*; *plur. entire*), *f.*, prayer, entreaty, imprecation
prīdiē, *adv.*, the day before
primipilus [*primus-pilus*], *m.*, the first centurion
primō [*abl. of primus*], *adv.*, at first
primum [*acc. of primus*], *adv.*, first, in the first place: *cum primum*,

as soon as; *quam primum*, as soon as possible

primus, *see prior*

princeps, -ipis [*primus-capio*], *adj.*, first, chief, foremost: *locus* (chief, highest); *ea princeps persolvit* (was the first to). — *Often as noun*, leader, chief: **legationis** (head)

principatus, -ūs [*princeps*], *m.*, foremost position, first place, leadership

prior, -us, -ōris, *adj.*, former, before: **priores**, those in front. — **prius**, *n. as adv.*, before (*see also priusquam*). — **primus**, -a, -um, *superl.*, first: **agmen** (front); *in primis*, especially. — *See primo and primum*

pristinus, -a, -um [*prius*], *adj.*, old, former: **pristinus dies**, the day before

prius, *see prior*

priusquam, *conj.*, earlier than, before. *Often separated*, *prius . . . quam*

privātim [*privatus*], *adv.*, privately, as private persons

privātus, -a, -um [*p.p. of privo*, deprive], *adj.*, private, personal

prō (*prōd in some compounds*), *prep. with abl.*, in front of, before. Hence, in place of, instead of, for, as, on behalf of: **pro explorato**, ascertained, as certain. — *Also*, in view of, in accordance with, in proportion to, considering, in return for, for. —

probō — prohibeō

In composition, before, forth, away, for, down (*as falling forward*)

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, approve, test, prove; show, be satisfied with

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessurus, *intrans.*, go forward, advance: longius (go to a distance)

Proculus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name

prōcōnsul, -ulī, *m.*, proconsul, ex-consul (*during his term of service abroad*)

procul, *adv.*, at a distance, afar, from afar

prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, *no p.p.* [*pro-cumbo*, lie], *intrans.*, fall, sink down, lie down; incline, slope

prōcūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, care for, have charge of, attend to

prōcurrō; -currere, -curri, -cursurus, *intrans.*, run forward, charge, rush out

prōdeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus [*prod* (*see pro*), *eo*], *irr.*, *intrans.*, go forth, come forth, come out, go forward

prōditiō, -ōnis [*prodo*], *f.*, treason, treachery

prōditor, -ōris [*prodo*], *m.*, traitor, betrayer

prōditus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *prodo*

prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [*pro-do*, put], *trans.*, give forth, publish, betray, transmit, hand down

prōducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, *trans.*, lead out, bring out, draw up (*troops*); protract, prolong

proellor, -ārī, -ātus [*proelium*], *dep.*, *intrans.*, fight (*in war*)

proelium, -ī, *n.*, battle, contest, skirmish: committere (engage, join battle, risk a battle)

profectiō, -ōnis [*proficiscor*], *f.*, a setting out, departure

prōfectus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *proficiscor*

prōfectus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *proficio*

prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*pro-facio*], *trans. and intrans.*, accomplish: satis ad laudem profectum est, enough has been done for glory

proficiscor, -ficisci, -fectus, *dep.*, *intrans.*, start, leave, depart, set out: ad proficiscendum pertinere (to a journey)

profiteor, -fiterī, -fessus [*pro-fateor*, confess], *dep.*, *trans. and intrans.*, declare publicly

prōfligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, dash to the ground; put to rout, rout

prōfluō, -fluere, -flūxi, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, flow forth, rise

profugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, -fugitūrus, *intrans.*, flee, escape

prōgnātus, -a, -um [*pro-natus*, *p.p.* of *nascor*], *adj.*, sprung from: prognati ex, descendants of

prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus [*pro-gradior*, step, go], *dep.*, *intrans.*, go forward, march forward; proceed, go

prōgressus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *progredior*

prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibui, -hibitus [*pro-habeo*], *trans.*, keep off, repel, stop, prevent, forbid; protect

prōiciō — prōturbō

prōiciō, -icere, -lēcī, -lectus [*pro-icio*], *trans.*, throw forward, throw away, abandon: *se ex navi* (leap)

proinde, *adv.*, therefore, hence

prōmiscuē, *adv.*, in common

prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missus, *trans.*, let grow: *promisso capillo sunt*, they wear long hair

prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, *trans.*, move forward, advance, push forward

prōptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ready, quick, active

prōmunturium, -ī, *n.*, headland

prōnē, *adv.*, with a slope

prōnūtiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, make known, communicate, give orders, declare, make proclamation
prope, *prep. with acc.*, near. — *Fig.*, almost, nearly. — **propius**, *comp.*, *adv.*, nearer: *propius tumultum* (as *prep.*). — **proximē**, *superl.*, *adv.*, lately, last

prōpellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus, *trans.*, drive away, repulse, rout, dislodge, force back

propērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *intrans.*, hasten, hurry

propinquitās, -ātis [*propinquus*], *f.*, vicinity; **propinquitates fluminum** (positions near). — *Esp.*, nearness in blood, relationship

propinquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, near at hand, near. — *Esp. by blood*, related. — *As noun in plur.*, relatives

propior, -us, -ōris [*prope*], *adj.*, nearer. — **proximus**, *superl.*, nearest, next, neighboring: *bellum*

(last). — *With force of prep.*, **proximi Rhenum**, nearest the Rhine

prōponō, -ponere, -posui, -positus, *trans.*, place before; offer, put in the way, make known, state, represent

proprius, -a, -um [*prope*], *adj.*, of one's own: *finēs* (particular); *hoc proprium virtutis* (a peculiar property, a mark)

propter [*prope*], *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.*, close by. — *Also*, on account of

propterea, *adv.*, on this account. — *With quod*, because

prōpugnātor, -ōris, *m.*, defender

prōpugnō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus, *intrans.*, rush out (*fighting*), discharge missiles (*ex silvis*)

prōpulsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, repel, keep off, drive off

prōra, -ae, *f.*, prow (*of a ship*)

prōruō, -ruere, -rui, -rutus, *trans.*, dash down, overthrow, demolish

prōrutus, -a, -um, *p. p. of proruo*

prōsequor, -sequi, -secutus, *dep.*, *trans.*, pursue, escort; address

prōspectus, -ūs [*prospicio*], *m.*, outlook, view

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectus, *trans.*, look forward, look out; provide for, take care

prōtinus, *adv.*, straightway, forthwith, at once

prōturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, drive in confusion, drive off, dislodge

prōvectus — quæstiō

prōvectus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *proveho*
prōvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus,
trans., carry forward. — *In pass.*,
 be carried forth, sail: *leni Africo*
provectus (sail with, be driven by)
prōvideō, -vidēre, -vidī, -visus, *trans.*,
 foresee, take care, provide, ar-
 range beforehand: *satis est pro-*
visum, sufficient provision has
 been made

prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, office (of a com-
 mander or governor), province
 (in general); also, a province
 (governed by a Roman magis-
 trate). — *Esp.*, the Province (of
Gaul)

prōvisus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *provideo*
prōvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*,
 rush out, fly out (of cavalry etc.)

proximē, see *prope*

proximus, see *proplior*

prūdētia, -ae [*prudens*, foreseeing],
f., foresight, discretion

Ptiāniī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a people
 of Aquitania

publicē, *adv.*, in the name of the
 state, publicly

publicus, -a, -um [*populus*], *adj.*, of
 the people, of the state, public:
res publica, commonwealth, state

Pūblius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman prænomen
pudor, -ōria, *m.*, sense of shame,
 sense of honor

puer, -ī, *m.*, boy. — *Plur.*, children
 (of either sex): a *pueria*, from
 childhood

puerilia, -e [*puer*], *adj.*, of a child:
aetas (of childhood)

pugna, -ae, *f.*, fight: *ad pugnam*,
 for fighting

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intrans.*,
 fight, engage. — *Often impers. in*
pass., *pugnatum est etc.*, they
 fought, the fighting continued

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *adj.*, beauti-
 ful; fine, noble, splendid

pulsus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *pello*
pulsus, -ūs [*pello*], *m.*, stroke, beat:
pulsu remorum praestare (the
 working etc.)

pulvis, -eria, *m.*, dust

puppia, -is, *f.*, stern

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, clean,
 clear; excuse, free from suspi-
 cion

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, think,
 suppose, consider

Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, *adj.*, only with
montes, the Pyrenees mountains,
 between France and Spain

Q., *abbr.* for *Quintus*

quā, *rel. adv.*, by which (way),
 where

quadrāgēni, -ae, -a, *distrib. num.*
adj., plur., forty each, forty (each
 being often omitted in English)

quadrāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, forty
quadrīngentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj.*,
plur., four hundred

quaerō, *quaerere*, *quaesivī*, *quaes-*
itus, *trans.*, search for, look for,
 inquire about, inquire, ask: *eadem*
 (make the same inquiries)

quæstiō, -ōnis [*quaero*], *f.*, investi-
 gation

quaestor — quīētus

quaestor, -ōris [quæro], *m.*, quaestor
(the Roman officer who had charge
of the finances of an army)

quaestus, -ūs [quæro], *m.*, acquisi-
tion, gain

quālis, -e, *interrog. adj.*, of what
sort? **qualis ascensus** (what is the
nature of?)

quam, *adv. and conj.*: 1. *Interrog.*,
how? — 2. *Rel.*, as, than: **prae-
ferre quam** (rather than). — *Often*
with superlatives, as . . . as
possible: **quam maximus**, the
greatest possible; **quam maxime**,
very much

quamdiū (often written separately,
see diu), *adv.*: 1. *Interrog.*, how
long? — 2. *Rel.*, as long, as long
as (*with antecedent omitted*)

quam ob rem, *adv. phrase*: 1. *Inter-
rog.*, why? — 2. *Rel.*, on which
account, for which reason

quamvis, *adv.*, as you please, how-
ever, no matter how

quandō, *adv.*, at any time: **si quando**,
if ever, whenever

quantus, -a, -um, *adj.*: 1. *Interrog.*,
how great? how much? **quantum
boni**, how much good? **quantae
civitates** (how important?). —
2. *Rel.*, as great as, as much as:
tantum . . . quantum, so much
. . . as

quantusvis, -avis, -umvis, *adj.*, as
great as you please, however great

quā rē, *adv. phrase*, wherefore,
therefore, on account of which
(*circumstance etc.*), why

quārtus, -a, -um [quattuor], *num.*
adj., fourth: **quartus decimus**,
fourteenth

quattuor, *indecl. num. adj.*, four
quattuordecim, *indecl. num. adj.*,
fourteen

-que, *conj.*, and. — *Sometimes con-
necting the general with the par-
ticular*, and in general, and other
quem ad modum, *adv. phrase*, how,
just as, as

queror, **queri**, **questus**, *dep., trans.*
and *intrans.*, complain, bewail,
lament

questus, -a, -um, *p. p. of queror*
quī, **quae**, **quod**, *rel. pron.*, who,
which, that. — *Often where a
dem. pron. is used in English*,
this, that. — *Often implying an
antecedent*, he who, etc.: **ea quae**,
things which, whatever. — **quō**,
*abl. of measure of difference as
adv.*, the (*more, less, etc.*)

quicquam, *see quisquam*

quicumque, **quae**, **quod**, *indef. rel.*
adj. and pron., whoever, which-
ever, whatever

quidam, **quae**, **quod**-(**quid**-), *indef.*
adj. and pron., a certain, certain, a
kind of: **artificio quōdam**, a kind
of trick; **quidam ex militibus** (one)
quidem, *adv.*, indeed, at least, cer-
tainly: **ne . . . quidem**, not even,
not . . . either

quīēs, -ētis, *f.*, rest, sleep, repose
quīētus, -a, -um [*p. p. of quiesco*,
keep quiet], *adj.*, at rest, quiet,
peaceable

quin — rādix

quin [*qui* (old abl.), -ne], *conj.*: 1. *Interrog.*, how not? — 2. *Rel.*, by which not: **quin etiam**, nay even, in fact. — *After negative verbs of hindrance and doubt*, but that, that, from (*doing a thing*), to (*do a thing*): **non dubito quin**, I do not doubt that

quīnam, quae-, quod-, cuius-, *interrog. pron.*, who? etc. (*emph.*): **quibusnam manibus** (with what possible?)

quīndecim, *indecl. num. adj.*, fifteen
quīngenti, -ae, -a, *num. adj., plur.*, five hundred

quīni, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj., plur.*, five at a time, five each
quīnquāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, fifty
quīnque, *indecl. num. adj.*, five
quīnquerēmis, -is, *f.*, quinquere (a vessel with five banks of oars)

quīntus, -a, -um [*quinque*], *num. adj.*, fifth

Quīntus, -i [*quintus*], *m.*, a Roman praenomen

quis, quae, quid, cuius: 1. *Interrog. adj. and pron.*, who? which? what? — 2. *Indef. pron.*, one, any one, anything

quispiam, quae-, quid-, cuius-, *indef. adj. and pron.*, any, any one, any thing

quisquam, *no fem.*, quid- (*quic*), cuius-, *indef. adj. and pron.*, any, any one, anything

quisque, quae-, quid-, cuius-, *indef. adj. and pron.*, each, each one, every

quisquis, quaequae, quicquid, cuius-cuius, *indef. rel. adj. and pron.*, whoever, whatever

quīvis, quae-, quid-, cuius-, *indef. adj. and pron.*, any you please, any one, any whatever (*affirmative*), any (*whatever*)

1. **quō**, *see qui*

2. **quō**, *adv.*: 1. *Interrog.*, whither? — 2. *Rel.*, whither, into which, as far as. — 3. *Indef.*, anywhere

3. **quō**, *conj.*, in order that (*with comparatives*), that: **magis eo quam quo** (than that, than because). — *Esp.*, **quō minus**, that not, so that not, from (*doing a thing*)

quoad, *conj.*, as far as, until, as long as
quod, *conj.*, because, inasmuch as, in that, as for the fact that: **quod si**, but if

quō minus, *see 3 quo*

quoniam [*quom* (= *cum*), *iam*], *conj.*, inasmuch as, since, as

quoque, *adv.*, following the word it affects, also, as well

quōqueversus or **quōquōversus**, *adv.*, in every direction, all about

quot, *indecl. adj.*: 1. *Interrog.*, how many? — 2. *Rel.*, as many, as many as, the number which
quotannis [*quot-annus*], *adv.*, every year, yearly

quotiēns, *adv.*: 1. *Interrog.*, how often? how many times? — 2. *Rel.*, as often, as often as

rādix, -icis, *f.*, root. — *Plur.*, roots (*of a tree*); foot (*of a mountain*)

rādō — redintegrō

rādō, rādere, rāsi, rāsus, *trans.*,
shave, scrape

raeda, -ae, *f.*, wagon

rāmus, -i, *m.*, branch, bough

rapiditās, -ātis [*rapidus*, swift], *f.*,
swiftness, rapidity

rapina, -ae [*rapio*, seize], *f.*, plunder.
— *Plur.*, plundering

rārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, scattered, in
small bodies (*of soldiers*), few;
rare, unusual

rāsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of rado*

ratio, -ōnis [*reor*, think], *f.*, a reckon-
ing, an account. — *Also*, calcula-
tion, reason, prudence, terms, a
plan, science, a reason, a manner,
a method, a consideration: *ratio-
nem habere*, take an account,
have regard to; *omnibus rationi-
bus*, in all ways; *rationem habere*
ut, take care that *etc.*; *rationem*
habere frumentandi (take meas-
ures *for etc.*)

ratis, -is, *f.*, raft

Rauraci, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe on
the upper Rhine

re-, red-, *prefix*, back, again, away

rebelliō, -ōnis [*re-bellum*], *f.*, renewal
of war, uprising

recēns, -entis, *adj.*, new, fresh, late

receptāculum, -i [*recepto*, take back],
n., retreat, place of refuge

receptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of recipio*

receptus, -ūs [*recipio*], *m.*, retreat,
way of retreat, refuge

recidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus [*re-
cado*], *intrans.*, fall again, fall
back, fall upon

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [*re-
capio*], *trans.*, take back, get back,
recover, take in, receive, admit. —

With reflexive, retreat, withdraw

reclinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, *with*
aē or in the pass., lean: *reclinatus*,
leaning

rēctē, *adv.*, rightly

rēctus, -a, -um [*p.p. of rego*], *adj.*,
straight: *recta regione*, in a
straight direction, parallel

recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*,
get back, recover, regain

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*re-causa*],
trans. and intrans., refuse, re-
ject, repudiate, object to; make
objections; *followed by quin or*
quo minus (refuse to); *periculum*
(refuse to incur)

red-, *see re-*

redāctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of redigo*

redditus, -a, -um, *p.p. of reddo*

reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [*red-do*
(put)], *trans.*, give back, restore,
pay, render: *supplicationem* (offer)

redēptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of redimo*

redeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *irr., intrans.*,
go back, return, come down again:
summa (be referred)

redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus [*red-ago*],
trans., bring back, reduce, render,
bring under, make

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptus [*red-
emo*], *trans.*, buy back, redeem,
purchase, buy

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*red-
integro*], make whole], *trans.*, re-
new, restore, revive

reditiō — removeō

reditiō, -ōnis [*redeo*], *f.*, return
 reditus, -ūs [*redeo*], *m.*, return
 Redonēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe of
 northwestern Gaul
 redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *trans.*,
 lead back, bring back, draw back,
 draw in, extend back
 referō, referre, rettulī, relātus, *irr.*,
trans., bring back, return, report.
 — *Esp.*: gratiam (make return,
 show one's gratitude); pedem
 (retreat, draw back)
 reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*re-facio*],
trans., repair, refresh: se ex
 labore (rest); exercitum (allow to
 recover)
 refractus, -a, -um, *p.p. of refringo*
 refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -fractus
 [*re-frango*], *trans.*, break away,
 break in (portas): vim fluminis
 (break)
 refugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus,
intrans., run away, escape
 regiō, -ōnis, *f.*, country, district: recta
 regione, straight along, parallel
 rēgnū, -ī [*cf. rego*], *n.*, kingdom,
 royal power, throne. — *Plur.*, royal
 power
 regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus, *trans.*,
 direct, manage, rule, have con-
 trol of
 reiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*re-iacio*],
trans., throw back, hurl back,
 drive back, throw away, drive off
 relanguēscō, -languēscere, -langui,
no p.p., intrans., be weakened,
 be deadened
 relātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of refero*

relēgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, re-
 move, separate
 relictus, -a, -um, *p.p. of relinquo*
 religiō, -ōnis [*re-ligo*], *f.*, serv-
 ice of the gods, superstition, re-
 ligious. — *Plur.*, religious matters
 relinquo, -linquere, -liqūī, -lictus,
trans., leave behind, abandon,
 leave. — *Pass.*, be left, remain
 reliquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, left, remain-
 ing, the rest, the others, future:
 nihil est reliqui, there is nothing
 left; nihil ad celeritatem sibi
 reliqui fecerunt, made the great-
 est possible speed
 remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsū-
 rus, *intrans.*, remain behind, re-
 main, stay
 rēmex, -igis [*remus*], *m.*, oarsman,
 rower
 Rēmī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of
 the Belgæ about Rheims
 rēmigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*,
 row
 remigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*,
 move back, return
 reminiscor, -minisci, *no p.p., dep.*,
trans. and intrans., remember
 remittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus,
trans., let go back, send back,
 throw back; relax, cease to use,
 give up: remissioribus frigoribus
 (less intense)
 remollēscō, -mollēscere, *no perf., no*
p.p., intrans., soften, become
 feeble
 removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus,
trans., move back, move away,

remūneror — respondeō

- send away, remove. — **remotus**, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, far away, remote
- remūneror**, -āri, -ātus [*re-munus*], *dep., trans.*, repay, requite
- rēmus**, -ī, *m.*, oar
- Rēmus**, -ī, *m.*, one of the Remi
- rēnō**, -ōnis, *m.*, skin, pelt
- renovō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*cf. novus*], *trans.*, renew
- renūntiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, bring back word, report, proclaim
- repellō**, **repellere**, **reppulī**, **repulsus**, *trans.*, drive back, repulse: **ab hac spe repulsi**, disappointed in this hope
- repente**, *adv.*, suddenly
- repentīnus**, -a, -um [*repens*, sudden], *adj.*, sudden, hasty. — **repentīnō**, *abl. as adv.*, suddenly
- reperiō**, **reperire**, **repperī**, **repertus** [*re-pario*, get], *trans.*, find out, discover: **reperi sunt multi**, there were many
- repetō**, -petere, -petivī, -petitus, *trans.*, seek again, demand back, ask for: **poenas** (inflict, exact)
- reportō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, carry back
- reposcō**, -poscere, *no perf., no p.p.*, *trans.*, ask again, demand again, demand
- repraesentō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, make present, do at once
- reprehendō**, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus, *trans.*, blame, censure
- repressus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of reprimō*
- reprimō**, -primere, -pressī, -pressus [*re-premo*], *trans.*, check
- repudiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, spurn, refuse, reject
- repugnō**, -āre, -āvi, -āturus, *intrans.*, resist; be in opposition
- repulsus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of repello*
- rēs**, **rei**, *f.*, property, business, affair, matter, thing (*in the most general sense*), fact, occurrence, event, case, action, act. — *Often to be translated from the context.* — *Esp.*: **imperitus rerum**, ignorant of the world; **commutatio rerum**, change of fortune; **res adversae**, adversity; **res secundae**, prosperity; **res publica**, commonwealth; **res familiaris**, property; **res militaris**, warfare; **res frumentaria**, grain supply; **novae res**, revolution
- rescindō**, -scindere, -scidī, -scissus, *trans.*, cut away, break down, destroy
- resciscō**, -sciscere, -scivī, -scitus, *trans.*, find out, learn, discover
- rescribō**, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptus, *trans.*, transfer (*by writing*)
- reservō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, keep back, reserve, hold in reserve
- resistō**, -sistere, -stitī, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, stand back, stop, withstand, resist, remain
- respicō**, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus [*re-specio*, look], *trans. and intrans.*, look back, look back at, consider, regard
- respondeō**, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsus, *trans. and intrans.*, reply, answer

respōnsum — sancīō

respōnsum, -ī [*n. p. p. of respondeo*],
n., reply. — *Plur.*, reply (*of several parts*)

rēs pūblica, *see res*

respuō, -spuere, -spuī, *no p. p.*, *trans.*,
 spit out; spurn, reject

restinctus, -a, -um, *p. p. of restinguo*

restinguō, -stinguere, -stinxi, -stinctus, *trans.*, extinguish

restituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitutus [*re-statuo*], *trans.*, replace, restore, make anew

retentus, -a, -um, *p. p. of retineo*

retineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [*reteneo*], *trans.*, hold back, restrain (*quin*, from *doing something*): *memoriam* (preserve); *Gallos* (arrest)

retrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus, *trans.*, drag back, bring back

revellō, -vellere, -velli, -vulsus, *trans.*, tear away, pull away

revertō, -vertere, -verti, -versus, *intrans.*, return (*in perf. tenses*). — *Pass. as deponent in pres. tenses*, return, go back, come back

revinciō, -vincire, -vinxi, -vinctus, *trans.*, make fast, fasten, bind

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, call away, call off, recall

rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king

Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*, the Rhine

Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*, the Rhone

rīpa, -ae, *f.*, bank

rīvus, -ī, *m.*, brook, stream

rōbur, -oris, *n.*, oak

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, ask, request, ask for

Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *m.*, Roman. —

Masc. as noun, a Roman

rōstrum, -ī [*rodo*, gnaw], *n.*, beak.

— *Esp. of a ship*, beak, ram

rota, -ae, *f.*, wheel

rubus, -ī, *m.*, bramble

Rūfus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen

rūmor, -ōris, *m.*, rumor, report

rūpēs, -is, *f.*, cliff

rūrsus, *adv.*, back, again, in turn

Rutēnī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe on the borders of Provence

Sabinus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name

Sabis, -is, *m.*, a river of Belgic Gaul, flowing into the Meuse, now the Sambre

sacrificium, -ī [*sacrum*, sacred thing, *facio*], *n.*, sacrifice

saepe, *adv.*, often: *minime saepe*, most rarely. — *saepius*, *comp.*, many times, repeatedly

saepenumero, *adv.*, oftentimes, many times

saepēs, -is [*cf. saepio*, hedge in], *f.*, hedge

saeviō, -īre, -īi, -ītūrus [*saevus*, fierce], *intrans.*, be angry, rage, be violent

sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow

sagittārius, -ī [*sagitta*], *m.*, archer, bowman.

salūs, -ūtis, *f.*, health, well-being, welfare, safety

sancīō, sancīre, sānxi, sānctus [*cf. sacer*, sacred], *trans.*, make sacred, solemnly establish (*by law*). —

sanguis — Sedusii

sānctus, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*,
 holy, sacred, inviolable
sanguis, -inis, *m.*, blood
sānitās, -ātis [*sanus*], *f.*, sound
 mind, good sense
Santonēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe on
 the western coast of Gaul
Santoni, *see* **Santones**
sānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sane, discreet:
nihil pro sano facere (nothing
 discreet)
sapiō, -ere, -iī, *no p.p., trans. and*
intrans., be wise, understand
(what to do)
sarcina, -ae [*sarcio*, sew up], *f.*, pack.
 — *Plur.*, baggage (*soldiers' packs*)
sarmentum, -i, *n.*, *only in plur.*,
 fagots, brushwood
satis, *adv.*, enough, sufficiently.—
Often with partitive, equivalent
to a noun or adj., enough, suffi-
 cient: *satis habere*, consider suffi-
 cient, be satisfied
satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factūrus,
intrans., satisfy, make amends,
 excuse one's self, apologize
satisfactiō, -ōnis [*satisfacio*], *f.*, apol-
 ogy
saucius, -a, -um, *adj.*, wounded
saxum, -i, *n.*, rock
scālae, -ārum [*scando*, climb], *f.*
plur., ladder, scaling ladder
scapha, -ae, *f.*, skiff, boat
scelerātus, -a, -um [*scelus*], *adj.*,
 villainous, accursed
scelus, -eris, *n.*, crime, wickedness
scienter [*sciens*, *pres. p. of scio*],
adv., knowingly, skillfully

scientia, -ae [*sciens*, *pres. p. of scio*],
f., knowledge, skill
scindō, *scindere*, *scidi*, *scissus*, *trans.*,
 cut, tear, tear up
sciō, *scire*, *scivī*, *scitus*, *trans.*, know
scorpiō, -ōnis, *m.*, scorpion (*a ma-
 chine for throwing darts*)
scribō, *scribere*, *scripsi*, *scriptus*,
trans. and intrans., write
scūtum, -i, *n.*, shield
ſē, *see sui*
sēbum, -i, *n.*, tallow
secō, *secāre*, *secui*, *sectus*, *trans.*,
 cut, reap
sēcrētō [*secretus*, separate], *adv.*, in
 private, privately
sectiō, -ōnis [*seco*], *f.*, booty
sectūra, -ae [*seco*], *f.*, mine, shaft
secundum, *see secundus*
secundus, -a, -um [*sequor*], *adj.*,
 following, second; favorable, suc-
 cessful: *secundiores res*, greater
 prosperity.—*secundum*, *neut. acc.*
as prep. with acc., along, in the
 direction of, in accordance with:
secundum flumen, downstream
secūtus, -a, -um, *p.p. of sequor*
sed, *conj.*, but, but yet
sēdecim [*sex-decem*], *indecl. num.*
adj., sixteen
sēdēs, -is [*sedeo*, sit], *f.*, seat. Hence,
 abode, settlement
sēditōsus, -a, -um [*seditio*, sedition],
adj., seditious, factious
Sedūni, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of
 the Alps
Sedusii, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of
 Germans

Segonax — servus

Segonax, -actis, *m.*, a British king
Segontiāci, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Britain

Segusiāvi, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a people of Gaul west of the Rhone

semel, *num. adv.*, once: **semel atque iterum**, more than once, again and again

sēmentis, -is [*semen*, seed], *f.*, a sowing: **sementes facere**, sow grain

sēmīta, -ae, *f.*, path

semper, *adv.*, all the time, always

senātor, -ōris [*senex*], *m.*, senator

senātus, -ūs [*senex*], *m.*, senate. — *Esp.*, the senate (*of Rome*)

senex, *gen. senis*, *adj.*, old. — *As noun*, old man

sēni, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj. plur.*, six each, six

Senonēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a Gallic tribe on the Seine

sententia, -ae [*sentio*], *f.*, opinion, sentiment, feeling, purpose; a judgment, a sentence

sentīō, *sentīre*, *sēnsī*, *sēnsus*, *trans.*, perceive, know, see, think, learn about, learn

sentis, -is, *m.*, brier

sēparātim, *adv.*, separately, privately

sēparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, separate. — *Esp.*, **sēparātus**, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, separate

septem, *indecl. num. adj.*, seven

septentrionēs, -um [*septem-triones*, plow oxen], *m. plur.*, the seven plow oxen (*the stars of the Great Bear*). — *Hence*, the north

septimus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, the seventh

septingenti, -ae, -a, *num. adj. plur.*, seven hundred

septuāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, seventy

sepultūra, -ae [*sepelio*, bury], *f.*, burial, burying

Sēquana, -ae, *f.*, the Seine

Sēquanus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Sequani (*a tribe of Gaul on the Rhone*). — *Masc. plur. as noun*, the Sequani

sequor, *sequi*, **secūtus**, *dep., trans.*, follow, accompany: **poena** (be inflicted on); **fidem** (come under, surrender to)

Ser., *abbr. for Servius*

sermō, -ōnis, *m.*, conversation, talk
serō, *serere*, **sēvi**, **satus**, *trans.*, plant, sow

sērō, *adv.*, too late

Sertōrius, -i, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

servilis, -e [*servus*], *adj.*, of a slave, servile: **tumultus** (the servile revolt, the war of the gladiators under *Spartacus* in 73—71 B.C.)

serviō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus [*servus*], *intrans.*, be a slave to: **rumoribus** (be blindly guided by, follow)

servitūs, -ūtis [*servus*], *f.*, slavery, servitude

Servius, -i, *m.*, a Roman praenomen
servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, keep, preserve: **praesidia** (hold, maintain)

servus, -i, *m.*, slave

sescenti — singuli

sescenti, *see* sexcenti

sēsē, *see* sui

sēsquipedālis, -e [†*sesquiped-* (a foot and a half) + *alis*], *adj.*, a foot and a half (thick)

setius, *adv.*, less: nihilo setius, nevertheless

seu, *see* sive

sevēritās, -ātis [*severus*, strict], *f.*, strictness, harshness

sēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*sē-*, away, *voco*], *trans.*, call aside

sex, *indecl. num. adj.*, six

sexāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, sixty

sexcenti (ses-), -ae, -a, *num. adj. plur.*, six hundred

Sextius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

sī, *conj.*, if. — *Esp.*, to see if, whether: id si fieret, should this happen

sibi, *see* sui

Sibusātēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a people of Aquitania

sic, *adv.*, so, in this manner, in such a manner, thus: sic . . . ut, so . . . that, so well . . . that.

sicuti, *as conj.*, just as, just as if
siccitās, -ātis [*siccus*, dry], *f.*, dryness, drought, dry weather

sicut (sicuti), *see* sic

sīdus, -eris, *n.*, star

signifer, -ferī [*signum-fero*], *m.*, standard bearer

significātiō, -ōnis [*significo*], *f.*, signal, warning

significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*signum-facio*], *trans.*, make signs, indicate, make known, show

signum, -ī, *n.*, sign, signal. —

Esp., standard (*for military purposes*). — *Phrases*: signa inferre, advance to attack, charge; conversa signa inferre, change front and charge; se continere ad signa, keep the ranks; ad signa convenire, join the army; ad signa consistere, rally round the standard

silentium, -ī [*silens*, silent], *n.*, stillness, silence. — silentiō, *abl.*, in silence, silently

Silius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

silva, -ae, *f.*, forest, woods

silvester, -tris, -tre [*silva*], *adj.*, woody, wooded

similis, -e, *adj.*, like, similar

simul, *adv.*, at the same time: simul atque (*or without atque*), as soon as

simulācrum, -ī [*simulo*], *n.*, image, likeness

simulātiō, -ōnis [*simulo*], *f.*, pretense, deceit

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, pretend

sīn, *conj.*, but if

sincērē, *adv.*, honestly, truly

sine, *prep. with abl.*, without

singillātim [*singuli*], *adv.*, singly, one by one

singulāris, -e [*singuli*], *adj.*, solitary, single; unique, extraordinary

singulī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj. plur.*, one at a time, single, each, one by one. — *Often to denote distribution*, one to each:

sinister — statim

ab singulis legionibus singulos legatos discedere (each from his); inter singulas legiones (between each two)

sinister, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left: sub sinistra (manu), on the left

sinistrorsus [*sinister*], *adv.*, to the left

sinō, sinere, sivi, situs, *trans. and intrans.*, permit, allow

situs, -ūs, *m.*, situation, position

sive (seu), *conj.*, if either, or if: sive

... sive, either ... or, whether

... or

socer, -erī, *m.*, father-in-law

socius, -ī [*cf. sequor*], *m.*, companion, ally, comrade

sōl, sōlis, *m.*, sun. — *Also personified*, Sol, the Sun

sōlācium, -ī, *n.*, consolation, comfort

soldurius, -ī, *m.*, follower

solēō, solēre, solitus, *semi-dep., intrans.*, be wont, be accustomed

sōlitūdō, -inis [*solus*], *f.* loneliness.

Hence, wilderness

sollertia, -ae [*sollers*, skillful], *f.*, skill, ingenuity

sollicitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, stir up, instigate, offer bribes to, tempt

solum, -ī, *n.*, soil, foundation, bottom, earth: solum agri, bare ground

sōlus, -a, -um, *adj.*, alone, only. — solum, *n. acc. as adv.*, alone, only

solūtus, -a, -um, *p. p. of solvo*

solvō, solvere, solvi, solūtus, *trans.*, unbind, loose. — *Esp.*, with or without navis, set sail

soror, -ōris, *f.*, sister: soror ex matre, half sister

sors, sortis, *f.*, lot (*for divination*), chance

Sōtiātēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a people of Aquitania

spatium, -ī, *n.*, space, extent, distance; time, space of time: quantum fuit diei spatium, as much as there was time for

speciēs, -ēi [*specio*, see], *f.*, sight, show, appearance

spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*specio*, see], *trans. and intrans.*, look at, regard; face

speculātor, -ōris [*speculor*], *m.*, spy, scout

speculātōrius, -a, -um [*speculator*], *adj.*, scouting, reconnoitering (*navigia*)

speculor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep., trans. and intrans.*, spy, reconnoiter: speculandi causa, as a spy

spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*spes*], *trans.*, hope, hope for, expect

spēs, -ei, *f.*, hope, expectation: summam in spem venire, have the greatest hope

spīritus, -ūs [*spiro*, breathe], *m.*, breath. — *Also*, spirit. *Hence, in plur.*, pride, arrogance, temper

spoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, rob, deprive

sponte (*abl.*), *f.*, of one's own accord, voluntarily

stabilitās, -ātis [*stabilis*, steady], *f.*, steadiness, firmness

statim [*sto*], *adv.*, at once, immediately

statîō — subsistō

statîō, -ōnis [*sto*], *f.*, position, post, picket: in *statione*, on guard
statuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [*status*], *trans.*, set up; establish, resolve upon, determine, decide

statūra, -ae [*sto*], *f.*, stature, size
status, -ūs [*sto*], *m.*, position, condition, situation

stipendiārius, -a, -um [*stipendium*], *adj.*, tributary, under tribute
stipendium, -ī [*stips*, gift, *pendo*], *n.*, tribute

stō, **stāre**, **stetī**, **stātūrus**, *intrans.*, stand, abide by

strepitus, -ūs [*strepo*, roar], *m.*, noise, confused din

studeō, **studēre**, **studuī**, *no p.p.*, [*studium*], *intrans.*, be eager for, be devoted to, pay attention to, attend to, desire (*with dat.*)

studiōsē, *adv.*, eagerly, zealously
studium, -ī, *n.*, eagerness, zeal, devotion, fondness (*for a thing*), enthusiasm; a pursuit (*to which one is devoted*), an occupation

sub, *prep.* (a) *With abl.* (*of rest in a place*), under: *sub oculis*, before the eyes

(b) *With acc.* (*of motion towards a place*), under, close to. — *Of time*, toward, just before: **sub vesperum**

(c) *In composition*, as *adv.*, under, up from; secretly; in succession; slightly

subducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, *trans.*, draw up, lead up: *naves* (beach, draw up)

subeō, -īre, -īī, -itus, *irr.*, *trans.*, go under, undergo, come up, approach
subfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus, *trans.*, dig under, stab (*underneath*)

subfossus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *subfodio*
subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*subiacio*], *trans.*, throw under, place below, subject, expose to. — *Also*, throw up. — **subiectus**, -a, -um, *p.p.* as *adj.*, lying near

subitō, *see* *subitus*

subitus, -a, -um [*p.p.* of *subeo*], *adj.*, sudden, quick, hasty. — **subitō**, *abl.* as *adv.*, suddenly

sublātus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *tollo*
sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, lighten, raise, raise up, assist. — *With reflexive*, rise up. — **sublevātus**, *p.p.*, supporting one's self

sublica, -ae, *f.*, pile, stake
subministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, supply, furnish, provide

submitto, -mittere, -misi, -missus, *trans.*, send up, send to one's assistance, reinforce

submoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *trans.*, drive off, dislodge

subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus, *trans.*, dig under, undermine

subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, *dep.*, *trans.*, follow on, follow, succeed to

subsidiū, -ī [*sub-sedeo*, sit], *n.*, reinforcement, help, relief, support, assistance

subsistō, -sistere, -stitī, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, stop behind, halt, make a stand: *ancora* (hold)

subsum — supersedeō

subsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, be under, be near, be close by, approach

subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus, *trans.*, take away, carry away

subvehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectus, *trans.*, bring up

subveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventūrus, *intrans.*, come under, come to the support of, assist

succedō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessus [*sub-cedo*], *trans. and intrans.*, come up to, advance, succeed to, take the place of, come next; be successful, prosper

succendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēsus, *trans.*, set on fire

successus, -ūs [*succedo*], *m.*, close approach

succidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisus [*sub-caedo*], *trans.*, cut under, cut down

sudia, -is, *f.*, stake

Suēbī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, name of the tribes inhabiting a large part of Germany, Swabians

Suēbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Swabian. — *As noun*, a Swabian (*man or woman*)

Suessiōnēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe of the Belgæ

sufficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectus [*sub-facio*], *intrans.*, be sufficient, be adequate

suffrāgium, -i, *n.*, ballot, vote

Agambri, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a German tribe

mi, sibi, *sē*, *reflex. pron.*, himself, etc. — *Often to be translated by*

the personal pron., he, etc.; also, each other. — *Esp.*, inter se, from (with, by, etc.) each other

Sulla, -ae, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*, Lucius Cornelius Sulla, the great partisan of the nobility and opponent of Marius, called Sulla the Dictator

Sulpicius, -i, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

sum, esse, fui, futūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, be (*exist*). — *Also, with weakened force*, be (*as a mere copula*). — *Phrases*: sibi esse in animo, that he had in mind, intended; multum sunt in venationibus (much engaged)

summa, -ae, *f.*, sum, total, main part: belli (the general management, the chief control)

summus, *see superus*

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus [*sub-emo*, take], *trans.*, take, get, assume: sumere supplicium de, to inflict punishment on; laborem (spend)

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um [*sumptus*], *adj.*, expensive, costly

sūmptus, -ūs [*sumo*], *m.*, expense
superbē, *adv.*, haughtily, arrogantly
superior, *see superus*

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, overcome, conquer, defeat, be superior to, prevail; survive (vitā)

supersedeō, -sedere, -sēdi, -sessūrus, *intrans.*, sit above. Hence, be above, decline, refrain from

supersum — Tamesis

supersum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, remain, survive

superus, -a, -um, *adj.*, higher, being above (*of space only*). — *Comp.*, superior, higher, upper, preceding (*of time*), superior, victorious. — *Superl.*, **suprēmus**, highest. — *Also*, **summus**, highest, the highest part of, the top of. — *Fig.*, greatest, most important, perfect, supreme, most violent

suppetō, -petere, -petivī, -petitūrus [*sub-peto*, aim at], *intrans.*, be on hand, be supplied, hold out

supplex, -icis, *c.*, suppliant

supplicātiō, -ōnis [*supplico*, supplicate], *f.*, supplication; a thanksgiving (*to the gods, decreed by the senate*)

suppliciter, *adv.*, as suppliants

supplicium, -i [*supplex*], *n.*, punishment (*usually of death*)

supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*sub-porto*], *trans.*, bring up, convey, supply, furnish

suprā, *adv.*, and *prep.* with *acc.*, above, beyond

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [*subs* (= *sub*), *capio*], *trans.*, take upon one's self (*sibi*), assume, undertake, engage in, undergo

suspiciātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of suspicor*

suspiciō, -ōnis [*sub-specio*, look], *f.*, suspicion, an indication: *neque abest suspicio*, and suspicion is not wanting

suspisor, -ārī, -ātus [*cf. suspicio*],

dep., *trans.*, suspect: *p.p. as adj.*, under suspicion

sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*sustineo*], *trans. and intrans.*, sustain, hold out: *aegre is dies sustentatur*, with difficulty they hold out for that day
sustineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [*subs* (= *sub*), *teneo*], *trans. and intrans.*, hold up under, withstand, endure, hold out, bear, stop; *sustinere se*, stand up

sustuli, *see tollo*

suus, -a, -um, *possessive pronominal adj. (reflex., referring back to the subject)*, his, her, its, their, etc. — *Often without a noun*, sui, their (his) men, countrymen, their friends; sua, their (his) possessions; *se suaque omnia*, themselves and all they had

T., *abbr. for Titus*

tabernāculum, -i [*taberna*, hut], *n.*, tent

tabula, -ae, *f.*, record (*written on a board covered with wax*), document, list

taceō, tacēre, tacui, tacitus, *trans. and intrans.*, be silent; keep secret, conceal. — **tacitus**, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, silent, in silence

tālea, -ae, *f.*, rod, bar

tālis, -e, *adj.*, such, so great

tam, *adv.*, so, so much

tamen, *adv.*, yet, nevertheless, still, however

Tamesis, -is, *m.*, the Thames, a river of Britain

tametī — tenuitās

tametī, *conj.*, although, though
tandem, *adv.*, at last. — *In questions, to add emphasis*, pray, tell me, or translated only by *emphasis*

tantopere, *see opus*

tantulus, -a, -um [*tantus*], *adj.*, so small, so little, so trifling

tantummodo, *adv.*, only, merely

tantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, so much, so great, such (*of magnitude*): **tantī est**, is of so much weight; **tanta exiguitas temporis**, so little time.

— **tantum**, *n. as adv.*, only, merely

Tarbellī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Aquitania

tardē, *adv.*, slowly, tardily, with delay

tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*tardus*], *trans.*, retard, check, hinder

tardus, -a, -um, *adj.*, slow, sluggish

Tarusātēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Aquitania

Tasgetius, -ī, *m.*, a prince of the Carnutes

taurus, -ī, *m.*, bull

Taximagulus, -ī, *m.*, a prince of Britain

Tectosagēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a branch of the Volcæ

tectum, -ī [*n. p. p. of tego*], *n.*, roof, house

tectus, -a, -um, *p. p. of tego*

tegimentum, -ī [*tego*], *n.*, covering

tegō, *tegere*, **tēxi**, **tēctus**, *trans.*, cover, thatch, hide, conceal

tēlum, -ī, *n.*, weapon (*of offense*), javelin, spear

temerārius, -a, -um [*temere*], *adj.*, reckless, rash, hasty

temerē, *adv.*, blindly, without reason; recklessly, hastily

tēmō, -ōnis, *m.*, pole (*of a wagon etc.*)

temperantia, -ae [*temperans, pres. p. of tempero*], *f.*, self-control, prudence

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*tempus*], *trans. and intrans.*, control; refrain, restrain one's self from (*quin*). — *Esp.*, **temperātus**, -a, -um, *p. p. as adj.*, temperate, mild

tempestās, -ātis [*tempus*], *f.*, season, weather. — *Esp.*, bad weather, storm

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, try, attempt, make an attempt on: **iter** (try to force)

tempus, -oris, *n.*, a division of time, a time, time (*in general*), a crisis: **tam necessario tempore**, at so critical a moment; **omni tempore**, at all times, always

Tencterī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a branch of the Usipetes

tendō, *tendere*, **tetendī**, **tentus**, *trans.*, stretch, stretch out. — *Esp.*, stretch a tent, encamp

teneō, *tenēre*, **tenui**, *no p. p.*, *trans.*, hold, retain, keep, possess, occupy: **se tenere**, remain; **memoriā tenere**, remember

tener, -era, -erum, *adj.*, delicate, tender, young

tenuitās, -ātis [*tenuis, weak*], *f.*, weakness, poverty

tenuiter — totidem

tenuiter [*tenuis*, weak], *adv.*, thinly, slightly

ter, *num. adv.*, three times, thrice
tergum, -i, *n.*, the back: *terga vertere*, turn and fly; a *tergo*, in the rear

terni, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj. plur.*, three each, three at once

terra, -ae, *f.*, the earth. — *Also*, a land, a region. — *Also*, the ground. — *Plur.*, the world

Terrasidius, -i, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

terrēnus, -a, -um [*terra*], *adj.*, of earth

terro, terrere, terrui, territus, *trans.*, frighten, alarm, deter

terrītō, -āre, *no perf.*, *no p.p.* [*terreo*], *trans.*, frighten: metu (alarm with fears, keep alarmed)

terror, -ōris [*terreo*], *m.*, fright, alarm, panic

tertius, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, third (*in order*); pars (one third)

testāmentum, -i [*testor*, testify], *n.*, a will

testimōnium, -i [*testis*], *n.*, proof, evidence

testis, -is, *c.*, witness

testūdō, -inis, *f.*, tortoise. — *Esp.*, a covered column (*made by lapping the shields of one rank over those of another*)

Teutonēs, -um (-i, -ōrum), *m. plur.*, a great German people in Jutland, who, along with the Cimbri, overran Gaul in 113 B.C. They were defeated by Marius in 102 B.C. at Aquæ Sextiæ

tignum, -i, *n.*, a log, a timber, a pile
Tigurinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the

Tigurini. — *Masc. plur.*, the Tigurini, a division of the Helvetii
timeō, -ēre, -ui, *no p.p.*, *trans. and intrans.*, be afraid, fear. — *With dat.*, be anxious for, be anxious about: nihil (have nothing to fear)

timidē, *adv.*, with timidity: non timide, fearlessly

timidus, -a, -um [*timeo*], *adj.*, cowardly, frightened, timid

timor, -ōris [*timeo*], *m.*, alarm, fear, dread

Titūrius, -i, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

Titus, -i, *m.*, a Roman prænomen
tolerō, -āre, -avi, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, bear, endure, hold out, support: famem (keep from starvation)

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, *trans.*, raise, carry, carry off. Hence, remove, take away, destroy: conloquium (break off). — *Esp.*, sublātus, -a, -um, *p.p.*, elated

Tolōsa, -ae, *f.*, an important city in the western part of the Province, now Toulouse

Tolōsātēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, the people of Toulouse

tormentum, -i [*torqueo*, twist], *n.*, torture. — *Also*, an engine (*for throwing missiles*)

tot, *indecl. adj.*, so many

totidem, *indecl. adj.*, just as many, the same number

tōtus — trēs

tōtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, the whole, the whole of, all, entire.— *Often translated by an adverb*, entirely, throughout

trabs, trabis, *f.*, a beam, a timber

trāctus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *traho*

trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [*trans-do* (put)], *trans.*, hand over, give up, deliver up, surrender, recommend.— *Also*, pass along, hand down, teach, communicate

trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [*trans-duco*], *trans.*, lead over, lead across, bring over, transport, win over, transfer

trāgula, -ae, *f.*, javelin

trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus, *trans.*, drag, drag along, drag in, draw in
trāiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*trans-iacio*], *trans.*, throw across, throw over; cross; transfix, pierce

trāiectus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *traicio*

trāiectus, -ūs [*traicio*], *m.*, passage, route

trānō, -nāre, -nāvī, -nātus [*trans-no*, swim], *trans. and intrans.*, swim across

tranquillitās, -ātis [*tranquillus*, still], *f.*, stillness, calm

trāns, *prep.* with *acc.*, across, over. *Hence*, on the other side of.— *In composition, as adv.*, over, across, through

Trānsalpinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Trans-alpine

trāscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsūrus [*trans-scando*, climb], *intrans.*, climb across, board (*ships*)

trānsēō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *irr.*, *trans. and intrans.*, cross, pass over, pass through, pass by

trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *irr.*, *trans.*, carry over, transfer, change the place of

trānsfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, *trans.*, pierce through

trānsgradior, -gredi, -gressus [*trans-gradior*, step], *dep.*, *trans. and intrans.*, step across, step over, cross

trānslātus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *transfero*

trānsmarinus, -a, -um [*trans-mare*], *adj.*, foreign

trānsmisus, -ūs, *m.*, a crossing, distance across

trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, bring over, carry over

Trānshrēnānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, living across the Rhine.— *Masc. plur. as noun*, the people across the Rhine

trānstrum, -ī, *n.*, thwart, rib (of a ship)

trānsversus, -a, -um [*p.p.* of *trans-vertō*, turn across], *adj.*, oblique, transverse: *fossa* (a cross ditch)

Trebius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

Trebōnius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

trecentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj., plur.*, three hundred

trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [*trepidus*, restless], *intrans.*, bustle about, hurry; tremble (*with fear*)

trēs, tria, *gen. trium, num. adj.*, three

Trēveri — ubi

- Trēveri**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a people in northeastern Gaul. — *In sing.*, **Trēvir**, -eri, one of the Treveri
- Triboēs**, -um (-ī, -ōrum), *m. plur.*, a German tribe on the Rhine
- tribūnus**, -ī, *m.* (*with or without militum or militaris*), tribune of the soldiers, military tribune
- tribuō**, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [*tribus*, tribe], *trans.*, distribute. Hence, grant, render, assign, attribute: **magnopere virtuti** (attribute it so very much to valor)
- tribūtum**, -ī [*n. p.p. of tribuo*], *n.*, tribute
- trīduum**, -ī [*tres-dies*], *n.*, three days' time, three days
- triennium**, -ī [*tres-annus*], *n.*, three years
- trīgintā**, *indecl. num. adj.*, thirty
- trīnī**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, *plur.*, three each, three sets of
- Trinovantēs**, -um, *m. plur.*, a people of southern Britain
- tripartitus**, -a, -um [*ter-partitus*], *adj.*, divided in three. — *Esp.*, **tripartitō**, *abl. as adv.*, in three divisions
- triplex**, -icis [*ter*, *cf. plico*, fold], *adj.*, threefold: **acies** (triple, in three divisions or lines)
- triquetrus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, three-cornered, triangular
- trirēmīs**, -is, *f.*, trireme (*a vessel with three banks of oars*)
- tristis**, -e, *adj.*, sad, gloomy, dejected
- tristitia**, -ae [*tristis*], *f.*, sadness
- truncus**, -ī, *m.*, trunk
- tū**, **tui**, *plur. vōs*, *pers. pron.*, 2d person, you
- tuba**, -ae, *f.*, trumpet
- tueor**, **tuēri**, **tūtus**, *dep.*, *trans.*, watch, guard, protect
- tuli**, *perf. of fero*
- Tulingī**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a German tribe, neighbors of the Helvetii
- Tullius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name
- Tullus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name
- tum**, *adv.*, then (*at a time indicated by the context*), at this time: **cum . . . tum**, not only . . . but also
- tumultus**, -ūs [*tumulus*], *m.*, uproar, confusion, commotion. — *Esp.*, uprising, revolt
- tumulus**, -ī [*tumeo*, swell], *m.*, hill, mound
- turma**, -ae, *f.*, squadron, troop (*of horse, consisting of thirty men*)
- Turonī**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Gaul on the Loire. Also called **Turones**
- turpis**, -e, *adj.*, ugly; unbecoming, disgraceful, base, dishonorable
- turpiter**, *adv.*, dishonorably
- turpitūdō**, -inis [*turpis*], *f.*, baseness; disgrace
- turris**, -is, *f.*, tower
- tūtus**, -a, -um [*p.p. of tueor*], *adj.*, protected, safe, secure. — **tūtō**, *abl. as adv.*, in safety, safely
- ubi**, *adv. and conj.*, where, in which: **ibi ubi**, in the place where. — *Also, of time, when*: **ubi primum**, as soon as

Ubi — uter

Ubi, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a German tribe on the Rhine

ubique, *adv.*, everywhere, anywhere

ulciscor, **ulcisci**, **ultus**, *dep., trans.*,

punish, take vengeance on, avenge

ullus, -a, -um, *gen. -ius, adj.*, a

single, any. — *Masc. as pronoun*,

anybody, any one

ulterior, -us, -ōris [*ultra*], *adj.*, far-

ther, more remote: *ulteriores*,

those farther off. — *Superl.*, *ulti-*

mus, -a, -um, farthest, last:

ultimi, those in the rear

ultrā, *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.*,

beyond

ultrō, *adv.*, to the farther side, be-

yond: *ultra citroque*, this way

and that, back and forth. —

Esp.: voluntarily, freely, besides

ultus, -a, -um, *p.p. of ulciscor*

ululātus, -ūs [*ululo*, yell], *m.*, a yell,

loud cry

umquam, *adv. (with neg.)*, ever:

neque . . . umquam, and never

ūnā, *adv.*, together, along with

them, *etc.*, at the same time, in

the same place, also

unde, *adv.*, whence, from which

ūndecimus, -a, -um [*unus-decimus*],

num. adj., eleventh

undique, *adv.*, from every side, from

all quarters

ūniversus, -a, -um [*unus-versus, p.p.*

of verto], *adj.*, all together, all (*in*

a mass), entire

ūnus, -a, -um, *gen. -ius, adj.*, one,

a single, the same, alone

urbānus, -a, -um [*urbis*], *adj.*, of a

city. — *Esp.*, of the city (Rome), in the city

urbs, **urbis**, *f.*, city. — *Esp.*, the city (Rome)

urgeō, **urgēre**, **ursi**, *no p.p., trans.*,

press, press hard

ūrus, -i, *m.*, wild ox, aurochs

Usipetēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a German

tribe on the lower Rhine

ūsitor, -ārī, -ātus [*utor*], *dep., in-*

trans., practice. — *ūsitātus*, -a,

-um, *p.p. in pass. sense*, prac-

ticed, customary, much practiced

ūsque, *adv.*, all the way, even to, to

that degree (*with eo ut*), all the

time, till, even till

ūsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of ūtor*

ūsus, -ūs, *m.*, use, practice, experi-

ence; advantage, service. — *Esp.*:

usus est, is necessary, it is neces-

sary, there is need; *also*, *ex usu*,

usui, of advantage, of service, ad-

vantageous, to the advantage; *usu*

venire, happen, turn out, come

to pass

ut (**utī**), *adv. and conj.*: (a) *Inter-*

rog., how? — (b) *Rel.*, as, so as,

when, inasmuch as, considering

that it was: *ut semel*, when once,

as soon as. — *Esp. with subjv.*,

that, in order that, to, so that, so

as to, although, granting that;

after verbs of fearing, that not

uter, -tra, -trum, *gen. -trius, adj. and*

pron.: (a) *Interrog.*, which (*of*

two)? — (b) *Rel.*, whichever (*of*

two), the one who or which (*of two*).

— *Neut.*, **utrum**, *adv.*, whether

uterque — Vellaunodūnum

uterque, *utra-, utrum-, gen. utrius-, adj. and pron., both: medium utriusque*, between the two. — *Plur., of sets: utraque castra*, both camps; *utrique*, both parties

uti, *see ut*

ūtīlis, *-e, adj., useful, of use, helpful*
ūtīlītās, *-ātis [utilis], f., advantage, benefit, service*

ūtōr, *ūtī, ūsus, dep., intrans., with abl., use, exercise, practice, employ, have (in sense of enjoy or employ), possess*

utrimque, *adv., on both sides*

utrum, *see uter*

uxor, *-ōris, f., wife*

V, *Roman numeral for five*

Vacalus, *-ī, m., the west branch of the Rhine, at its mouth*

vacātiō, *-ōnis [vaco], f., freedom (from something), exemption, immunity*

vacō, *-āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, intrans., be vacant, be unoccupied, lie waste*

vacuus, *-a, -um [cf. vaco], adj., free, vacant, destitute of (ab or abl.)*

vadum, *-ī [cf. vado, go], n., ford. — Plur., ford, shoals, shallows. — vado, by fording*

vagor, *-ārī, -ātus, dep., intrans., roam about, roam, wander*

valeō, *valēre, valui, valitūrus, intrans., be strong, have weight, have influence, be powerful. — Often with n. pron. or adj. as acc. of kindred meaning: plurimum valere, be very strong, have*

great influence; *quicquid possunt pedestribus copiis valent*, whatever strength they have is in infantry
Valerius, *-ī, m., a Roman gentile name*

vallēs, *-is, f., valley*

vāllum, *-ī, n., palisade, rampart*

Vangionēs, *-um, m. plur., a German tribe on the west bank of the Rhine*

varietās, *-ātis [varius], f., diversity, variety: pellium (different colors)*

varius, *-a, -um, adj., various, diverse*

vāstō, *-āre, -āvī, -ātus [vastus], trans., lay waste, devastate, ravage*

vāstus, *-a, -um, adj., waste; immense, vast*

vāticinātiō, *-ōnis [vaticinor, foretell], f., divination*

-ve, conj., enclitic, or

vectigal, *-ālis [cf. veho, carry], n., tribute. — Plur., revenues*

vectigālis, *-e [cf. veho, carry], adj., tributary: vectigales habent, make tributary*

vectōrius, *-a, -um [vector, bearer], adj., carrying: navigia (transports)*

vehementer [*vehemens*, violent], *adv., violently, severely, strongly, exceedingly*

vel, *conj., or: vel . . . vel, either . . . or. — As adv., even*

Velānius, *-ī, m., a Roman gentile name*

Veliocassēs, *-ium, m. plur., a tribe of western Gaul along the lower Seine*

Vellaunodūnum, *-ī, n., a town of the Senones*

vēlōcītās — vester

vēlōcītās, -ātis [*velox*], *f.*, swiftness, fleetness, speed
vēlōciter, *adv.*, swiftly, quickly
vēlōx, -ōcis, *adj.*, swift, quick
vēlum, -ī, *n.*, curtain, veil; sail
velut, *adv.*, even as, just as: **velut** si, just as if
vēnātiō, -ōnis [*venor*, hunt], *f.*, hunting, the chase. — *Plur.*, hunting, hunting excursions
vēnātor, -ōris [*venor*, hunt], *m.*, hunter
vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [*venum*, sale, *do* (put)], *trans.*, put to sale, sell
Venellī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe on the northwestern coast of Gaul
Venetī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a coast tribe of western Gaul
Venetia, -ae, *f.*, the territory of the Veneti
Veneticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Veneti
venia, -ae, *f.*, favor, pardon
veniō, **venire**, **vēnī**, **ventūrus**, *intrans.*, come, go. — *See also usus*
ventitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [*freq. of venio*], *intrans.*, come often, visit
ventus, -ī, *m.*, wind: **vento se dare**, run before the wind
Veragrī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Gallic people on the upper Rhone
Verbigenus, -ī, *m.*, a canton of the Helvetii
verbum, -ī, *n.*, word: **pluribus verbis**, at great length; **facere verba**, speak
Vercingetorix, -igis, *m.*, king of the

Arverni, who made a stout resistance to Cæsar, but was finally overpowered
vereor, -ērī, -itus, *dep., trans. and intrans.*, fear, be afraid, dread. — **veritus**, *p. p. in pres. sense*, fearing
vergō, -ere, *no perf., no p. p., intrans.*, incline, slope
vergobretus, -ī, *m.*, Celtic title of the chief magistrate among the Hædui
vērīsimilis, -e [*verus-similis*], *adj.*, probable, likely
veritus, -a, -um, *p. p. of vereor*
vērō, *adv.*, in truth, in fact, certainly. — *With weakened force*, but, on the other hand, however
versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*verto*], *trans.*, turn, deal with. — *Esp., in the pass. as dep.*, engage in, be, fight (*as indicated by the context*)
versus, -a, -um, *p. p. of verto*
versus [*p. p. of verto*], *adv., and prep. with acc.*, towards, in the direction of
versus, -ūs [*verto*], *m.*, a turning; a verse (*of poetry*)
vertō, **vertere**, **vertī**, **versus**, *trans.*, turn: **terga** (turn and flee)
Verucloetius, -ī, *m.*, a noble of the Helvetii
vērūs, -a, -um, *adj.*, true; right. — *Neut. as noun*, the truth
Vesontīō, -ōnis, *m.*, the chief town of the Sequani, now Besançon
vesper, -erī, *m.*, evening
vester, -tra, -trum, *poss. adj.*, your, yours

vēstīgium — vīs

- vēstīgium**, -ī, *n.*, footstep, footprint, track. — *Esp.*, eodem vestigio, in the same spot
- vestiō**, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, *trans.*, clothe, cover. — *Pass.*, clothe one's self with, wear
- vestitus**, -ūs [*vestio*], *m.*, clothing, garments
- veterānus**, -a, -um [*vetus*], *adj.*, veteran
- vetō**, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus, *trans.*, forbid
- vetus**, -eris, *adj.*, old, former, of long standing: milites (old soldiers, veterans)
- vēxillum**, -ī, *n.*, flag
- vexō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, harass, annoy, overrun, ravage
- via**, -ae, *f.*, road, way, route, march
- viātor**, -ōris [*via*], *m.*, traveler
- vicēni**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, *plur.*, twenty (*apiece*)
- vicēsīmus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, twentieth
- vicīēs**, *num. adv.*, twenty times: vicies centum milia passuum, two thousand miles
- vicis** (*gen.*), *f.*, change, turn: in vicem, in turn
- victima**, -ae, *f.*, victim, sacrifice
- victor**, -ōris [*vinco*], *m.*, victor. — *Often as adj.*, triumphant, victorious
- victōria**, -ae [*victor*], *f.*, victory
- victus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of vinco*
- vīctus**, -ūs [*vivo*], *m.*, life; means of living, food
- vīcus**, -ī, *m.*, village
- videō**, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, *trans.*, see, observe, examine, take care. — *In pass.*, be seen; seem, seem best
- vigilia**, -ae [*vigil*, awake], *f.*, watch. *The Romans divided the night into four watches*
- vīgintī**, *indecl. num. adj.*, twenty
- vīmen**, -inis, *n.*, twig (*flexible*, for weaving)
- vīnciō**, vīncire, vīnxī, vīctus, *trans.*, bind, fetter
- vīncō**, vīncere, vīcī, vīctus, *trans. and intrans.*, conquer, defeat, prevail: naturam (outdo)
- vīctus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of vincio*
- vīnculum**, -ī [*vincio*], *n.*, chain: ex vīnculis, in chains
- vīndicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intrans.*, inflict punishment
- vīnea**, -ae, *f.*, vine arbor; shed (defense, for a besieging party)
- vīnum**, -ī, *n.*, wine
- violō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, abuse: hospites (injure)
- vir**, virī, *m.*, man, husband
- vīrēs**, see vīs
- virgō**, -inis, *f.*, maiden, virgin
- virgultum**, -ī, *n.*, only in *plur.*, shrubby, thicket, bushes
- Viridovīx**, -īcis, *m.*, a prince of the Venelli
- Viromandūi**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Belgic tribe near the Remi
- virtūs**, -ūtis [*vir*], *f.*, manliness, valor, courage. — *Also*, merit (*generally*), noble conduct, virtue
- vīs**, vīs, *f.*, force, might, violence. — *Esp.*: vi cogere (forcibly);

visus — X

- vim facere**, use violence. — *Plur.*,
vires, strength, force, powers,
 bodily vigor
- visus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of video*
- vita**, -ae [*cf. vivo*], *f.*, life, the course
 of life
- vītō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, escape,
 avoid, dodge
- vitrum**, -ī, *n.*, woad (*a plant used
 by the Britons for dyeing blue*)
- vīvō**, vivere, vixī, victus, *intrans.*,
 live: lacte (live on)
- vīvus**, -a, -um [*vivo*], *adj.*, alive,
 living
- vix**, *adv.*, with difficulty, hardly,
 scarcely, barely
- vōbīs**, *see tu*
- Vocātēs**, -ium, *m. plur.*, a people of
 Aquitania
- Vocciō**, -ōnis, *m.*, a king of Nori-
 cum
- vocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, call
 by name, call, summon, invite
- Vocontii**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe in
 southeastern Gaul
- Volcae**, -ārum, *m. plur.*, a Gallic
 tribe in the Roman province
- Vulcānus**, -ī, *m.*, Vulcan (*the god of
 fire and metals*)
- volgus**, -ī, *n.*, the crowd, the common
 people. — **volgō**, *abl. as adv.*, com-
 monly, generally, everywhere
- volnerātus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of volnero*
- volnerō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*volnus*],
trans., wound, hurt
- volnus**, -eris, *n.*, wound
- volō**, velle, voluī, *no p.p., irr., trans.
 and intrans.*, wish, be willing,
 want: quid sibi vellent, what they
 wanted
- vultus**, -ūs, *m.*, look, countenance,
 face: vultūs fingere, conceal one's
 feelings
- voluntās**, -ātis [*volo*], *f.*, willingness,
 consent, desire, will, approval
- voluptās**, -ātis [*cf. volo*], *f.*, pleasure,
 delight
- Volusēnus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family
 name. *Esp.*, C. Volusenus, one
 of Caesar's officers
- Vosegus**, -ī, *m.*, the Vosges Moun-
 tains, in eastern Gaul
- voveō**, vovēre, vōvī, vōtus, *trans.
 and intrans.*, vow, make a vow
- vōx**, vōcis [*cf. voco*], *f.*, voice, word,
 expression, shout. — *Collectively*,
 cries, words, talk. — *Plur.*, talk,
 reports
- X**, *Roman numeral for ten*

GRAMMATICAL INDEX

The numerals refer to *sections* of the Grammar (pp. 311 ff.) and of the Latin Composition (pp. 411 ff.). References preceded by L. C. refer to sections of the Latin Composition.

ablative

- absolute, 117. *a-f*; L. C. 46
- of accompaniment, 113
- of accordance, 111
- of agent, 104
- of attendant circumstance, 112
- of cause, 109
- of comparison, 105
- of description, 116
- of duration of time, 119. note
- of manner, 110
- of material, 103
- of means, 106
- of measure of difference, 114
- of origin, 102
- of place from which, 101. *a* and note
- of place in which, 120 and *a*
- of respect, 115
- of separation, 101
- of time at which or within which, 119
- of value or price, 108
- of way by which, 120. note 1, 106. *a*
- with special words, 107. *a-c*

accusative

- adverbial, 99
- as direct object, 91
- as subject of infinitive, 92
- of duration and extent, 96
- of kindred meaning, 98
- of place whither, 97

- two accusatives — direct object and secondary object, 93; direct object and adjunct accusative, 94
- with compounds, 95

adjectives

- agreement of, 59, 62, 63
 - attributive, 61
 - comparatives, special meaning, 122
 - comparison, meaning, 121; regular, 14; irregular, 16
 - declension, first and second, 10; irregular, 11; third, 12; of comparatives, 15
 - denoting a part (*medius, imus, summus*), 125
 - numeral, 19
 - predicate, 60
 - substantive use, 127
 - superlatives, special meaning, 123; with *quam*, 124
 - with adverbial meaning, 126
- ### adjunct accusative, 94
- ### adverbs
- comparison, 17, 18
 - negative, 146, 147
 - special meanings, 145
- ### agreement, 58-69
- aliquis*, declension, 31; use, 31. *a*, 144. *b*
 - alius*, declension, 11; used in pairs, 144. *d*; used twice in different cases, 144. 1
 - alter*, declension, 11. *a*; used in pairs, 144. *d*

antecedent

in the relative clause, 140

omission of, 142

repetition of, 141

antequam, with indicative, 197. *a*;

with subjunctive, 197. *b*

appositives, agreement of, 58; definition of, 54

attraction, subjunctive by, 214

base, definition of, 1. *a*

calendar, Roman, 227

Calends, 227. *d*

cardinal numerals, 19

causal clauses

with *cum*, 189; denoting time and cause, 195

with *quod*, *quia*, etc., with indicative, 188. *a*; with subjunctive, 188. *b*

relative clauses of cause, 190

clauses

definition, 56

coördinate, 56. *b*

subordinate, 56. *a*; moods in, 174-198

coepi, conjugation, 46. I

commands, with imperative, 173;

with subjunctive, 172. *b, c*

comparatives, declension, 15; special meanings of, 122, 145

comparison, of adjectives, 14, 16; clauses of, 200

complementary infinitive, 217. *c*

concessive clauses, with indicative, 191; with subjunctive, 192

conditional sentences

future more probable, 199. II. *a*

future less probable, 199. II. *b*

past non-committal, 199. III. *a*

past contrary to fact, 199. III. *b*

present non-committal, 199. I. *a*

present contrary to fact, 199. I. *b*

in indirect discourse, 210-213

confidō, with ablative, 107, *b*

conjugation of verbs

defective (*coepi*, *memini*, *odi*), 46. I

deponent (*hortor*, *vercor*, *sequor*, *partior*), 37

impersonal (*licet*), 46. II

irregular (*sum*, *possum*, *prosum*, *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, *ferō*, *eō*, *fiō*), 39-45

periphrastic (*amātūrus sum*, *amandus sum*), 38. I, II

regular (*amō*, *monēō*, *regō*, *audiō*, *capio*), 32-36

conjunctions, coördinating, 151. *a*;

subordinating, 151. *b*

copula, definition of, 48. II. *b*; position of, L. C. 4. *e*

cum, as enclitic, 150. *a*

cum clauses

causal, 189

concessive, 192

temporal, 194. *a, b*

denoting time and cause, 195

with the meaning 'whenever,' 196

dative

of apparent agent, 87

of indirect object, 82

of possession, 88

of purpose or end, 89

of reference, 85

of separation, 86

with adjectives, 90

with compounds, 84; explanation of, L. C. 62. note 2

with passive of special verbs, 83. *a*

with special verbs, 83; explanation of, L. C. 62. note 1

declensions

of adjectives, 10-15

- of nouns, 2-9
- of pronouns, 21-31
- defective verbs** (*coepti, meminī, dāti*), 46. I
- deliberation**, subjunctive of, 172. *d*;
in indirect discourse, 207. II. *b*
- demonstrative pronouns**, declension, 25; uses, 134, 135
- deponent verbs** (*hortor, vereor, sequor partior*), 37
- descriptive clauses**, 177 and *a*
- direct discourse or direct quotation**, definition, 202
- domi**, 'at home,' 120. *a*
- dōnec**, 'as long as,' 198. II; 'until,' 198. III. *a, b*
- dubitō, nōn dubitō**, with subjunctive, 186
- dum**, 'while,' 198. I; 'as long as,' 198. II; 'until,' 198. III. *a, b*
- duo**, declension, 20
- ego**, declension, 21; in nominative, for emphasis, 129
- eō**, conjugation, 44
- etsi**, in concessive clauses, 191
- fearing**, verbs of, 184
- ferō**, conjugation, 43
- fidō**, with ablative, 107. *b*
- fiō**, conjugation, 45
- frētus**, with ablative, 107. *b*
- fruur**, with ablative, 107. *a*
- fungor**, with ablative, 107. *a*
- future conditions**, more probable, 199. II. *a*; less probable, 199. II. *b*
- future perfect tense**, 158
- future tense**
 - indicative, 155
 - infinitive, 166. *b* and 3
 - participle, 167
- genitive**, 72
 - objective, 75. *b*
 - partitive, 76
 - possessive, 73
 - subjunctive, 75. *a*
 - of description, 77
 - of material, 79
 - of measure, 77. *b*
 - of value, 78
 - with adjectives, 80
 - with verbs, 81. *a-d*
- gerund**, 223. *a-d*; expressing purpose, 225. *a, b*
- gerundive**, 224. *a-d*; expressing purpose, 225. *a, b*; in *-ī* with *mei, tui, sui, nostri*, and *vestri*, 224. *c*
- hic**, declension, 25; uses, 134 and *a*, L. C. 56. *a*
- hindering and opposing**, verbs of, 185
- historical infinitive**, 218
- historical present**, 153. *a*
- idem**, declension, 25
- Ides**, 227. *d*
- ille**, declension, 25; uses, 134 and *a*, L. C. 56. *a*
- imperative**, in commands, 173 and note; in indirect discourse, 205, 206
- impersonal verbs**, conjugation (*licet*), 46. II; definition, 66
- implied indirect discourse**, 208. *b*
- indefinite pronouns**, declension (*quis, quī, quisque, quidam, quisquam, aliquis*), 28-31; uses, 31. *a*, 144. *a-d*
- indicative mood**, 168
 - in causal clauses, 188. *a*
 - in concessive clauses, 191

- in conditional clauses, 199. I. *a*, II. *a*, III. *a*
 in questions, 170
 in relative clauses, 178
 in statement of facts, 169
 in temporal clauses, 194. *a*, 196, 197. *a*, 198. I, II, III. *a*
indirect discourse
 definition, 203
 conditional sentences in, 210–213
 declarative sentences in, 204 and *a*
 imperative sentences in, 205
 prohibitions in, 206
 questions in, real, 207. I; rhetorical, 207. II. *a*, *b*
 subordinate clauses in, mood of, 208; tense of, 209 and note
indirect questions, 201
infinitive mood
 definition, 215
 as object, 217. *a-c*.
 as subject, 216. *a*, *b*
 complementary, 217. *c*
 historical, 218
 in indirect discourse, 217. *b*, 204
 tenses of, not in indirect discourse, 166. *a*; in indirect discourse, 166. *b*. 1–3
intensive pronoun, *ipse*, declension, 25; uses, 136. *a*, *b*
interest, with genitive, 81. *c*
interrogative particles, 170. *a*. 1–3, *b*. 1, 2
interrogative pronoun, *quis*, declension, 27
intransitive verbs, definition, 50; dative with, 83
ipse, declension, 25; uses, 136. *a*, *b*
irregular verbs, conjugation, 39–45
is, declension, 25; uses, 135
iste, declension, 25; use, L.C. 56. *a*
licet, conjugation, 46. II
locative case, 120. *a*
mālō, conjugation, 42
memini, conjugation, 46. I
memory, verbs of, 81. *a*
mille, declension, 20; use, 20. note
moods, in independent sentences, 168–173; in subordinate clauses, 174–201
 -*ne*, in questions, 170. *a*. 1, *b*. 1
nō, conjunction
 general use, 147
 with clauses of purpose, 174
 with hortative subjunctive, 172. *a*
 with optative subjunctive, 172. *c*
 with subjunctive in prohibitions, 172. *c*
 with substantive clauses, after verbs of fearing, 184; after verbs of hindering etc., 185
negatives, 146 and *a*, 147
neuter, declension, 11. *a*
nitor, with ablative, 107. *b*
nōli, conjugation, 42; use, 172. *c*. note 1, 173. note
nominative, as subject or predicate of a finite verb, 70; as subject of the historical infinitive, 71
nōn, 146 and *a*; with clauses of result, 179
Nones, 227. *d*
nōnne, 170. *a*. 2
nōs, declension, 21; in nominative, for emphasis, 129
nouns
 first declension, 2
 second declension, 3
 third declension, 4–6
 fourth declension, 7

fifth declension, 8
 special declensions (*deus, domus, vīs, iter*), 9
 as predicates or appositives, 58
nūllus, declension, 11. *a*
num, in direct questions, 170. *a. 3*;
 in indirect questions, 201. note
numerals, 19

object, direct, 91; indirect, 82
objective genitive, 75. *b*
ōdī, conjugation, 46. I
optative subjunctive, 172. *c. 1-3*
opus est, with ablative, 107. *c*
order of words, L. C. 1-4, *a-e*
ordinal numerals, 19

paenitet, with genitive, 81. *b*
participles
 definition, 219
 as nouns, 221
 declension of present active, 13
 equivalent to clauses, 220. *a-e*
 in the periphrastic conjugations, 222
 tenses of, 167; wanting, L. C. 45
passive voice, intransitive verbs in,
 83. *a*; dative retained with, 83. *a*
past absolute, 156. *b*
past participle, with *habēō*, 156. *b*.
 note
past perfect tense, indicative, 157;
 subjunctive, 159. *c*
past tense, indicative, 154; subjunc-
 tive, 159. *b*
perfect tense
 indicative, 156. *a, b*
 infinitive, not in indirect discourse,
 166. *a*; in indirect discourse,
 166. *b. 2*
 participle, 167
 subjunctive, 159. *a*

periphrastic conjugations, 38. I, II
 active use, 222. I
 passive use, 222. II
 impersonal use, 222. II. note, L. C. 52
personal pronouns
 declension, 21
 in the nominative, 129
 of the third person, 130
 with *-cum* as enclitic, 150. *a*
 with gerundive, 224. *c*
phrase, definition, 51
place
 from which, 101. *a* and note
 in which, 120 and *a*
 to which, 97 and note
plūs, declension, 15
possessive pronominal adjectives, de-
 clension, 23, 24; use, 131, 132
possum, conjugation, 40
postquam, with indicative, 193
potential subjunctive, 172. *f*, L. C.
 13. *a*. note
potior, with ablative, 107. *a*; with
 genitive, 81. *d*
predicate, definition, 48. II and *a*
predicate adjective, 60
predicate noun, agreement, 58
prepositions
 use, 148
 with ablative, 150
 with accusative, 149
present tense
 historical, 153. *a*
 indicative, 153
 infinitive, not in indirect discourse,
 166. *a*; in indirect discourse,
 166. *b. 1*
 participle, 167
 subjunctive, 159. *a*
 with *dum*, 198. I
primary tenses, 161

- priusquam**, with indicative, 197. *a*;
with subjunctive, 197. *b*
- prohibitions**, 172. *c* and note 1; in
indirect discourse, 206
- pronouns**, declensions, 21-31; uses,
128-144
- prōsum**, conjugation, 41
- purpose clauses**
adverbial, 174
relative, 175; containing a com-
parative, 176
substantive, 183
- quam**, with comparatives, 105. note 1;
with superlatives, 124
- quamquam**, with indicative, 191
- quamvis**, with subjunctive, 192
- quandō**, in causal clauses, with in-
dicative, 188. *a*; with subjunctive,
188. *b*
- questions**
deliberative, 172. *d*
double, 170. *b*
indirect, 201
rhetorical, 171
in indirect discourse, 207. I, II. *a, b*
introductory words, 170 (entire)
- quī**, indefinite, declension, 28; use,
31. *a*
- quī**, relative, declension, 26; uses,
137-143. *See* relative pronoun
- quia**, in causal clauses, with indica-
tive, 188. *a*; with subjunctive, 188. *b*
- quidam**, declension, 29; use, 144. *a*
- quīn**, after verbs of hindering and
opposing, 185; after *nōn dubitō*,
186
- quis**, indefinite, declension, 28; use,
31. *a*, 144. *a*
- quis**, interrogative, declension, 27;
use, 170
- quisquam**, declension, 30; use, 31. *a*,
144. *c*
- quisque**, declension, 28
- quō**, with purpose clauses, 176
- quoad**, with indicative, 198. II, III. *a*;
with subjunctive, 198. III. *b*
- quod**, in causal clauses, with indica-
tive, 188. *a*; with subjunctive,
188. *b*; in substantive clauses of
fact, 182 and *a*
- quō minus**, after verbs of hindering
and opposing, 185
- quoniam**, in causal clauses, with in-
dicative, 188. *a*; with subjunctive,
188. *b*
- quotations**, direct, 202; indirect, 203
- reflexive pronouns**
declension, 22
direct, 132
indirect, 133
with gerundive, 224. *c*
- relative clause**
antecedent in, 140
antecedent repeated in, 141
causal, 190
descriptive, 177 and *a*
of purpose, 175
of result, 180
preceding antecedent clause, 139
stating a fact, 178
- relative pronoun**
agreement of, 137
agreement with predicate noun or
appositive, 138
beginning a new sentence, 143
declension, 26
- reminiscor**, with genitive, 81. *a*
- result clauses**
adverbial, 179
relative, 180

- substantive, as subject or object of verbs of accomplishing etc., 187. I; as subject of certain impersonal verbs, 187. II
- rhetorical questions**, definition, 171; in indirect discourse, 207. II. *a*, *b*
- Roman calendar**, 227
- Roman year**, 228
- secondary tenses**, 161
- sentences**, kinds of, 47. *a-c*; forms of, 55. *a-c*
- separation**, ablative of, 101; dative of, 86
- sequence of tenses**, explanation of, 161; rule for, 162
- sī**, with conditional clauses, 199
- sōlus**, declension, 11. *a*
- stem**, definition of, 1. *a*
- subjunctive mood**
 after *nōn dubitō*, 186
 after verbs of fearing, 184
 after verbs of hindering and opposing, 185
 by attraction, 214
 in causal clauses, 188. *b*, 189, 190
 in clauses of comparison, 200
 in clauses of description, 177
 in clauses of purpose, 174-176, 183
 in clauses of result, 179, 180, 187
 in commands, 172. *b*
 in concessive clauses, 192
 in conditional clauses, 199. I. *b*, II. *b*, III. *b*
 in *cum* clauses denoting time and cause, 195
 in exhortations, 172. *a*
 in indirect discourse, in subordinate clauses, 208
 in indirect questions, 201
 in prohibitions, 172. *c*
 in questions of deliberation, 172. *d*
 in temporal clauses, 194. *b*, 197. *b*, 198. III. *b*
 optative, 172. *e*. 1, 2, 3
 potential, 172. *f*, I. C. 13. *a*. note
- substantive clauses**
 after *nōn dubitō*, 186
 after verbs of fearing, 184
 after verbs of hindering and opposing, 185
 of fact, 182 and *a*
 of purpose, 183
 of result, as subject or object of verbs of accomplishing etc., 187. I; as subject of certain impersonal verbs, 187. II
- sum**, conjugation, 39; use as copula, 48. II. *b*
- supine**, in *-um*, 226. *a*; in *-ū*, 226. *b*
- suus**, *suī*
 declension, 22, 23
 as direct reflexive, 132
 as indirect reflexive, 133
 special use with gerundive, 224. *c*
- temporal clauses**
 indicative uses
 with *antequam* or *priusquam*, denoting a fact, 197. *a*
 with *cum* in definitive clauses, 194. *a*
 with *cum* meaning 'whenever,' 196
 with *dum* meaning 'while,' 198. I
 with *dum*, *dōnec*, or *quoad* meaning 'as long as,' 198. II
 with *dum*, *dōnec*, or *quoad* meaning 'until,' denoting a fact, 198. III. *a*
 with *postquam*, *ut*, *ubi*, etc., 193

subjunctive uses

with *antequam* or *priusquam*, denoting anticipation, 197. *b*

with *cum* in descriptive clauses, 194. *b*

with *cum* denoting time and cause, 195

with *dum*, *dōnec*, or *quoad*, denoting anticipation, 198. III. *b*

tenses

of the indicative, 153-158

of the infinitive, not in indirect discourse, 166. *a*; in indirect discourse, 166. *b*. 1-3

of the participle, 167

of the subjunctive, in dependent clauses, 160; in independent clauses, 159. *a-c*

sequence of, 161, 162

tōtus, declension, 11. *a*

transitive verbs, 49; object of, 91

trēs, declension, 20

tū, declension, 21; in nominative, for emphasis, 129

ubi, with indicative, 193

ūllus, declension, 11. *a*; use, 31. *a*, 144. *c*

ūnus, declension, 11

ūsus est, with ablative, 107. *c*

ut

with clauses of purpose, 174

with clauses of result, 179

with concessive clauses, 192

with temporal clauses, 193

uter, declension, 11. *a*

utinam, with the optative subjunctive, 172. *c*. 1-3

ūtor, with ablative, 107. *a*

utrum . . . an, 170. *b*. 1

velut, velut sī, with subjunctive, 200

verbs

agreement of, 65-69

defective, conjugation, 46. I

deponent, conjugation, 37

impersonal, conjugation, 46. II

intransitive, 50

irregular, conjugation, 39-45

moods, in independent sentences, 168-173; in subordinate clauses, 174-201

periphrastic conjugations, 38. I, II; uses, 222. I, II

regular, conjugation, 32-36

tenses, *see* tenses

transitive, 49

vocative, 100

volitive subjunctive, 172. *c*. note 2

volō, conjugation, 42

vōs, declension, 21; in nominative, for emphasis, 129

wishes, *see* optative subjunctive

words, order of, L. C. 1-4, *a-c*

year, the Roman, 228

This textbook may be borrowed for two weeks, with the privilege of renewing it once. A fine of five cents a day is incurred by failure to return a book on the date when it is due.

The Education Library is open from 9 to 5 daily except Saturday when it closes at 12.30.

DUE

DUE

APR 4 1929

JAN 6 1930

NOV 30 1937

APR 25 1938

MAY 26 1938

NOV 8 1938

FEB 5 1940

APR 5 1940

DEC 19 1945

